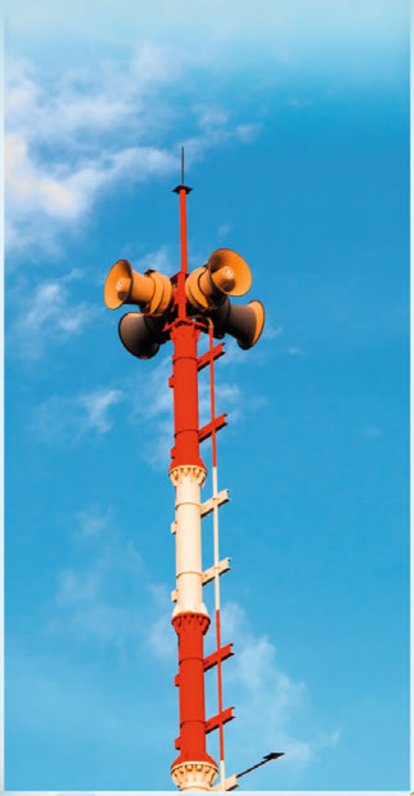
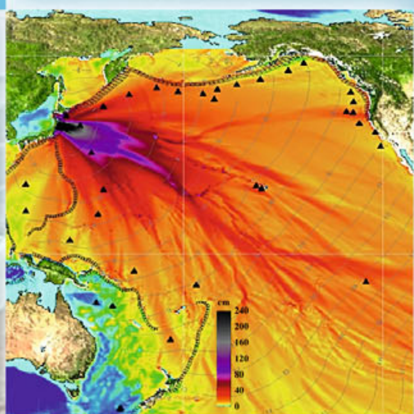
TSUNAMI

The Underrated Hazard

Edward Bryant





Third Edition

Springer

PRAXIS

Tsunami

The Hollow of the Deep-Sea Wave off Kanagawa (Kanagawa Oki Uranami), a grey-scale print from a color woodcut, No. 20 from the series *Thirty-Six Views of Fuji*, circa 1831, by Katsushika Hokusai, a famous late Eighteenth and early Nineteenth century Japanese artist. Textbooks and many web sites depict this wave as a tsunami wave, but in fact it is a wind-generated wave. It has a special shape called an *N*-wave, characterized by a deep leading trough and a very peaked crest. Some tsunami, such as the one that struck the Aitape coast of Papua New Guinea on July 17, 1998, emulate this form close to shore

Edward Bryant

Tsunami

The Underrated Hazard

Third Edition

Springer

PRAXIS

Edward Bryant
Faculty of Science, Technology, Engineering and Mathematics
International University of Malaya-Wales
Kuala Lumpur
Malaysia

Published in association with Praxis Publishing, Chichester, UK

ISBN 978-3-319-06132-0 ISBN 978-3-319-06133-7 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7
Springer Cham Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2014939392

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

To the memory of

J. Harlen Bretz

Preface

Before 10 AM, March 18, 1989, I was a process geomorphologist who had researched the coastal evolution of rock platforms and sand barriers along the New South Wales coastline of eastern Australia. I was aware of tsunami, and indeed had written about them, but they were not my main area of research. No one had considered that tsunami could be an important coastal process along the east coast of Australia. On that March morning in brilliant sunshine, with the hint of a freshening sea breeze, my life was about to change. I stood with my close colleague Bob Young, marveling at a section of collapsed cliff at the back of a rock platform, at Haycock Point south of Merimbula. We saw a series of angular, fresh boulders jammed into a crevice at the top of a rock platform that did not appear to be exposed to storm waves. Unlike many before us, we decided that we could no longer walk away from this deposit without coming up with a scientific reason for the field evidence that was staring us in the face. After agonizing for over an hour and exhausting all avenues, we were left with the preposterous hypothesis that one or two tsunami waves had impinged upon the coast. These tsunami were responsible, not only for jamming the rocks into the crevice, but also for the rock-fall that had put the rocks on the platform in the first place. We did not want a big tsunami wave, just one of about 1–2 m depth running about 5–6 m above the highest limits of ocean swell on the platform. Over the next 8 years that wave grew immensely until we finally found evidence for a mega-tsunami overwashing a headland 130 m above sea level at Jervis Bay along the same coastline. Subsequent discoveries revealed that more than one wave had struck the New South Wales coast in the last 7,000 years, that mega-tsunami were also ubiquitous around the Australian coast, and that the magnitude of the field evidence was so large that only a comet or asteroid impact with the Earth could conceivably have generated such waves. From being a trendy process geomorphologist wrapped in the ambience of the 1960s, I had descended into the abyss of contentious catastrophism dredged from the dark ages of geology when it was an infant discipline. Bob Young subsequently retired in 1996, but his clarity of thinking about the larger picture and his excellent eye for the landscape are present in all of our publications and reflected in this textbook. There was not a day in the field with Bob that did not lead to excitement and discovery.

Between 1995 and 1999, I worked closely with Jon Nott from James Cook University in Cairns, Queensland. Bob Young trained Jon, so I have lost none of Bob's appreciation for landscape. Jon and I enthusiastically continued field research in remote locations. To stand with Jon at Point Samson, Western Australia, and both realize simultaneously that we were looking at a landscape where a mega-tsunami had washed inland 5 km—not only swamping hills 60 m high, but also cutting through them—was a privilege. Few geomorphologists who have twigged for the first time to a catastrophic event have been able to share that experience in the field with anyone else. Jon, Bob, and I formulated the Australian examples of tsunami signatures described in Chap. 3, while Jon developed the equations for boulder transport also used in this chapter. David Wheeler did the fieldwork that first identified the dramatic tsunami chevron-shaped dunes at Steamers Beach, Jervis Bay. Since 2002, I have had the fortune of working with Simon Haslett of the University of Wales. By chance, a brief academic visit to the shores of the Bristol Channel in Wales with time to inspect medieval churches led us to stumble across what we believe was a tsunami on January 30, 1607. Much of the material about this event in the book is due to Simon's ability to search for, and interrelate, obscure manuscripts, and his dogged attention to detail in the field. I have then had the privilege of working with three enthusiastic, talented and determined researchers: Slava Gusiakov of the Institute of Computational Mathematics and Mathematical Geophysics, Siberian Division Russian Academy Of Sciences, Novosibirsk, Russia; Dallas Abbott of Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory, Columbia University; and Bruce Masse at the Los Alamos National Laboratory, New Mexico. They have come up with convincing evidence that recent comet impacts with the ocean do occur. All of us have withstood the rebuff of peers that goes with ideas on catastrophism in an age of *minimal astonishment*. I hope that this book conveys to readers the excitement of our discoveries about tsunami. Finally, I am indebted to Clive Horwood of Praxis Publishing, Dr. Philippe Blondel from the Department of Physics, University of Bath, and to Springer Publishing for allowing me to publish two further editions of this book.

It is difficult to write a book on tsunami without using equations. The relationships amongst tsunami wave height, flow depth at shore, boulder size, and bedform dimensions were crucial in our conceptualization of mega-tsunami and their role in shaping coastal landscapes. In this third edition, the formulae have been either simplified further or kept to a minimum. Wherever I have used equations, I have tried to explain them by including a supporting figure or photograph. Terms used in equations are only defined once where they first occur in the text, unless there could be confusion about their meaning at a later point in the book. For reference, all terms and symbols are summarized at the beginning of the text. Many dates are only reported by year. Where ambiguity could exist, the terms AD (Anno Domini) or BC (Before Christ) are used. If there is no ambiguity, then the year refers to AD. In some cases the term BP is used to measure time. This refers to years *before present* and is commonly used when reporting radiocarbon or thermoluminescence dates. Before present is difficult to explain to the general public, but refers to time before 1950! Units of measurement follow the International System of Units except for the use of the terms kilotons and megatons. There are many definitions of the terms meteorite, asteroid, and comet. We have used the terminology favored by those studying the possibility of near Earth objects (NEOs) colliding with the earth. A comet is any object consisting mostly of ice. An asteroid is any object consisting of rock and larger than 50 m in diameter. If it is less than 50 m in diameter, then the object is a meteoroid. If an asteroid impacts with the Earth, it is still an asteroid, whereas if a meteoroid impacts with the Earth, it is called a meteorite.

A major change to this edition is the inclusion of references in the text. It may make the book more difficult for a lay person to read, but it satisfies some academic criticism of previous editions. This book is not intended to be a comprehensive literature review or an encyclopedia. The breadth of coverage precludes a complete review of the literature on many topics. All references to publications can be found at the end of chapters. Some articles and data were acquired from the Internet. The Internet addresses in these cases are also referenced. Such material may not be readily available because internet addresses change or are terminated. Worse, content can disappear totally from the internet.

The first edition of this book was written as a summary and description of tsunami as a hazard. The scenarios were meant as a casual warning to our civilization. This intent failed on December 26, 2004 when the Indian Ocean Tsunami claimed over 200,000 lives and there was nothing anyone at the time could do about it. The second edition was then written as a wake-up call to save lives from future tsunami events. The Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 saw this objective defeated. This third edition is another call for attention and action by nations and communities that live near any water body to acknowledge that tsunami are a deadly hazard. I don't anticipate a fourth edition.

January 2014 Ted Bryant

Acknowledgments

A number of people and organizations should be acknowledged for their information about tsunami. First is the U.S. government, which has a policy of putting all its information in the public domain. Many photographs used throughout this book and detailed information on events were obtained from U.S. government agencies and their employees. None of these accepts liability nor endorses material for any purpose. I have acknowledged these sources in this book, but mention here the National Geophysical Data Center (NGDC) at http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/seg/hazard/tsu.shtml and the Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory at http://nctr.pmel.noaa.gov/ for their excellent sources. Many of the maps in the text were originally created using *Generic Mapping Tools* (GMT), an online software package. This has since been superseded by *planiglobe* operated by R. Kantz and Dr. M. Weinelt at http://www.planiglobe.com/omc_set.html. The program has gone through many iterations and some of the maps in this textbook produced by earlier versions cannot be recreated using the existing one.

Background information on tsunami in Chap. 1, and reference to individual events throughout the book, were obtained through the NGDC/NOAA database at http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/seg/hazard/tsunami and the Tsunami Laboratory website at http://omzg.sscc.ru/tsulab/ run by Dr. Viacheslav (Slava) Gusiakov of the Russian Academy of Sciences, Novosibirsk. I am also indebted to Slava for his comments on a cosmogenic source for the New South Wales mega-tsunami and his collaboration on Madagascar research. Dr. Efim Pelinovsky, Institute of Applied Physics, Russian Academy of Sciences, Nizhny Novgorod, Russia, provided encouragement and information on Caspian Sea tsunami used in Chap. 1. Dr. Edelvays Spassov, formerly of the Bulgarian Academy of Sciences, provided information on Black Sea tsunami. Mr. Alan Rodda of Toowoomba, Queensland, provided the details of freak waves off the coast of Venus Bay east of Melbourne, Victoria. Mark Bryant provided the description of the freak wave at North Wollongong Beach in January 1994.

Figure 2.1, of a tsunami approaching the Scotch Cap lighthouse, Unimak Island, Alaska, was obtained from the web site of Alan Yelvington at http://www.semparpac.org/tsunami.jpg. These figures are the property of the U.S. Government and are in the public domain. Dr. Steven Ward, Institute of Tectonics, University of California at Santa Cruz, kindly provided a preprint of a paper on tsunami that gave a novel view of the mathematical treatment of tsunami. Concepts from this paper, especially the term *tsunami window,* are included in the discussion of tsunami dynamics. Dr. Ward also gave his permission to use the time-lapse simulation of tsunami generated by an asteroid impact in a deep ocean in Fig. 9.6 and provided information on the tsunami generated by the Nuuanu slide in Hawaii. Figure 2.6 showing a variable grid is used with kind permission from Springer Science and Business Media.

Professor Toshio Kawana, Laboratory of Geography, College of Education, University of the Ryukyus, Nishihara, Okinawa, provided the photograph of boulders on the Ryukyu Islands used in Chap. 3. Susan Fyfe, a graduate of the School of Geosciences, University of Wollongong originally drew the outstanding sketches of *S*-forms and bedrock sculpturing used in Chaps. 3 and 4. The *Journal of Geology* graciously allows these and other figures published in their journal to be used here. The photograph of the helical plug in Fig. 3.1 was provided by John Meier, who is a landscape photographer working out of Melbourne.

Information on specific earthquake-generated tsunami and the summary of warning systems presented in Chaps. 5, 6, and 10 respectively originate from the NOAA publication TSUNAMI! at http://www.nws.noaa.gov/om/brochures/tsunami.htm. Information on the effects of the Alaskan Tsunami of March 27, 1964 came from the website http://wcatwc.arh.noaa.gov/about/64quake.htm. Details about the Papua New Guinea Tsunami of July 17, 1998 were provided by Dr. Philip Watts, Applied Fluids Engineering Long Beach, California; and by Prof. Hugh Davies, Department of Geology, University of Papua New Guinea, Port Moresby. Professor Davies also provided much of the background information for the story used in Chap. 1. This information is now available at http://nctr.pmel.noaa.gov/PNG/Upng/Davies020411/. Sediment information on the Papua New Guinea event was taken from the U.S. Geological Survey Western Region Coastal and Marine Geology web page at http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/PNGhome.html. Figure 5.13 of the sediment splay at Arop was prepared especially for this book by Dr. Bruce Jaffe and Dr. Guy Gelfenbaum, U.S. Geological Survey. Mitsukuni Sato of Iwate, Japan kindly allowed Fig. 6.18 to be used to further knowledge of tsunami. Additional information for tsunami generated by earthquakes, submarine landslides, and volcanoes originated from the web pages of Dr. George Pararas-Carayannis, retired director of the International Tsunami Information Center (ITIC), at http://www.drgeorgepc.com/. As well, details about the International Tsunami Warning System were based upon these pages, from the web pages of the International Tsunami Information Center at http://www.tsunamiwave.info/, and from the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) at http://www.noaa.gov/tsunamis.html. Additionally, particulars on the Alaskan Warning System were taken from the West Coast and Alaska Tsunami Warning Center Internet home page at http://wcatwc.arh.noaa.gov/.

Dr. Simon Day of the Greig Fester Centre for Hazards Research, Department of Geological Sciences, University College, London, provided information on submarine landslides and their possible mega-tsunami—especially for the Canary Islands. Dr. Barbara Keating, School of Ocean and Earth Science and Technology at the University of Hawaii, Manoa, provided the locations of landslides associated with volcanoes plotted in Fig. 7.2 and detailed descriptions of historical tsunami in Hawaii related to landslides. Barbara also passed on her comments criticizing the tsunami origin of the boulder deposits on the island of Lanai referred to in Chap. 7. Figure 7.11 is taken from Bondevik et al. (1997) and is used with the permission of Blackwell Science Ltd. in the United Kingdom. Figure 8.1 is copyrighted and provided by Lynette Cook, who is an astronomical artist/scientific illustrator living in San Francisco.

The following people gave information about near Earth objects (meteoroids, asteroids, and comets), the characteristics of these objects impacting with the Earth, and the effect of such impacts on human history: Prof. Mike Baillie, retired, Palaeoecology Centre, School of Geosciences, Queen's University, Belfast; Dr. Andrew Glikson, Research School of Earth Science, Australian National University; Dr. Peter Snow (deceased), Tapanui, New Zealand; and Dr. Duncan Steel, Spaceguard Australia P/L, Adelaide, South Australia. Michael Paine's unofficial Spaceguard Australia web page at http://www1.tpgi.com.au/users/tps-seti/spacegd.html provided information on comets, asteroids, and impact events. Figure 9.1 appeared originally in Alvarez (1997) and is reprinted by permission of the original author, Ron Miller, Black Cat Studios, http://www.black-cat-studios.com/. Dr. David Crawford of the Sandia National Laboratories kindly gave permission for the simulations of an asteroid hitting the ocean and the resulting splash used in Fig. 9.4. Grahame Walsh (deceased) of the TAKARAKKA Rock Art Research Centre, Queensland facilitated the fieldwork in the Kimberley, northwest Australia. This latter research was funded by the GeoQuEST Research Centre, University of Wollongong, and the Kimberley Foundation Australia. John Beal of

Brushgrove in northern New South Wales provided aboriginal legends on tsunami for this part of Australia.

One of the most dramatic videos of the tsunami, and any natural hazard ever witnessed, was taken by Hashime Seto of the tsunami overtopping the wall built to protect his home town of Ryoishi on the Sanriku coast. The video is on YouTube at http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=e9rbqXSHfV8. Ryuji Miyamoto and Yuki Okumla assisted with obtaining Fig. 10.10 from this video. The author has made every effort to contact copyright holders for material used in this book. Any person or organization that may have been overlooked should contact the author through the publisher.

References

W. Alvarez, in *T. Rex and the Crater of Doom* (Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1997)

S. Bondevik, J.I. Svendsen, J. Mangerud, Tsunami sedimentary facies deposited by the Storegga tsunami in shallow marine basins and coastal lakes, western Norway. Sedimentology **44**, 1115–1131 (1997)

Contents

Figures

Tables

Symbols in Formulae

a	Length of a boulder (m)
b	The intermediate axis or width of a boulder (m)
b_i	The distance between wave orthogonals at any shoreward point (m)
b_o	The distance between wave orthogonals at a source point (m)
b_{I}	Intermediate diameter of largest boulders (m)
c	Thickness of a boulder (m) or Thickness of a submarine slide (m) or Soil cohesion (kPa)
C	Wave speed or velocity of a wave (m s^{-1})
C_d	The coefficient of drag (dimensionless)
C_i	Wave speed at any shoreward point (m s^{-1})
C_l	The coefficient of lift (dimensionless)
C_o	Wave speed at a source point (m s^{-1})
d	Water depth below mean sea level (m) or The initial depth of a slide in the ocean (m) or The depth of water flow over land (m)
d_i	Water depth at any shoreward point (m)
d_o	Water depth at a source point (m)
D	Diameter of an impact crater (m)
g	Gravitational acceleration (9.81 m s^{-1})
H	Crest-to-trough wave height (m)
H_b	Wave height at the breaker point (m)
H_{max}	The maximum height of a tsunami wave above still water
H_o	Crest-to-trough wave height at the source point (m)
H_r	Tsunami run-up height above mean sea level (m)
$\bar{H}_r$	Mean tsunami run-up height above mean sea level (m)
H_{rmax}	Maximum tsunami run-up height above mean sea level (m)
H_t	Wave height at shore or at the toe of a beach (m)
H_m	Tsunami wave height above mean sea level (m)
$\bar{H}_{tmax}$	Mean maximum tsunami wave height along a coast (m)
i_s	Soloviev's tsunami magnitude scale (dimensionless)
k	A constant (dimensionless)
K_r	Refraction coefficient (dimensionless)
K_s	Shoaling coefficient (dimensionless)
K_{sp}	Coefficient of geometrical spreading on a sphere (dimensionless)
L	Wavelength of a tsunami wave (m)
L_b	Length of a bay, basin, or harbor (m)
L_s	Bedform wavelength (m)
m	Mass of an asteroid (kg)
m_{II}	Tsunami magnitude, Imamura–Iida scale (dimensionless)
M_o	Seismic moment measured (N m)
M_t	Tsunami magnitude (dimensionless)
M_w	Moment magnitude scale (dimensionless)

n Manning's roughness coefficient (dimensionless) or an exponential term
r The radius of the crater made by an asteroid impact in the ocean (m)
r_a Radius of an asteroid (m)
R_e The shortest distance from a location to the epicenter of an earthquake (km)
R_t The distance a tsunami travels from the center of an asteroid impact (m)
S_p Density correction for an asteroid impact (g cm^{-3})
S_t Area of seabed generating a tsunami (m^2)
t Time (s)
T Wave period (s)
T_s Wave period of seiching in a bay, basin, or harbor (s)
$\ddot{u}$ Instantaneous flow velocity (m s^{-1})
v Flow velocity (m s^{-1})
$\bar{v}$ Mean flow velocity of water (m s^{-1})
v_a Impact velocity of an asteroid (m s^{-1})
v_{min} Minimum flow velocity of water (m s^{-1})
v_r Velocity of tsunami run-up (m s^{-1})
W Kinetic energy of an asteroid impact (kilotons of TNT)
x_{max} Limit of tsunami penetration landward (m)

Greek Symbols

α_i	The angle a wave crest makes to the bottom contours at any shoreward point (degrees)
α_o	The angle a wave crest makes to the bottom contours at a source point (degrees)
β	Slope of the seabed (degrees)
β_l	Slope of land surface (degrees)
Δ	Angle of spreading on a sphere relative to a wave's direction of travel
ΔC	A small correction on tsunami magnitude dependent on source region
ξ	Pore water pressure (kPa)
ρ_a	Density of an asteroid (g cm^{-3})
ρ_e	Density of material ejected from an impact crater (g cm^{-3})
ρ_s	Density of sediment (g cm^{-3})
ρ_w	Density of seawater (g cm^{-3})
π	3.141592654
τ_s	The shear strength of the soil (kPa)
σ	The normal stress at right angles to the slope (kPa)
φ	The angle of internal friction or shearing resistance (degrees)

Introduction

Between 1990 and 2000, over 14 major tsunami events affected the world's coastlines, causing devastation and loss of life. These events made scientists aware that tsunami have been underrated as a major hazard, mainly due to the misconception that they occur infrequently compared to other natural disasters. However this message did not get effectively translated into warning and response. The disastrous Indian Ocean Tsunami of December 26, 2004 revealed the weaknesses in warning systems, while the Japanese Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 revealed the flaws in perception and preparation. Both reinforced the point that tsunami larger than living memory can occur along any coastline. Evidence for past great tsunami, or mega-tsunami, has also been discovered along apparently aseismic and protected coastlines, such as those of Australia and Western Europe. These mega-tsunami are caused either by huge submarine landslides or the impact of asteroids and comets with the ocean. With a large proportion of the world's population living on the coastline, the threat from tsunami cannot be ignored. Were a mega-tsunami to occur today, the death toll would be in the tens of thousands, while the damage would exceed that of any historical disaster.

Tsunami: The Underrated Hazard comprehensively describes the nature and process of tsunami, outlines field evidence for detecting the presence of past events, and describes particular events linked to earthquakes, volcanoes, submarine landslides, and asteroid impacts. While technical aspects are covered, much of the text can be read by anyone with a high school education. The book will appeal to students and researchers in geomorphology, earth and environmental science, and emergency planning, and will be attractive for the public interested in natural hazards and new developments in science.

Edward Bryant is currently visiting professor at the International University of Malaya-Wales, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. He has published over 70 papers in international journals on topics ranging across sea level, beach erosion, coastal evolution over the last 200,000 years, climate change, tsunami dynamics, and catastrophic agents of coastal evolution. He is author of two previous books with Cambridge University Press: *Natural Hazards* (1991)—reprinted in 2005—and *Climate Process and Change* (1997).

Part I

Tsunami as a Known Hazard

1 Introduction

1.1 Introduction

A tsunami is a wave, or series of waves in a wave train, generated by the sudden, vertical displacement of a column of water. This displacement can be due to seismic activity, explosive volcanism, a landslide above or below water, an asteroid impact, or certain meteorological phenomena. These waves can be generated in oceans, bays, lakes, rivers, or reservoirs. The term *tsunami* is Japanese and means harbor (*tsu*) wave (*nami*), because such waves often develop as resonant phenomena in harbors after offshore earthquakes. Both the singular and plural of the word in Japanese are the same. Many English writers write the plural of tsunami as tsunamis. The Japanese usage will be adhered to throughout this text.

Before 1990, the public perceived tsunami as originating primarily from large, distant, underwater earthquakes—mainly in the Pacific Ocean. The fear of tsunami was allayed by the knowledge that an early warning system existed to prevent loss of life. In the 1990s, fourteen major tsunami events struck the world's coastlines. While other disasters over this period have caused more deaths and greater economic destruction, these tsunami events have made scientists aware that the tsunami hazard is pervasive. The tsunami occurred as near-coastal events—generated by small earthquakes or even submarine landslides—and in many cases with minimal warning to local inhabitants. These perceptions suffered a major shock on December 26, 2004 when one of the largest earthquakes ever recorded, centered off the coast of northern Indonesia, generated a tsunami that swept across the northern Indian Ocean and killed hundreds of thousands of unsuspecting people. Big tsunami can occur without warning in a world where technology is supposed to save everyone. This point was proven poignantly on March 11, 2011 in Japan, one of the most technologically advanced countries in the world and no stranger to tsunami. Here, one of the largest tsunami generated by an earthquake ever recorded struck Sanriku on the northeastern coast of Honshu Island. Known as the Tōhoku Tsunami, it killed over 18,000 people; but more strikingly, it rendered the cooling system of the Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant inoperable, leading to hydrogen explosions at three of its six reactors. The explosions spread lethal contamination more than 60 km away, the effects of which will last for decades (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). The greatest risk to the reactors had been assessed by senior engineers as being from an earthquake. Junior engineers believed that the greatest risk was from a tsunami, but their superiors insisted that this risk was unrealistic and did not take the prediction seriously.

The tsunami was the largest along the Sanriku coast in over a thousand years. And this is one of the problems with tsunami science. The severest tsunami disasters are very rare; the risk increases dramatically with decreasing probability of occurrence (Harbitz et al. 2012). However, these probabilities are difficult to predict based on historical observations that may cover only a few hundred years. Hence the urgent need for paleo-studies—studies based upon the geological record. For example, there is geological evidence for tsunami of a similar magnitude, or larger than, the Indian Ocean and Tōhoku Tsunami along apparently aseismic and protected coastlines such as eastern Australia, eastern Scotland and the Bristol Channel of western Britain. These types of events have not only been repetitive, but in some cases also overlap with historical records, namely in Great Britain. In Australia, paleo-tsunami appear novel because they have occurred in a country without a long, scientifically based, written history or record of tsunami. Aboriginal legends, however, orally record their occurrence. The generation of these tsunami is contentious, but most likely due to either great submarine landslides or the impact of asteroids and comets with the Earth's oceans.

The recent occurrence of large tsunami and discoveries have serious implications when it is realised that Western Civilization is unique in its settlement of the shoreline and its development of great coastal cities. If a submarine landslide generated a near-coastal tsunami off the coasts of

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_1,

Fig. 1.1 "All the sheep!" Child's impression of a large tsunami breaking on a rocky coast at night. ©Kate Bryant, 1998

Sydney, Los Angeles, Tokyo, Honolulu, Chennai (formerly Madras), or any of a dozen other large cities, the death toll would be in the tens of thousands. A geological clock is also ticking away that eventually will see the occurrence of a tsunami as large as the Indian Ocean event of 2004 off the coast of Portugal, the northwest coast of the United States, or in the Caribbean. This book describes tsunami as an underrated hazard and summarizes some of these recent discoveries. It presents a comprehensive coverage of the tsunami threat to the world's coastline.

1.2 Five Stories

1.2.1 An Aboriginal Legend

It was a stifling hot day, and all the Burragorang people lay prostrate around their camp unable to eat (Parker 1978). As night approached, no one could sleep because of the heat and the mosquitoes. The sun set blood red and the moon rose full in the east through the haze. With just a remnant of red in the western sky, the sky suddenly heaved, billowed, tumbled, and then tottered before crumbling. The moon rocked, the stars clattered, and the Milky Way split. Many of the stars—loosened from their places—began to fall flashing to the ground. Then a huge ball of burning blue fire shot through the sky at enormous speed. A hissing sound filled the air, and the whole sky lit like day. Then the star hit the Earth. The ground heaved and split open. Stones flew up accompanied by masses of earth followed by a deafening roar that echoed through the hills before filling the world with complete noise. A million pieces of molten fire showered the ground. Everyone was awestruck and frozen in fear. The sky was falling. Smaller stars continued to fall throughout the night with great clamoring and smoke. The next morning when all was quiet again only the bravest hunters explored beyond the campsite. Great holes were burnt into the ground. Wherever one of the larger molten pieces had hit, it had piled up large mounds of soil. Many of these holes were still burning with flames belching out. Down by the sea, they were amazed. Fresh caves lined the cliffs.

Soon stories reached them from neighboring tribes that not only had the sky fallen, but also the ocean (Peck 1938). These neighbours began talking about a great ancestor who had left the Earth and gone into the sky, and who had travelled so fast that he had shot through the sky. The hole he had made had closed up. This ancestor had tried to get back through the sky by beating on top of it, but it had loosened and plummeted to the Earth, along with the ocean. Before anyone could discuss this story, it began to rain—rain unlike anything anyone had seen before. It rained all day and all night, and the rivers reached their banks and then crept out across the floodplains. Still the rain came down, and the people and all the animals fled into the hills. When the water rose into the hills, the people fled to the highest peaks. Water covered the whole land from horizon-to-horizon unlike anything anyone had ever seen before. It took weeks for the water to go down, everyone got very hungry, and many people died. Nothing was the same after the night that the sky fell. Now, whenever the sea grows rough and the wind blows, people know that the ocean is angry and impatient because the ancestor still refuses to let it go back whence it came. When the storm waves break on the beach, people know that it is just the great ancestor beating the ocean down again.

1.2.2 The Kwenaitchechat Legend, Pacific Northwest

It was a cold winter's night along the Cape Flattery coast of the Pacific Northwest (Heaton and Snavely 1985; Geist 1997). At Neeah Bay, the Kwenaitchechat people had eaten and settled into sleep. Then the ground began to shake violently. The land rolled from west to east and jerked upwards, leaving the beach exposed higher above the high-tide line than anyone had seen it before. Everyone ran out into the moonless night and down to the beach, where there was less chance in the dark of being flung into trees or the sides of huts by the shaking. As they fled onto the beach, the adults began to sink into the sand as if it were water. The old people were the last to get to the beach, and when they did, they were yelling frantically for everyone to run to higher ground. The young men laughed at them, saying that it was safer in the open. Suddenly the water in the bay began to recede, far beyond the limit of the lowest tide, further than anyone had seen it go. Everyone paused and stared at the ocean as if for eternity. Then the water began to come back. There was no sound except for the loud rushing of water swallowing everything in the bay. As one, all the tribespeople turned and began to run back to the village, to the canoes. Few got back. Those that did flung themselves, children, and anything else they could grab in the dark into the canoes. Then they were all picked up and swept north into the Straits of Juan de Fuca and into the forests. The water covered everything on the cape with only the hills sticking out. When the waters finally receded, many had drowned. Some canoes were stuck in the trees of the forest and were destroyed. Some people without any means of paddling the canoes were swept onto Vancouver Island beyond Nootka. In the light of day, all trace of the village in Neeah Bay was gone. So were all the neighboring villages. No sign of life remained except for the few survivors scattered along the coast and the animals that had managed to flee into the hills.

On the other side of the Pacific Ocean, in Japan, 10 h later, the residents of villages along the coast at Miyako, Otsucki, and Tanabe had finished their work for the day and had gone to sleep (Satake et al. 1996). It was cloudy but calm along the coast. Then at around nine in the evening, without any preceding earthquake, the long waves started coming in, 3 m high at Miyako, 2 m at Tanabe. All along the coast, the sea suddenly surged over the shore without warning into the low-lying commercial areas of the towns and into the rice paddies scattered along the coastal plains. The merchants, fishermen, and farmers had seen such things before—the small waves that came in like tsunami but without any earthquake. They were lucky, because if there had been an earthquake, many people would have died. Instead, only a few lost their possessions. The events of that night were just a nuisance thing, of no great consequence.

1.2.3 Krakatau, August 27, 1883

Van Guest was sweating profusely as he climbed through the dense jungle above the town of Anjer Lor (Verbeek 1884; Myles 1985). He stopped to gasp for breath, not because he was slightly out of shape, but because the sulfurous fumes burned his lungs. He looked down at the partially ruined town. There was no sign of life although it was nearly 10 o'clock in the morning. His head pounded as the excitement of the scene and the strain of the trek sped blood through his temples. He did not know if he felt the thumping of blood in his head or the distant rumbling. Sometimes both were synchronous, and it made him smile. This was the chance of a lifetime. No one was paid to do what he did or had remotely thought to climb to the top of one of the hills to get the best view. Besides, most of the townspeople had fled into the jungle after the waves had come through yesterday and again in the early morning. As he neared the top of the hill he looked for a spot with a clearing to the west, reached it, and turned. Beyond laid purgatory on Earth, the incredible hell of Krakatau in full eruption (Bryant 2005).

As a volcanologist for the Dutch colonial government, Van Guest was aware of the many eruptions that continually threatened Dutch interests in the East Indies. Tambora in 1815 was the worst. No one thought that anything else could be bigger. He had seen Galunggung go up the previous year with over a hundred villages wiped out. Krakatau had had an earthquake then, and when it began to erupt in May, the governor in Batavia had ordered him to investigate. He had come to this side of the Sunda Strait because he thought he would be safe 40 km from the eruption. Van Guest tied his handkerchief over his nose and mouth, slipped on the goggles to keep the sting from his eyes, and peered through his telescope across the strait, hoping to catch a glimpse of the volcano itself through the ash and smoke. Suddenly the view cleared as if a strong wind had blown the sky clean. He could see the ocean frothing and churning chaotically. Only the Rakata peak remained, and it was glowing red. The smallest peak, Perboewatan, had blown up at 5:30 that morning. Danan, which was 450 m high, had gone just over an hour later. Each had sent out a tsunami striking the coastline of Java and Sumatra in the dark. That is what had cleared out the town in the early hours.

As he glanced down at the abandoned boats in the bay, Van Guest noticed that they were all lining up towards the volcano. Then they drifted quickly out to sea and disappeared in the maelstrom. Suddenly, a bolt of yellow opened in the ocean running across the strait to the northwest and all the waters in the strait flooded in. Instantly, a cloud of steam rose to the top of the sky. As Van Guest stood upright, awestruck, a blast of air flattened him to the ground and an incredible noise deafened him. The largest explosion ever heard by humans had just swept over him. The pressure wave would circle the globe seven times. When he gained his feet, Van Guest thought he was blind. The whole sky was as black as night. He stumbled down the slope back towards the town. It took him nearly 30 min to get down to the edge of the town through the murk. Just as he approached the outskirts of Anjer Lor, he could see the telegraph master, panic-stricken, racing up the hill towards him, silhouetted against the sea, or what Van Guest thought was the sea. It was hilly and moving fast towards him. The sea slowly reared up into an incredible wave over 15 m high and smashed through the remains of buildings next to the shoreline. Within seconds, it had splintered through the rest of the houses in the town and was closing fast. The pace of the telegraph master slowed noticeably as he climbed the hill. The wave crashed through the coconut palms and jungle at the edge of the town. Tossing debris into the air, it sloshed up the hill. The telegraph master kept running or stumbling towards Van Guest, then collapsed into his arms with only meters to spare between him and the wave. It had finally stopped. Both men had just witnessed one of the biggest volcanic eruptions and tsunami ever recorded.

1.2.4 Burin Peninsula, Newfoundland, November 18, 1929

It was just after five in the afternoon on a cold autumn evening when the residents of outports along the Burin Peninsula of Newfoundland felt the tremors. Windowpanes rattled and plates fell out of sideboards. It was so unusual that one by one people poked their heads out of their pastel clapboard houses to see if anyone else had noticed—fishermen and their families at Taylors Bay, Point au Gaul, Lamaline, Lord's Cove, and thirty-five other communities nestled into the narrow coves along one of the most isolated coasts in North America (Cox 1994; Tuttle et al. 2004). Isaac Hillier—who was just 18 at the time—went outside and saw an elderly French man gesturing excitedly to a group of his neighbors. When the man stooped and put his ear to the ground, Isaac's curiosity got the better of him and he went closer to hear what was going on. The old man began to wave his arms and shout that the water would come. Those gathered around him turned to each other and asked, "How would he know that?" One by one they went back to their evening chores before the storm set in. Isaac, although curious, did likewise.

The young children were put to bed upstairs in the wood houses shortly after their evening meals. At Lord's Cove, three-year-old Margaret Rennie was one such child (Whelan 1994). The excitement of the earthquake was beyond her comprehension, and she only wanted to get into bed to keep warm. Towards 7:30 PM, seven-year-old Norah Hillier could hardly keep awake any more. Her father had come back with the news that the telegraph line to St. John's was broken. He had gone out again to see if he could do anything before it got colder. Norah heard a loud roar and glanced out the window to the sea only a few meters away. "Oh!" she cried out, "All the sheep!" All she could see were thousands of white sheep riding a mountain of water that was getting higher and higher, and louder (Fig. 1.1). Within seconds, the foaming water was in the house. Her oldest sister bolted for the door and pushed against it. They were up to their waists in water, and the house began to move.

Lou Etchegary had never seen cars before, but with beams of moonlight breaking through the cloud and shining on its crest, the tsunami looked like a car with its headlights on—driving fast up the harbor. Within seconds, a wall of water 3 m high was smashing crates off the wharf and lifting fishing dories and schooners 5 m high as if they were matchsticks. Anchors snapped, and all the boats either surged on the crest of the wave or raced belly-up to the pebble beach at the back of the cove. No one had a clue in the dark what was happening. At Taylors Bay, Robert Bonnell heard the wave coming and, grabbing his two children, raced for the hills. He tripped in the dark, fell down, and watched helplessly as the water dragged his children back into the maelstrom. Margaret Rennie slept as her house was swept into the pond out back. Rescuers raced to the house in the dark and smashed in the windows to get into the rooms. Margaret was found unconscious and still lying on her bed. Her mother, Sarah, and three brothers and sisters were found drowned downstairs in the kitchen. Norah Hillier's dad raced back to the house as soon as he saw water flooding his house. The only thing he could think of was to grab his soaking wet girls and drag them through the peat bog to the hills. He could already see a number of bonfires being lit by his neighbours who lived further inland.

Isaac Hillier stood in disbelief. How did that old man know that the water would come? Before he could think further, another wave flooded in. It picked up the remaining boats and pieces of houses, and thrashed them across the beach. Isaac could also see the barrels of flour, molasses, and salted fish, stored on the wharves for the coming winter, floating in the mess. Before it was over, two more waves smashed into the debris stacking it 2 m high in places. Not only was there no food or shelter, their lifeline to St. John's—the boats—was also gone. Stunned, Isaac froze in shock as shivers swept up and down his spine. Stumbling towards the bonfires, he became acutely aware of the shouts of rescuers and the crying, and then of the snow and the bitter cold.

1.2.5 Papua New Guinea, July 17, 1998

It was a perfect tropical evening along the Aitape coast of Papua New Guinea. Here on the narrow sand barrier that ran for 3 km in front of Sissano lagoon, life was paradise—sago trees, coconut groves, white beaches, and the ever-present emerald waters of the Bismarck Sea. It was the dry season, and as the sun set, people in the villages were busying themselves preparing their evening meals (Davies 1998). The men had a good day fishing in the ocean; the women, good returns from their nets set in Sissano lagoon. Children and young people, many who had come home from Port Moresby for the school holidays, played along the beach. Ita glanced at her watch. It was ten to seven—still plenty of time before the sing-sing. She glanced at her two babies who were lying beside her and smiled. These holiday periods when all the children were home were the happiest of times.

She bent over to check her cooking, and that is when she first noticed the earthquake. The water in the pot began to shimmer. Then the ground began to roll. It came in from the north, from the sea. Everyone in the village froze in their tracks. The region often experienced earthquakes but they were always small. How big was this one going to be? Ten seconds, thirty seconds, a minute, two. Then the shaking stopped. Ita looked around. She lived at the back of the lagoon, only 75 m from the ocean. She saw some of the older people gathering around a cluster of buildings closer to the sea. They were talking frantically. She would never forget the look on their faces; it was one of sheer panic. Some of the younger men joined the group. One old man began pointing at the ocean. He was yelling, and Ita could just catch his words. He talked about "leaving the village," "the wave was coming," and "everyone must run." She thought how foolish. The village was on a barrier between the ocean and the lagoon. There was nowhere to run. One of the young men in the group put his arm around the old man's shoulders, smiled, and then began to laugh—not at him, not with him, but in that reassuring way that went with the nonchalant attitude of a people comfortable with a relaxed, carefree lifestyle.

Ita heard a rumbling like thunder, and as she glanced through the trees to the ocean, she noticed that the tide was going out, further than she could remember (Davies et al. 2003). By now, some of the children had run up from the beach. One of them said that they had seen the ocean splash tens of meters into the air on the horizon just after the ground shock. They were now asking their parents to come down to the beach. It was full of cracks. Within minutes, everyone was talking about the earthquake. It had not been a big one. The houses built on stilts were still standing. Some people had wandered down to the beach; but the older people were more distraught than ever. Then someone yelled, "Look," and pointed to the ocean. Ita strained to view the horizon in the twilight. A thousand lights from phosphorescence began to sparkle in the water, which had now retreated several hundred meters from shore. Then she noticed that the horizon was moving; it was getting higher and higher. Abruptly a second earthquake jolted her. This time it rolled in from the southeast. As she turned and looked east along the coast, she saw a large wave breaking—not really breaking, but frothing and sparkling. Everyone instantaneously began yelling "Run," but the roar of the wave cut off the shouts. Like a jet plane landing, it engulfed the night. Ita turned, grabbed her two babies beside her, raced the few steps to the canoe, and jumped in. Before the wave hit with a thud, a blast of air knocked her flat to the bottom. The canoe was tossed several meters into the air and then flung like a surfboard into the lagoon and across to the swamp on the other side. At Sissano, Warapu, Malol, Arop, and half dozen villages all along the Aitape coast, the scene was the same. A 10–15 m high tsunami swamped the coast. At some places the wave raced along the shore; at others it just reared from the ocean and ran straight inland through buildings faster than people could run. Everywhere, people were knocked into trees behind the beach or flushed into the lagoon.

It was now night. One could only hear the noise of the wave as it crossed Sissano lagoon and the screams of people as they gasped for air or tried to swim in the turbulent water. A putrid odor filled the air. In all, three waves swept one on top of the other across the coast. From the beginning of the first earthquake to the last wave, it was all over within half an hour. The villages were gone; debris was everywhere. As a surreal mist rose from the lagoon and crept into the silent swamps, the feeble cries of survivors, grunts of foraging pigs, and isolated barks from hungry dogs looking for an evening meal were the only sounds of songs to be heard along the Aitape coast that night.

In all 2,202 people died, 1,000 were injured, and 10,000 were made homeless (Davies et al. 2003). Many of the dead died from their injuries as they clung to trees in the impenetrable mangrove forest on the other side of the lagoon, waiting days for rescue, on a remote coastline thousands of kilometers from nowhere. Ita? She survived. Her canoe was caught in the mangrove. After two days she was rescued with her two babies and reunited with an overjoyed husband.

1.3 Scientific Fact or Legends?

All of these stories have elements of truth, yet only two are reliable—those of Krakatau and the Burin Peninsula. The description of the tsunami generated by the eruption of

Krakatau in 1883 is based upon historical scientific records—mainly the diary of Van Guest, the colonial volcanologist. The Burin Peninsula story is linked to the Grand Banks earthquake and tsunami of 1929. This event is known more for the breaking of telegraph cables on the seabed between New York and Europe than for the deadly tsunami that struck the southeast coast of Newfoundland. Both stories also have elements of fabrication. While the individual experiences of Van Guest and the telegraph master are true, the descriptions of their feelings and eventual meeting at the end have been embellished to produce a more colorful story. The Krakatau eruption and tsunami are probably one of the best-documented tsunami events in the scientific literature. At least four articles about it have been written in *Nature* and two in *Science.* However, there is still scientific debate whether or not the largest tsunami that reached Anjer Lor and other locations in the Sunda Strait was the result of the eruptions in the early morning or the one at 9:58 AM. If witnesses had not been wiped out by the earlier tsunami, they more than likely did not see the last one because they had fled inland to safety. Thick ash also obscured the last event, turning day into night. Field surveys afterwards could not discern the run-up of individual waves, but only the highest run-up elevation of the biggest wave.

Readers may also be willing to accept the story from Papua New Guinea because it, like the Newfoundland one, is based upon interviews with eyewitnesses. Scientists have cobbled the story together from newspaper reports and interviews. Unfortunately, both stories are unreliable because interviewers, unless they apply structured qualitative methodology, can be prone to exaggeration. In essence, both the Papuan New Guinea and Newfoundland stories represent the early phases of an oral tradition or folklore about a tsunami event that is being passed on by word of mouth, or in the 20th century supported by written documentation. When there are no witnesses to a notable event left alive and no written records, then all these stories become legends. Legends have an element of truth, but often the exact circumstances of the story cannot be verified. The tsunami story by the Kwenaitchechat native people is a legend. However, when the most likely source of a documented tsunami in Japan on January 26, 1700 was evaluated—using computer modeling—as being a giant earthquake off the coast of Washington State, the legend suddenly took on scientific acceptability and received front-page coverage in *Nature*.

The Aboriginal story incorporates numerous published legends in the southeast part of Australia. One story actually uses the colloquial word *tidal wave* for tsunami. Scientific investigations along the southeast coast of Australia now indicate that the Aboriginal stories are not myths, but legends of one or more actual events. While no Aborigine at the time thought of writing up a description of any of these tsunami events and publishing it as a scientific paper in *Nature* or *Science,* the legends are just as believable as any newspaper article or scientific paper. They are just briefer and less specific. The sky may have fallen in the form of an asteroid or meteorite shower with large enough objects to generate tsunami tens of meters high. There is geomorphic evidence along the southeast coast of New South Wales, the northeast coast of Queensland, and the northwest coast of Western Australia for mega-tsunami. Certainly the coastal features are so different in size from what historical tsunami have produced anywhere in the world in the past 200 years that a comet or asteroid impact with the ocean must be invoked. The subsequent floods also have veracity. Asteroid impacts with the ocean put enormous quantities of water into the atmosphere as either splash or vapourised water from the heat of the impact. That heated vapor condenses and falls as rain because it is not in equilibrium with the pre-existing temperature of the atmosphere. Research is beginning to indicate that rivers and waterfalls across Australia have flooded beyond maximum probable rainfalls—the theoretical highest rainfall that can occur under existing rain-forming processes. Asteroid impacts with the ocean may explain not only some of the evidence for mega-tsunami, but also this mega-flooding.

The single thread running through all five stories is tsunami. The stories have been deliberately selected to represent the different causes of tsunami. The Aboriginal legend refers to the impact of an asteroid and the associated airburst. The historically accurate Krakatau story recounts a volcano-induced tsunami, while the Kwenaitchechat legend undoubtedly refers to a tsunami generated by an earthquake of magnitude 9.0 along the Cascadia subduction zone of the western United States in January 1700. The Newfoundland tale refers to the Grand Banks earthquake and submarine landslide of 1929—the only well-documented tsunami to affect the east coast of North America. Finally, and more worrisome, the origin of the Papua New Guinea event is still being debated. The event is worrisome because the wave was too big for the size of the earthquake involved. The combination of downfaulting close to shore and slumping of offshore sediments on a steep, offshore slope may have caused the exceptionally large tsunami. Many countries have coastlines like this. The event is also disconcerting because our present scientific perception and warning system—especially in the Pacific Ocean—is geared to earthquake-induced waves from distant shores. Certainly very few countries, except Chile and Japan, have developed a warning system for nearshore tsunami. The stories deliberately cover this range of sources to highlight the fact that, while earthquakes are commonly thought of as the cause of tsunami, tsunami can have many sources. Our present knowledge is biased, even after the shock of the Indian Ocean Tsunami of 2004. Tsunami are very much an underrated, widespread hazard. Any coast is at risk.

1.4 Causes of Tsunami

Most tsunami originate from submarine seismic disturbances. The displacement of the Earth's crust by several meters during underwater earthquakes may cover tens of thousands of square kilometers and impart tremendous potential energy to the overlying water. Tsunami are rare events, in that most submarine earthquakes do not generate one. Between 1861 and 1948, as few as 124 tsunami were recorded from 15,000 earthquakes (Iida 1963). Along the west coast of South America, 1,098 offshore earthquakes have generated only 20 tsunami. This low frequency of occurrence may simply reflect the fact that most tsunami are small in amplitude—and go unnoticed—or the fact that most earthquake-induced tsunami require a shallow focus seismic event with a moment magnitude, M_w, greater than 6.3 (Roger and Gunnell 2011). Earthquakes as a cause of tsunami will be discussed in fuller detail in Chap. 5.

Submarine earthquakes have the potential to generate landslides along the steep continental slope that flanks most coastlines (Bryant 2005). In addition, steep slopes exist on the sides of ocean trenches and around the thousands of ocean volcanoes, seamounts, atolls, and guyots on the seabed. Because such events are difficult to detect, submarine landslides are considered a minor cause of tsunami. The July 17, 1998 Papua New Guinea event renewed interest in this potential mechanism (Tappin et al. 1999). A large submarine landslide or even the coalescence of many smaller slides has the potential to displace a large volume of water. Geologically submarine slides involving up to 20,000 km^3 of material have been mapped (Moore 1978; Masson et al. 2006). Tsunami arising from these events would be much larger than earthquake-induced waves. Only in the last 50 years has coastal evidence for these mega-tsunami been uncovered. Submarine landslides as a cause of tsunami and mega-tsunami will be discussed in Chap. 7.

Tsunami can also have a volcanic origin. Of 92 documentable cases of tsunami generated by volcanoes, 16.5 % resulted from tectonic earthquakes associated with the eruption, 20 % from pyroclastic (ash) flows or surges hitting the ocean, 14 % from submarine eruptions, and 7 % from the collapse of the volcano (Wiegel 1964). A volcanic eruption rarely produces a large tsunami, mainly because the volcano must lie in the ocean. For example, the largest explosive eruption of the past millennium was Tambora in 1815. It only produced a local tsunami 2–4 m high because the volcano lay 15 km inland (Bryant 2005). In contrast, the August 27, 1883 eruption of Krakatau, situated in the Sunda Strait of Indonesia, produced a tsunami with nearby run-up heights exceeding 40 m above sea level (Verbeek 1884; Blong 1984; Myles 1985). The wave was detected at the Cape of Good Hope in South Africa 6,000 km away. The atmospheric pressure pulse generated water oscillations that were measured in the English Channel 37 h later; on the other side of the Pacific Ocean at Panama and in San Francisco Bay; and in Lake Taupo in the center of the North Island of New Zealand (Choi et al. 2003). Probably the most devastating event was the Santorini Island eruption around 1470 BC, which generated a tsunami that must have destroyed all coastal towns in the eastern Mediterranean (Menzies 2012). The Santorini crater is five times larger in volume than that of Krakatau, and twice as deep. On adjacent islands, there is evidence of pumice stranded at elevations up to 50 m above sea level. The initial tsunami waves may have been 90 m in height as they spread out from Santorini (Kastens and Cita 1981). Volcanoes as a cause of tsunami will be discussed in Chap. 8.

There has been only one suspected historical occurrence of tsunami produced by an asteroid/comet impact with the ocean. This occurred on September 28, 1014 (Haslett and Bryant 2008). However, this does not mean that they are an inconsequential threat. Stony asteroids as small as 300 m in diameter can generate tsunami over 2 m in height that can devastate coastlines within a 1,000 km radius of the impact site (Hills and Mader 1997). The probability of such an event occurring in the next 50 years is just under 1 %. One of the largest impact-induced tsunami occurred at Chicxulub, Mexico, 65 million years ago at the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary (Alvarez 1997). While the impact was responsible for the extinction of the dinosaurs, the resulting tsunami swept hundreds of kilometers inland around the shore of the early Gulf of Mexico. Impact events are ongoing. Astronomers have compiled evidence that a large comet encroached upon the inner solar system and broke up within the last 14000 years (Asher et al. 1994). The Earth has repetitively intersected debris and fragments from this comet. However, these encounters have been clustered in time. Earlier civilizations in the Middle East were possibly destroyed by one such impact around 2350 BC. The last rendezvous occurred as recently as AD 1500; however, it occurred in the Southern Hemisphere where historical records did not exist at the time. Only in the last decade has evidence become available to show that the Australian coastline preserves the signature of mega-tsunami from this latest impact event. The geomorphic signatures of tsunami, including mega-tsunami, will be presented in Chaps. 3 and 4, while asteroids as a cause of mega-tsunami will be discussed in Chap. 9.

Finally, meteorological events can generate tsunami (Monserrat et al. 2006). These tsunami are common at temperate latitudes where variations in atmospheric pressure over time are greatest. Such phenomena tend to occur in lakes and embayments where resonance of wave motion is possible. Resonance and the features of meteorological tsunami will be described at the end of this chapter.

1.5 Distribution and Fatalities

Accounts of tsunami extend back almost 4000 years in China and the Mediterranean—where the first tsunami was described in 2000 BC in Syria—and about 1300 years in Japan (Bryant 2005; Gusiakov 2008). However, many important tsunamigenic regions, such as the west Pacific Ocean, have much shorter documentation concomitant with European colonization (Lockridge 1985; Lander and Lockridge 1989). For example the Chile–Peru coastline, which is an important source of Pacific-wide tsunami, has records going back only 400 years to 1562, while those from Alaska have only been documented since 1788. Tsunami records in Hawaii, which is a sentinel for events in the Pacific Ocean, exist only from 1813 onwards. Few records exist along the west coast of Canada and the contiguous United States. The southwest Pacific Ocean records are sporadic and almost anecdotal in reliability. Only in the last 30 years have records been compiled from Australia and New Zealand, with historical documentation extending back no further than 150 years (de Lange and Healy 1986; Australian Bureau of Meteorology 2013). Tsunami have killed over 700,000 people throughout history, ranking them fifth after earthquakes, floods, tropical cyclones and volcanic eruptions (Gusiakov 2008). Up to 8 % of all reported historical tsunami have no identified source. Even in the 20th century, 51 events have no known source. Most of the latter were minor events; however, six of these events had run-ups of more than 5 m.

The regional distribution of major tsunami is tabulated in Table 1.1 (Bryant 2005). Only the South Atlantic appears to be immune from tsunami. The North Atlantic coastline also is virtually devoid of tsunami. However, the Lisbon earthquake of November 1, 1755, which is possibly the largest earthquake known, generated a 15 m high tsunami that destroyed the port at Lisbon (Reid 1914). It also sent a wall of water across the Atlantic Ocean that raised tide levels a meter above normal in Barbados and Antigua in the West Indies. Tsunami also ran up and down the west coast of Europe, and along the Atlantic coast of Morocco. The Spanish port of Cádiz and Madeira in the Azores were also hit, while a 2–3 m high wave sunk ships along the English Channel. The continental slope off Newfoundland, Canada, is seismically active and has produced tsunami that have swept onto that coastline. The Burin Peninsula Tsunami described earlier reached Boston, where it registered a height of 0.4 m (Whelan 1994). By far the most susceptible ocean to tsunami is the Pacific Ocean region, accounting for 52.9 % of all events.

Løvholt et al. (2012) used historical records and environmental setting to assess the vulnerability of the world's coastline to earthquake-induced tsunami with a 10 % exceedence probability in 50 years. By including population exposure, they were able to quantify the global tsunami mortality risk. They found that tsunami affect 76 countries and territories with 19 million people living in vulnerable areas as of 2007. Indonesia and Japan account for more than 50 % of this population. However, in percentage terms, the islands of Macao (China), New Caledonia, and Fiji have the greatest risk with 15, 9, and 7 % of their populations respectively being threatened. In economic terms, $186 billion dollars of revenue lies in tsunami-prone regions. This does not include infrastructure. Japan has by far the highest economical exposure accounting for 76.3 % of threatened revenue. This is followed by the United States and Canada with $12.7 billion and $3.9 billion respectively. The greatest threat to national economies occurs in New Caledonia, Macao (China) and the Maldives where 10.7, 9.0 and 4.3 % of GDP is at risk. The following sections describe some of the more noted oceans or seas that have experienced tsunami.

Table 1.1 Percentage distribution of tsunami in the world's oceans and seas

Location	Percentage
Atlantic East Coast	1.6
Mediterranean	10.1
Bay of Bengal	0.8
East Indies	20.3
Pacific Ocean	25.4
Japan-Russia	18.6
Pacific East Coast	8.9
Caribbean	13.8
Atlantic West Coast	0.4

Source From Bryant (2005)

1.5.1 Mediterranean Sea

The Mediterranean Sea has one of the longest records of tsunami (Kuran and Yalçiner 1993; Tinti and Maramai 1999). Over 300 events have been recorded since 1300 BC. Large tsunami originate in the eastern Mediterranean, the Straits of Messina of southern Italy, or southwest of Portugal. About 7 % of known earthquakes in this region have produced damaging or disastrous tsunami. Major earthquakes occurred in the Eastern Mediterranean in 365, 1222, 1303, 1481, 1494, 1822 and 1948. Around Greece, 30 % of all earthquakes produce a measurable seismic wave, and 70 major tsunami have been recorded. Around Italy, there have been 67 reliably reported tsunami over the past 2000 years. The majority of these have occurred in the last 500 years, as records have become more complete. Of these, 46 were caused by earthquakes and 12 by volcanoes. By far the most destructive tsunami followed an earthquake on December 28, 1908 in the Messina Strait region. A small proportion of the 60,000 people killed during this event were drowned by the tsunami, which flooded numerous coastal villages and reached a maximum run-up exceeding 10 m in elevation. There have been two mega-turbidite deposits with volumes of 300–600 km^3 mapped on the Balearic Abyssal Plain south of France and on the Herodotus Abyssal Plain north of Libya (Rothwell et al. 2000). They are the products of tsunami, with the latter being related to the eruption of Santorini around 1470 BC, and the former to slope failure at times of lower, global sea level.

1.5.2 Caribbean Sea

The Caribbean—including the south coast of the United States—is particularly prone to tsunami as the Caribbean Plate slides eastward relative to the North American Plate at a rate of 2 cm yr^{-1}, producing strong seismic activity in the Puerto Rico Trench. The area adjacent to Venezuela has a reputable geological record of multiple tsunami events (Scheffer 2004). The Caribbean is subject to tsunami from earthquakes, volcanoes, and submarine landslides (Harbitz et al. 2012). Unfortunately, the threat has been overshadowed by the more frequent occurrence of tropical cyclones or hurricanes. About 160 landslides have been mapped with the largest predicted tsunami run-up height being 16 m along the northern coast of Puerto Rico. A limestone block 150 million m^3 in size slid off of Curaçao Island in the Netherlands Antilles 5000–10000 years ago. The historical record of tsunami is one of the longest in North America with the first reported tsunami occurring in Venezuela in 1498 (National Geophysical Data Center and World Data Center A for Solid Earth Geophysics 1989; Lander and Lockridge 1989; Harbitz et al. 2012). Since then there have been 84 other events. A total of 74 % of the tsunami were caused by earthquakes, 14 % by volcanoes, and 7 % by landslides. Only 5 % have an unknown origin (Harbitz et al. 2012). The devastating Port Royal, Jamaica Tsunami in June 1692 drowned 3,000 people. An earthquake that sent much of the city sliding into the sea triggered the tsunami. Ships standing in the harbor were flung inland over two-story buildings. An earthquake in the Anegada trough between St. Croix and St. Thomas produced another significant tsunami on November 18, 1867. The resulting tsunami reached 7–9 m at St. Croix, 4–6 m high at St. Thomas, 3 m at Antigua, and 1–6 m in Puerto Rico. Run-ups of 1.2–1.5 m were common elsewhere throughout the southern Caribbean. Other notable events have occurred in 1842, 1907, 1918, and 1946. Of these, two bear mention: the tsunami of October 25, 1918 and August 4, 1946. The former event had a maximum run-up height of 7 m at Frederiksted, St. Croix, and was recorded at Galveston, Texas. The latter event followed a magnitude 8.1 earthquake off the northeast coast of the Dominican Republic. Locally, the tsunami penetrated several kilometers inland and drowned about 1,800 people. It also was observed at Daytona Beach, Florida. Harbitz et al. (2012) simulated the threat of tsunami in the Caribbean. They found that about 252,000 and 130,000 people were vulnerable to earthquake- and landslide-induced tsunami respectively with Puerto Rico and Venezuela most at risk. Countries that had the highest exposure relative to population were Antigua (7.5 %) and Guadeloupe (6.5 %). Most of these countries have less than 1 h warning before the arrival of a tsunami.

1.5.3 Pacific Ocean Region (including Indonesia)

Figure 1.2a plots the distribution of 1,274 observations of tsunami reported along the coastlines of the Pacific Ocean and Indonesian regions between 47 BC and the end of the 20th century (Lockridge 1985; Lockridge 1988b; Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999a). The size of the circles is proportional to the number of observations per degree square of latitude and longitude. The data are biased in that the same event can be recorded at more than one location. The map excludes 217 observations that cannot be precisely located. The distribution of all the observations plotted in Fig. 1.2a is tabulated by region in Table 1.2 (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999a). Because some countries have better observation networks than others, smaller events are overemphasized. This is true of the west coast of North America, which is overrepresented in the modern record, despite having records of tsunami for only the last 230 years. Some countries are underrepresented in Fig. 1.2a. For example, over a hundred observations from Australia are not included. The coastline of Japan has the longest historical record of tsunami, with 25.2 % of all events originating here. One other region also stands out as having a high preponderance of tsunami—the coast of South America with 21.3 % of events. A few small areas are highly prone to tsunami, sometimes from distant sources. These areas include northern California, Hawaii, southwest Chile, and the Chile–Peru border region. Destructive tsunami have inundated the Chilean coast at roughly 30-year intervals in recorded history.

Large tsunami originating from earthquakes with magnitudes greater than 8.2 affect the entire Pacific Ocean once every 25 years. Figure 1.2b plots the source region of ocean-wide events. Major events for the Pacific Ocean are listed in Table 1.3 (Lockridge 1988b; Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999a; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). Significant events have increased in

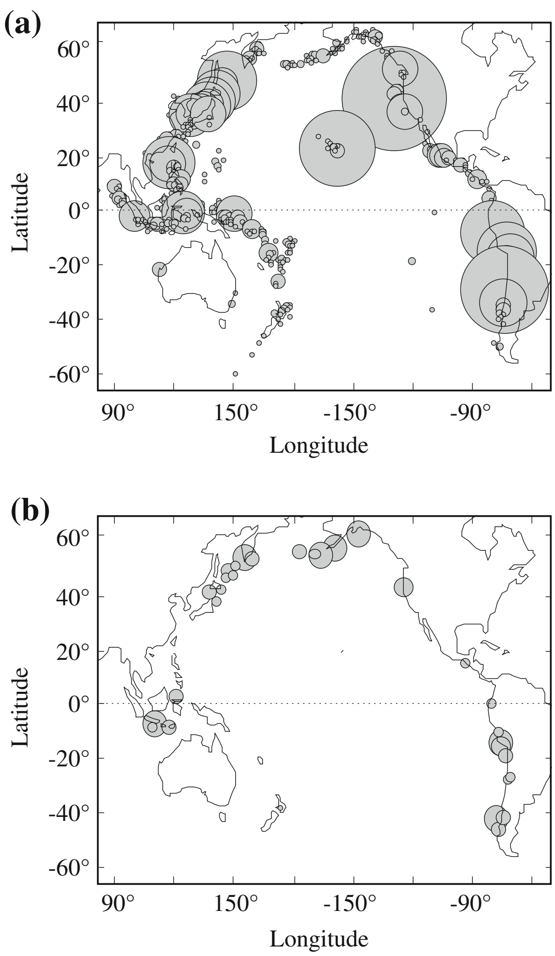


Fig. 1.2 Location of tsunami in the Pacific Ocean region: **a** Location of 1,274 tsunami between 47 BC and the end of the 20th century. Size of *circle* increases proportional to number of events per degree square of latitude and longitude. **b** Source of significant distant (*teleseismic*) tsunami. Size of *circle* increases proportional to area affected and magnitude of the event. Based upon Lockridge (1985, 1988), Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999a)

frequency in the 20th century. Earthquakes in southern Chile, Alaska, and the Kamchatka Peninsula have the greatest chance of generating ocean-wide tsunami in the Pacific. The west coast of the United States provides a fourth source; however, the last Pacific-wide event originating here occurred 300 years ago, before European settlement, on January 26, 1700 (Satake et al. 1996). The May 22, 1960 Chilean event is the most significant historical tsunami (Myles 1985; Pararas-Carayannis 1998). This event will be described in detail in Chap. 6. It is a benchmark for tsunami in the 20th century. A series of tsunami waves spread across the Pacific over a period of 24 h, taking over 2,500 lives. The tsunami significantly affected such diverse places as Hawaii, Pitcairn Island, New Guinea, New Zealand, Japan, Okinawa, and the Philippines.

Table 1.2 Origin of tsunami by region around the Pacific Ocean

Region	Number of tsunami generated	Percentage
Japan	329	25.2
South America	278	21.3
New Guinea-Solomon Islands	129	9.9
Philippines	128	9.8
Kamchatka-Kuril Islands	95	7.3
New Zealand-Tonga	82	6.3
North America	78	6.0
Alaska-Aleutian Islands	77	5.9
Central America	72	5.5
Hawaii	39	3.0
Total	1,307	100.0

Source Based on Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999a, b)

The most tsunamigenic coastline in the world is that of the Kamchatka Peninsula, Russia (Gusiakov and Osipova 1993). Between 1737 and 1990, the region experienced almost 8,000 earthquakes of which 96 generated localized tsunami. Volcanic eruptions here have also produced six tsunami, while four events have an unknown source. During the same period, the region was subject to 15 tsunami from distant sources. A significant tsunami floods alluvium plains along the peninsula every 12.3 years (Pinegina et al. 1996). The most destructive tsunami, penetrating up to 10 km inland, occurred in 1737, 1841, 1923, 1937, 1952, and 1969. The largest event followed the Great Kamchatka Earthquake of October 17, 1737. Tsunami run-up heights reached 60 m above sea level in the North Kurile Islands. The second largest event occurred on November 4, 1952, with run-up heights of 20 m in the same area. This latter tsunami was also a Pacific-wide event.

Local tsunami are also common on the islands of the South Pacific (Howorth 1999); however, no significantly sized, earthquake-induced tsunami has propagated outside this region. Because many islands drop off into deep water locally generated tsunami can travel at their maximum velocity, up to 1,000 km hr^{-1}, and reach the adjacent shore in 5–10 min. The Papua New Guinea–Solomon Islands region has experienced 78 tsunami in the period between 1768 and 1983. Volcanism has caused one-eighth of all tsunami. The largest event occurred on March 13, 1888, when the Ritter Island volcano off the north coast of Papua New Guinea collapsed, generating a 15 m high tsunami. The most recent event of significance occurred in the early evening of July 17, 1998 along the Sissano–Aitape coast of northern Papua New Guinea (Davies et al. 2003). One of the stories earlier referred to this event. It will be described in

Table 1.3 Occurrence of significant tsunami in the Pacific Region documented since 47 BC

Date	Source	H_{rmax} (m)	Other area affected
26 January 1700	Washington State	Unknown	Japan
8 July 1730	Concepción, Chile	Unknown	Japan
7 November 1837	Southern Chile	8.0	Hawaii
9 July 1854	North Kuril Islands	Unknown	Japan
13 August 1868	Arica, Chile	21.0	Pacific-wide
20 January 1878	Aleutian Islands	3.0	Hawaii
10 May 1877	Arica, Chile	24.0	Pacific-wide
31 January 1906	Ecuador	5.0	East Pacific
17 August 1906	Chile	3.6	Pacific-wide
15 August 1918	Celeves Sea	12.0	Philippines
7 September 1918	South Kuril Islands	12.0	Northwest Pacific
11 November 1922	Atacama, Chile	12.0	Pacific-wide
3 February 1923	Kamchatka Peninsula	8.0	Hawaii
2 March 1933	Sanriku, Japan	29.3	Hawaii
1 August 1940	West Hokkaido, Japan	3.5	Northwest Pacific
1 April 1946	Unimak Is. Alaska	35.0	Pacific-wide
4 November 1952	Kamchatka Peninsula	20.0	Northwest Pacific
9 March 1957	Aleutian Islands	16.2	Northern Pacific
6 November 1958	Southj Kuril Islands	5.0	Japan
22 May 1960	South Chile	25.0	Pacific-wide
20 November 1960	Peru	9.0	Japan
28 March 1964	Alaska	67.1	Northern Pacific
4 February 1965	Aleutian	10.7	Northern Pacific
11 August 1968	SE Hokkaido, Japan	5.0	former U.S.S.R.
10 June 1975	Kuril Islands	5.5	Hokkaido Japan
3 March 1985	Central Chile	3.5	Pacific-wide
17 July 1998	Papua New Guinea	15.0	Local
1 April 2007	Solomon Islands	12.1	Local
29 September 2009	Samoa	22.4	Local
27 February 2010	South Chile	29.0	Southern Pacific
11 March 2011	Sanriku, Japan	38.9	Local

Note One event may be recorded at more than one location
Source Based on Lockridge (1988), Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999a, b), National Geophysical Data Center (2013)

more detail in Chap. 5. Eleven tsunami have struck Fiji in the 100-year period 1877–1977, averaging one tsunami every 10 years. Tsunami are a more frequent hazard here than tropical cyclones. Many small islands in the South Pacific are vulnerable to tsunami because populations are concentrated around coastlines (Løvholt et al. 2012).

The known number of deaths attributable to tsunami in the Pacific and Indonesian regions is tabulated in Table 1.4 (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999a; United Nations 2006; National Geophysical Data Center 2013) for each of the main causes of tsunami, while the events with the largest, known death tolls—including the Indian Ocean event of 2004 and the Tōhoku Tsunami of 2011—are presented in Table 1.5 (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999a; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). Over the past 2000 years there have been 716,548 known deaths attributed to tsunami in these two oceans. Earthquake-generated tsunami account for the greatest death toll, 90.0 %, with volcanic eruptions accounting for 7.2 %—mainly during two events, the Krakatau eruption of August 26–27, 1883 (36,417 deaths) and the Unzen, Japan, eruption of May 21, 1792 (14,524 deaths). Before the Indian Ocean Tsunami of 2004, the number of fatalities was decreasing over time and was concentrated in southeastern Asia, including Japan. The biggest tsunami of the 20th century occurred in Moro

Table 1.4 Causes of tsunami in the Pacific and eastern Indian Ocean Regions over the last 2000 years

Cause	Number of events	Percentage of events	Number of deaths	Percentage of deaths
Landslides	66	4.4	14,661	2.0
Earthquakes	1,242	83.0	644,880	90.0
Volcanic	67	4.5	51,643	7.2
Unknown	122	8.1	5,364	0.7
Total	1,497	100.0	716,548	100.0

Source Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999a, b), United Nations (2006), National Geophysical Data Center (2013)

Table 1.5 Largest known death tolls from tsunami in the Pacific and Indian Oceans over the last 2000 years

Date	Fatalities	Location
26 December 2004	228,432	Indonesia-Indian Ocean
22 May 1782	50,000	Taiwan
27 August 1883	36,417	Krakatau, Indonesia
28 October 1707	30,000	Nankaido, Japan
15 June 1896	27,122	Sanriku,Japan
20 September 1498	26,000	Nankaido, Japan
13 August 1868	25,674	Arica, Chile
11 March 2013	23,295	Sendai, Japan*
27 May 1293	23,024	Sagami Bay, Japan
4 February 1976	22,778	Guatemala
29 October 1746	18,000	Lima, Peru
21 January 1917	15,000	Bali, Indonesia
21 May 1792	14,524	Unzen, Ariake Sea, Japan
24 April 1771	13,486	Ryukyu Archipelago
22 November 1815	10,253	Bali, Indonesia
May 1765	10,000	Guanzhou, South China Sea
11 August 1976	8,000	Moro Gulf, Philippines

Source Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999a, b) and National Geophysical Data Center (2013)
**Note* Other internet sources quote a lower figure of 18539

Gulf, Philippines, on August 16, 1976, where 8,000 people died. The largest, total death toll is concentrated in Indonesia where 237,156 deaths have occurred, the two largest events being the Indian Ocean Tsunami of 2004 (167,736 deaths) and the eruption of Krakatau (36,000 fatalities). This location is followed closely by the Japanese Islands where 234,595 fatalities have occurred. Two events affected the Nankaido region of Japan on October 28, 1707 and September 20, 1498, killing 30,000 and 26,000 people respectively. The Sanriku coast of Japan has the misfortune of being the heaviest populated tsunami-prone coast in the world. About once per century, killer tsunami have swept this coastline, with two events striking within a forty-year time span between 1896 and 1933. On June 15, 1896, a small earthquake on the ocean floor, 120 km southeast of the city of Kamaishi, sent a 30 m wall of water crashing into the coastline, killing 27,122 people. The same tsunami event was measured 10.5 h later in San Francisco on the other side of the Pacific Ocean. On March 3, 1933, disaster struck again when a similarly positioned earthquake sent ashore a wave that killed 3,000 inhabitants. Then, this same coast was hit by one of the biggest tsunami in recorded history, the Tōhoku event, on March 11, 2011. Estimates of the dead range from 18,539 to 23,295. The maximum run-up was 38.9 m. Deadly tsunami also characterize the South China Sea. Here, recorded tsunami have killed 77,105 people, mainly in two events in 1762 and 1782.

1.5.4 New Zealand and Australia

Australia and New Zealand are not well represented in any global tsunami database. This is surprising for New Zealand, because it is subject to considerable local tectonic activity and lies exposed to Pacific-wide events. At least thirty-two tsunami have been recorded in this latter country since 1840 (de Lange and Healy 1986). The largest event occurred on January 23, 1855 following the Wellington earthquake. The run-up was 9–10 m high within Cook Strait and 3 m high at New Plymouth, 300 km away along the open west coast. However, the highest recorded tsunami occurred following the Napier earthquake of February 2, 1931. The earthquake triggered a rotational slump in the Waikare estuary that swept water 15.2 m above sea level. The most extensive tsunami followed the August 13, 1868 Arica earthquake in northern Chile. Run-up heights of 1.2–1.8 m were typical along the complete east coast of the islands. At several locations, water levels dropped 4.5 m before rising an equivalent amount. Subsequent earthquakes in Chile in 1877 and 1960 also produced widespread effects. New Zealand has the distinction of recording two tsunami generated by submarine mud volcanism associated with diapiric intrusions. These occurred near Poverty Bay on the east coast of the North Island. The largest wave had a run-up of 10 m elevation.

In Australia, 48 confirmed tsunami events have been recorded, beginning with the 1868 Arica, Chilean event (Bryant and Nott 2001; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). The closest sources for earthquake-generated tsunami lie along the Tonga–New Hebrides trench, the Alpine Fault on the west coast of the South Island of New Zealand, and the Sunda Arc south of the Indonesian islands. The Alpine Fault is an unproven source because it last fractured around 1455, before European settlement. It has the potential to produce an earthquake with a surface wave magnitude, M_s, of at least 8.0, with any resulting tsunami reaching Sydney within 2 h. Additionally, the east coast lies exposed to tsunami generated by earthquakes on seamounts in the Tasman Sea. Active volcanoes lie in the Tonga–Kermadec Trench region north of New Zealand. In 1452, the eruption of Kuwae volcano in Vanuatu created a crater 18 km long, 6.5 km wide, and 0.8 km deep (Monzier et al. 1994). The eruption, which was 3–4 times bigger than Krakatau, produced a tsunami wave 30 m high. Finally, local slides off the Australian continental shelf also cannot be ignored, especially along the coast centered on Sydney (Jenkins and Keene 1992; Clarke et al. 2012).

The largest tsunami to be recorded on the Sydney tide gauge was 1.07 m following the Arica, Chile, earthquake of May 10, 1877. However, the Chilean Tsunami of May 22, 1960 produced a run-up of 4.5 m above sea level. In Sydney and Newcastle harbors, this tsunami tore boats from their moorings and took several days to dissipate. The northwest coast is more vulnerable to tsunami because of the prevalence of large earthquakes along the Sunda Arc, south of Indonesia. The largest run-up measured in Australia is 6 m, recorded at Cape Leveque, Western Australia, on August 19, 1977 following an Indonesian earthquake. Waves of 1.5 and 2.5 m height were measured on tide gauges at Port Hedland and Dampier respectively. Another tsunami on June 3, 1994 produced a run-up of 4 m at the same location. The Krakatau eruption of 1883 generated a tsunami run-up in Geraldton, 1,500 km away that obtained a height of 2.5 m. This tsunami moved boulders 2 m in diameter 100 m inland and more than 4 m above sea level opposite gaps in the Ningaloo Reef protecting the Northwest Cape (Nott 2004). South of the Northwest Cape, tsunami heights decrease rapidly because the coastline bends away to the east.

1.5.5 Bays, Fjords, Inland Seas, and Lakes

Tsunami are not restricted to the open ocean. They can occur in bays, fjords, inland seas, and lakes. The greatest tsunami run-up yet identified occurred at Lituya Bay, Alaska, on July 9, 1958 (Miller 1960). The steep slope on one side of the bay failed following an earthquake, sending 0.3 km^3 of material cascading into a narrow arm of the bay. A wall of water swept 524 m above sea level on the opposite shore, and a 30–50 m high tsunami propagated down the bay, killing two people. Steep-sided fjords in both Alaska and Norway are also subject to similar slides. In Norway, seven tsunamigenic events have killed 210 people (Miller 1960). The heights of these tsunami ranged between 5 and 15 m, with run-ups surging up to 70 m above sea level.

Inland seas are also prone to tsunami. There have been 20 observations of tsunami in the Black Sea in historical records (Ranguelov and Gospodinov 1995). In Bulgaria, maximum probable run-up heights of 10 m are possible. One of the earliest occurred in the 1st century BC at Karvarna. In AD 853, a tsunami at Varna swept 6.5 km inland over flat coastal plain and travelled 30 km up a river. On March 31, 1901, a 3 m high tsunami swept into the port of Balchik. Bulgarian tsunami originate from earthquakes on the Crimean Peninsula or from the eastern shore in Turkey. Submarine landslides are also likely sources because the Black Sea is over 2,000 m deep with steep slopes along its eastern and southern sides. The Anatolian Fault Zone that runs through northern Turkey and Greece has produced many tsunami in the Black Sea and the Sea of Marmara to the west. At least 90 tsunami have been recorded around the coast of Turkey since 1300 BC (Kuran and Yalçiner 1993). A tsunami flooded Istanbul on September 14, 1509, overtopping seawalls up to 6 m high. At least 12 major tsunami have occurred historically in the Sea of Marmara, mainly in Izmit Bay. The most recent occurred on August 17, 1999 (Altinok et al. 1999). This tsunami appears to have been caused by submarine subsidence during an earthquake. Maximum run-up was 2.5 m along the northern coast of the bay and 1.0–2.0 m along the southern shore. Ten tsunami generated by earthquakes or landslides have been recorded in the Caspian Sea (Zaitsev et al. 2004). Seven of these occurred on the west coast and three on the east coast. However, the risk is small, as run-ups for the 1:100 event do not exceed 1 m.

Finally, tsunami can be generated even in small lakes. The Krakatau eruption of August 27, 1883 sent out a substantial atmospheric shock wave that induced a 0.5 m high, 20-min oscillation in Lake Taupo situated in the middle of the North Island of New Zealand (Choi et al. 2003). Burdur Lake in Turkey has had numerous reports of tsunami although the lake is only 15 km long (Kuran and Yalçiner 1993). On January 1, 1837 an earthquake-generated tsunami swept its shores and killed many people. Tsunami have washed up to 300 m inland around this lake. A rare case of a tsunami-like wave appeared on April 1939 in Avacha Bay, Kamchatka. The bay was frozen over at the time (Gusiakov 2008). A 3.5–4.0 m wave appeared on the frozen surface. The supposed mechanism was an underwater slide or a slump on the bottom of the bay.

1.6 Meteorological Phenomena, Freak Waves and Storm Surges

Meteorological or meteo-tsunami have the same periods, spatial scales, physical properties and destructive impact as seismically generated tsunami (Rabinovich and Monserrat 1996; Monserrat, et al. 2006) Meteorological tsunami are associated with the passage of typhoons, fronts, atmospheric pressure jumps, or atmospheric gravity waves; however, not all of the latter produce meteorological tsunami even at favorable locations. Other forcing mechanisms may be involved. For example, tidally generated internal waves play an essential role in the formation of seiches in the Philippines and Puerto Rico, while wind waves can generate seiching in many harbors. Meteorological tsunami occur when the atmospheric phenomenon generating any surface wave moves at the same speed as the wave. Hence storm surges can be classified as meteorological tsunami if the forward speed of the storm matches that of the surge (Bryant 2005). For example, during the Long Island Hurricane of 1938, people described the storm surge as a 13 m high wall of water approaching the coast at breakneck speed. This description is similar to some that have been made for 10–15 m high tsunami approaching coastlines.

Meteorological tsunami take on various local names: *rissaga* in the Balearic Islands in the eastern Mediterranean, *abiki* or *yota* in bays in Japan, *marubbio* along the coast of Sicily, *stigazzi* in the Gulf of Fiume, and *Seebär* in the Baltic Sea (Monserrat et al. 2006). They also occur in the Adriatic Sea, the South Kuril Islands, Korea, China, the Great Lakes of North America, and numerous other lakes that can come under the influence of atmospheric activity. Meteorological tsunami can be significant recurrent phenomena. For example, the south end of Lake Michigan near Chicago has experienced many atmospheric events, with one of the largest generating a 3 m wave in 1954 (Wiegel 1964). In Nagasaki Bay, Japan, eighteen *abiki* events have occurred between 1961 and 1979 (Monserrat et al. 2006). The event of March 31, 1979 produced 35-min oscillations having amplitudes of 2.8–4.8 m. It was triggered by a pressure change in the East China Sea of only 3 mb. In Longkou Harbor China, thirteen seiches have occurred between 1957 and 1980 with a maximum amplitude of 2.9 m (Monserrat et al. 2006). In the Mediterranean Sea, meteorological tsunami with heights up to 3 m have been recorded at numerous locations (Rabinovich and Monserrat 1996). Meteorological tsunamis, or meteo-tsunamis, have occurred on the coast of southern Britain, in the English and Bristol Channels, and in the Severn Estuary (Haslett and Bryant 2009; Haslett et al. 2009). Events on clear days are known as *ghost storms*. The most recent event occurred on June 27, 2011 near Plymouth synchronously with anomalous tides up to 0.4 m from Portugal to the Straits of Dover (Tappin et al. 2013). By far the most dramatic event occurred during a storm on November 23, 1829 in the English Channel. One or more large waves with tsunami characteristics overwashed Chesil Beach flooding the large backing lagoon to a depth of 9 m and racing inland to a height of 13 m above sea-level. Meteo-tsunami events in the UK relate to the passage of squall lines over the sea; far-travelled, long-period waves generated by mid–North Atlantic, atmospheric, low-pressure systems; or with storms that may have induced large-amplitude standing waves. They have resulted in damage and loss of life.

Meteorological tsunami can consist of single or multiple waves. For example, a meteorological tsunami was probably the cause of the single wave that swept Daytona Beach, Florida, late at night on 3 July 1992 (Churchill et al. 1995). The wave swamped hundreds of parked cars and injured 75 people. More recently, a series of large waves came ashore in Boothbay Harbor, Maine around 3 PM on October 28, 2008 (Woolhouse 2008). Reports state that a giant wave rushed into the harbor and water levels rose 3.66 m within 15 min. The sea then receded, but a further two waves occurred, each time damaging docks and pilings. However, isolated occurrences and single waves are rare. Meteorological tsunami often affect a particular inlet or bay along a coast because they are also the product of resonance due to the geometry and topography of a specific section of coastline (Wiegel 1964). Resonance explains why meteorological tsunami recur at specific locations, have constant periodicities, occur as a wave train, and have high localized amplitudes. Harbors and bays are particularly vulnerable to resonant excitation of waves even where no wave is noticeable along the adjacent open coast. Friction and non-linear processes weaken the formation or propagation of meteorological tsunami so that they disappear in narrow or shallow inlets.

One of the most unusual phenomena to explain is the occurrence of freak waves arriving at a coastline on fine days (Wiegel 1964). These waves are probably solitary waves that have a peak rising above mean water level, but no associated trough (von Baeyer 1999). Solitary waves may only have a height of several centimeters in deep water, but when they enter shallow water, their height can increase dramatically. For example, very fast boats such as catamaran ferries can produce a wake that behaves as a solitary wave (Hamer 1999). In shallow water, the wakes have reached heights of 5 m, overturning fishing boats, and swamping beaches under placid seas. Isolated freak waves can also be caused by the occurrence of a small, localized, submarine landslide—in some cases without an attendant earthquake. Such freak waves are usually treated as a novelty and consequently have not received much attention in the scientific literature. Unlike meteorological tsunami that occur repetitively at some spots, freak waves are a sporadic phenomenon. In the Bahamas, isolated sets of large waves occurring on fair-weather days are referred to as *rages*; however, distant storms cannot be ruled out as a source. In Hawaii, the threat of freak waves is certainly recognized and they are attributed to tsunami of an uncertain origin. As recently as September 16, 1999, a 5–6 m wave struck the coastline of Omoa Bay on the Island of Fatu Hiva, south of the Marquesas in the central South Pacific Ocean, in the early afternoon on a quiet sunny day. Fortunately, the wave was preceded by a drop in sea level that was recognized as the imminent approach of a tsunami. While evacuations took place, the wave still hit a school, leaving some fleeing students hanging onto floating objects. Buildings close to the shore were destroyed, but no one was killed.

In Australia, two areas—Wollongong and Venus Bay—have reported freak waves. At Wollongong, 40 km south of Sydney on the New South Wales south coast, there have been multiple incidences of freak waves, occurring under calm conditions. In the 1930s, water suddenly withdrew from a bathing beach and was followed less than a minute later by a single wave that washed above the high-tide line into the backing dunes. In January 1994, my son witnessed a lone wave that removed paraphernalia and sunbathers from a popular swimming beach, on a calm sunny day. At Venus Bay, which lies 60 km east of Melbourne, Victoria, single large waves often strike the coast on calm seas. The waves have been described as walls of water. One such wave took out a flock of sheep that were grazing near the shore, while another almost dunked a small fishing boat, which only survived because its owner cut the anchor and rode out the wave. Several fishing parties have disappeared along this coast on days when the sea was calm. None of these events can be linked to any tsunamigenic earthquake offshore in the Tasman Sea, Southern Ocean, or Pacific Ocean. Purists would not consider meteorological tsunami or freak waves as being *true* tsunami.

This chapter has presented stories on the human impact of tsunami and alluded to the numerous mechanisms that can generate this hazard. In doing so, terms such as wave height, run-up, and resonance have been used without any explanation about what they mean. The next chapter deals with the definition of these terms and the description of the features that make up tsunami.

References

Y. Altinok, B. Alpar, S. Ersoy, A.C. Yalciner, Tsunami generation of the Kocaeli earthquake (August 17th 1999) in the Izmit Bay; coastal observations, bathymetry and seismic data. Turk. J. Marine Sci. **5**, 131–148 (1999)

W. Alvarez, *T. Rex and the Crater of Doom* (Princeton University Press, Princeton, 1997)

D.J. Asher, S.V.M. Clube, W.M. Napier, D.I. Steel, Coherent catastrophism. Vistas Astron. **38**, 1–27 (1994)

Australian Bureau of Meteorology, Past tsunami events (2013), http://www.bom.gov.au/tsunami/history/index.shtm

R.J. Blong, *Volcanic Hazards: A Sourcebook on the Effects of Eruptions* (Academic Press, Sydney, 1984)

E. Bryant, *Natural Hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2005)

E. Bryant, J. Nott, Geological indicators of large tsunami in Australia. Nat. Hazards **24**, 231–249 (2001)

B.H. Choi, E. Pelinovsky, K.O. Kim, J.S. Lee, Simulation of the trans-oceanic tsunami propagation due to the 1883 Krakatau volcanic eruption. Nat. Hazard Earth Syst. Sci. **3**, 321–332 (2003)

D.D. Churchill, S.H. Houston, N.A. Bond, The Daytona Beach wave of 3–4 July 1992: A shallow-water gravity wave forced by a propagating squall line. Bulletin Am. Meteorol. Soc. **76**, 21–32 (1995)

S. Clarke, T. Hubble, D. Airey, P. Yu, R. Boyd, J. Keene, N. Exon, J. Gardner, Submarine landslides on the upper Southeast Australian passive continental margin: Preliminary findings, in *Submarine Mass Movements and their Consequences*, vol. 31, ed. by Y. Yamada. Advances in Natural and Technological Hazards Research (Springer, Netherlands, 2012), pp. 55–66

K. Cox, Sand holds clues to quake of '29. *The Globe and Mail*, Toronto, Nov 21 (1994)

H.L. Davies, *Tsunami PNG 1998—Extracts from Earth Talk* (University of Papua New Guinea, Waigani, 1998)

H.L. Davies, J.M. Davies, R.C.B. Perembo, W.Y. Lus, The Aitape 1998 tsunami: Reconstructing the event from interviews and field mapping. Pure Appl. Geophys. **160**, 1895–1922 (2003)

W.P. de Lange, T.R. Healy, New Zealand tsunamis 1840–1982. N. Z. J. Geol. Geophys. **29**, 115–134 (1986)

Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011. *Learning from Earthquakes*: *The Japan Tohoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011*. EERI Special Earthquake Report, Oakland, Nov

E.L. Geist, Native American legends of tsunamis in the Pacific Northwest (1997), http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/NAlegends.html

V.K. Gusiakov, Tsunami history–recorded, in *The Sea*, vol. 15, Tsunamis, ed. by A. Robinson, E. Bernard (Harvard University Press, Cambridge, 2008), pp. 23–53

V.K. Gusiakov, A.V. Osipova, Historical tsunami database for the Kuril-Kamchatka region, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by S. Tinti (Kluwer, Dordrecht, 1993), pp. 17–30

M. Hamer, Solitary killers. New Scientist No. 2201, Aug 28, pp. 18–19 (1999)

C.B. Harbitz, S. Glimsdal, S. Bazin, N. Zamora, F. Løvholt, H. Bungum, H. Smebye, P. Gauer, O. Kjekstad, Tsunami hazard in the Caribbean: Regional exposure derived from credible worst case scenarios. Cont. Shelf Res. **38**, 1–23 (2012)

S.K. Haslett, E.A. Bryant, Historic tsunami in Britain since AD 1000: A review. Nat. Hazard Earth Syst. Sci. **8**, 587–601 (2008)

S.K. Haslett, E.A. Bryant, Meteorological tsunamis in Southern Britain: An historical review. Geogr. Rev. **99**, 146–163 (2009)

S.K. Haslett, H.E. Mellor, E.A. Bryant, Meteo-tsunami hazard associated with summer thunderstorms in the United Kingdom. Phys. Chem. Earth **34**, 1016–1022 (2009)

T.H. Heaton, P.D. Snavely, Possible tsunami along the northwestern coast of the United States inferred from Indian traditions. Bull. Seismol. Soc. Am. **75**, 1455–1460 (1985)

J.G. Hills, C.L. Mader, Tsunami produced by the impacts of small asteroids. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. **822**, 381–394 (1997)

R. Howorth, Tsunami–the scourge of the Pacific. COGEOENVIRONMENT News No. 14, Commission on Geological Sciences for Environmental Planning, International Union of Geological Sciences, Jan (1999)

K. Iida, Magnitude, energy and generation of tsunamis, and catalogue of earthquakes associated with tsunamis. Int. Union Geodesy Geophys. Monogr. **24**, 7–18 (1963)

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission. Historical tsunami database for the Pacific, 47 BC–1998 AD. Tsunami Laboratory, Institute of Computational Mathematics and Mathematical Geophysics, Siberian Division Russian Academy of Sciences, Novosibirsk, Russia, 1999a, http://tsun.sscc.ru/HTDBPac1/

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission. ITSU Master Plan. IOCINF-1124 Paris, p. 39 (1999b)

C.J. Jenkins, J.B. Keene, Submarine slope failures of the Southeast Australian continental slope: A thinly sedimented margin. Deep-Sea Res. **39**, 121–136 (1992)

K.A. Kastens, M.B. Cita, Tsunami-induced sediment transport in the abyssal Mediterranean Sea. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. **92**, 845–857 (1981)

U. Kuran, A.C. Yalçiner, Crack propagations, earthquakes and tsunamis in the vicinity of Anatolia, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by S. Tinti (Kluwer, Dordrecht, 1993), pp. 159–175

J.F. Lander, P.A. Lockridge, United States tsunamis (Including United States possessions) 1690–1988. National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, (1989)

P.A. Lockridge, *Tsunamis in Peru–Chile*. World Data Center A for Solid Earth Geophysics, National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, Rpt. SE-39 (1985)

P.A. Lockridge, Historical tsunamis in the Pacific Basin, in *Natural and Man-Made Hazards*, ed. by M.I. El-Sabh, T.S. Murty (Reidel, Dordrecht, 1988), pp. 171–181

F. Løvholt, S. Glimsdal, C.B. Harbitz, N. Zamora, F. Nadim, P. Peduzzi, H. Dao, H. Smebye, Tsunami hazard and exposure on the global scale. Earth-Sci. Rev. **110**, 58–73 (2012)

D.G. Masson, C.B. Harbitz, R.B. Wynn, G. Pedersen, F. Løvholt, Submarine landslides: Processes, triggers and hazard prediction. Philos. Trans. Roy. Soc. **364A**, 2009–2039 (2006)

G. Menzies, *The Lost Empire of Atlantis: History's Greatest Mystery Revealed* (William Morrow Paperbacks, Hammersmith, UK, 2012)

D.J. Miller, Giant waves in Lituya Bay, Alaska. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 354-C, pp. 51–86 (1960)

S. Monserrat, I. Vilibić, A.B. Rabinovich, Meteotsunamis: Atmospherically induced destructive ocean waves in the tsunami frequency band. Nat. Hazards Earth Syst. Sci. **6**, 1035–1051 (2006)

M. Monzier, C. Robin, J.-P. Eissen, Kuwae ($\sim$1452 A.D.): The forgotten caldera. J. Volcanol. Geoth. Res. **59**, 207–218 (1994)

D.G. Moore, Submarine slides, in *Rockslides and Avalanches, 1: Natural Phenomena*, ed. by B. Voight (Elsevier Scientific, Amsterdam, 1978), pp. 563–604

D. Myles, *The Great Waves* (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1985)

National Geophysical Data Center, (NGDC/WDS) Global Historical Tsunami Database. Boulder, Colorado (2013), http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/tsu_db.shtml

National Geophysical Data Center and World Data Center A for Solid Earth Geophysics 1989. United States tsunamis (including United States possessions) 1690–1988. United States National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, Publication No. 41–2, Boulder, Colorado

J. Nott, The tsunami hypothesis-comparisons of the field evidence against the effects, on the Western Australian coast, of some of the most powerful storms on Earth. Mar. Geol. **208**, 1–12 (2004)

G. Pararas-Carayannis, The 1960 Chilean Tsunami (1998), www.drgeorgepc.com/Tsunami1960.html

K.L. Parker, *Australian Legendary Tales* (Bodley Head, London, 1978)

C.W. Peck, *Australian Legends* (Lothian, Melbourne, 1938)

T. Pinegina, L. Bazanova, O. Braitseva, V. Gusiakov, I. Melekestsev, A. Starcheus, East Kamchatka palaeotsunami traces. *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Tsunami Mitigation and Risk Assessment*, Petropavlovsk–Kamchatskiy, Russia, August 21–24, 1996, http://omzg.sscc.ru/tsulab/content.html

A.B. Rabinovich, S. Monserrat, Meteorological tsunamis near the Balearic and Kuril Islands: Descriptive and statistical analysis. Nat. Hazards **13**, 55–90 (1996)

B. Ranguelov, D. Gospodinov, Tsunami vulnerability modeling for the Bulgarian Black Sea Coast. Water Sci. Technol. **32**, 47–53 (1995)

H.F. Reid, The Lisbon earthquake of November 1, 1755. Bulletin Seismol. Soc. Am. **4**, 53–80 (1914)

J. Roger, Y. Gunnell, Vulnerability of the Dover Strait to coseismic tsunami hazards: Insights from numerical modelling. Geophys. J. Int. doi:10.1111/j.1365-246X.2011.05294.x

R.G. Rothwell, M.S. Reeder, G. Anastasakis, D.A.V. Stow, J. Thomson, G. Kähler, Low sea-level stand emplacement of megaturbidites in the western and eastern Mediterranean Sea. Sediment. Geol. 135, 75–88 (2000)

K. Satake, K. Shimazaki, Y. Tsuji, K. Ueda, Time and size of a giant earthquake in Cascadia inferred from Japanese tsunami records of January 1700. Nature **379**, 246–249 (1996)

A. Scheffers, Tsunami imprints on the Leeward Netherlands Antilles (Aruba, Curaçao, Bonaire) and their relation to other coastal problems. Quatern. Int. **120**, 163–172 (2004)

D. Tappin, T. Matsumoto, P. Watts, K. Satake, G. McMurty, M. Matsuyama, Y. Lafoy, Y. Tsuji, T. Kanamatsu, W. Lus, Y. Iwabuchi, H. Yeh, Y. Matsumotu, M. Nakamura, M. Mahoi, P. Hill, K. Crook, L. Anton, J.P. Walsh, Sediment slump likely caused 1998. Papua New Guinea Tsunami. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **80**, 329, 334, 340 (1999)

D.R. Tappin, A. Sibley, K. Horsburgh, C. Daubord, D. Cox, D. Long, The english channel 'tsunami' of 27 June 2011: A probable meteorological source. Weather **68**, 144–152 (2013)

S. Tinti, A. Maramai, Large tsunamis and tsunami hazard from the New Italian Tsunami Catalog. Phys. Chem. Earth **24A**, 151–156 (1999)

M.P. Tuttle, A. Ruffman, T. Anderson, H. Jeter, Distinguishing tsunami from storm deposits in Eastern North America: The 1929 Grand Banks Tsunami versus the 1991 Halloween Storm. Seismol. Res. Lett. **75**, 117–131 (2004)

United Nations. The human toll. Office of the Special Envoy for Tsunami Recovery (2006), http://www.tsunamispecialenvoy.org/country/humantoll.asp

R.D.M. Verbeek, The Krakatoa eruption. Nature **30**, 10–15 (1884)

H.C. von Baeyer, Catch the wave. The Sciences **29**, 10–13 (1999)

M. Whelan, The night the sea smashed Lord's Cove. Can. Geogr. 70–73 (1994)

R.L. Wiegel, *Oceanographical Engineering* (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1964), pp. 95–108

M. Woolhouse, Massive waves a mystery at Maine Harbor. The Boston Globe, Nov 4 (2008)

A. Zaitsev, A. Kurkin, E. Pelinovsky, Historical tsunamis of the Caspian Sea and their modelling. Izvestia, Russ. Acad. Eng. Sci., Series: Appl. Math. Mech. **9**, 121–134 (2004)

2 Tsunami Dynamics

2.1 Introduction

The approach of a tsunami wave towards shore can be an awesome sight to those who have witnessed it and survived. Figure 2.1 represents an artist's impression of a tsunami wave approaching the coast of Unimak Island, Alaska, early on April 1, 1946. Similar artists' impressions of breaking tsunami will be presented throughout this text. The impressions are accurate. Whereas ordinary storm waves or swells break and dissipate most of their energy in a surf zone, tsunami break at, or surge over, the shoreline. Hence, they lose little energy as they approach a coast and can run up to heights an order of magnitude greater than storm waves. Much of this behavior relates to the fact that tsunami are very long waves—kilometers in length. As shown in Fig. 2.1, this behavior also relates to the unusual shape of tsunami wave crests as they approach shore. This chapter describes these unique features of tsunami.

2.2 Tsunami Characteristics

Tsunami characteristics are described by many authors (Wiegel 1964; Bolt et al. 1975; Shepard 1977; Myles 1985). The terminology used in this text for tsunami waves is shown schematically in Fig. 2.2. Much of this terminology is the same as that used for ordinary wind waves. Tsunami have a wavelength, a period, and a deep-water or open-ocean height. They can undergo shoaling, refraction, reflection and diffraction (Murata et al. 2010). Most tsunami generated by large earthquakes travel in wave trains containing several large waves that in deep water are less than 0.4 m in height. Figure 2.3 plots typical tidal gauge records or *marigrams* of tsunami at various locations in the Pacific Ocean (Wiegel 1970). These records are taken close to shore and show that tsunami wave heights increase substantially into shallow water. Tsunami wave characteristics are highly variable. In some cases, the waves in a tsunami wave train consist of an initial peak that then tapers off in height exponentially over four to 6 h. In other cases, the tsunami wave train consists of a maximum wave peak well back in the wave sequence. The time it takes for a pair of wave crests to pass by a point is termed the wave period. This is a crucial parameter in defining the nature of any wave. Tsunami typically have periods of 100–2,000 s (1.6–33 min), referred to as the *tsunami window*. Waves with this period travel at speeds of 600–900 km hr^{-1} (166–250 m s^{-1}) in the deepest part of the ocean, 100 –300 km hr^{-1} (28–83 m s^{-1}) across the continental shelf, and 36 km hr^{-1} (10 m s^{-1}) at shore (Iida and Iwasaki 1983). The upper limit is the speed of a commercial jet airplane. Because of the finite depth of the ocean and the mechanics of wave generation by earthquakes, a tsunami's wavelength—the distance between successive wave crests—lies between 10 and 500 km. These long wavelengths make tsunami profoundly different from swell or storm waves.

Tsunami waves can have different shapes depending upon where they are placed with respect to the shore and the depth of water (Geist 1997). The simplest form of ocean waves is sinusoidal in shape and oscillatory (Fig. 2.4). Water particles under oscillatory waves transcribe closed orbits. Hence there is no mass transport of water shoreward with the passage of the wave. Oscillatory waves are described for convenience by three parameters: their height or elevation above the free water surface, their wavelength, and water depth (Fig. 2.2). These parameters can be related to each other by three ratios as follows (Komar 1998):

$$H : L, H : d, L : d \tag{2.1}$$

where

H = crest-to-trough wave height (m)
L = wavelength (m)
d = water depth (m)

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_2,

Fig. 2.1 An artist's impression of the tsunami of April 1, 1946 approaching the five story-high Scotch Cap lighthouse, Unimak island, Alaska. The lighthouse, which was 28 m high, stood on top of a bluff 10 m above sea level. It was completely destroyed (see also Fig. 2.8). The wave ran over a cliff 32 m high behind the lighthouse. Painting is by Danell Millsap, commissioned by the United States National Weather Service

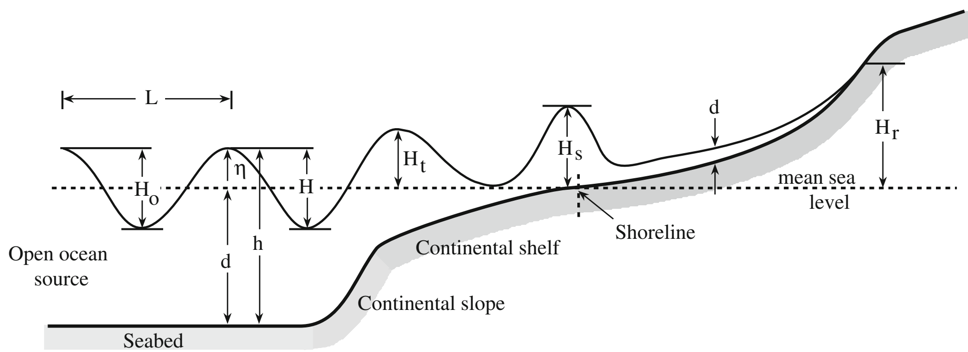


Fig. 2.2 Various terms used in the text to express the wave height of a tsunami

In deep water, the most significant factor is the ratio *H*:*L*, or wave steepness. In shallow water it is the ratio *H*:*d*, or relative height. Sinusoidal waves fit within a class of waves called cnoidal waves: c for cosine, n for an integer to label the sequence of waves, and *oidal* to show that they are sinusoidal in shape. The shape of a wave or its peakedness can be characterized by a numerical parameter. For sinusoidal waves this parameter is zero. While tsunami in the open ocean are approximately sinusoidal in shape, they become more peaked as they cross the continental shelf. In this case, the numerical parameter describing shape increases and non-linear terms become important. The wave peak sharpens while the trough flattens. These non-linear, tepee-shaped waves are characterized mathematically by Stokes wave theory (Komar 1998; von Baeyer 1999). In Stokes theory, motion in two dimensions is described by the sum of two sinusoidal components (Fig. 2.4). Water particles in a Stokes wave do not follow closed orbits, and there is mass movement of water throughout the water column as the wave passes by a point. As a tsunami wave approaches shore, the separation between the wave crests becomes so large that the trough disappears and only one peak remains. The numerical parameter characterizing shape approaches one and the tsunami wave becomes a solitary wave (Fig. 2.4). Solitary waves are translatory in that water moves with the crest. All of the waveform also lies above mean sea level. Finally, it has been noted that a trough that is nearly as deep as the crest is high precedes many exceptional tsunami waves. This gives the incoming wave a wall effect. The Great Wave of Kanagawa shown on the frontispiece of this book is of this type. These waves are not solitary because they have a component below mean sea level. Such waveforms are better characterized by *N*-waves. This chapter uses features of each of these wave types: sinusoidal, Stokes, solitary, and *N*-waves to characterize tsunami.

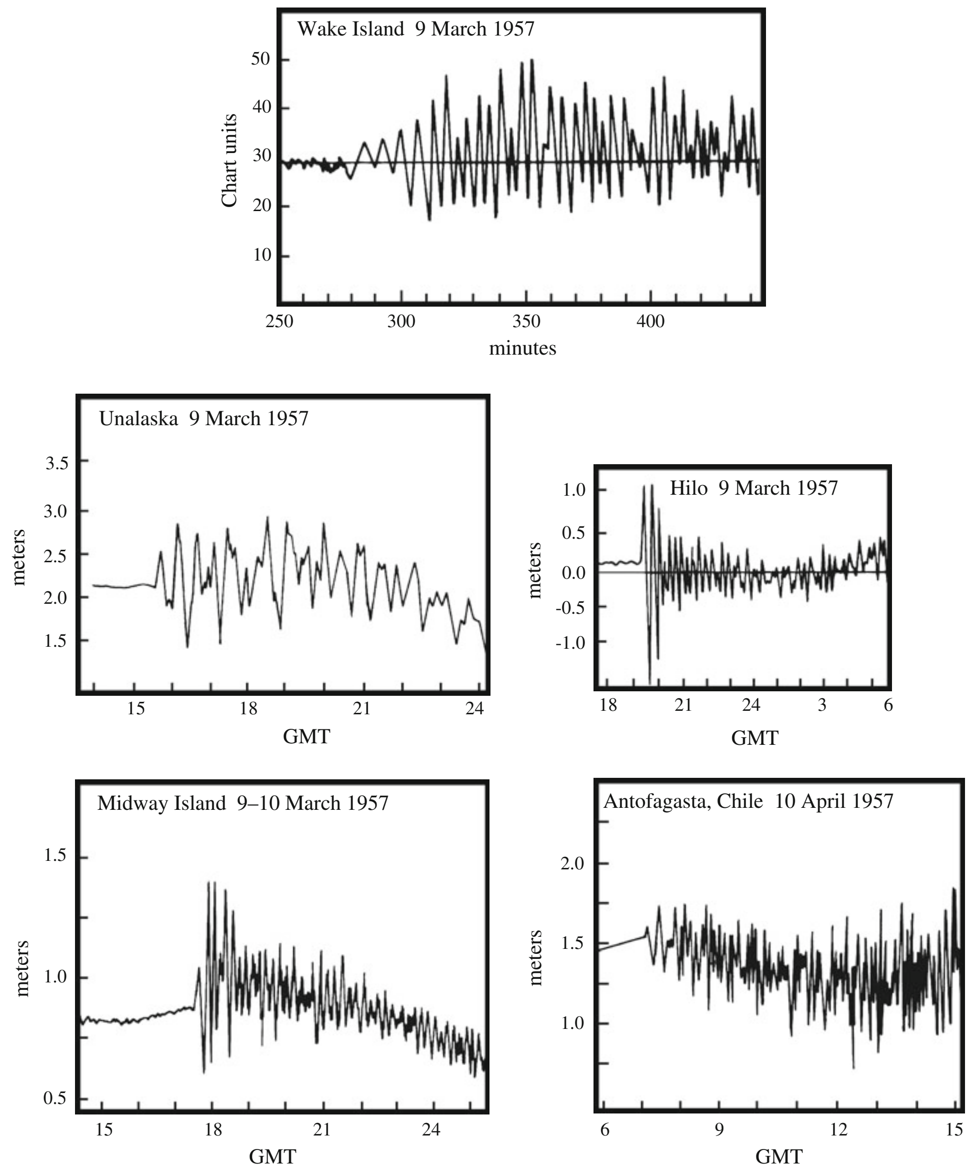


Fig. 2.3 Plots or marigrams of tsunami wave trains at various tidal gauges in the Pacific region. Based on Wiegel (1970)

2.3 Tsunami Wave Theory

The theory of waves, and especially tsunami waves, are described in many basic references (Wiegel 1964, 1970; Pelinovsky 1996; Geist 1997; Trenhaile 1997; Komar 1998). The simplest form describing any wave is that represented by a sine curve (Fig. 2.4). These sinusoidal waves and their features can be characterized mathematically by linear, trigonometric functions known as Airy wave theory (Komar 1998). This theory can represent local tsunami propagation in water depths greater than 50 m. In this theory, the three ratios presented in Eq. 2.1 are much less than one. This implies that wave height relative to wavelength is very low—a feature characterizing tsunami in the open ocean. The formulae describing sinusoidal waves vary depending upon the wave being in deep or shallow water. Shallow water begins when the depth of water is less than half the wavelength. As oceans are rarely more than 5 km deep, the majority of tsunami travel as shallow-water waves. In this case, the trigonometric functions characterizing sinusoidal waves disappear and the velocity of the wave becomes a simple function of depth as follows:

$$C = (gd)^{0.5} \tag{2.2}$$

where

C = wave speed $(\mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})$
g = gravitational acceleration $(9.81\ \mathrm{m\ s^{-1}})$

The wavelength of a tsunami is also a simple function of wave speed, C, and period, T, as follows:

$$L = CT \tag{2.3}$$

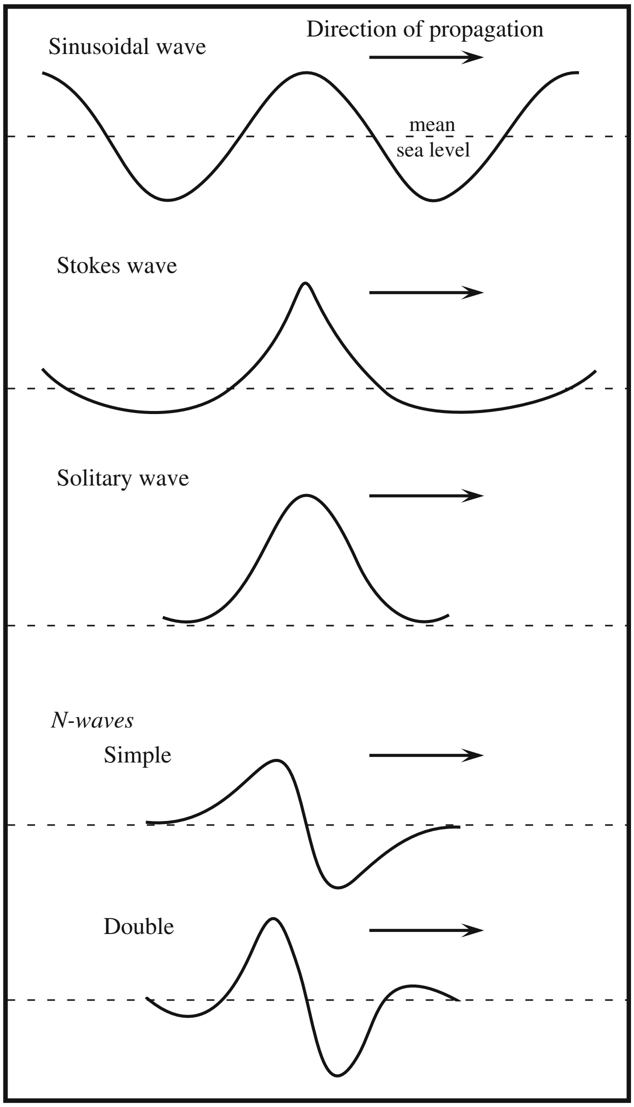


Fig. 2.4 Idealized forms characterizing the cross-section of a tsunami wave. Based on Geist (1997). Note that the vertical dimension is greatly exaggerated

Equation 2.3 holds for linear, sinusoidal waves and is not appropriate for calculating the wavelength of a tsunami as it moves into shallow water. Linear theory can be used as a first approximation to calculate changes in tsunami wave height as the wave moves across an ocean and undergoes wave shoaling and refraction. The following formulae apply:

$$H = K_r K_s H_o \tag{2.4}$$

$$K_r = \left(b_o b_i^{-1}\right)^{0.5} \tag{2.5}$$

$$K_s = \left(d_o d_i^{-1}\right)^{0.25} \tag{2.6}$$

where

H_o = crest-to-trough wave height at the source point (m)
K_r = refraction coefficient (dimensionless)
K_s = shoaling coefficient (dimensionless) (Green's Law)
b_o = distance between wave orthogonals at a source point water (m)
b_i = distance between wave orthogonals at any shoreward point (m)
d_o = water depth at a source point (m)
d_i = water depth at any shoreward point (m)

Note that there is a plethora of definitions of wave height in the tsunami literature. These include wave height at the source region, wave height above mean water level, wave height at shore, and wave run-up height above present sea level. The distinctions between these expressions are presented in Fig. 2.2. The expression for shoaling—Eq. 2.6—is known as Green's Law (Geist 1997). For example, if a tsunami with an initial height of 0.6 m is generated in a water depth of 4000 m, then its height in 10 m depth of water on some distant shore can be raised 4.5 times to 2.7 m. Because tsunami are shallow-water waves, they *feel* the ocean bottom at any depth and their crests undergo refraction or bending around higher seabed topography. The degree of refraction can be measured by constructing a set of equally spaced lines perpendicular to the wave crest. These lines are called wave orthogonals or rays (Fig. 2.5). As the wave crest bends around topography, the distance, b, between any two lines will change. Refraction is measured by the ratio b_o:b_i. Simple geometry indicates that the ratio b_o:b_i is equivalent to the ratio $\cos\alpha_o$:$\cos\alpha_i$, where α is the angle that the tsunami wave crest makes to the bottom contours as the wave travels shoreward (Fig. 2.5). Once this angle is known, it is possible to determine the angle at any other location using Snell's Law as follows:

$$\sin\alpha_o C_o^{-1} = \sin\alpha_i C_i^{-1} \tag{2.7}$$

where

α_o = the angle a wave crest makes to the bottom contours at a source point (degrees)
α_i = the angle a wave crest makes to the bottom contours at any shoreward point (degrees)
C_o = wave speed at a source point (m s^{-1})
C_i = wave speed at any shoreward point (m s^{-1})

For a tsunami wave traveling from a distant source—such as occurs often in the Pacific Ocean—the wave path or ray must also be corrected for geometrical spreading on a spherical surface (Okal 1988). Equation 2.4 can be rewritten to incorporate this spreading as follows:

$$H = K_r K_s K_{sp} H_o \tag{2.8}$$

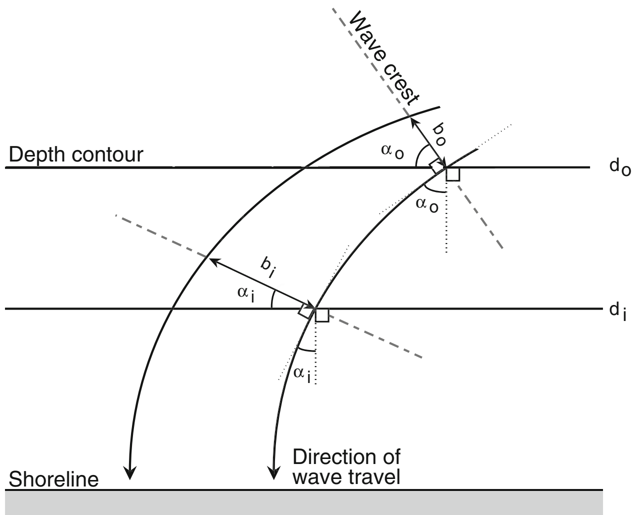


Fig. 2.5 Refraction of a tsunami wave crest as it approaches shore

where

K_{sp} = $(\sin \Delta)^{-0.5}$
K_{sp} = coefficient of geometrical spreading on a sphere (dimensionless)
Δ = angle of spreading on a sphere relative to a wave's direction of travel

In a large ocean, bathymetric obstacles such as island chains, rises, and seamounts can refract a tsunami wave such that its energy is concentrated or *focused* upon a distant shoreline (Okal 1988). These are known as *teleseismic* tsunami because the effect of the tsunami is translated long distances across an ocean. Japan is particularly prone to tsunami originating from the west coast of the Americas, despite this coastline laying half a hemisphere away. On the other hand, bottom topography can spread tsunami wave crests, dispersing wave energy over a larger area. This process is called *defocussing*. Tahiti, but not necessarily other parts of French Polynesia, is protected from large tsunami generated around the Pacific Rim because of this latter process.

Headlands are particularly prone to the amplification of tsunami height due to refraction However, this does not mean that bays are protected from tsunami. Reflection becomes a significant process for long waves such as tsunami that do not break at shore as wind waves do (Murata et al. 2010). The tsunami wave is reflected from the sides of an embayment towards shore. At shore, the wave is reflected seawards, then bent back to shore by refraction. This traps and concentrates the energy of tsunami waves along a bay's shoreline increasing the amplitude of succeeding waves. Trapping by this process can also occur around islands. This was particularly significant during the December 12, 1992 tsunami along the north coast of Flores Island, Indonesia, when the tsunami wrapped around Babi Island causing significant destruction on the lee side (Yeh et al. 1994). It also occurred on the south and west coasts of Sri Lanka during the Indian Ocean Tsunami of 2004. Finally, diffraction allows tsunami waves to bend around shielding land such as long headlands or islands more than 0.5 km in length.

Not all tsunami behave as sinusoidal waves. Many observations of tsunami approaching shore note that water is drawn down before the wave crest arrives. This characteristic can be due to non-linear effects that produce a trough in front of the wave. Solitons or *N*-waves mimic these features (Fig. 2.4) (Geist 1997; Tadepalli and Synolakis 1994). These type of waves will be discussed further when run-up is described.

2.3.1 Resonance

Tsunami, having long periods of 100–2,000 s, can also be excited or amplified in height within harbors and bays if their period approximates some harmonic of the natural frequency of the basin—termed resonance (Wiegel 1964, 1970). The word *tsunami* in Japanese literally means *harbor wave* because of this phenomenon. Here tsunami can oscillate back and forth for 24 h or more. The oscillations are termed *seiches,* a German word used to describe long, atmospherically induced waves in Swiss alpine lakes. Seiches are independent of the forcing mechanism and are related simply to the 3-dimensional form of the bay or harbor as follows:

$$\text{Closed basin}: T_s = 2L_b(gd)^{-0.5} \tag{2.9}$$

$$\text{Open basin}: T_s = 4L_b(gd)^{-0.5} \tag{2.10}$$

where

L_b = length of a basin or harbor (m)
T_s = wave period of seiching in a bay, basin, or harbor(s)

Equation 2.9 is appropriate for enclosed basins and is known as Merian's Formula. In this case, the forcing mechanism need have no link to the open ocean. As an example, an Olympic-sized swimming pool measuring 50 m long and 2 m deep would have a natural resonance period of 22.6 s. Any vibration with a periodicity of 5.6, 11.3, and 22.6 s could induce water motion back and forth along the length of the pool. If sustained, the oscillations or seiching would increase in amplitude and water could spill out of the pool. Seismic waves from earthquakes can provide the energy for seiching in swimming pools, and the Northridge earthquake of January 17, 1994 was very effective at emptying pools in Los Angeles (Bryant 2005).

Seiching was also induced in bays in Texas and the Great Lakes of North America about 30 min after the Great Alaskan Earthquake of 1964. Volcano-induced, atmospheric pressure waves can generate seiching as well. The eruption of Krakatau in 1883 produced a 0.5 m high seiche in Lake Taupo in the middle of the North Island of New Zealand via this process (Choi et al. 2003). Whether or not either of these phenomena technically is a tsunami is a moot point.

Resonance can also occur in any semi-enclosed body of water with the forcing mechanism being a sudden change in barometric pressure, semi- or diurnal tides, and tsunami. In these cases, the wave period of the forcing mechanism determines whether the semi-enclosed body of water will undergo excitation. The effects can be quite dramatic. For example, the predominant wave period of the tsunami that hit Hawaii on April 1, 1946 was 15 min. The tsunami was most devastating around Hilo Bay, which has a critical resonant length of about 30 min. While most tsunami usually approach a coastline parallel to shore, those in Hilo Bay often run obliquely alongshore because of resonance and edge-wave formation. Damage in Hilo due to tsunami has always been a combination of the tsunami and a tsunami-generated seiche. The above treatment of resonance is cursory. Harbor widths can also affect seiching and it is possible to generate subharmonics of the main resonant period that can complicate tsunami behavior in any harbor or bay. These aspects are beyond the scope of this text.

2.4 Modeling Tsunami

The preceding theories model either small amplitude or long waves. They cannot do both at same time. Tsunami behave as small amplitude, long waves. Their height-to-length ratio may be smaller than 1:100,000. If tsunami are modeled simply as long waves, they become too steep as they shoal towards shore and break too early. This is called the long-wave paradox. About 75 % of tsunami do not break during run-up. Because their relative height is so low, tsunami are also very shallow waves. Under these conditions, tsunami characteristics can be modeled more realistically by using non-linear, non-dispersive, shallow-water approximations of the Navier-Stokes equations (Liu et al. 2008). The description of these equations is beyond the scope of this book.

These equations work well in the open ocean, on continent slopes, around islands, and in harbors (Mader 1974, 1988). On a steep continental slope greater than 4°, the techniques show that a tsunami wave will be amplified by a factor of three to four times. Because they incorporate both flooding and frictional dissipation, the equations overcome problems with linear theory where the wave breaks too far from shore. They also show that, because of reflection, the second and third waves in a tsunami wave train can be amplified as the first wave in the train interacts with shelf topography. If shallow-water long-wave equations include vertical velocity components, they can describe wave motion resulting from the formation of cavities in the ocean surface (asteroid impacts); replicate wave profiles generated by sea floor displacement, underwater landslides, or tsunami traveling over submerged barriers; or simulate the behavior of short-wavelength tsunami. Effectively, an underwater barrier does not become significant in attenuating the tsunami wave height until the barrier height is more than 50 % the water depth. Even where the height of this barrier is 90 % of the water depth, half of the tsunami wave height can be transmitted across it. Modeling using the full shallow-water, long-wave equations shows that submerged offshore reefs do not necessarily protect a coast from the effects of tsunami. This is important because it indicates that a barrier such as the Great Barrier Reef of Australia may not protect the mainland coast from tsunami.

Shallow-water, long-wave approximations are solved using finite-difference techniques. Early models such as the SWAN code used simple, regularly spaced grids of ocean depths that incorporated Coriolis force and frictional effects (Mader 1988). To overcome the loss of detail as water shallowed, depth grids of increasing resolution were nested within each other. These models have given way to more advanced ones (Synolakis et al. 2008), which use triangular (3-point) or polygonal (4- or more point) grid cells that become smaller as bathymetry becomes more complex or coastlines more irregular. This matches the quality of most bathymetric data, which becomes more detailed towards shore. For example, the Indian Ocean Tsunami event on December 26, 2004 was modeled for the Banda Aceh region of Indonesia using a triangular grid that started out at a resolution of 14 km in the deep Indian Ocean, decreasing to 500 m near the coast and, finally, to 40 m at shore to model inundation throughout the city (Fig. 2.6) (Harig et al. 2008). Several advanced models are presently in use, including MOST (Tito and Gonzalez 1997), TUNAMI-N2/TUNAMI-N3 (Imamura et al. 2006) and SELFE (Zhang and Baptista 2008). The purpose of these models is to simulate accurately tsunami evolution, its propagation across an ocean to a coastline, its arrival time at shore and the limit of inundation on dry land. The MOST (Method of Splitting Tsunami) model can simulate all these components. An example of its use is shown in Fig. 2.7 for the height of the Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 as it propagated into the Pacific Ocean from its source region on the east coast of Japan. While the effect of the tsunami was significant on the coast of Japan, this figure shows that there was minimal risk to coastlines outside the immediate area. By pre-computing hundreds of tsunami from possible earthquake scenarios, it

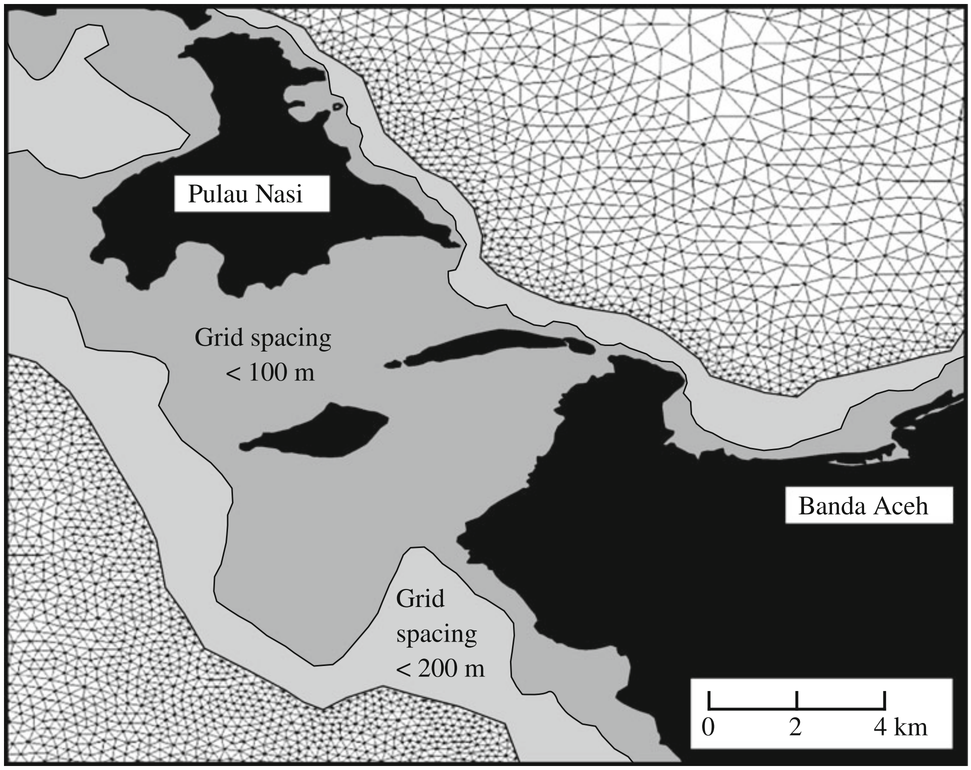


Fig. 2.6 Unstructured, variable grid of bathymetry around Banda Aceh, Indonesia used to simulate the effects of the Indian Ocean Tsunami of December 26, Based on Harig et al. (2008)

is now possible to provide real time simulations of most tsunami simply by matching an event to one in a database.

2.5 Run-Up and Inundation

2.5.1 Run-Up

Tsunami are known for their dramatic run-up heights, which commonly are greater than the height of the tsunami approaching shore by a factor of 2 or more times. The National Geophysical Data Center (2013) catalogue lists 32 events with a run-up of 30 m or more. For example, in the Pacific Ocean region, 44 tsunami have generated wave run-up heights in excess of 10 m since 1900. The largest run-up produced by a volcano was 90 m on August 29, 1741 on the west coasts of Oshima and Hokkaido Islands, Japan. The eruption of Krakatau in 1883 generated a wave that reached elevations up to 40 m high along the surrounding coastline (Blong 1984). The largest tsunami run-up generated by an earthquake was 100 m on Ambon Island, Indonesia, on February 17, 1674. In recent times, the tsunami that struck Flores Island on December 12, 1992 had a run-up of 26.2 m at Riang–Kroko, the Alaskan Tsunami of April 1, 1946 overtopped cliffs on Unimak Island and wiped out a radio mast standing 35 m above sea level (Fig. 2.8), and the Tōhoku Tsunami of 2011 produced run-up of 38.9 m. By far the largest run-up height recorded was that produced on July 9, 1958 by an earthquake-triggered landslide in Lituya Bay, Alaska (Miller 1960). Water swept 524 m above sea level up the slope on the opposite side of the bay, and a 30–50 m high tsunami propagated down the bay.

Wind-generated waves are limited in Stokes wave theory by depth. A Stokes wave will break when the height-to-water depth ratio exceeds 0.78. Thus, on flat coasts storm waves break in a surf zone and dissipate most of their energy before reaching shore. On the other hand, 75 % of tsunami reach shore without breaking, bringing tremendous power to bear on the coastline, and surging landward at speeds of 5 s^{-1} –8 m s^{-1} (Fig. 2.9). The opposite occurs on steep coasts such as those dominated by rocky headlands. Here, storm waves surge onto shore without breaking, whereas a tsunami wave is more likely to break. The popular media often portray this latter aspect as a plunging tsunami wave breaking over the coast. Under tsunami waves, significant water motion occurs throughout the whole water column. Close to the coast, this aspect is best described by a solitary wave (Fig. 2.4) (Geist 1997). A solitary wave maintains its form into shallowing water, and, because the kinetic energy of the tsunami is evenly distributed throughout the water column, little energy is dissipated, especially on steep coasts. Synolakis (1987) approximated the maximum run-up height of a solitary wave using the following formula:

$$H_{rmax} = 2.83\,(\cot\beta)^{0.5} H_t^{1.25} \qquad (2.11)$$

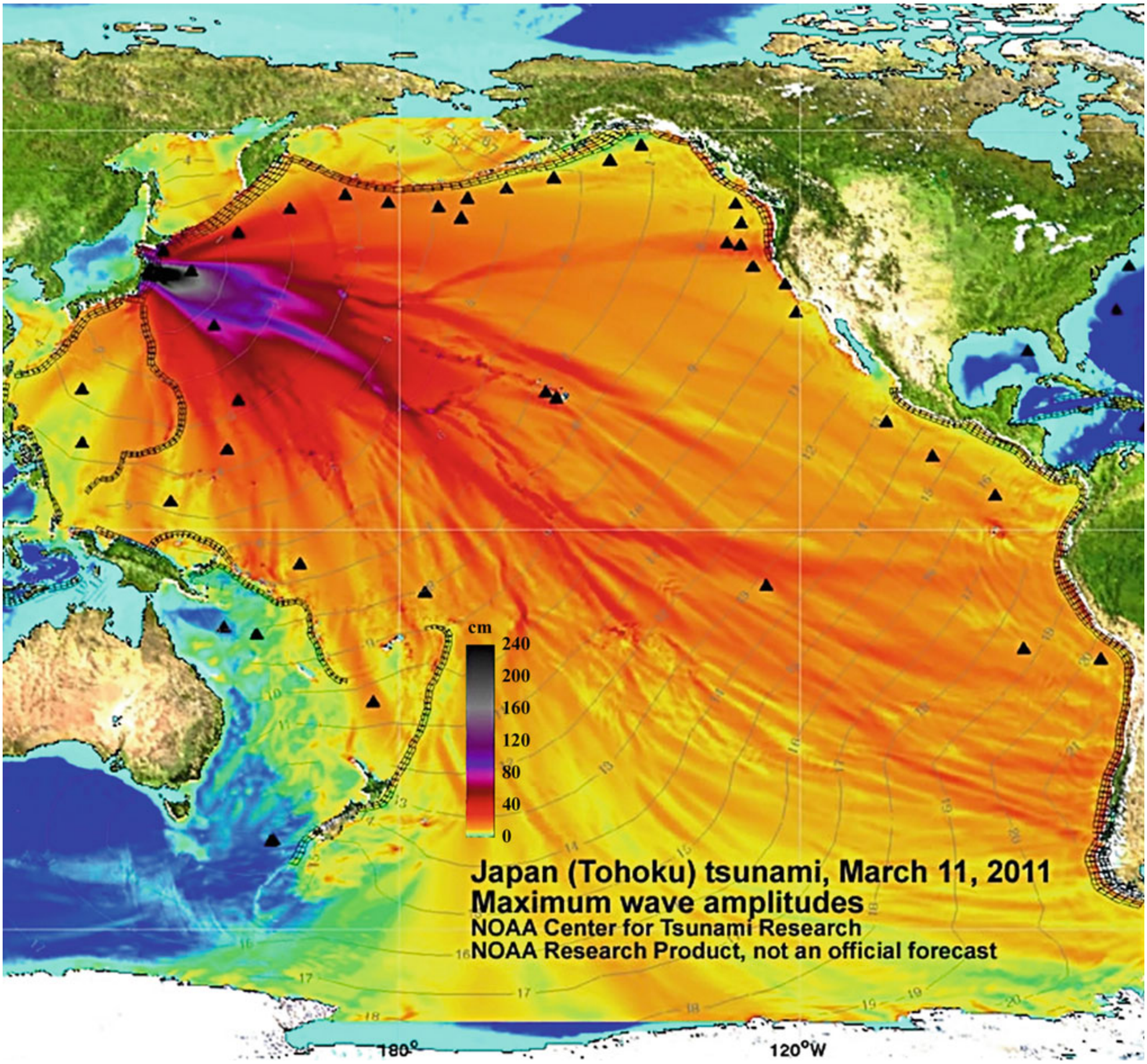


Fig. 2.7 Maximum wave heights for the Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011, simulated across the Pacific ocean using the MOST (Method of Splitting Tsunami) model. *Source* NOAA Center for Tsunami Research http://nctr.pmel.noaa.gov/honshu20110311/Energy_plot20110311_no_tg_lables_cropped_ok.jpg

where

H_{rmax} = maximum run-up height of a tsunami above sea level (m)
H_t = wave height at shore or the toe of a beach (m)
β = slope of the seabed (degrees)

The run-ups derived from Eq. 2.11 are higher than those predicted using sinusoidal waves. If a leading trough precedes the tsunami, then its form is best characterized by an *N*-wave (Fig. 2.4). These waves are more likely to be generated close to shore because the critical distance over which a tsunami wave develops is not long enough relative to the tsunami's wavelength to generate a wave with a leading crest. This critical distance may be as great as 100 km from shore—a value that encompasses many near-coastal tsunamigenic earthquakes. *N*-waves, as shown in Fig. 2.4 can take on two forms: simple and double (Geist 1997). The double wave is preceded by a smaller wave. The tsunami generated by the Indian Ocean Tsunami along the south Sri Lankan coast was a double *N*-wave. Tadepalli and

Fig. 2.8 The remains of the Scotch Cap lighthouse, Unimak island, Alaska, following the April 1, 1946 Tsunami. A coast guard station, situated at the top of the cliff 32 m above sea level, was also destroyed. Five men in the lighthouse at the time perished. *Source* United States Department of Commerce, National Geophysical Data Center

Synolakis (1994) approximated run-ups for *N*-waves using the following formulae:

$$\text{Simple } N\text{-wave} \quad H_{\text{rmax}} = 3.86\,(\cot\beta)^{0.5} H_t^{1.25} \qquad (2.12)$$

$$\text{Double } N\text{-wave} \quad H_{\text{rmax}} = 4.55\,(\cot\beta)^{0.5} H_t^{1.25} \qquad (2.13)$$

The two equations are similar in form to Eq. 2.11 for solitary waves. However, they result in run-ups that are 36 and 62 % higher. In some cases, *N*-waves may account for the large run-ups produced by small earthquakes. For example, an earthquake (M_s magnitude of 7.3) struck the island of Pentecost, Vanuatu, on November 26, 1999 (Caminade et al. 2000). Normally, an event of this magnitude would generate only a minor tsunami, if one at all. Instead, run-up reached 5 m above sea level. The tsunami was characterized by a distinct leading depression.

The run-up height of a tsunami also depends upon the configuration of the shore, diffraction, standing wave resonance, the generation of edge waves that run at right angles to the shoreline, the trapping of incident wave energy by refraction of reflected waves from the coast, and the formation of Mach–Stem waves (Wiegel 1964, 1970; Camfield 1994). Mach–Stem waves are not a well-recognized feature in coastal dynamics. They have their origin in the study of flow dynamics along the edge of airplane wings, where energy tends to accumulate at the boundary between the wing and air flowing past it. In the coastal zone, Mach–Stem waves develop wherever the angle between the wave crest and a cliff face is greater than 70°. The portion of the wave nearest the cliff continues to grow in amplitude even if the cliff line curves back from the ocean. The Mach–Stem wave process is insensitive to irregularities in the cliff face. It can increase ocean swell by a factor of four times. The process often accounts for fishermen being swept off rock platforms during rough seas. The process explains how cliffs 30 m or more in height can be overtopped by a shoaling tsunami wave that produces run-up reaching only one third as high elsewhere along the coast. Mach–Stem waves play a significant role in the generation of high-speed vortices responsible for bedrock sculpturing by large tsunami—a process that will be described in the following chapter.

All these processes, except Mach–Stem waves, are sensitive to changes in shoreline geometry. This variability accounts for the wide variation in tsunami wave heights over short distances. Within some embayments, it takes several waves to build up peak tsunami wave heights. Figure 2.10 maps the run-up heights around Hawaii for the Alaskan Tsunami of April 1, 1946 (Shepard 1977; Camfield 1994). The northern coastline facing the tsunami received the highest run-up. However, there was also a tendency for waves to wrap around the islands and reach higher run-ups at supposedly protected sites, especially on the islands of Kauai and Hawaii. Because of refraction effects, almost every promontory also experienced large run-ups, often more than

Fig. 2.9 Sequential photographs of the March 9, 1957 Tsunami overriding the backshore at Laie point on the island of Oahu, Hawaii. An earthquake in the Aleutian islands 3,600 km away, with a surface magnitude of 8.3, generated the tsunami. Photograph credit: Henry Helbush. *Source* United States Geological Survey, catalogue of disasters #B57C09-002

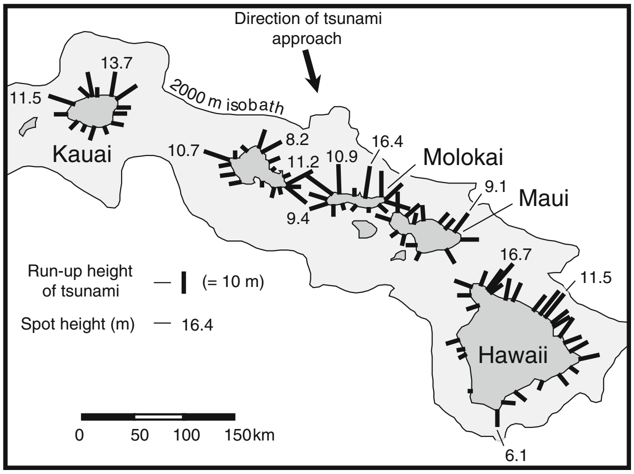


Fig. 2.10 Run-up heights around the Hawaiian islands for the Alaskan Tsunami of April 1, 1946. Based on Shepard (1977)

5 m high. Steep coastlines were hardest hit because the tsunami waves could approach shore with minimal energy dissipation. For all of these reasons, run-up heights were spatially very variable. In some places, for example on the north shore of Molokai, heights exceeded 10 m, while several kilometers away they did not exceed 2.5 m.

Tsunami interaction with inshore topography also explains why larger waves often appear later in a tsunami wave train. For example during the 1868 Tsunami off Arica, South America, the *USS Wateree* and the Peruvian ship *America* escaped the first two waves, but were picked up by a third wave 21 m high (Camfield 1994). The wave moved the two ships 5 km up the coast and 3 km inland, overtopping sand dunes (Fig. 2.11). The ships came to rest at the foot of the coastal range, where run-up had surged to a height 14 m above sea level. Similarly, during the April 1, 1946 Tsunami that devastated Hilo, Hawaii (the same tsunami that destroyed the Scotch Cap lighthouse shown in Figs. 2.1 and 2.9), many people were killed by the third wave, which was much higher than the preceding two.

Shallow-water long-wave equations can accurately simulate run-up. Figure 2.12 presents the results for a tsunami originally 3 m high with a period of 900 s traveling across a shelf of 12 m depth onto a beach of 1 % slope (Mader 1990). Under these conditions, linear theory would have the wave breaking several kilometers from shore. However, the shallow-water long-wave equations indicate that the wave surges onto the beach with a wave front that is 3.5 m high. This is similar to many descriptions of tsunami approaching shallow coasts, especially the one that approached the coast of Thailand during the Indian Ocean Tsunami event. While flooding can occur long distances inland, the velocity of the wave front can slow dramatically. During the Oaxaca, Mexico Tsunami of October 9, 1995, people were able to outrun the wave as it progressed inland (Anon 2005). A tsunami's backwash can be just as fast as, if not faster than, its run-up. The modeled wave shown in Fig. 2.12 took 300 s to reach its most shoreward point, but just over 100 s to retreat from the coast. Tsunami backwash is potentially just as dangerous as run-up. Unfortunately, little work has been done on tsunami backwash.

The sheltered locations on the lee side of islands appear particularly vulnerable to tsunami run-up (Briggs et al. 1995). Solitary waves propagate easily along steep shores, forming a trapped edge wave. Laboratory models show that the maximum run-up height of this trapped wave is greatest towards the rear of an island. More importantly, the run-up velocity here can be up to three times faster than at the front. For example, the December 12, 1992 tsunami along the north coast of Flores Island, Indonesia, devastated two villages in the lee of Babi, a small coastal island lying 5 km offshore (Yeh et al. 1993, 1994; Tsuji et al. 1995). Run-up having maximum heights of 5.6–7.1 m completely destroyed two villages and killed 2,200 people. Similarly, during the July 12, 1993 Tsunami in the Sea of Japan, the town of Hamatsumae, lying behind the Island of Okusihir, was destroyed by a 30 m high tsunami run-up that killed 330 people (Shuto and Matsutomi 1995).

Finally, tsunami run-up can also take on complex forms. Video images of tsunami waves approaching shore show that some decay into one or more bores. A bore is a special waveform in which the mass of water propagates shoreward with the wave (Yeh 1991). The leading edge of the wave is often turbulent. Waves in very shallow water can also break down into multiple bores or solitons. Soliton formation can be witnessed on many beaches where wind-generated waves cross a shallow shoal, particularly at low tide. Such waves are paradoxical because bores should dissipate their energy rapidly through turbulence and frictional attenuation, especially on dry land. However, tsunami bores are particularly damaging as they cross a shoreline. Detailed analysis indicates that the bore pushes a small wedge-shaped body of water shoreward as it approaches the shoreline. This transfers momentum to the wedge, increasing water velocity and turbulence by a factor of two. While there is a rapid decrease in velocity inland, material in the zone of turbulence can be subject to impact forces greater than those produced by ordinary waves. Often objects can travel so fast that they become water-borne missiles. This process can also transport a large amount of beach sediment inland. Tsunami that degenerate into bores are thus particularly effective in sweeping debris inland. Bores were crucial in the way the Indian Ocean Tsunami of 2004 impacted the west coast of Thailand and the Tōhoku Tsunami of 2011 propagated across the Sendai Plain.

Fig. 2.11 The American warship Wateree in the foreground and the Peruvian warship America in the background. Both ships were carried inland 3 km by a 21 m high tsunami wave during the Arica, South American event of August 13, 1868. Retreat of the sea from the coast preceded the wave, bottoming both boats. The Wateree, being flat hulled, bottomed upright and then surfed the crest of the tsunami wave. The America, being keel-shaped, was rolled repeatedly by the tsunami. Photograph courtesy of the United States Geological Survey. *Source* Catalogue of Disasters #A68H08-002

2.5.2 Inland Penetration and Velocity

As a rough rule of thumb, the cross-sectional area of coastline flooded by a tsunami is equal to the cross-sectional area of water under the wave crest close to shore (Fig. 2.13). The bigger the tsunami, or the longer its wave period, the greater the volume of water carried onshore and the greater the extent of flooding. The maximum distance that run-up can penetrate inland on flat and sloping coasts can be calculated using the following formulae (Hills and Mader 1997; Pignatelli et al. 2009):

$$x_{\max} = (H_t)^{1.33} n^{-2} k \tag{2.14}$$

$$x_{\max} = (H_t)^{1.33} n^{-2} k \cos \beta_l \tag{2.15}$$

where

$x_{\max}$ = limit of landward incursion (m)
n = Manning's n
k = a constant
β_l = slope of land surface

Very smooth terrain such as mud flats or pastures has a Manning's n of 0.015. Areas covered in buildings have a value of 0.03, and densely treed landscapes have a value of 0.07. The constant, k, in Eq. 2.14 has been evaluated for many tsunami and has a value of 0.06. The equation assumes that the run-up height equals the maximum depth of the tsunami at shore. Using this value, the maximum distance that tsunami can flood inland is plotted in Fig. 2.14 for different run-up heights, for the three values of Manning's n mentioned. For developed land on flat coastal plains, a tsunami with a height of 10 m at shore can penetrate 1.4 km inland. Exceptional tsunami with heights at shore of 40–50 m can race 9–12 km inland. Only large earthquakes, submarine landslides, and asteroid impacts with the ocean can generate these latter wave heights. For crops or pasture, the same waves could theoretically rush inland four times further—distances of 5.8 km for a 10 m high wave at shore and 36–49 km for the 40–50 m high tsunami. The Indian Ocean Tsunami at Banda Aceh, Indonesia in 2004 with a height of 10 m at shore reached these predicted limits, traveling 5 km inland. Equation 2.14, and field research (Shuto 1993), also indicates that the effect of

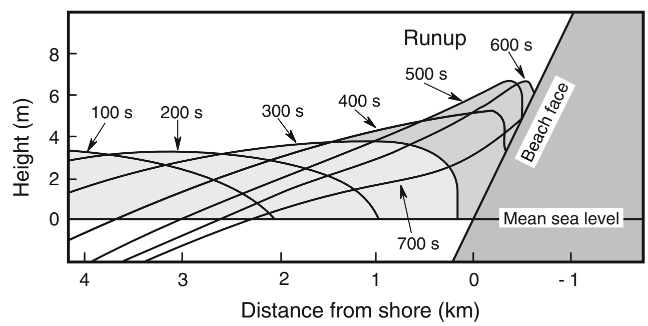


Fig. 2.12 Run-up of a tsunami wave onto a beach modeled using shallow-water, long-wave equations. The model used a grid spacing of 10 m and 0.5 s time increments. The original sinusoidal wave had a height of 3 m and a period of 900 s. Run-up peaked at 6 m above mean sea level and penetrated 600 m inland on a 1 % slope. Based on Mader (1990)

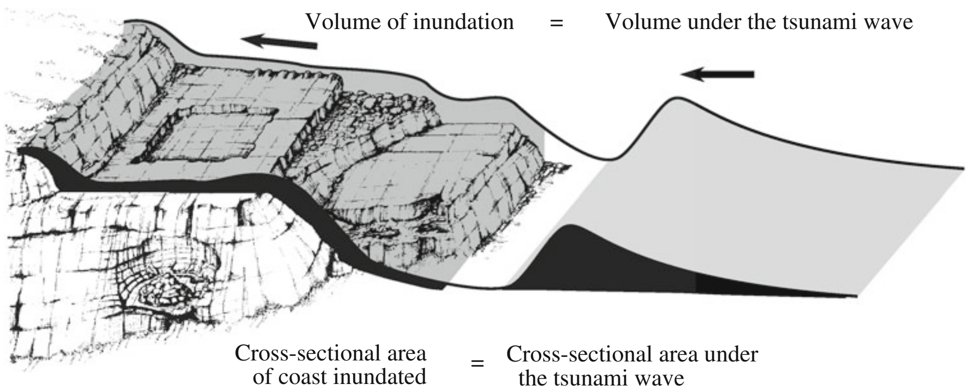


Fig. 2.13 Schematic diagram showing that the cross-sectional area of coastline flooded, and volume of inundation by a tsunami is equal to the cross-sectional area and volume of water under the tsunami wave crest. The landscape represented in this diagram will be described in Chap. 4

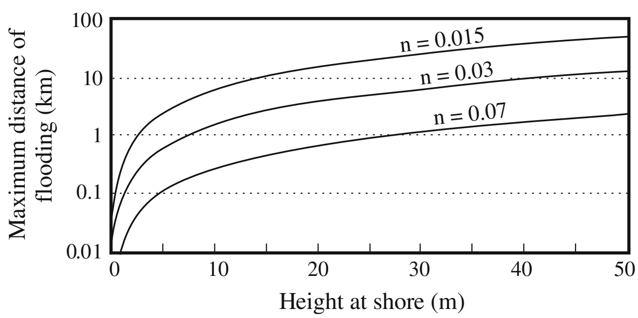


Fig. 2.14 Tsunami height versus landward limit of flooding on a flat coastal plain of varying roughness. Roughness is represented by Manning's n, where n equals 0.015 for very smooth topography, 0.03 for developed land, and 0.07 for a densely treed landscape. Based on Hills and Mader (1997)

a tsunami can be minimized on flat coastal plains by planting dense stands of trees. For example, a 10 m high tsunami can only penetrate 260 m inland across a forested coastal plain where the trees have a diameter large enough to withstand the high flow velocities without snapping.

Equation 2.2 indicates that the velocity of a tsunami wave is solely a function of water depth. Once a tsunami wave reaches dry land, wave height equates with water depth and the following equations apply:

$$H_t = d \tag{2.16}$$

$$v_r = 2(gH_t)^{0.5} \tag{2.17}$$

where

v_r = velocity of run-up (m s^{-1})
d = the depth of water flow over land (m)

This equation yields velocities of 8 s^{-1}– 9 m s^{-1} for a 2 m high tsunami wave at shore (Camfield 1994). Where tsunami behave as solitary waves and encircle steep islands, velocities in the lee of the island have been found to be three times higher than those calculated using this equation (Yeh et al. 1994). The velocity defined by Eq. 2.17 has the potential to move sediment and erode bedrock, producing geomorphic features in the coastal landscape that uniquely define the present of both present-day and past tsunami events. These signatures will be described in detail in the following chapter.

References

Anon., La Manzanillo Tsunami. University Southern California Tsunami Research Group website (2005), http://www.usc.edu/dept/tsunamis/manzanillo/

R.J. Blong, *Volcanic Hazards: A Sourcebook on the Effects of Eruptions* (Academic Press, Sydney, 1984)

B.A. Bolt, W.L. Horn, G.A. MacDonald, R.F. Scott, *Geological Hazards* (Springer, Berlin, 1975)

M.J. Briggs, C.E. Synolakis, G.S. Harkins, D.R. Green, Laboratory experiments of tsunami runup on a circular island. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 569–593 (1995)

E. Bryant, *Natural Hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2005)

J.P. Caminade, D. Charlie, U. Kanoglu, S. Koshimura, H. Matsutomi, A. Moore, C. Ruscher, C. Synolakis, T. Takahashi, Vanuatu earthquake and tsunami cause much damage, few casualties. Eos Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **81**(641), 646–647 (2000)

F.E. Camfield, Tsunami effects on coastal structures. J.Coastal Res. Spec. Issue No. 2, 177–187 (1994)

B.H. Choi, E. Pelinovsky, K.O. Kim, J.S. Lee, Simulation of the trans-oceanic tsunami propagation due to the 1883 Krakatau volcanic eruption. Nat. Hazards Earth Syst. Sci. **3**, 321–332 (2003)

E.L. Geist, Local tsunamis and earthquake source parameters. Adv. Geophys. **39**, 117–209 (1997)

S. Harig, C. Chaeroni, W.S. Pranowo, J. Behrens, Tsunami simulations on several scales. Ocean Dyn. **58**, 429–440 (2008)

J.G. Hills, C.L. Mader, Tsunami produced by the impacts of small asteroids. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. **822**, 381–394 (1997)

F. Imamura, A.C. Yalciner, G. Ozyurt, Tsunami modelling manual (TUNAMI model) (2006), http://www.tsunami.civil.tohoku.ac.jp/hokusai3/E/projects/manual-ver-3.1.pdf

K. Iida, T. Iwasaki (eds.), *Tsunamis: Their Science and Engineering* (Reidel, Dordrecht, 1983)

P.D. Komar, *Beach Processes and Sedimentation*, 2nd edn. (Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, 1998)
P.L.F. Liu, H. Yeh, C. Synolakis (eds.), *Advanced Numerical Models for Simulating Tsunami Waves and Runup* (World Scientific Publishing Company, Singapore, 2008)
C.L. Mader, Numerical simulation of tsunamis. J. Phys. Oceanogr. **4**, 74–82 (1974)
C.L. Mader, *Numerical modeling of water waves* (University of California Press, Berkeley, 1988)
C.L. Mader, Numerical tsunami flooding study: 1. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **8**, 79–96 (1990)
D.J. Miller, Giant waves in Lituya Bay, Alaska. US Geol. Surv. Prof. Pap. **354-C**, 51–86 (1960)
S. Murata, F. Imamura, K. Katoh, Y. Kawata, S. Takahashi, T. Takayama, Tsunami: To survive from Tsunami. Advance Series on Ocean Engineering 32, (Kindle edition) (World Scientific, New Jersey, 2010)
D. Myles, *The Great Waves* (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1985)
National Geophysical Data Center 2013. (NGDC/WDS) Global Historical Tsunami Database. Boulder, Colorado. http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/tsu_db.shtml
E.A. Okal, Seismic parameters controlling far-field tsunami amplitudes: a review. Nat. Hazards **1**, 67–96 (1988)
E. Pelinovsky, *Tsunami Wave Hydrodynamics* (Institute of Applied Physics, Nizhny Novgorod, 1996). (in Russian)
C. Pignatelli, G. Sansò, G. Mastronuzzi, Evaluation of tsunami flooding using geomorphologic evidence. Mar. Geol. **260**, 6–18 (2009)
F.P. Shepard, *Geological Oceanography* (University of Queensland Press, St. Lucia, 1977)
N. Shuto, Tsunami intensity and disasters, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by S. Tinti (Kluwer, Dordrecht, 1993), pp. 197–216
N. Shuto, H. Matsutomi, Field Survey of the 1993 Hokkaido Nansei-Oki earthquake tsunami. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 649–663 (1995)
C.E. Synolakis, The run-up of solitary waves. J. Fluid Mech. **185**, 523–545 (1987)
C.E. Synolakis, E.N. Bernard, V.V. Titov, U. Kânoğlu, F.I. González, Validation and verification of Tsunami numerical models. Pure Appl. Geophys. **165**, 2197–2228 (2008)
S. Tadepalli, C.E. Synolakis, The run-up of N-waves on sloping beaches. Proc. R. Soc. Lond. **A445**, 111–112 (1994)
A.S. Trenhaile, *Coastal Dynamics and Landforms* (Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1997)
Y. Tsuji, H. Matsutomi, F. Imamura, M. Takeo, Y. Kawata, M. Matsuyama, T. Takahashi, Sunarjo, P. Harjadi, Damage to coastal villages due to the 1992 Flores Island earthquake tsunami. Pure Appl. Geophys. **144**, 481–524 (1995)
V.V. Titov, F.I. González, Implementation and testing of the method of splitting tsunami (MOST) Model. NOAA Technical Memorandum ERL PMEL No. 112 (1997), http://www.pmel.noaa.gov/pubs/PDF/tito1927/tito1927.pdf
H.C. von Baeyer, Catch the wave. The Sciences **29**, 10–13 (1999)
R.L. Wiegel, *Oceanographical Engineering* (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1964), pp. 95–108
R.L. Wiegel, Tsunamis, in *Earthquake Engineering*, ed. by R.L. Wiegel (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1970), pp. 253–306
H.H. Yeh, Tsunami bore runup. Nat. Hazards **4**, 209–220 (1991)
H.H. Yeh, P. Liu, M. Briggs, C. Synolakis, Propagation and amplification of tsunamis at coastal boundaries. Nature **372**, 353–355 (1994)
H.H. Yeh, F. Imamura, C. Synolakis, Y. Tsuji, P. Liu, S. Shi, The Flores Island tsunamis. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **74**, 369.S (1993)
Y.J. Zhang, A.M. Baptista, An efficient and robust tsunami model on unstructured grids. Part I: inundation benchmarks. Pure. appl. Geophys. **165**, 1–20 (2008)

Part II

Tsunami-Formed Landscapes

3 Signatures of Tsunami in the Coastal Landscape

3.1 Introduction

Tsunami are high-magnitude phenomena that can achieve flow velocities at shore of 15 m s^{-1} or more. These flows have the potential to leave many depositional and erosional signatures near the coastline (Fig. 3.1). Dawson et al. (1991), Dawson and Shi (2000) have attempted to catalogue some of these signatures, but ignored bedrock erosional and large-scale landscape features. Figure 3.2 rectifies these deficiencies by encompassing most of the geomorphic signatures found in the literature. The impact of paleo-tsunami can be identified where these signatures have been preserved, singly or more preferably, in combination. The depositional signatures of tsunami can be further subdivided into sedimentary deposits and geomorphic forms. The most commonly recognized depositional signature is the occurrence of anomalous sand sheets or lamina sandwiched in peats or muds on coastal plains. The sedimentary deposits, except for imbricated boulders, are less dramatic because they do not form prominent features in the landscape. Without detailed examination, they also could be attributed to other processes, mainly storms. Many of the signatures, such as aligned stacks of boulders, also reveal the direction of approach of a tsunami to a coastline. In many cases, tsunami have approached at an angle to the coast—a feature not commonly associated with the dynamics of tsunami described in Chap. 2. Suites of signatures define unique tsunami-dominated coastal landscapes. The signatures of tsunami will be described in this chapter, while the formation of tsunami-generated landscapes will be discussed in Chap. 4.

The signatures of tsunami were formulated from field evidence linked to earthquake-generated tsunami around the Pacific Rim and to the presence of tsunami identified along a 400-km stretch of the south coast of New South Wales, Australia (Fig. 3.3a). Many of the features summarized in Fig. 3.2 are dramatic and allude controversially to tsunami events an order of magnitude larger than those normally associated with earthquake-generated tsunami. These latter types of signatures have since been used to identify the presence of paleo-tsunami along other sections of the Australian coastline, particularly in northeastern Queensland, northwest Australia, and on Lord Howe Island in the Tasman Sea; in New Zealand; along the east coast of Scotland; and in the Bristol Channel, UK. It is not intended here to debate the merits of this evidence, as this has been done in many peer-reviewed scientific papers. The signatures of large tsunami are not related to storms. Submarine landslides, asteroid impacts with the ocean, and the largest earthquakes produce mega-tsunami features. This evidence will be presented in the second half of this book.

Fig. 3.1 The remnant plug at the center of a vortex bored into granite at the front of a cliff at Cape Woolamai, Phillip Island, Victoria, Australia. The ridges in the foreground indicate that flow around the plug was counterclockwise and consisted of a double helix. A catastrophic tsunami wave produced the vortex as it washed along the cliff. © John Meier

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_3,

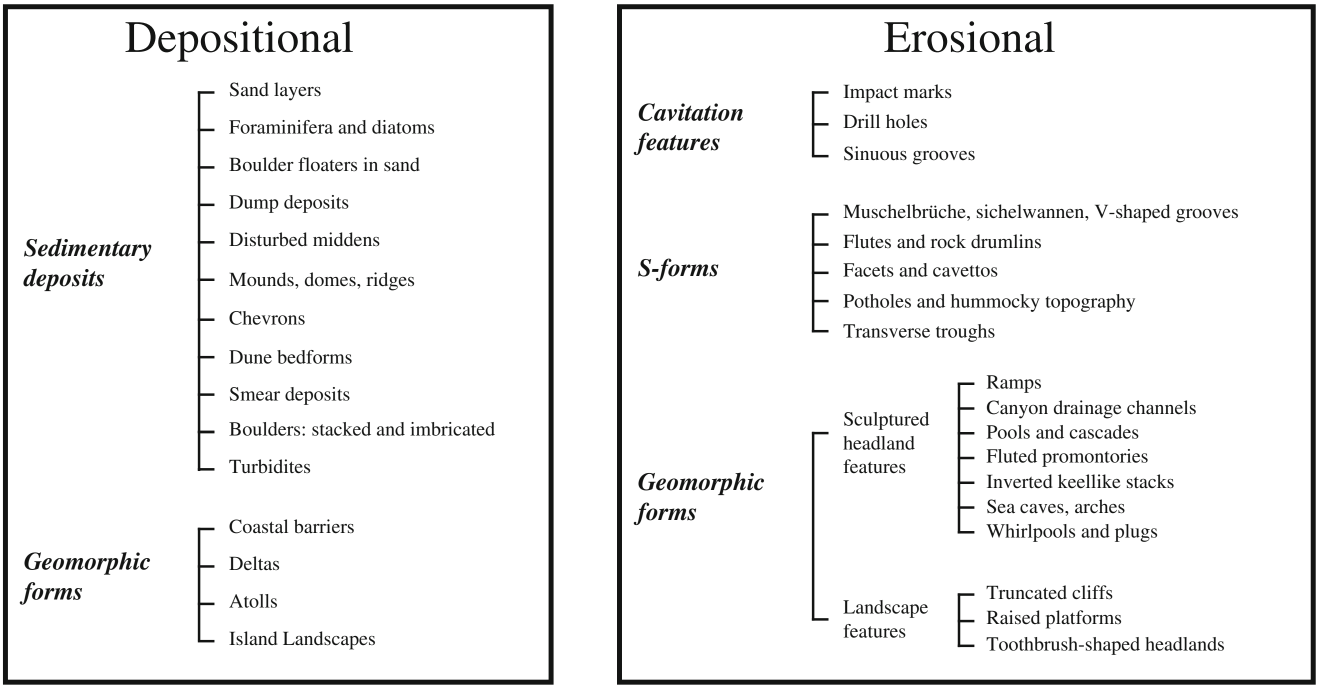


Fig. 3.2 Depositional and erosional signatures of tsunami

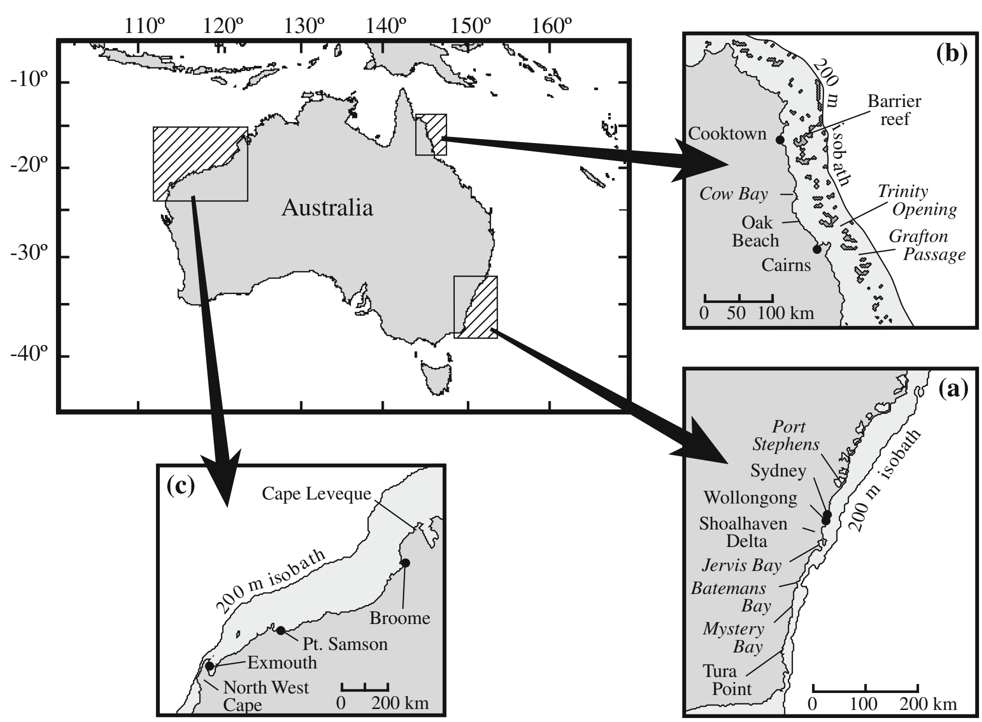


Fig. 3.3 Locations of coastline around Australia showing the most prominent signatures of paleo-tsunami: **a** south coast of New South Wales, **b** Cairns coast, northeast Queensland, and **c** northwest West Australia

3.2 Depositional Signatures of Tsunami

3.2.1 Buried Sand or Anomalous Sediment Layers

The commonest signature of tsunami is the deposition of landward tapering sandy units up to 50 cm thick sandwiched between finer material and peats on flat coastal plains. Tsunami sand units form part of a coherent landward thinning splay of fining sediment extending up to 10 km or more inland. The number of units is often characteristic of the causative mechanism of the wave. For example, tsunami generated by submarine landslides generally produce wave trains with two to five large waves. Each wave is capable of moving sediment inland. Multiple sand layers cannot be produced by storm surge because it occurs as a single wave event. In contrast, earthquake-generated wave trains, while consisting of tens of waves, tend to produce only a single wave that is large enough to transport sediment inland. Without additional evidence, it may be difficult to separate an earthquake-generated tsunami deposit from that produced by a storm surge.

Figure 3.4 shows the relative grain size and sorting in a 52 cm thick sand unit at Ardmore, Scotland, deposited by large tsunami from the Storegga slide off the west coast of Norway 7950 years ago (Dawson et al. 1988; Dawson 1994). This tsunami deposited fine sand and silt as much as 80 km inland across numerous estuarine flats—termed carseland—that are now raised along the east coast of Scotland (Long et al. 1989; Dawson et al. 1998; Smith et al. 2004). The tsunami and its wider impact will be described in more detail in Chap. 7. Each wave in Fig. 3.4 is numbered sequentially. The first wave, as expected, had the greatest wave energy and moved a greater range of grain sizes. Subsequent waves moved finer sediment, probably because of decreasing wave height or the unavailability of coarser sediment. While the last wave was smaller, it transported a wider range of grain sizes than the previous three waves. This may reflect the recycling of coarse sediment seaward by channelised backwash.

Considerable attempts have been made to date anomalous sand layers and relate them to historical tsunami events. Along the Sanriku coast of northeast Honshu Island, Japan—renowned for deadly tsunami—up to thirteen well-sorted sand layers can be found intercalated within black organic muds in swamps and ponds (Minoura et al. 1994). The sand layers are spatially extensive, but do not form erosional contacts with the underlying muds. This suggests that sediment settled from suspension in quiescent waters stranded in depressions after rapid drowning by tsunami that exceeded 1 m in height. The layers have been correlated to known tsunami events originating off the coast and from

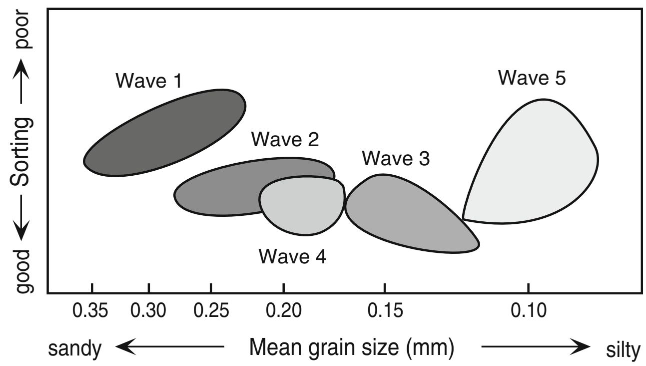


Fig. 3.4 Grain size and sorting relationships throughout a 52 cm thick sand unit at Ardmore, Scotland, deposited by a tsunami associated with the Storegga submarine slide

distant sources in the Pacific Ocean (Table 3.1). Seven of the tsunami formed locally; however, four of the events originated from either Chile or the Kuril Islands to the north. Surprisingly, the severe Chilean Tsunami of May 22, 1960 did not flood any of the marshes. In addition, no event prior to 1710 is preserved in the sediments despite this coastline having historical records of earlier events. The stratigraphic evidence designates this coastline as the most frequently threatened inhabited coastline in the world. The November 1, 1755 Lisbon Tsunami, generated by one of the largest earthquakes ever, deposited sand layers along the Portuguese coast (Dawson et al. 1995) and as far as the Isles of Scilly off the west coast of England (Foster et al. 1991). In the 20th century, the Grand Banks Tsunami of November 18, 1929, which was produced by a submarine landslide, laid down sand layers on the Burin Peninsula in Newfoundland (Tuttle et al. 2004). Following the Chilean Tsunami of May 22, 1960, sand layers were deposited in the Río Lingue estuary of south-central Chile (Wright and Mella 1963), while the Alaskan Tsunami of March 27, 1964 deposited sand units along the coasts of British Columbia (Huntley and Clague 1996). More recently, this signature was observed on the island of Flores, Indonesia, following the tsunami of December 12, 1992 (Minoura et al. 1997) and along the Aitape coast, Papua New Guinea, as the result of the tsunami of July 17, 1998 (Gelfenbaum and Jaffe 1998). In both of the latter cases, landward-tapering wedges of sand were deposited over 500 m inland from the shoreline. These examples will be described in more detail in the chapter on earthquake-generated tsunami. By far the thickest sand layers were deposited by the recent Indian Ocean Tsunami of December 26, 2004. In Banda Aceh, Indonesia, the sand layer was a massive 0.7 m thick and contained angular pebbles and soil rip-up clasts (United States Geological Survey 2005a). In Sri Lanka, the sand layer was 0.37 m thick (United States Geological Survey 2005b). This event will be described in detail in Chap. 6.

Table 3.1 Correspondence between the inferred age of anomalous sand layers and dated tsunami events on the Sanriku coast of northeast Honshu Island, Japan

Inferred age	Closest corresponding event	Source
1948	4 March 1952	Hokkaido
1930	3 March 1933	Sanriku
1905	5 June 1896	Sanriku
1887	9 May 1877	Chile
1861	13 August 1868	Chile
1853	23 July 1856	Sanriku
1843	20 July 1835	Sanriku
1805	7 January 1793	Sanriku
1787	29 June 1780	Kuril Islands
1772	16 December 1763	Sanriku
1769	15 March 1763	Sanriku
1742	25 May 1751	Chile
1710	8 July 1730	Chile

Source From Minoura et al. (1994)

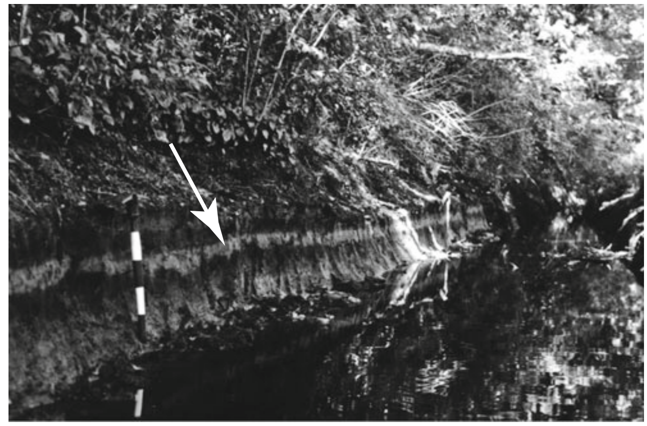


Fig. 3.5 Sand layer, deposited by tsunami, sandwiched between peats at Cultus Bay, Washington State. The markings on the shovel are at 0.1 m intervals. The tsunami event was radiocarbon-dated from *Triglochin* rhizomes in the upper peat at AD 1040–1150 (Huntley and Clague 1996)

Older chronologies have been discovered. In a back barrier lagoon at Lake Jusan on the northern end of Honshu Island, facing the Sea of Japan, layers of medium sand 40 cm or more in thickness are sandwiched within organic ooze (Minoura and Nakaya 1991). Sedimentological analysis indicates that the sands originated from sand dunes or the open ocean beaches. These deposits have been linked to large tsunami events with wave heights in excess of 6 m occurring at intervals of 250–400 years over the past 1800 years. On the Pacific coast of Honshu, on the Sendai Plain, as many as five sand layers are sandwiched in peats up to 4 km inland (Minoura and Nakaya 1991; Minoura et al. 2001). Two of the upper layers can be correlated to killer tsunami that swept over the plain in 869 and 1611. The 869 event prophetically matches the extent of the severe Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011.

Without historical records, anomalous sand layers allude to paleo-tsunami. Where multiple layers are present, then recurrence intervals can be determined, especially along coastlines that have only been settled in the last few centuries. For example, on the southeastern coast of the Kamchatka Peninsula of eastern Russia, sand layers are preserved in peats or organic-rich alluvium (Pinegina et al. 1996). These sequences also contain volcanic ash layers or tephras that can be used to date the sequences. The tsunamigenic layers consist of coarse marine sand mixed with gravel and pebbles in landward tapering sheets 2–3 cm thick. The largest tsunami overrode terraces 15–30 m above sea level up to 10 km from the coast. Many of the layers show evidence of suspension transport of sediment, in some cases aided by the passage of tsunami over frozen or icy ground. Forty events can be identified over the past 2000 years, revealing a recurrence interval of one major event every 50 years. Not all events, though, may have been preserved, because the recurrence interval since 1737 averages one tsunami event every 12.3 years. Along the west coast of North America, anomalous sand layers are trapped within peats, show sharp non-erosional upper contacts, and erosional bottom ones (Atwater 1987; Darienzo and Peterson 1990; Clague and Bobrowsky 1994). The sand layers are 1–30 cm thick (Fig. 3.5) and similar in grain size to beach and dune sands on the adjacent seaward coast. Both optical luminescence dating of quartz sand and radiocarbon dating of buried carbon indicate that a great earthquake occurred along 700 km of the Cascadia subduction zone 300 years ago (Darienzo and Peterson 1990; Huntley and Clague 1996). The exact age has been inferred from the recording of a tsunami in Japan on January 26, 1700 (Satake et al. 1996) The Kwenaitchechat North American Indian legend in Chap. 1 referred to this event. At least five other events have been identified, with three of the largest occurring somewhere between 600 and 900; 1000 and 1400; and 2800 and 3200 years ago. At Crescent City, California, up to 12 additional sand layers have been found in a peat bog (Aalto et al. 1999). This record is similar to the Kamchatka Peninsula in frequency. Interestingly, the tsunami from the Great Alaskan Earthquake of March 27, 1964 only produced a thin sand layer about a centimeter thick here. The lack of cross bedding in the units indicates deposition out of turbulent suspension, while alternation within the same unit between sand and silty clay suggests pulses of sediment entrainment, transport, and deposition.

Numerous paleo-studies have been carried out in the Mediterranean region. In the Huelva Estuary in the Gulf of Cadiz of Spain, five, thin, shelly beds characteristic of tsunami deposition were found in thick, tidal muds (Morales et al. 2008). Each of the beds could be linked to an historical tsunami event going back in antiquity to 395. In the Gargano region of southeastern Italy, multiple sandy deposits in marsh areas suggest an average recurrence interval of 1200–1700 years for tsunami events since 3500 BC (De Martini et al. 2003). While very infrequent, tsunami in this region are still a distinct possibility given enough time. Finally, dating of sand layers in the Bay of Palairos-Pogonia, northwest Greece shows that five strong tsunami have occurred with a recurrence interval of 500–1000 years over the past 4000 years (Vött et al. 2011).

3.2.2 Foraminifera and Diatoms

Silty sand units deposited inland by tsunami can also contain a distinct signature of marine diatoms or foraminifera. Foraminifera are small unicellular animals, usually about the size of a grain of sand, that secrete a calcium carbonate shell. On the other hand, diatoms are similarly sized, single-celled plants that secrete a shell made of silica. Both organisms vary in size and live suspended either in the water column (planktonic) or on the seabed (benthic). Under fair-weather conditions, only the larger benthonic species are transported shoreward as bedload under wave action and deposited on the beach (Haslett et al. 2000). Smaller benthonic and the suspended planktonic species are moved offshore in backwash or transported alongshore in currents to quiescent locations such as estuaries or the low-energy end of a beach. Storm wave conditions tend to move sediment, including diatoms and foraminifera, offshore in backwash, undertow, or rips. However, winds can blow surface waters to shore. A storm assemblage includes very small diatoms or foraminifera diluted with larger, benthonic foraminifera reworked from pre-storm beach sediments. Tsunami assemblages are chaotic because a tsunami wave moves water from a number of distinctive habitats that include marine planktonic and benthic, intertidal, and terrestrial environments. A high proportion of the forams and diatoms are broken, with spherical-shaped species being overrepresented because of their greater resistance to erosion. Storm waves are incapable of flinging debris beyond cliff tops, whereas tsunami can override headlands more than 30 m high. In the latter case, the occurrence of coarse, inshore, benthonic species in the debris indicates a marine provenance for the sediment. Where this material is mixed with gravels or other coarse material, it forms one of the strongest depositional signatures of tsunami.

Foram and diatom assemblages have been studied for a number of historic and paleo-tsunami events. For example, the 1 m thick sand layers deposited by the Flores tsunami of December 12, 1992 contain planktonic species such as *Coscinodiscus* and *Cocconeis scutellum* as well as the freshwater species *Pinnularia* (Shi et al. 1995). The Burin Peninsula Tsunami of November 18, 1929 deposited a distinct diatom signature throughout the 25 cm thick sand units in peat swamps (Dawson et al. 1996). While the peats contain only freshwater assemblages, the tsunami sands contain benthic and intertidal mudflat species such as *Paralia sulcata* and *Cocconeis scutellum.* Freshwater species are incorporated in the lowermost part of the sands, indicating that material was ripped up from the surface of the bogs as the tsunami wave swept over them. Finally, tsunami deposits in eastern Scotland attributable to the Storegga slide 7950 years ago contain *Paralia sulcata*, which is ubiquitous in the silty, tidal flat habitats of eastern Scotland (Dawson et al. 1996). The freshwater species *Pinnularia* is also present, indicating that bog deposits were eroded in many locations by the passage of the tsunami wave. These results must be tempered with the results obtained from sediments deposited by the recent Tōhoku Tsunami, March 2011 in Japan. While extensive sand and mud deposits—fining both inland and upwards—were found, these did not consist of marine sediments and hence contained little if any offshore marine diatoms and foraminifera (Szczuciński et al. 2012). Smedile et al. (2011) overcame this type of problem by sampling a marine core from 72 m depth in water in Augusta Bay, southeast Sicily, for foraminifera—dominated by *Nubecularia lucifuga* and *Neocorbina posidonicola*—associated with seaweed and sea grass growing on the inner shelf. These foraminifera are presumably transported seaward by tsunami backwash. Using cluster analysis, they found anomalous inshore foraminifera in 12 layers, three of which could be radiocarbon dated to historic tsunami events affecting eastern Sicily in 1169, 1693, and 1908. One layer possibly represents a tsunami originating from Crete in 365, while an older one is associated with the eruption of Santorini about 3600 years BP. Tsunami along this stretch of coast occur every 330–370 years. This study is rare in that it uses both foraminifera and the detection of anomalous sediment layers—albeit on the seabed—to identify tsunami events. It also overcomes conflicting interpretations between tsunami and storms for the deposition of boulders and sediment on land, because storms are unlikely to influence sedimentation at these depths on the outer shelf.

3.2.3 Boulder Floaters in Sand

Boulders are not usually transported along sand beaches under normal wave conditions. Their presence as isolated floaters within a sand matrix is therefore suggestive of rapid, isolated transport under high-energy conditions. In many cases, deposits containing boulders are less than 1.5 m thick and lie raised above present sea level along

Fig. 3.6 Photograph of the coastal landscape at Riang–Kroko on the island of Flores, Indonesia, following the tsunami of 12, December 1992. The greatest run-up height of 26.2 m above sea level was recorded here. Boulders and gravels have been mixed chaotically into the sand sheet. Note the isolated transport of individual boulders. *Photo credit* Harry Yeh, University of Washington. *Source* National Geophysical Data Center

coastlines with stable sea level histories. Either storm waves superimposed upon a storm surge or tsunami are known to be responsible for such deposits. For example, Hurricane Iniki in Hawaii in 1992 swept a thin carpet of sand containing boulders inland beyond beaches (Bryant et al. 1996), while the tsunami that hit Flores, Indonesia, on December 12, 1992 did likewise (Fig. 3.6) (Shi et al. 1995). While storms can exhume boulders lying at the base of a beach and are known to move boulders alongshore, storm waves cannot deposit sand and boulders together on a beach unless overwash is involved.

The cause of boulder floaters in paleo-deposits is difficult to determine unless such deposits lie above the limits of storms. For example, south of Sydney along the east coast of Australia (Fig. 3.3a), 0.2–0.4 m boulder floaters are common within sand deposits (Bryant et al. 1992). The coastline is tectonically stable, and sea levels have not been more than 1 m higher than present. Here, many deposits lie perched on slopes to elevations of 20 m above sea level, well above the maximum limit of storm surges. Bouldery sands also appear behind beaches where the nearest source for boulders lies up to a kilometer away. Unfortunately, boulder floaters as a signature of tsunami are not an easily recognized one in the field. Boulder floaters often constitute less than 0.1 % by volume of a deposit and lie buried beneath the surface. These facts make them difficult to find unless the deposits are trenched or intensively cored.

3.2.3.1 *Dump* Deposits

Chaotic sediment mixtures, or *dump* deposits, are emplaced in coherent piles or layers above the limits of storm waves, mainly on rocky coasts. They can be problematic. Such deposits can also be formed by solifluction, ice push, slope wash, glowing volcanic avalanches, and human disturbance. *Dump* deposits were first identified along the south coast of New South Wales, Australia (Fig. 3.3a) (Bryant et al. 1992, 1996). Because ice, volcanic activity, and ground freezing are not present along this coast, catastrophic tsunami, as proposed by Coleman (1968) became a viable mechanism for the transportation and deposition of large volumes of sediment with minimal sorting in a very short period. Coarser *dump* deposits, containing an added component of cobble and boulders, often are plastered against the sides or on the tops of headlands along this coast (Fig. 3.7). Many recent deposits may also contain mud lumps. It would be tempting to assign these deposits to storms but for three facts. First, storm waves tend to separate sand and boulder material. Storm waves comb sand from beaches and transport it into the nearshore zone in backwash and rips. Storm swash, however, moves cobbles and boulders landward and deposits them in storm berms. Certainly, storms do not deposit mud and angular mud lumps in coarse sediment deposits on steep slopes. On the other hand, tsunami, because of their low height relative to a long wavelength, form constructional waves along most shorelines, transporting all sediment sizes shoreward. Second, while it may be possible for exceptional storms to toss sediment of varying sizes onto cliff tops more than 15 m above sea level (Solomon and Forbes 1999), tsunami *dump* deposits can be found not only much higher above sea level (Fig. 3.7), but also in sheltered positions. Finally, there is substantial observation from Hawaii and elsewhere of tsunami laying down *dump* deposits (Fig. 3.6) (Bryant et al. 1996).

The internal characteristics or *fabric* of tsunami *dump* deposits allude hydrodynamically to their mode of transport and deposition. This *fabric* is identical to that formed by

Fig. 3.7 A chaotically sorted *dump* deposit on Minnamurra Headland, New South Wales, Australia. The deposit, set in a mud matrix, lies on basalt, yet contains rounded metamorphic beach-worn pebbles. Similar deposits on adjacent headlands contain shell bits. The site is 40 m above sea level on a coast where sea level has been no more than 1–2 m higher than the present over the past 7000 years

pyroclastic density currents or ash clouds emanating from volcanic eruptions (Branney and Zalasiewicz 1999). In a pyroclastic flow, fine particles are suspended and transported by turbulent whirlwinds of gas. While appearing as choking clouds of ash, the particles are so widely spaced that they rarely collide. As these turbulent eddies pass over a spot, they can deposit alternating layers of coarse and fine sediment as the velocity of the current waxes and wanes in a similar fashion to gusts of wind. Where the cloud meets the ground, conditions are different. Sediment concentrations increase and sediment particles ranging in size from silts to boulders undergo countless collisions. The momentum of the flow is equalized between the particles and the flowing current of air. In some cases, the grains may flow independent of any fluid, a phenomenon known as granular flow. Granular flow tends to expel coarse particles to the surface; however, if fluid moves upwards through the flow, then a process called fluidization may allow sediment particles in dense slurries to move as a fluid and remain unsorted. Different processes probably operate at different levels in pyroclastic flows. Turbulence lifts finer particles into the current higher up, while at ground level it enhances fluidization. Similarly, the falling out of particles from slurries near the ground entraps smaller particles into a deposit while expelling water. The latter process also enhances fluidization. From time to time, turbulent vortices penetrate to the bed, allowing the deposition of alternating layers of fine and coarse material. The resulting deposit is disorganized or chaotic in appearance, contains a wide range of particle sizes and may show layering.

All of these characteristics have been proposed for tsunami *dump* deposits with water taking the place of gas (Coleman 1968; Bryant et al. 1992, 1997). Alternating layers of fine and coarse sands can be found as small, eroded blocks embedded in chaotically sorted piles of bouldery sand. The layers were deposited from downward turbulent pulses of water that penetrated to the bed. Chipped gravels and shells form deposits that can also contain fragments that show no evidence of violent transport. The former are milled by the myriad of collisions occurring in granular flow towards the base of the current, while the latter have settled from the less-dense upper regions of flow. Preservation of fragile particles indicates that deposition must have been rapid. Mud clasts are evidence of the erosive power of turbulent vortices impinging upon the bed. Some of the mud clasts are caught in the granular flow and are disaggregated to form the mud matrix. Some clasts are suspended higher into the less dense part of the flow and are later mixed into the deposit unscathed. Not only do turbulent vortices create spatial variation in the internal *fabric* of the deposits, they also account for the rapid spatial variation in the degree of erosion of the landscape upstream. Hence, the eroded upstream sides of headlands that provide the material incorporated into *dump* deposits can still evince weathered soil profiles within meters of bedrock surfaces that have undergone the most intense erosion by vortices.

The rocky headlands of the New South Wales coast also show an unusual variation of *dump* deposits with a strong Aboriginal constituent (Bryant et al. 1992). At 16 locations, Aboriginal kitchen middens have been reworked by tsunami. Kitchen middens are trash heaps containing discontinuous layers of edible shell species mixed with charcoal, bone fragments, and artifact stone chips, set in humic-rich sands. All of the disturbed sites incorporate, as an added component, marine shell grit, water-worn shells, rounded pebbles, or pumice. Humus is usually missing from the reworked deposits. Chronology, based upon the suite of signatures present along this coast, suggests that the deposits are only 500 years old. In many cases, the reworked deposits are overlain by undisturbed midden devoid of pumice. Storm waves can be ruled out because many of the sites are situated in sheltered locations or at excessive heights. Storm waves also tend to erode shell and sand-sized sediment seaward and do not deposit bodies of mixed debris several meters thick, at the point of run-up, on steep backshores at these high elevations. The fact that many of these disturbed middens still contain a high proportion of midden material indicates that disturbance was rapid and incomplete with an input of contaminants from a nearby marine source. Other signatures of tsunami surround all sites. The importance of these disturbed middens will be discussed later in Chap. 9.

Dump deposits have also been described globally (Scheffers and Kellatat 2003) and at specific locations: near Lisbon in Portugal (Scheffers and Kellatat 2005); the south coast of Spain (Scheffers and Kelletat 2004); Cyprus (Kelletat and Schellmann 2002); the Caribbean (Scheffers 2004; Scheffers and Kelletat 2004); the Bahamas (Scheffers and Kelletat 2004); the southern Ryukyu Islands of Japan (Ota et al. 1985); the North Island of New Zealand (Nichol et al. 2003); and on Molokai Island, Hawaii (Moore 2000). The Spanish deposits consist of shell fragments, rounded but broken pebbles and cobbles, and rounded boulders up to several 100 kg in weight. The deposits appear to be related to the November 1, 1755 Lisbon Tsunami. Those in Cyprus are similar. Mixtures of sand, shell, rounded cobbles and boulders can be found up to 15 m above sea level. In the Caribbean, *dump* deposits have been identified on the islands of Guadeloupe, St. Lucia, Grenada, St. Lucia, Aruba, Curaçao, and Bonaire. On Guadeloupe and St. Lucia, such deposits reach up to 50 m above sea level and contain boulders up to 10 tonnes in weight. On these islands and the Bahamas, the tsunami events responsible for the *dump* deposits may be as young as 300–400 years. Often these *dump* deposits, especially in the Caribbean region, are eroded by heavy rainfalls that have removed sand and silt, leaving behind a lag of exhumed boulders. So pervasive are *dump* deposits that they can be considered a universal signature of tsunami that have overwashed rocky environments such as cliffs, coastal platforms and coral reefs, where there is a variety of sediment sizes available for transport.

3.2.4 Mounds, Domes and Ridges

Chaotic *dump* deposits can be molded into isolated mounds, domes and ridges, especially in embayments along rocky coasts. These deposits rise to heights above the limits of modern storm wave activity. None of these deposits can be explained satisfactorily by ordinary wave processes. Shell mounds several tens of centimeters high were formed in Lake Jusan, Japan by a tsunami in 1983 (Minoura and Nakaya 1991). Perhaps the best example of a mound is the sand dome deposited by the 1854 Ansei-Tokai Tsunami in the town of Iruma located at the head of Suruga Bay, central Japan (Sugawara et al. 2005). The tsunami, enhanced fourfold by resonance as it travelled up the narrow v-shaped bay, exceeded a height of 13.2 m. It deposited, parallel to the shoreline, 700,000 m^3 of nearshore sand as a huge mound that reached a height of 11.2 m above sea level. Backwash exited to the side of the re-entrant and hence did not remove the mound. Similar, smaller examples exist along the embayed, south coast of New South Wales, Australia (Bryant et al. 1992). For example, at Bass Point 80 km south of Sydney, Australia, a ridge has been sculptured into mounds standing 2–3 m in elevation. The mounds consist of chaotically sorted shell hash mixed with rounded cobble and boulder-sized debris. The mounds extend 100 m alongshore and lie 5–10 m seaward of a scarp cut into sand dunes. As the shoreline becomes more sheltered, the mounds merge into a 10–20 m wide bench consisting of the same material and rising steeply to a height of 4–5 m above the present storm wave limit. Slopes on both sides of the mounds exceed 20°, a value that is much steeper than the 7–9° found on equilibrium profiles formed by storm waves in similarly sized material. An unusual form similar to the mound deposited at Iruma, Japan can be found at Mystery Bay. It consists of uniform rounded cobbles and rises 3.25 m above the surrounding beach. While no cobbles or gravel occur on the modern beach, no sand occurs in the mound. As at Iruma, backwash exited from the side of the beach. A second, similar ridge lies landward at an elevation of 9.1 m.

There are several examples of ridges formed by tsunami. On the island of Lanai in Hawaii, boulder deposits supposedly deposited by tsunami evince ripple forms 1 m high with a spacing of 100 m between crests (Moore and Moore 1988). On the South Ryukyu Islands in Japan, ridges several meters high and 40 m wide have been linked to tsunami (Ota et al. 1985; Minoura and Nakaya 1991). However, among the most unusual coastal features are the chenier-like ridges formed in Batemans Bay on the New South Wales coast of Australia (Fig. 3.3a). These ridges are described in Bryant et al. (1992). Cheniers are ridges of coarser sediment usually deposited at the limit of storm waves in muddy environments. Batemans Bay is a 14.4 km long, funnel-shaped, sand-dominated embayment that averages 11 m in depth and is semi-compartmentalized by north–south structurally controlled headlands (Fig. 3.8). This shape is conducive to resonance and enhancement of tsunami entering from the open ocean. The basin's resonance

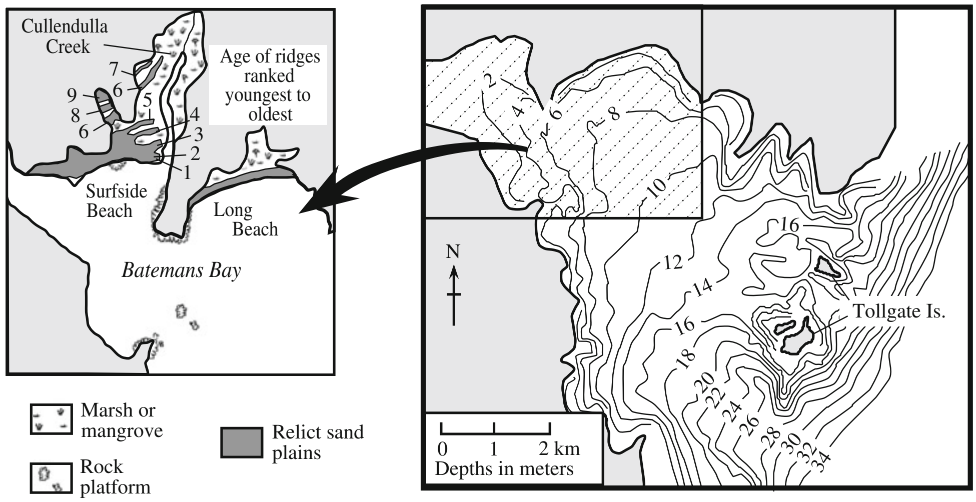


Fig. 3.8 The chenier-like ridges in the Cullendulla Creek embayment at Batemans Bay, New South Wales, Australia (from Bryant et al. 1992)

periods are 4.5, 13.4, 22.5, and 31.0 min, values that fall within the *tsunami window* measured in harbors. The cheniers in the bay consist of a series of six, landward asymmetric ridges deposited in a sheltered embayment presently occupied by Cullendulla Creek (Fig. 3.8). The ridges rise 1.0–1.5 m above the surrounding estuarine flats and increase in width and volume towards the bay. They consist of shell-rich sand overlying estuarine muds. The formation of these chenier ridges by storm waves is difficult to justify because wave refraction reduces wave heights by 80–90 %. Waves would also have to travel in the most convoluted pathway possible to deposit ridges up the re-entrant within Cullendulla Creek. The simpler explanation is that tsunami have deposited chenier-like ridges and banks in this sheltered re-entrant. There is chronological evidence for at least three tsunami events operating within the bay 300, 1300, and 2800 years ago. While Batemans Bay contains the best example of tsunami ridge development along this coast, similar ridges and banks exist in the Port Hacking, Middle Harbor, and Patonga Beach estuaries in the Sydney area 200 km to the north. Spits and ridges lying within sheltered estuarine environments should be examined closely for evidence of a tsunami origin.

3.2.5 Chevrons

Tsunami can also create parabolic-like dunes that are sandy, but contain angular clasts or mud layers that cannot be transported or deposited by wind. These types of ridges exist on Hateruma Island in the South Ryukyus of Japan, where they consist of sand, gravels, and large boulders up to 2 m in width (Ota et al. 1985). They were deposited by the great tsunami of April 24, 1771, which had a possible maximum run-up height in the region of 85.4 m. Another example occurs at the south end of Jervis Bay, New South Wales (Fig. 3.3a). Here a parabolic dune, rising more than

Fig. 3.9 *Fabric* of sand and gravel deposited in a chevron-shaped dune by paleo-tsunami at Steamers Beach, Jervis Bay, Australia. Car keys are for scale. The rounded ball to the left of the keys consists of humate eroded elsewhere from the B-horizon of a podsolic soil profile. This deposit lies 30 m above sea level, while the dune itself crests 130 m above sea level

130 m above sea level, contains gravels and mud clasts (Fig. 3.9) (Bryant et al. 1997). Because these tsunami swash features are symmetrical, they form v-shaped dunes that may be stacked relative to each other. They are also called chevrons after the inverted *v* used in heraldry or the stripes on the arms of a military uniform used to denote rank. This term comes from similarly shaped dunes found in Barbados and dating to the Last Interglacial (Hearty et al. 1998).

The chevron feature in Jervis Bay is contiguous in form, from the present beach to a peak 130 m above present sea level (Bryant et al. 1997). It is an exemplary signature of mega-tsunami because its limits are far beyond those of either storm swash or earthquake-generated tsunami reported in the literature. Four waves are envisaged to have formed the feature (Fig. 3.10). The first wave was depositional, overwashing the hill 130 m above sea level and

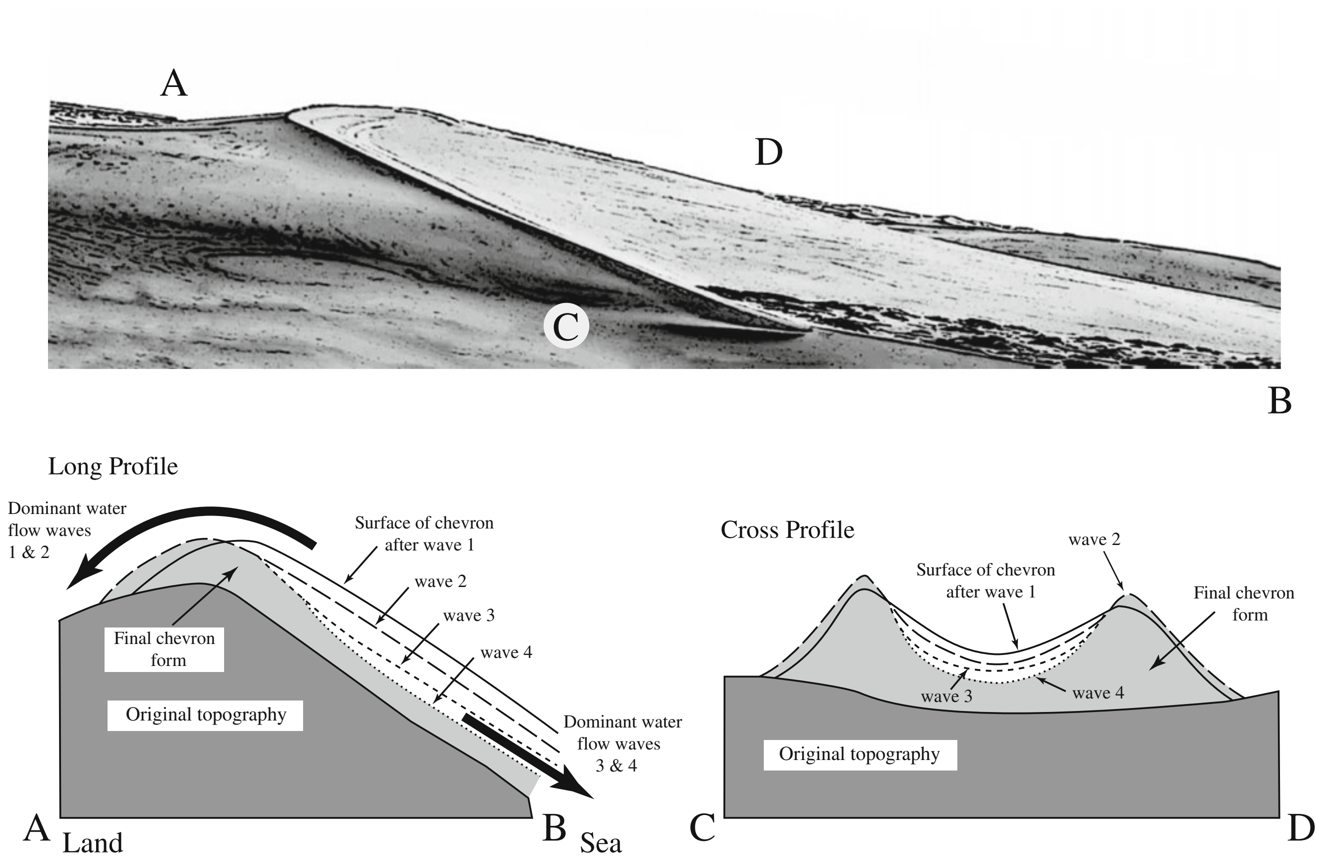


Fig. 3.10 Schematic representation of the formation of a chevron dune at Steamers Beach, Jervis Bay, New South Wales, Australia due to tsunami

depositing most of the sediment in the chevron. The second wave was probably larger; but because most of the available sediment had already been moved onshore, it eroded the seaward portion of the chevron deposited by wave 1. It overwashed the previous deposit and moved a small amount of sediment further inland at the crest. Backwash seaward down the chevron was minimal for each of these waves, because most of the water flowed over the hill. The third wave was smaller and did not reach the crest of the chevron. It didn't bring any sediment to the coast and backwash under the effect of gravity eroded into the central trough of the chevron. The final wave was smaller still and its backwash enhanced erosion in the trough. The resulting form of the chevron is thus depositional at its landward end and sides, but erosional at its seaward end and along the central axis. The sediments shown in Fig. 3.9 are located half way up the flank of the chevron at location C. Independently, Kelletat and Scheffers (2003) examined the orientation of parabolic dunes around Australia. They found that their orientation did not match prevailing winds and could not be wind-formed. If correct, and their hypothesis is extended to other coasts, then chevrons represent the signature of mega-tsunami worldwide (Scheffers et al. 2008). Only large earthquakes, submarine landslides or comet/asteroid impacts with the ocean can generate the tsunami responsible for these common, large-scale features.

3.2.6 Dune Bedforms

Dune bedforms are created under catastrophic flow. Such features were first described in the Scablands of Washington State (Baker 1978, 1981). The Scablands consist of a series of enormous dry canyons occupied by gigantic rippled sandbars. The catastrophic flow originated from the collapse of an ice dam holding back glacial Lake Missoula in the northern Great Plains of the United States during the last Ice Age. Repetitive floods up to 30 m deep spread across sandy plains, creating enormous dune bedforms. Similar dune bedforms can be produced by large tsunami. Two examples have been identified. The first is located at Crocodile Head, north of the entrance to Jervis Bay, Australia (Bryant et al. 1997). Here, sandy ridges containing pebbles and gravels appear as a series of well-defined, undulatory-to-linguoidal giant ripples spread over a distance of at least 1.5 km atop 80 m high cliffs. These mega-ripples have a relief of 6.0–7.5 m, are asymmetric in shape, and spaced 160 m apart. The mega-ripple field is restricted to a 0.5–0.7 km wide zone along the cliffs, and is bounded landward by a linear ridge of sand several meters high paralleling the coastline. This ridge is flanked by small depressions. Further inland, deposits grade rapidly into hummocky topography, and then a 1–2 m thick sandsheet. The mega-ripples were produced by sediment-laden tsunami overwashing the cliffs, with subsequent deposition of sediment into bedforms along the cliff top. Flow then formed an overwash splay as water drained downslope. The flow over the dunes is theorized to have been 7.5–12.0 m deep and to have obtained velocities of 6.9 m s^{-1}–8.1 m s^{-1}. The second example occurs at Point Samson, Western Australia (Fig. 3.3c). Here gravelly mega-ripples have infilled a valley with bedforms that have a wavelength approaching 1,000 m and an amplitude of about 5 m (Nott and Bryant 2003). Flow depth is theorized to have been as great as 20 m with velocities of over 13 m s^{-1}.

Large tsunami can also generate dune bedforms on the seabed. The Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 generated landward asymmetric dunes in 10–15 m depths in Kesennuma Bay, Japan (Haraguchi et al. 2013). The wavelength of the dunes increases seaward from 8 m to 25 m over a distance of more than a kilometer. The dunes are up to 1.5 m high and were formed by landward flow velocities of about 8 m s^{-1}. They consist of silt and sand covered with gravel derived from the surrounding beaches. The gravel was transported as bedload.

3.2.7 Smear Deposits

More enigmatic are deposits on headlands containing a mud matrix. These deposits are labeled smear deposits because they are often spread in a continuous layer less than 30 cm thick over the steep sides and flatter tops of headlands. Along the New South Wales coast, these deposits have been found at elevations 40 m above sea level. These deposits can contain 5–20 % quartz sand, shell, and gravel. Smear deposits are not the products of in situ weathering because many can be found on volcanic sandstone or basalt, which lacks quartz. These smear deposits form the traction carpet at the base of a sediment-rich tsunami-generated flow overwashing headlands. The mud allows sediment to be spread smoothly under substantial pressure over surfaces. When subsequently dried, the packed clay minimizes erosion of the deposit by slope wash on steep faces. The deposit has only been identified on rocky coasts where muddy sediment lies on the seabed close to shore.

3.2.8 Large Boulders and Piles of Imbricated Boulders

Tsunami differ from storm waves in that tsunami dissipate their power at shore rather than within any surf zone. The clearest evidence of this is the movement of colossal boulders onshore. For example, the Flores Tsunami of December 12, 1992 destroyed sections of fringing reef and moved large coral boulders shoreward (Fig. 3.6) (Shi et al. 1995), often beyond the zone where trees were ripped up by the force of the waves. The Sea of Japan Tsunami of May 26, 1983 produced a tsunami over 14 m high. A large block of concrete weighing over 1,000 tonnes was moved 150 m from the beach over dunes 7 m high (Minoura and Nakaya 1991). Boulders transported by tsunami have also been found in paleo-settings. For example, on the reefs of Rangiroa, Tuamoto Archipelago in the southeast Pacific, individual coral blocks measuring up to 750 m^3 have been linked to tsunami rather than to storms (Bourrouilh-Le and Talandier, 1985). Figure 3.11 also shows boulders that have been scattered by tsunami across the reefs at Agari-Hen'na Cape on the eastern side of Miyako Island in the South Ryukyu Islands (Kawana and Pirazzoli 1990; Kawana and Nakata 1994). On Hateruma and Ishigaki Islands in the same group, coralline blocks measuring 100 m^3 in volume have been emplaced up to 30 m above present sea level, 2.5 km from the nearest beach. These boulders have been dated and indicate that tsunami, with a local source, have washed over the islands seven times in the last 4500 years. Two of the largest events occurred 2000 years ago and during the great tsunami of April 24, 1771. In the Leeward Islands of Netherlands Antilles in the Caribbean, boulders weighing up to 280 tonnes have been moved 100 m by repetitive tsunami most likely occurring 500, 1500 and 3500 years ago (Scheffers 2004). In fact, detailed cataloguing of anomalous boulders from the literature indicates that they are a prevalent signature of tsunami on most coasts. The largest boulders theorized as being transported by tsunami occur in Tonga and the Bahamas, with weights of 1,600 tonnes and 2,330 tonnes respectively (Hearty 1997; Frolich et al. 2009). Both relate to higher sea levels during the Last Interglacial.

Along the east coast of Australia, anomalous boulders are incompatible with the storm wave regime (Young and Bryant 1992; Young et al. 1996a). For example, exposed coastal rock platforms along this coast display little movement of boulders up to 1–2 m in diameter, despite the presence of 7 m to 10 m high storm waves. At Boat Harbor, Port Stephens (Fig. 3.3a), blocks measuring 4 m × 3 m × 3 m not only have been moved shoreward more than 100 m, but also have been lifted 10–12 m above existing sea level. At Jervis Bay, preparation zones for block entrainment can be found along

Fig. 3.11 Scattered boulders transported by tsunami and deposited across the reef at Agari-Hen'na Cape on the eastern side of Miyako Island, Ryukyu Island, Japan. Photograph courtesy of Prof. Toshio Kawana, Laboratory of Geography, College of Education, University of the Ryukyus, Nishihara, Okinawa

cliff tops 15 m above sea level. Contentious is the documented appearance of a 200-tonne boulder measuring 6.1 m × 4.9 m × 3.0 m on an intertidal rock platform during a storm in 1912 at Bondi Beach, Sydney (Sussmilch 1912). However, Cass and Cass (2003) show that the boulder appears in an 1881 photograph. It has not moved since, even during the great storms of 1876, 1889, 1912 and 1974—the latter judged the worst in a 100 years. While much higher storm events can be, and have been, invoked for the movement of the boulders now piled prodigiously along this coast, tsunami offer a simpler mechanism for the entrainment of joint-controlled blocks, the sweeping of these blocks across platforms, and their deposition into imbricated piles.

In exceptional cases, in New South Wales, boulders have been deposited as a single-grained swash line at the upper limit of tsunami run-up (Young and Bryant 1992; Young et al. 1996). Some of these tsunami swash lines lie up to 20 m above sea level and involved tractive forces greater than 100 kg m^{-2} (Bryant et al. 1997). Just as unusual are angular boulders jammed into crevices at the back of platforms. For instance, at Haycock Point, north of the Victorian border, angular blocks up to 2 m in length and 0.5 m in width have been jammed tightly into a crevice, often in an interlocking series three or four blocks deep (Young and Bryant 1992). What is more unusual about the deposit is the presence along the adjacent cliff face of isolated blocks 0.4–0.5 m in length perched in crevices 4–5 m up the cliff face. Boulders are also found in completely sheltered locations along the coast. At Bass Point, which extends 2 km seaward from the coast, a boulder beach faces the mainland coast rather than the open sea. Similarly at Haycock Point, rounded boulders, some with volumes of 30 m^3 and weighting 75 tonnes, have been piled into a jumbled mass at the base of a ramp that begins 7 m above a vertical rock face on the sheltered side of the headland (Fig. 3.12). Chatter marks on the ramp surface indicate that many of the boulders have been bounced down the inclined surface.

Perhaps the most dramatic deposits are those containing piles of imbricated boulders (Young et al. 1996a). These piles take many forms, but include boulders up to 106 m^3 in volume and weighing as much as 286 tonnes. The boulders lie *en echelon* one against the other like fallen dominoes, often in parallel lines. At Jervis Bay, New South Wales, blocks weighing almost 100 tonnes have clearly been moved in suspension and deposited in this fashion above the limits of storm waves on top of cliffs 33 m above present sea level (Fig. 3.13). The longest train of imbricated boulders exists at Tuross Head where 2–3 m diameter boulders stand as sentinels one against the other, over a distance of 200 m at an angle to the coast.

The velocity of water necessary to move these large boulders can be related to their widths as follows:

$$\bar{v} = 5.2\, b_I^{0.487} \tag{3.1}$$

$$v_{\min} = 2.06\, b^{0.5} \tag{3.2}$$

where

$\bar{v}$ = mean flow velocity (m s^{-1})
v_{min} = minimum flow velocity (m s^{-1})
b = the intermediate axis or width of a boulder (m)
b_I = intermediate diameter of largest boulders (m)

Equations 3.1 and 3.2, derived from Costa (1983) and Williams (1983) respectively, are based upon unidirectional,

Fig. 3.12 Boulders transported by tsunami down a ramp in the lee of the headland at Haycock Point, New South Wales, Australia. This corner of the headland is protected from storm waves. The ramp descends from a height of 7 m above sea level. Its smooth undular nature is a product of bedrock sculpturing

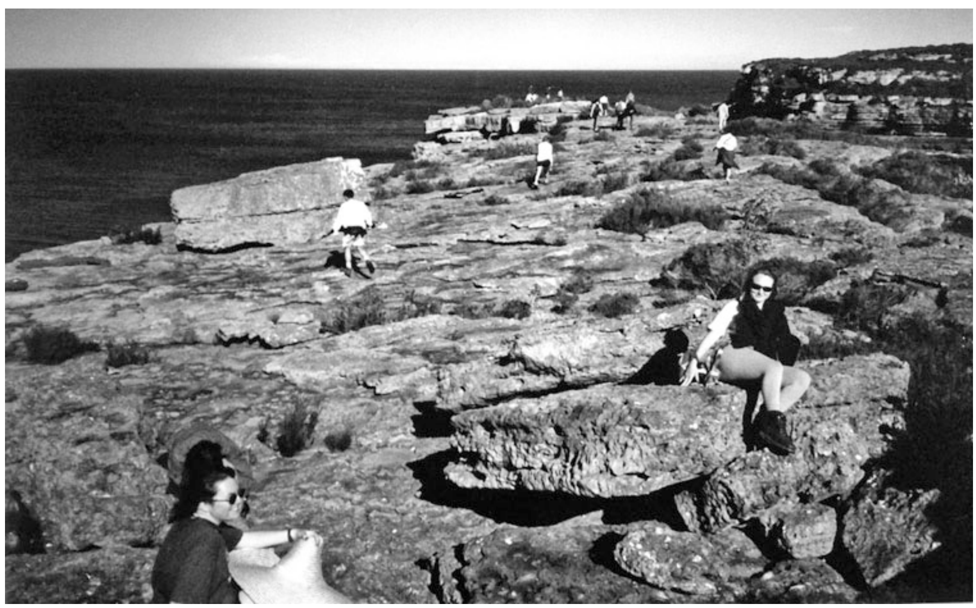


Fig. 3.13 Dumped and imbricated sandstone boulders deposited 33 m above sea level along the cliffs at Mermaids Inlet, Jervis Bay, Australia. Note the eroded surface across which waves flowed from *left* to *right*

fluvial (river) flow. Tsunami behave very much like this once on shore. Table 3.2 presents the theorized velocities of tsunami flow required to move the boulders found along the New South Wales coast using these two equations. The minimum theoretical flow velocity ranges between 2.2 m s^{-1}–4.2 m s^{-1}. Mean flows appear to have exceeded 5 m s^{-1} with values of 7.8 m s^{-1}–10.3 m s^{-1} being obtained on exposed ramps or at the top of cliffs.

It is more useful to be able to determine flow depth because, as shown in the previous chapter, this equates to the height of the tsunami wave at shore—Eq. (2.15). The crucial parameter in the movement of boulders is the drag force, and this is very sensitive to the thickness of the boulder. The thinner the boulder, the greater the velocity of flow required to initiate movement. Thickness is even more important than mass or weight. This point is illustrated in Fig. 3.14 for two boulders of equal length and width but different thicknesses. Despite being four times larger in volume and weight, the rectangular boulder only requires a tsunami wave that is one third of the height of the wave needed to move the platy one. This effect is also illustrated in Fig. 3.12. All of the boulders shown on the ramp required the same depth of water to be moved, despite the spherical ones being twice as large as the flatter ones.

Table 3.2 Velocities and wave heights of tsunami as determined from boulders found on headlands along the New South Wales coast

Location	Size (m)	Mean velocity (m s^{-1})	Lowest velocity (m s^{-1})	Wave height (m)
Jervis Bay				
Mermaids Inlet	2.3	7.8	3.1	1.4
Little Beecroft Head				
ramp	4.1	10.3	4.2	2.7
clifftop	1.2	5.6	2.2	0.7
Honeysuckle Point	2.8	8.6	3.4	1.8
Tuross Head	1.3	5.9	2.3	0.8
Bingie Bingie Point	2.8	8.6	3.4	1.8
O'Hara Headland	1.1	5.5	2.2	0.7

Note Sediment size refers to the mean width of the five largest boulders
Source Based on Young et al. (1996)

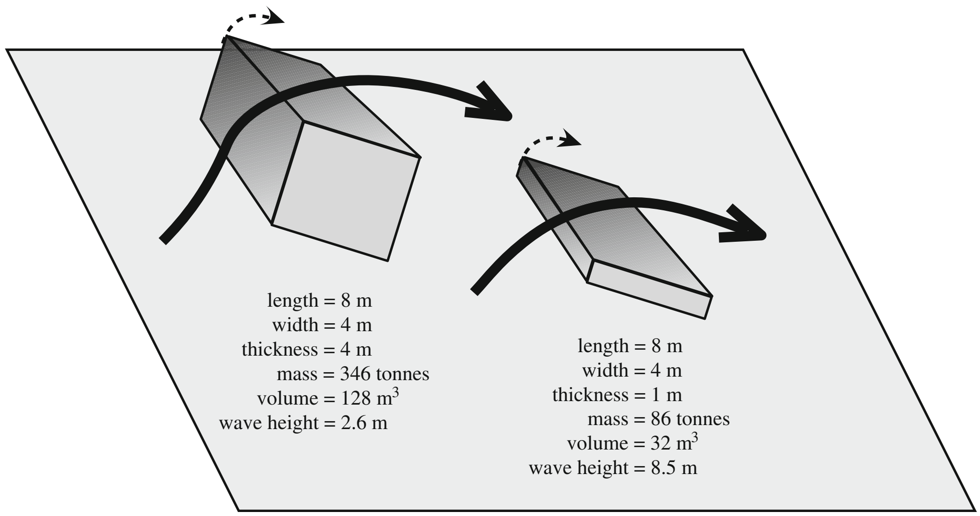


Fig. 3.14 Illustration of the forces necessary to entrain two boulders having the same length and width, but different thicknesses

The tsunami wave height used in Fig. 3.14 is derived from Nott (1997, 2003). Boulders occupy three different environments in the coastal zone. They can exist exposed singly along the coast on dry land such as on a rock platform (termed sub-aerial), be submerged, or be part of a bedrock surface. In the latter case, boulders have to be ripped from this surface, usually along joints, before they can be transported. The boulders are thus joint bound. In this book we have assumed the commonest case, namely that boulders preexist and are moved by a tsunami from a submerged offshore environment. The height of a tsunami wave at the shoreline, H_t, can be determined using the following relationship:

$$H_t \geq 0.5a\left[(\rho_s - \rho_w)\rho_w^{-1}\right]\left[C_d(acb^{-2}) + C_l\right]^{-1} \tag{3.3}$$

where

H_t = wave height at shore or the toe of a beach
a = boulder length (m)
c = boulder thickness (m)
ρ_s = density of a boulder (usually 2.7 g cm^{-3})
ρ_w = density of sea water (usually 1.024 g cm^{-3})
C_d = the coefficient of drag (typically 1.2 on dry land)
C_l = the coefficient of lift, typically 0.178

Note that the tsunami height estimated by this equation is conservative because the equation uses the velocity of a tsunami wave in shallow water—Eq. (2.2)—rather than the higher velocity that is possible across dry land—Eq. (2.17). This equation can be simplified if the boulders being transported are nearly spherical. These simplifications are expressed as follows:

$$\text{Simplified:} \quad H_t \geq 0.82a\left(1.2acb^{-2} + 0.178\right)^{-1} \tag{3.4}$$

$$\text{For spheres:} \quad Ht \geq 0.6b \tag{3.5}$$

Since Eq. 3.3 was proposed, very few field measurements have shown it to be accurate. These discrepancies are due to turbulence and the myriad of processes involved in

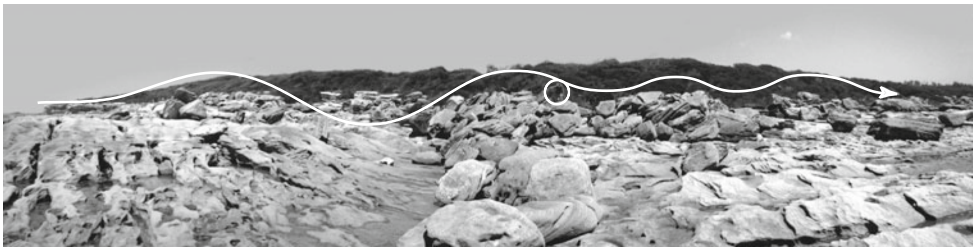


Fig. 3.15 Boulder ripples deposited by tsunami on the rock platform of Jibbon, New South Wales, Australia. The theorized flow with standing waves is shown by the white path. The boulders were deposited under the crest of standing waves generated in the flow, while vortices bored pools into the rock surface in the troughs. Person circled for scale

unidirectional flow. This was recognized early in the fluvial research where calculations on groups of boulders were favored over those for individual ones (Costa 1983; Williams 1983). More specifically, the largest boulders in a deposit were identified as being more significant in determining minimum flow velocities. Many attempts have been made to prove or refine Nott's equations with mixed results (Shah-Hosseini et al. 2013). There are just as many studies that have found that they overestimate the height of a tsunami as underestimate it. One of the more unique methodologies based upon Nott's equations was developed by Lorang (2011) to distinguish between the wave period of storm waves and those in the *tsunami window*, which differ by an order of magnitude. In addition to the variables in Eq. 3.5, Lorang used the height of a boulder above sea-level, the slope of the beach and the maximum velocity of flow to make this distinction. The simplicity of this approach may overcome the problem of distinguishing storm waves and tsunami based upon wave height calculations alone.

Equation 3.3 does have practical application for determining the height of a tsunami wave based upon the size of debris found afterwards. For instance, the largest boulder transported by the Flores Tsunami shown in Fig. 3.6 required a tsunami wave of about 2 m in height to move. Note that these flow depths are minimum values, because the tsunami wave would have been much higher at the shoreline than where the boulder was dumped. Calculations of the mean tsunami wave heights required to move boulders in the Jervis Bay region are included in Table 3.2. Boulders in the Jervis Bay region only required a tsunami wave 3 m high to be moved, even though waves higher than this must have been involved in order to transport boulders in suspension up cliffs. These examples illustrate how efficient tsunami waves are at initiating movement of bouldery material. The height of storm waves required to move the same size material is not nearly as small—a point that will be discussed in Chap. 4.

If tsunami wave height at shore equates with flow depth—Eq. (2.15)—the height of the tsunami can also be calculated using the spacing between boulder bedforms as follows (Moore and Moore 1988):

$$H_t = 0.5\, L_s \pi^{-1} \tag{3.6}$$

where L_s = bedform wavelength (m).

However, boulder ripples or dunes are rare in nature. In the Jervis Bay region, boulder piles suggestive of mega-ripples exist at Honeysuckle Point and have a spacing of 60 m (Young et al. 1996). The alignment of individual boulders in one pile, at an elevation of 16 m above sea level, shows foreset and topset bedding characteristic of a ripple. The minimum tsunami wave height for these features using Eq. 3.6 is 9.5 m. This agrees with the flow depth (7.5–12.0 m) required to construct the giant mega-ripples in dunes located nearby at Crocodile Head and described earlier (Bryant et al. 1997). By far the best site with boulder ripples occurs at Jibbon in the Royal National Park immediately south of metropolitan Sydney. Here at least four ripples are evident over a distance of 100 m (Fig. 3.15). Flow swept over the platform at an oblique angle from the south and set up standing waves as velocities accelerated over the platform surface about 2–4 m above sea level. Boulders were deposited against each other under the peaks of the standing waves in piles that show clear foreset and topset bedding. In the troughs, where flow impinged upon the rock platform, vortices were generated that carved small pools 40–50 cm in diameter and depth into the bedrock. The latter features are termed bedrock sculpturing and will be described in more detail later.

The following scenario can account for the formation and transport of boulders along rocky coasts (Young et al. 1996). On headlands or rock platforms where there is a cliff or ledge facing the sea, waves have to drown the cliff face before overtopping them. Tsunami do this by jetting across the top of the cliffs and developing a roller vortex in front of the cliff edge. Flow is thus thin (depths of 2.5–3.5 m) and violent (minimum velocities typically between 5 and 10 m s^{-1}). In jets, tsunami flow velocities may exceed 20 m s^{-1}. High-velocity flow first strips weathered bedrock surfaces of debris, exposing the underlying bedrock to large lift forces. Blocks, controlled in size by the thickness of bedding planes and the spacing of joints, may be too large to be entrained by this tsunami flow, but the lift forces can continually jar blocks until they eventually fracture into smaller pieces. This process occurs in preparation zones at the front of cliffs. When blocks are small enough, they then are transported across headlands or down platform and ramp surfaces. The lack of percussion marks or chipping on most boulders, some of which are highly fretted by chemical weathering, is suggestive of boulder suspension in sediment–starved flows without bed contact until the boulder is deposited. The minimum flow depth or tsunami wave height along the coast of New South Wales required in this scenario is 4 m, although larger waves must certainly have been present to move such material up cliffs 30 m high (Fig. 3.12).

There is no general consensus on whether or not coastal boulders are moved by tsunami or storms (Dawson et al. 2008; Scheffers et al. 2009; Paris et al. 2011). In both cases, the favored mechanism has often never been witnessed nor monitored. Observations along coasts where storm waves dominate, and have been observed, indicate that boulder weight, altitude, and landward distance of transport mimic those of some tsunami deposits (Etienne and Paris 2009; Goto et al. 2010; Fichaut and Suanez 2011). Determination of the mechanism of transport of boulders must consider their environmental context and internal *fabric*—if any. Boulders relate to tsunami if the following ten criteria are met: (1) the boulders are in groups; (2) the boulder deposits exclude other sediment sizes; (3) the boulders are imbricated and contact-supported; (4) the points of contact-support lack evidence of percussion and thus implicate suspension transport; (5) the boulders show lateral transport or shifting distinctive from in situ emplacement due to cliff collapse under gravity; (6) the boulders are elevated above the swash limit for storm waves; (7) the boulders are situated away from any shoreline where storm waves impacting on the coast could have simply flicked material onto shore; (8) the evidence of transport by tsunami rather than storm waves is unequivocal based upon the size of boulders—usually above 100 tonnes—and hydrodynamic determinations; (9) the direction of imbrication matches the direction of tsunami approach to the coast regionally; and (10) there are other nearby signatures of tsunami.

3.2.9 Turbidites

There are few geomorphic features linked to tsunami described in the ocean. However, one of the most notable, turbidites, has received considerable attention in the literature. Submarine landslides generate both tsunami and turbidites (Masson et al. 1996). As a submarine landslide moves downslope under the influence of gravity, it disintegrates and mixes with water. The sediment in the flow tends to separate according to size and density, forming a sediment gravity flow called a turbidity current. The slurry in a turbidity current moves along the seabed at velocities between 20 and 75 km h^{-1}, and can travel thousands of kilometers onto the abyssal plains of the deep ocean on slopes as low as 0.1°. As current velocity decreases, splays of sediment, known as turbidites, are deposited in submarine fans. Turbidite thickness depends upon the distance of travel and the amount of sediment involved in the original submarine landslide. In the Atlantic Ocean, individual turbidites have volumes of 100–200 $km^{3,}$ values implying submarine landslides that are sufficient to have generated tsunami of several meters amplitude at their source. Turbidity currents have not been directly observed; however, there is substantial indirect evidence for their existence. One of the best of these is the sequential breaking of telegraph cables laid across the seabed. The first noteworthy record occurred following the Grand Banks earthquake on November 18, 1929 off the coast of Newfoundland (Heezen and Ewing 1952). Similar events have occurred off the Magdalena River delta (Colombia), the Congo Delta, in the Mediterranean Sea north of Orléansville and south of the Straits of Messina, and in the Kandavu Passage, Fiji.

Turbidites generally are less than 1 m in thickness and form a distinct layered unit known as a Bouma sequence (Bouma and Brouwer 1964). The upward structure of a Bouma unit (Fig. 3.16) shows erosional marks in the underlying clays called sole marks, overlain by a massive graded unit (T_a), parallel lamination (T_b), rippled cross-lamination or convoluted lamination (T_c), and an upper unit of parallel lamination (T_d). This latter unit contains gravels and pebbles close to the source, and fine sand and coarse silt out on the abyssal plain. The unit is overlain by pelagic ooze (T_{ep}) that has settled under quiet conditions between events. The basal contact below the coarse layer is sharp, while that above is gradational. The coarse layer is also well sorted and contains microfossils characteristic of shallow water. Interpretation of this sequence, supported by laboratory experiments, indicates deposition from a current that initially erodes the seabed, and then deposits coarse sediment that fines as velocity gradually diminishes. More has been written about sediment density flows in sedimentology than on any other topic, and the deposits form one of the most common sedimentary sequences preserved in the geological record. Each turbidity deposit preserved in this record potentially could be a diagnostic signature of a tsunami event. Submarine landslides and their resultant tsunami have been very common features in the world's oceans throughout geological time.

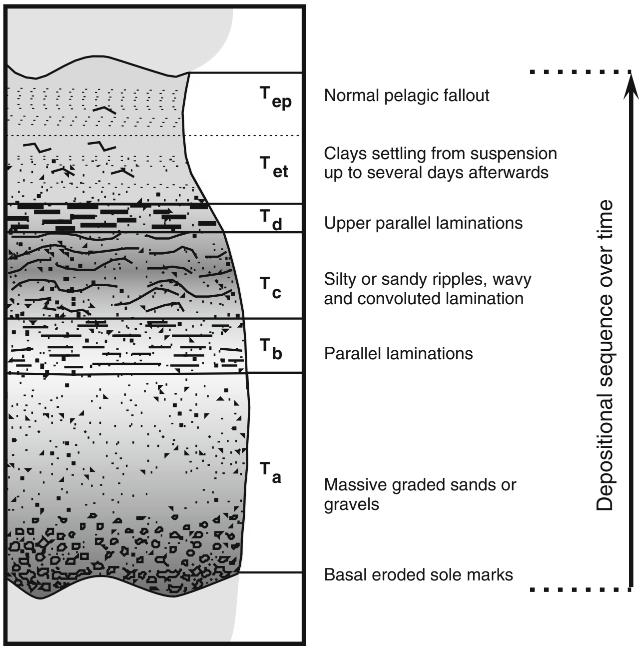


Fig. 3.16 A Bouma turbidite sequence deposited on the seabed following the passage of a turbidity current. Based on Bouma and Brouwer (1964)

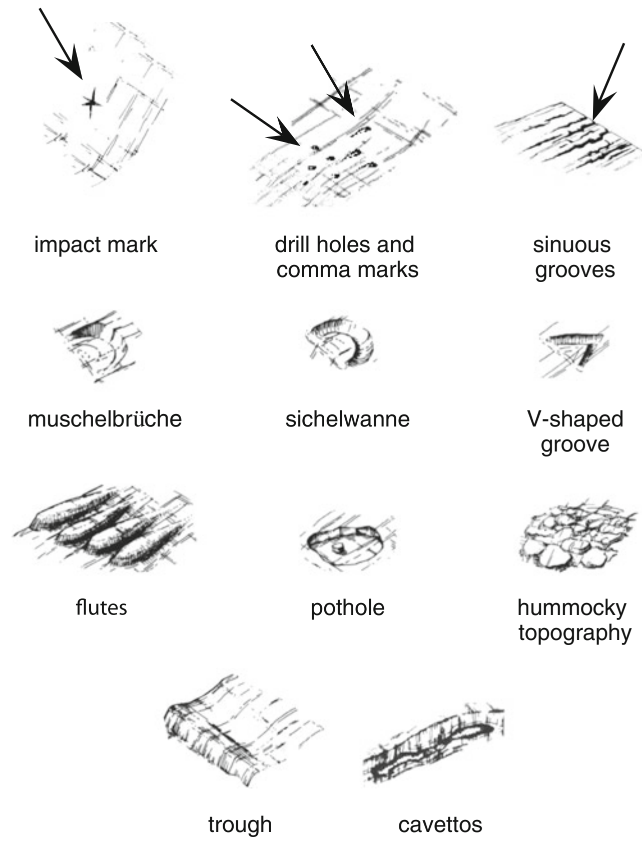


Fig. 3.17 Various cavitation features and *S*-forms produced by high-velocity tsunami flow over headlands. Note that the features are not scaled relative to each other

3.3 Erosional Signatures of Tsunami

3.3.1 Small-Scale Features

Tsunami can also sculpture bedrock in a fashion analogous to the *S*-forms produced by high-velocity catastrophic floods or surges from beneath icecaps in sub-glacial environments (Dahl 1965; Ljungner 1930). *S*-forms include features such as muschelbrüche, sichelwannen, V-shaped grooves, cavettos, and flutes (Figs. 3.2 and 3.17). They have been linked to paleo-floods in Canada (Kor et al. 1991), the northwestern United States (Baker 1978, 1981), Scandinavia (Dahl 1965), Scotland (Hall 1812), the Alps (Alexander 1932; Dahl 1965), and the Northern Territory, Australia (Baker and Pickup 1987). Tsunami flow over rocky headlands, at the velocities outlined in Chap. 2, has the hydrodynamic potential to generate cavitation or small vortices capable of producing sculptured forms (Bryant and Young 1996). The spatial organization of *S*-forms on headlands, often above the limits of storm waves, is a clear signature of tsunami in the absence of any other definable process. Individual *S*-forms and their hydrodynamics will be described in this chapter, while their spatial organization into unique tsunami-generated landscapes will be discussed in Chap. 4.

Cavitation is a product of high-velocity flow as great as 10 m s^{-1} in water depths as shallow as 2 m deep (Dahl 1965; Baker 1981). At these velocities, small, low pressure, air bubbles appear in the flow. These bubbles are unstable and immediately collapse, generating impact forces up to thirty thousand times greater than normal atmospheric pressure. Cavitation bubble collapse is highly corrasive, and is the reason why propeller-driven ships cannot obtain higher speeds and dam spillways are designed to minimize flow depth and velocity. In tsunami environments, cavitation produces small indents that develop instantaneously, parallel or at right angles to the flow, on vertical and horizontal bedrock surfaces. Cavitation features are widespread and consist of impact marks, drill holes, and sinuous grooves (Figs. 3.2 and 3.17).

Impact marks appear as pits or radiating star-shaped grooves on vertical faces facing the flow. It would be simple to suggest that such features represent the impact mark of a rock hurled at high velocity against a vertical rock face; however, such marks have also been found in sheltered positions or tucked into undercuts where such a process is unlikely (Fig. 3.18). Drill holes are found over a range of locations on tsunami-swept headlands. Their distinguishing characteristic is a pit several centimeters in diameter bored into resistant bedrock such as tonalite or gabbroic diorite. Drill holes appear on vertical faces, facing either the flow or

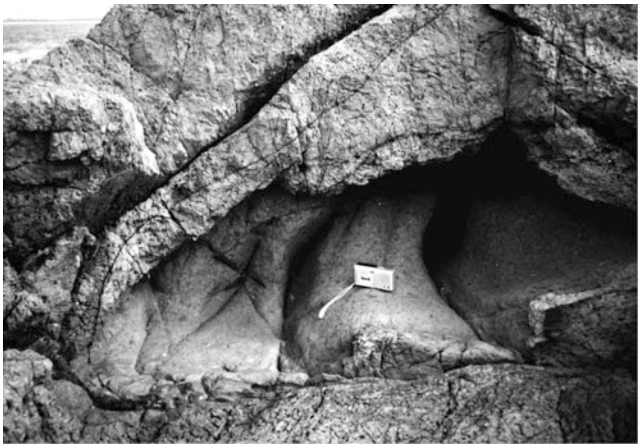


Fig. 3.18 A star-shaped impact mark on the face of the raised platform at Bass Point, New South Wales, Australia. Note as well the drill holes. The sheltered juxtaposition of these forms suggests that cavitation rather than the impact of rocks thrown against the rock face eroded them

at right angles to it. Such marks also appear on the inner walls of large whirlpools. While it would be easy to attribute these features to marine borers, they often occur profusely above the limit of high tide.

The most common type of drill mark appears at the end of a linear or sinuous groove and extends downwards at a slight angle for several centimeters into very resistant bedrock (Bryant and Young 1996). In some cases, grooves also narrow with depth to form knife-like slashes a few centimeters deep. Sinuous drill marks are useful indicators of the direction of tsunami flow across bedrock surfaces. Sinuous grooves tend to extend no more than 2 m in length and have a width of 5–8 cm at most. Depth of cutting can vary from a few millimeters to several centimeters. In some cases, the sinuous grooves become highly fragmented longitudinally and form comma marks similar to those found in sub-glacial environments. Often they form *en echelon* in a chain-like fashion (Fig. 3.19). They are not a product of storm waves or backwash because they show internal drainage and do not join downslope. Sinuous grooves have been described for the southeast coast of New South Wales (Young and Bryant 1992; Bryant and Young 1996) and for platforms near Crescent City, California (Aalto et al. 1999), where tsunami appear to be a major process in coastal landscape evolution. It is tempting to credit their formation to chemical erosion along joints, micro-fractures, or igneous inclusions. Four facts suggest otherwise. First, while they may parallel joints, sinuous grooves diverge from such structures by up to 10°. Second, joints in bedrock are linear over the distances, which grooves develop. The grooves described here are sinuous. Third, sinuous grooves often appear as sets within the spacing of individual joint blocks. Finally, sinuous grooves occur only on polished and rounded surfaces characteristically produced by tsunami, and not on the highly weathered, untouched surfaces nearby.

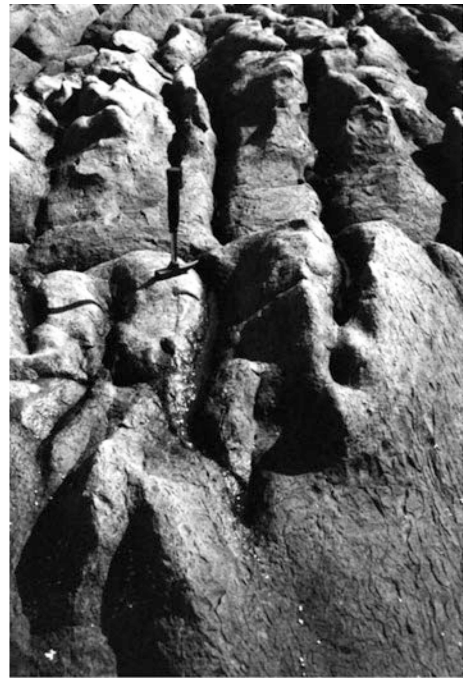


Fig. 3.19 Sinuous grooves on a ramp at Tura Point, New South Wales, Australia

S-forms also develop on surfaces that are smoothed and polished. This polishing appears to be the product of sediment abrasion. However, high water pressures impinging on bedrock surfaces can also polish rock surfaces. Flow vortices sculpture *S*-forms that can be categorized by the three-dimensional orientation of these eddies (Kor et al. 1991). The initial forms develop under small roller-like vortices parallel to upslope surfaces. In this case muschelbrüche, sichelwanne, and V-shaped grooves are created (Fig. 3.17). Muschelbrüche (literally mussel-shaped) are cavities scalloped out of bedrock, often as a myriad of overlapping features suggestive of continual or repetitive formation. While the features appear flat-bottomed, they have a slightly raised pedestal in the center formed by unconstrained vortex impingement upslope onto the bedrock surface towards the apex of the scallop. They vary in amplitude from barely discernible forms to features having a relief greater than 15 cm. Their dimensions rarely exceed 1.0–1.5 m horizontally. Coastal muschelbrüche inevitably develop first on steeper slopes and appear to grade upslope into sichelwanne, V-shaped grooves, and flutes, as the vortices become more elongated and erosive (Bryant and Young 1996). Sichelwanne have a more pronounced pedestal in the middle of the depression, while V-shaped grooves have a pointed rather than concave form

Fig. 3.20 Flutes developed on the crest of a ramp 14 m above sea level at Tura Point, New South Wales Australia. The depressions on the sides of the flutes are cavettos. Flow from *left* to *right*

downstream. V-shaped grooves have no sub-glacial equivalent and can span a large range of sizes. For instance, at Bass Point, New South Wales, V-shaped grooves over 30 m wide and spanning approximately 10 m in relief have developed on slopes of more than 20°.

The term flute describes long linear forms that develop under unidirectional, high-velocity flow in the coastal environment (Bryant and Young 1996). These are noticeable for their protrusion above, rather than their cutting below, bedrock surfaces (Figs. 3.19 and 3.20). In a few instances, flutes taper downstream and are similar in shape to rock drumlins and rattails described for catastrophic flow in sub-glacial environments. In all cases, the steeper end faces the tsunami, while the spine is aligned parallel to the direction of tsunami flow. Flutes span a range of sizes, increasing in length to 30–50 m as slope decreases. However, their relief rarely exceeds 1–2 m. Larger features are called rock drumlins. The boulder trails at Tuross Head, mentioned above, are constrained by flutes. Fluted topography always appears on the seaward crest of rocky promontories where velocities are highest. Flutes often have faceting or cavettos superimposed on their flanks. Faceting consists of chiseled depressions with sharp intervening ridges (Maxson 1940). They represent either the impingement of vortices instantaneously upon a bedrock surface or hydraulic hammering of rock surfaces by high-velocity impacts. Cavettos are curvilinear grooves eroded into steep or vertical faces by erosive vortices (Kor et al. 1991). While cavetto-like features can form due to chemical weathering in the coastal zone, especially in limestones, their presence on resistant bedrock at higher elevations above the zone of contemporary wave attack is one of the best indicators of high-velocity tsunami flow over a bedrock surface.

On flat surfaces, longitudinal vortices give way to vertical ones that can form hummocky topography and potholes (Fig. 3.17). Potholes are one of the best features replicated at different scales by high-velocity tsunami flow. While large-scale forms can be up to 70 m in diameter, smaller features have dimensions of 4–5 m (Alexander 1932; Baker 1981; Kor et al. 1991). The smaller potholes also tend to be broader, with a relief of less than 1 m. The smaller forms can exhibit a central plug, but this is rare (Fig. 3.21). Instead, the potholes tend to develop as flat-floored, steep-walled rectangular depressions, usually within the zone of greatest turbulence. While bedrock jointing may control this shape, the potholes' origin as bedrock-sculptured features is unmistakable because the inner walls are inevitably undercut or imprinted with cavettos. In places where vortices have eroded the connecting walls between potholes, a chaotic landscape of jutting bedrock with a relief of 1–2 m can be produced. This morphology—termed hummocky topography—forms where flow is unconstrained and turbulence is greatest (Bryant and Young 1996). These areas occur where high-velocity water flow has changed direction suddenly, usually at the base of steep slopes or the seaward crest of headlands. The steep-sided, rounded, deep potholes found isolated on intertidal rock platforms, and attributed to mechanical abrasion under normal ocean wave action, could be catastrophically sculptured forms. Intriguingly, many of these latter features also evince undercutting and cavettos along their walls.

Fig. 3.21 Small dissected potholes at the top of a 15 m high headland at Atcheson Rock, 60 km south of Sydney, Australia. The potholes lie on the ocean side of the canyon structure shown in Fig. 3.23

At the crests of headlands, flow can separate from the bedrock surface, forming a transverse roller vortex capable of eroding very smooth-sided, low, transverse troughs over 50 m in length and 10 m in width (Bryant and Young 1996). Under optimum conditions, the bedrock surface is carved smooth and undular. In some cases, the troughs are difficult to discern because they have formed where flow was still highly turbulent after overwashing the crest of a headland. In these cases, the troughs are embedded in chaotic, hummocky topography. This is especially common on very low-angled slopes. Transverse troughs can also form on up flow slopes where the bed locally flattens or slopes downwards. Under these circumstances, troughs are usually short, rarely exceeding 5 m. The smoothest and largest features develop on the crests of broad undulating headlands.

3.3.2 Large-Scale Features

Large-scale features can usually be found sculptured or eroded on rock promontories, which protrude seaward onto the continental shelf (Young and Bryant 1992). Such features require extreme run-up velocities that can only be produced by the higher or longer waves (mega-tsunami) generated by large submarine landslides or comet/asteroid impacts in the ocean. One of the most common features of high-velocity overwashing is the stripping of joint blocks from the front of cliffs or platforms forming inclined surfaces or ramps (Fig. 3.12). In many cases, this stripping is aided by the detachment of flow from surfaces, a process that generates enormous lift forces that can pluck joint-controlled rock slabs from the underlying bedrock. Where standing waves have formed, then bedrock plucking can remove two or three layers of bedrock from a restricted area, leaving a shallow, closed depression on the ramp surface devoid of rubble and unconnected to the open ocean (Fig. 3.22). Ramps are obviously controlled structurally and have an unusual juxtaposition beginning in cliffs up to 30 m above sea level and, sloping downflow often into a cliff. If these high velocities are channelised, erosion can produce linear canyon features 2–7 m deep and pool-and-cascade features incised into resistant bedrock on the lee side of steep headlands (Bryant and Young 1996). These features are most prevalent on platforms raised 7–8 m above modern sea level. All features bear a resemblance to the larger canyon-and-cascade forms carved in the channeled Scablands of the western United States (Baker 1978, 1981). Wave breaking may also leave a raised butte-like structure at the seaward edge of a headland, separated from the shoreline by an eroded depression. This feature looks similar to an inverted toothbrush (Fig. 3.23). Large-scale fluting of a headland can also occur, and on smaller rock promontories, where the baseline for erosion terminates near mean sea level, the resulting form looks like the inverted keel of a sailboat. Often this form has a cockscomb peak produced by the rapid, random erosion of multiple vortices (Fig. 3.24). While technically a sculpturing feature, the cockscomb looks as if it has been hydraulically hammered. On narrow promontories, vortices can create arches. While arches have been treated in the literature as products of chemical weathering or long-term wave attack along structural weaknesses, close investigation shows that many are formed by vortices. It is also possible for these

Fig. 3.22 The ramp at Bannisters Head on the New South Wales south coast. The tsunami wave approached from the bottom right-hand corner of the photograph. Erosion increases up the ramp that rises 16 m above sea level. The blocky boulders at the top of the ramp are over 4 m in diameter

Fig. 3.23 Canyon feature cut through the 20 m high headland at Atcheson Rock by a tsunami moving from bottom left to top right. Evidence exists in the cutting for subsequent down cutting of 2–4 m by a more recent tsunami. The latter event also draped a 0.5–2.0 m thick *dump* deposit over the headland to the right. This deposit has been radiocarbon dated at around AD 1500. The small potholes in Fig. 3.21 are located on the leftmost portion of the headland, while the large whirlpool shown in Fig. 3.26 is located on the far side of the canyon

horizontal vortices to form in the lee of stacks and erode promontories from their landward side (Fig. 3.25).

Perhaps the most impressive features are whirlpools formed in bedrock on the sides of headlands. Whirlpools and smaller potholes commonly formed under catastrophic flow in the channeled Scablands of Washington State (Baker 1981). Potholes with a small central plug have been found under catastrophic flow in glaciated landscapes (Kor et al. 1991). In coastal environments, whirlpools often contain a central plug of rock and show evidence of smaller vortices around their rim (Bryant and Young 1996). Whirlpools can reach 50–70 m in diameter with central plugs protruding 2–3 m vertically upwards from the floor of the pit at the quiescent center of the vortex. The best coastal example occurs on the south side of Atcheson Rock south of Bass Point, New South Wales (Fig. 3.26). Here a large vortex, spinning in a counterclockwise direction, produced smaller vortices rotating around its edge on the up flow side

Fig. 3.24 Inverted keel-like forms at Cathedral Rocks, 90 km south of Sydney, Australia. Flow came from the right. The stacks formed between horizontal, helical (*eggbeater*) vortices. A sea cave is bored into the cliff downflow to the left

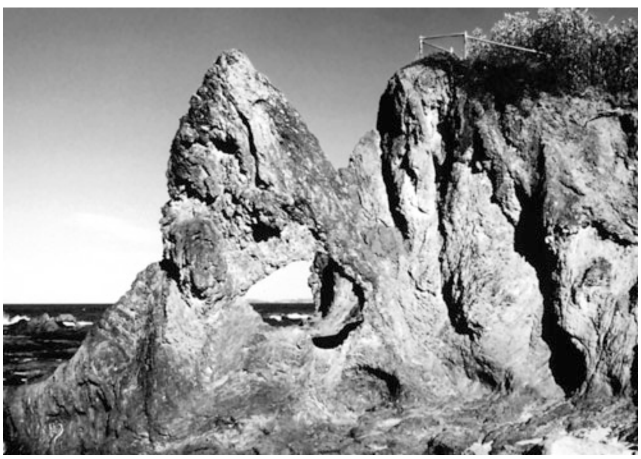


Fig. 3.25 An arch at Narooma on the south coast of New South Wales, Australia. The tsunami wave swept towards the viewer along the platform in the background. A vortex on the seaward side eroded most of the arch. Joints in the rocks do not control the arch, nor does the rock face show evidence of major chemical weathering

of a headland. The overall whirlpool is 10 m wide and 8–9 m high. The central plug stands 5 m high and is surrounded by four 3 m diameter potholes, one of which bores another 3 m below the floor of the pit into resistant basalt. The counterclockwise rotation of the overall vortex produces downward-eroded helical spirals that undercut the sides of the pit, forming spiral benches. Circular or sickle-shaped holes were drilled, by cavitation, horizontally into the sides of the pothole and into the wall of the plug. Under exceptional circumstances, the whirlpool can be completely eroded, leaving only the plug behind. Figure 3.1 at the beginning of this chapter shows an example of this cut into aplite (granite) at Cape Woolamai on the south coast of Victoria Australia.

3.3.3 Flow Dynamics

Any model of the flow dynamics responsible for tsunami-sculptured bedrock terrain must be able to explain a range of features varying from sinuous cavitation marks several centimeters wide to whirlpools over 10 m in diameter (Bryant and Young 1996). One of the controlling variables for the spatial distribution of these features is bed slope that can be higher than 10° at the front of promontories. Even a slight change in angle can initiate a change in sculptured form. For instance, sinuous cavitation marks can form quickly, simply by steepening slope by 1–2°. Similarly, flutes can develop with the same increase in bed slope. This suggests that new vortex formation or flow disturbance through vortex stretching is required to initiate an organized pattern of flow vortices able to sculpture bedrock. Because bedrock-sculpturing features rarely appear close to the edge of a platform or headland, vortices did not exist in the flow before the leading edge of the tsunami wave struck the coastline.

Bedrock-sculptured features are created by six flow phenomena: Mach–Stem waves, jetting, flow reattachment, vortex impingement, horseshoe or hairpin vortices, and multiple-vortex formation. Mach–Stem wave formation was described in Chap. 2 (Bryant and Young 1996). It occurs when waves travel obliquely along a cliff line. The wave height can increase at the boundary by a factor of 2–4 times (Wiegel 1970). The process is insensitive to irregularities in the cliff face and is one of the mechanisms allowing tsunami waves to overtop cliffs up to 80 m high.

Tsunami, because of their long wavelength, behave like surging waves as they approach normal to a shoreline. Jetting is caused by the sudden interruption of the forward progress of a surging breaker by a rocky promontory (Bryant and Young 1996). The immediate effect is twofold.

Fig. 3.26 Whirlpool bored into bedrock on the south side of Atcheson Rock, New South Wales, Australia. The presence of drill holes and smaller potholes at the bottom indicates the existence of cavitation and multiple vortices, respectively. Helical flow operated in a counter clockwise direction around the central plug

First, there is a sudden increase in flow velocity as momentum is conserved and vortex formation is initiated. Second, the sudden velocity increase is sufficient for cavitation and creates lift forces that can pluck blocks of bedrock from the bed at the front of a platform. Eq. 2.17 can be used to calculate theoretical velocities on some of the ramp surfaces. If the height of the tsunami wave is equivalent to the cliff fronting ramps, then the calculated velocities can exceed 20 m s^{-1}. These velocities are well in excess of the 10 m s^{-1} threshold required for cavitation (Baker 1978).

The third phenomenon, flow reattachment, occurs if flow separates from the bed at the crest of a rocky promontory (Allen 1984; Bryant and Young 1996). This occurs at breaks of slope greater than 4°. Rock platforms overwashed by tsunami have changes in slope much greater than this. Some distance downstream, depending upon the velocity of the jet, water must reattach to the bed. Where it does, flow is turbulent and impingement on the bed is highly erosive. Standing waves may develop in the flow, leading to large vertical lift forces under crests. The bedrock plucking at the front of platforms and in the lee of crests is a product of this process.

S-forms spatially change their shape depending upon the degree of flow impingement and vortex orientation (Fig. 3.27). In coastal environments, the flow by tsunami overwashing bedrock surfaces is not confined. The high velocity and sudden impact of the vortex on the bedrock surface causes the vortex to ricochet upwards and rapidly separate from the bed (Allen 1984; Shaw 1988). This produces features that begin as shallow depressions, scour downflow, and then terminate suddenly leaving a form that is gouged into the bedrock surface with the steep rim downstream. Narrow longitudinal vortices impinging upon the bed at a low angle produce muschelbrüche that become sichelwannen and V-shaped grooves at higher angles of attack (Kor et al. 1991; Shaw 1994). Obstacles in the flow boundary layer form horseshoe vortices. As flow impinges upon an obstacle, higher pressures are generated that cause flow deflection and separation from the bed. This generates opposing, rotating vortices that wrap around the obstacle like a horseshoe or hairpin. The vortices scour into the bedrock surface downflow. Because these vortices lie within the boundary layer, they are subject to intense shearing by the overlying flow. This shearing fixes the vortices in position and keeps them straight. Shaw (1994) theorized that horseshoe or hairpin vortices produce flutes that are progressively eroded into a rock surface as long as high velocity is maintained. Flutes form in the coastal environment under the same process (Fig. 3.20). Helix or spiral vortices in the vertical direction have been linked to pothole formation (Alexander 1932). At the largest scale the inverted keel-like stacks shown in Fig. 3.24 formed between horizontal, helical (eggbeater) vortices. These helical vortices, besides eroding vertical stacks, have the capacity to bore caves into cliffs and form arches (Fig. 3.25).

Multiple-vortex formation occurs at the largest scale and includes kolks and tornadic flow. Kolks are near-vertical vortices whose erosive power is aided by turbulent bursting (Baker 1978, 1981). They are produced by intense energy dissipation in upward vortex action. The steep pressure gradients across the vortex produce enormous hydraulic lift forces. Kolks require a steep energy gradient and an irregular rough boundary to generate flow separation. These conditions are met when the tsunami waves first meet the steeper sides of headlands; however, the process does not account for the formation of whirlpools. Kolks may also be formed by macro turbulence whereby eddies grow within larger rotational flow. This latter concept has been invoked to account for the formation of tornadoes and incorporated

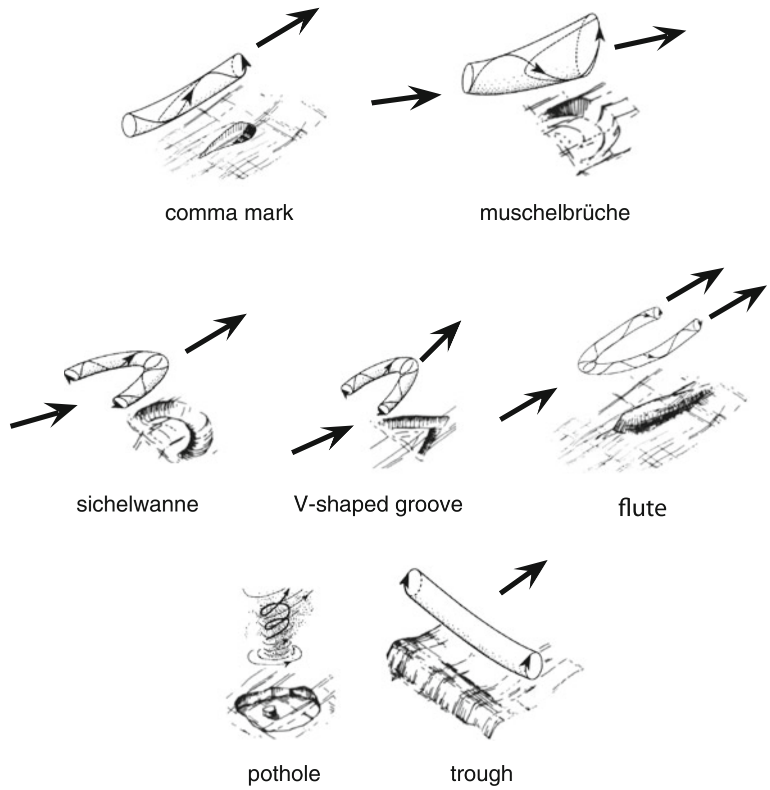


Fig. 3.27 Types of vortices responsible for bedrock sculpturing by tsunami. Based on Kor et al. (1991), and Shaw (1994)

into a model of multiple-vortex tornado formation that may be more appropriate in explaining the formation of whirlpools in tsunami-sculptured terrain.

Multiple-vortex tornadoes are produced by vortex breakdown within a tornado as air is pulled downwards from above into the low pressure of the tornado (Fujita 1971; Grazulis 1993). Smaller secondary vortices rotating in the same direction develop around the circumference of the larger parent vortex. Tsunami-generated whirlpools are formed by the vertical vortices embedded in flow overwashing a headland (Bryant and Young 1996). These vortices expand and increase in rotational velocity with time. When the vortex is wide enough, water is pulled down into the center of the vortex and lifted upwards at the circumference (Fig. 3.28). When velocity is high enough, the vortex bores into bedrock and locks into position. Velocities exceed that necessary for cavitation as shown by the presence of drill marks in the whirlpool at Atcheson Rock (Fig. 3.26). Towards the center of the vortex system, the directions of water movement in the mini-vortex and parent vortex are opposite and begin to cancel each other out. Here the resultant flow velocity is the rotational velocity of the parent vortex minus that of the mini-vortex. These lower rotational velocities aid the collapse of water into the center of the vortex, but at velocities that are too low to erode bedrock for part of the time. This process leaves a plug of bedrock in the middle of the whirlpool. Once multiple vortices form, the system of flow becomes self-perpetuating

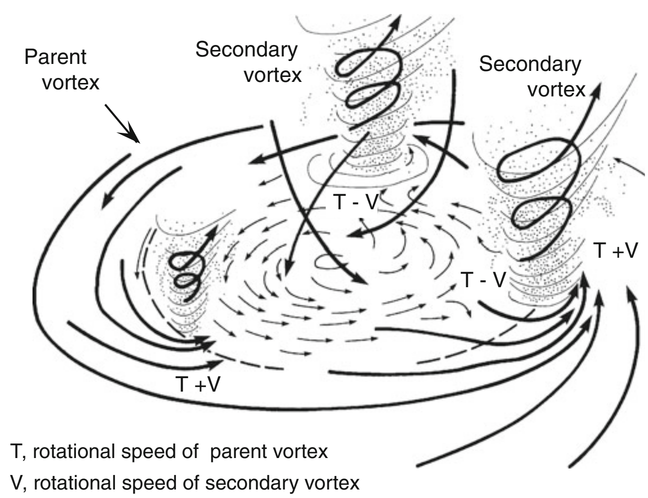


Fig. 3.28 Model for multiple-vortex formation in bedrock whirlpools. Based on Fujita (1971) and Grazulis (1993)

as long as there is flow of water to maintain the parent vortex. The fact that the plug height is always lower than the pothole walls suggests that multiple vortices develop in the waning stages of tsunami overwash after the crest of the tsunami has swept past and established the parent vortex.

Whirlpools form when flow velocities increase first through convergence of water over bedrock and then through funneling at preferred points along the coast. Critical rotational velocities required to erode resistant bedrock also take time to build up; however, the flow under the crest of a tsunami wave is only sustained for a few minutes at most. Once a critical velocity is reached, bedrock erosion commences. The spin-up process causes vortex erosion to develop and terminate quickly, as is demonstrated by the fact that some potholes are only partially formed. Whirlpools, such as the one in Fig. 3.26, are formed instantaneously in the space of minutes rather than by the cumulative effect of many wave events. Whereas mini-vortices in tornadoes can freely circumscribe paths around the wall of the tornado, those in whirlpools are constrained by the bedrock they are eroding.

This chapter has attempted to show that a myriad of distinct signatures produced by tsunami exist besides the descriptions of anomalous sediment layers that pervade the current literature. The most impressive of these additional signatures is produced by bedrock sculpturing. Most of the descriptions of individual signatures presented in this chapter indicate that they do not occur as isolated features but appear in combination with each other to form spatially organized suites that dominate some coastal landscape—such as rocky headlands. The description of these varied tsunami-generated landscapes constitutes the focus of Chap. 4.

References

K.R. Aalto, R. Aalto, C.E. Garrison-Laney, H.F. Abramson, Tsunami (?) sculpturing of the pebble beach wave-cut platform, Crescent City area, California. J. Geol. **107**, 607–622 (1999)

H.S. Alexander, Pothole erosion. J. Geol. **40**, 305–337 (1932)

J.R.L. Allen, *Sedimentary structures: their character and physical basis*, vol. 1 (Elsevier, Amsterdam, 1984)

B.F. Atwater, Evidence for great Holocene earthquakes along the outer coast of Washington state. Science **236**, 942–944 (1987)

V.R. Baker, (Ed.), Catastrophic flooding: The origin of the Channeled Scabland. Stroudsburg, Dowden Hutchinson and Ross, p. 360, (1981)

V.R. Baker, G. Pickup, Flood geomorphology of the Katherine Gorge, Northern Territory, Australia. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. **98**, 635–646 (1987)

V.R. Baker, Paleohydraulics and hydrodynamics of scabland floods In Eds by V.R. Baker, D. Nummedal, *The Channeled Scabland.* (NASA Office of Space Science, Planetary Geology Program, 1978). pp. 59–79

A.H. Bouma, A. Brouwer (eds.), *Turbidites* (Elsevier, Amsterdam, 1964)

F.G. Bourrouilh-Le Jan, J. Talandier, Sédimentation et fracturation de haute énergie en milieu récifal: Tsunamis, ouragans et cyclones et leurs effets sur la sédimentologie et la géomorphologie d'un atoll: Motu et hoa, à Rangiroa, Tuamotu, Pacifique SE. Mar. Geol. **67**, 263–333 (1985)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, Bedrock-sculpturing by tsunami, South Coast New South Wales, Australia. J. Geol. **104**, 565–582 (1996)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, Evidence of tsunami sedimentation on the southeastern coast of Australia. J. Geol. **100**, 753–765 (1992)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, Tsunami as a major control on coastal evolution, Southeastern Australia. J. Coast. Res. **12**, 831–840 (1996)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, D. Wheeler, M.I. Pease, The impact of tsunami on the coastline of Jervis Bay, southeastern Australia. Phys. Geogr. **18**, 441–460 (1997)

M. Branney, J. Zalasiewicz, Burning clouds. New Sci.**17**, 36–41 (1999)

C. Cass, L. Cass (eds.), *Bondi: The Best of the Bondi View* (Boondye Books, Bondi Beach, Sydney, 2003)

J.J. Clague, P.T. Bobrowsky, Evidence for a large earthquake and tsunami 100–400 years ago on western Vancouver Island, British Columbia. Quatern. Res. **41**, 176–184 (1994)

P.J. Coleman, Tsunamis as geological agents. J. Geol. Soc. Aust. **15**, 267–273 (1968)

J.E. Costa, Paleohydraulic reconstruction of flash-flood peaks from boulder deposits in the Colorado Front Range. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. **94**, 986–1004 (1983)

R. Dahl, Plastically sculptured detail forms on rock surfaces in northern Nordland, Norway. Geogr. Ann. **47A**, 3–140 (1965)

M.E. Darienzo, C.D. Peterson, Episodic tectonic subsidence of Late Holocene salt marshes, northern Oregon central Cascadia margin. Tectonics **9**, 1–22 (1990)

A.G. Dawson, Geomorphological effects of tsunami run-up and backwash. Geomorphology **10**, 83–94 (1994)

A.G. Dawson, S. Shi, Tsunami deposits. Pure. appl. Geophys. **157**, 875–897 (2000)

A.G. Dawson, D. Long, D.E. Smith, The Storegga slides: evidence from eastern Scotland for a possible tsunami. Mar. Geol. **82**, 271–276 (1988)

A.G. Dawson, I.K.L. Foster, S. Shi, D.E. Smith, D. Long, The identification of tsunami deposits in coastal sediment sequences. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **9**, 73–82 (1991)

A.G. Dawson, R. Hindson, C. Andrade, C. Freitas, R. Parish, M. Bateman, Tsunami sedimentation associated with the Lisbon earthquake of 1 November AD 1755: Boca do Rio, Algarve, Portugal. Holocene **5**, 209–215 (1995)

A.G. Dawson, D.E. Smith, A. Ruffman, S. Shi, The diatom biostratigraphy of tsunami sediments: examples from recent and Middle Holocene events. Phys. Chem. Earth **21**, 87–92 (1996)

A.G. Dawson, I. Stewart, R.A. Morton, B.M.Richmond, B.E. Jaffe, G. Gelfenbaum, Reply to Comments by Kelletat (2008) Comments to Dawson, A.G. and Stewart, I. (2007) Tsunami deposits in the geological record, Sed. Geol. **200**, 166–183 (2008). *Sedimentary Geology* doi: 10.1016/j.sedgeo.2008.09.004

S. Etienne, R. Paris, Boulder accumulations related to storms on the south coast of the Reykjanes Peninsula (Iceland). Geomorphology (2009). doi:10.1016/j.geomorph.2009.02.008

B. Fichaut, S. Suanez, Quarrying, transport and deposition of cliff-top storm deposits during extreme events: Banneg Island, Brittany. Mar. Geol. **283**, 106–115 (2011)

T.T. Fujita, Proposed mechanism of suction spots accompanied by tornadoes. in *Preprints, Seventh Conference on Severe Local Storms*. (American Meteorological Society, Kansas City, 1971), pp. 208–213

I.D.L. Foster, A.J. Albon, K.M. Bardell, J.L. Fletcher, T.C. Jardine, R.J. Mothers, M.A. Pritchard, S.E. Turner, High energy coastal sedimentary deposits: an evaluation of depositional processes in southwest England. Earth Surf. Proc. Land. **16**, 341–356 (1991)

C. Frohlich, M.J. Hornbach, F.W. Taylor, C.-C. Shen, A. Moala, A.E. Morton, J. Kruger, Huge erratic boulders in Tonga deposited by a prehistoric tsunami. Geology **37**, 131–134 (2009)

G. Gelfenbaum, B. Jaffe, Preliminary Analysis of Sedimentary Deposits from the 1998 PNG Tsunami. (1998) United States Geological Survey. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/itst.html

K. Goto, K. Miyagi, T. Kawana, J. Takahashi, F. Imamura, *Emplacement and movement of boulders by known storm waves—field evidence from the Okinawa Islands* (Mar. Geol., Japan, 2010). doi:10.1016/j.margeo.2010.09.007

T.P. Grazulis, *Significant Tornadoes 1680–1991: A Chronology and Analysis of Events.* (St. Johnsbury, Environmental Films, 1993)

J. Hall, On the revolutions of the earth's surface. Trans. R. Soc. Edinb. **7**, 169–212 (1812)

T. Haraguchi, K. Goto, M. Sato, Y. Yoshinaga, N. Yamaguchi, T. Takahashi, Large bedform generated by the 2011 Tohoku-oki tsunami at Kesennuma Bay, Japan. Mar. Geol. **335**, 200–205 (2013)

S.K. Haslett, E. Bryant, R.H.F. Curr, Tracing beach sand provenance and transport using foraminifera: examples from NW Europe and SE Australia, in *Tracers in Geomorphology*, ed. by I. Foster (Wiley, Chichester, 2000), pp. 437–452

P.J. Hearty, Boulder deposits from large waves during the last Interglaciation on North Eleuthera Island, Bahamas. Quatern. Res. **48**, 326–338 (1997)

P.J. Hearty, A.C. Neumann, D.S. Kaufman, Chevron ridges and runup deposits in the Bahamas from storms late in Oxygen-Isotope substage 5e. Quatern. Res. **50**, 309–322 (1998)

B.C. Heezen, M. Ewing, Turbidity currents and submarine slumps, and the 1929 Grand Banks earthquake. Am. J. Sci. **250**, 849–873 (1952)

D.J. Huntley, J. Clague, Optical dating of tsunami-laid sands. Quatern. Res. **46**, 127–140 (1996)

T. Kawana, T. Nakata, Timing of Late Holocene tsunamis originated around the Southern Ryukyu Islands, Japan, deduced from coralline tsunami deposits. Japan. J. Geogr. **103**, 352–376 (1994)

T. Kawana, P. Pirazzoli, Re-examination of the Holocene emerged shorelines in Irabu and Shimoji Islands, the South Ryukyus, Japan. Quatern. Res. **28**, 419–426 (1990)

D. Kelletat, A. Scheffers, Chevron-shaped accumulations along the coastlines of Australia as potential tsunami evidences? Sci. Tsunami Hazards **21**, 174–188 (2003)

D. Kelletat, G. Schellmann, Tsunamis on Cyprus: field evidences and ^{14}C dating results. Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie **46**, 19–34 (2002)

P.S.G. Kor, J. Shaw, D.R. Sharpe, Erosion of bedrock by subglacial meltwater, Georgian Bay, Ontario: a regional view. Can. J. Earth Sci. **28**, 623–642 (1991)

E. Ljungner, Spaltentektonik und morphologie der schwedischen skagerrak-Küste. Bull. Geol. Inst. Univ. Uppsala **21**, 255–475 (1930)

D. Long, D.E. Smith, A.G. Dawson, A Holocene tsunami deposit in eastern Scotland. J. Quat. Sci. **4**, 61–66 (1989)

M.S. Lorang, A wave-competence approach to distinguish between boulder and megaclast deposits due to storm waves versus tsunamis. Mar. Geol. **283**, 90–97 (2011)

P.M. De Martini, P. Burrato, D. Pantosti, A. Maramai, L. Graziani, H. Abramson, Identification of tsunami deposits and liquefaction features in the Gargano area (Italy): Paleoseismological implication. Ann. of Geophys. **46**, 883–902 (2003)

J.H. Maxson, Fluting and faceting of rock fragments. J. Geol. **48**, 717–751 (1940)

K. Minoura, S. Nakaya, Traces of tsunami preserved in inter-tidal lacustrine and marsh deposits: some examples from northeast Japan. J. Geol. **99**, 265–287 (1991)

K. Minoura, S. Nakaya, M. Uchida, Tsunami deposits in a lacustrine sequence of the sanriku coast, Northeast Japan. Sed. Geol. **89**, 25–31 (1994)

K. Minoura, F. Imamura, T. Takahashi, N. Shuto, Sequence of sedimentation processes caused by the 1992 Flores tsunami: evidence from Babi Island. Geology **25**, 523–526 (1997)

D.G. Masson, N.Y. Kenyon, P.P.E. Weaver, Slides, debris flows, and turbidity currents In Eds by C.P. Summerhayes, S.A. Thorpe. *Oceanography: An Illustrated Guide*. (Manson Publishing, London, 1996), pp. 136–151

K. Minoura, F. Imamura, D. Sugawara, Y. Kono, T. Iwashita, The 869 Jogan tsunami deposit and recurrence interval of large-scale tsunami on the Pacific coast of northeast Japan. J. Nat. Disaster Sci. **23**, 83–88 (2001)

A.L. Moore, Landward fining in onshore gravel as evidence for a late a Pleistocene tsunami on Molokai. Hawaii. Geol. **28**, 247–250 (2000)

G.W. Moore, J.G. Moore, Large-scale bedforms in boulder gravel produced by giant waves in Hawaii. Geol. Soc. Am. Spec. Pap. **229**, 101–110 (1988)

J.A. Morales, J. Borrego, E.G. San Miguel, N. López-Gonzáleza, B. Carro, Sedimentary record of recent tsunamis in the Huelva Estuary (southwestern Spain). Quatern. Sci. Rev. **27**, 734–746 (2008)

S.L. Nichol, O.B. Lian, C.H. Carter, Sheet–gravel evidence for a late Holocene tsunami run-up on beach dunes, Great Barrier Island, New Zealand. Sed. Geol. **155**, 129–145 (2003)

J. Nott, Extremely high-energy wave deposits inside the Great Barrier Reef, Australia: Determining the cause–tsunami or tropical cyclone. Mar. Geol. **141**, 193–207 (1997)

J. Nott, Waves, coastal boulder deposits and the importance of the pre-transport setting. Earth Planet. Sci. Lett. **210**, 269–276 (2003)

J. Nott, E. Bryant, Extreme marine inundations (Tsunamis?) of coastal Western Australia. J. Geol. **111**, 691–706 (2003)

Y. Ota, P.A. Pirazzoli, T. Kawana, H. Moriwaki, Late Holocene coastal morphology and sea level records on three small islands, the South Ryukyus, Japan. Geogr. Rev. Jpn **58B**, 185–194 (1985)

R. Paris, L.A. Naylor, W.J. Stephenson, Boulders as a signature of storms on rock coasts. Mar. Geol. (2011). doi:10.1016/j.margeo.2011.03.016

T. Pinegina, L. Bazanova, O. Braitseva, V. Gusiakov, I. Melekestsev, A. Starcheus, East Kamchatka palaeotsunami traces. Proceedings of the International Workshop on Tsunami Mitigation and Risk Assessment, Petropavlovsk–Kamchatskiy, Russia (1996)., http://omzg.sscc.ru/tsulab/content.html Accessed 21–24 Aug 1996

K. Satake, Seismotectonics of tsunami, in *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Tsunami Mitigation and Risk Assessment, Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy*, Russia 1996. http://omzg.sscc.ru/tsulab/paper4.htmlAccessed 21–24 Aug 1996

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, S.R. Scheffers, D.H. Abbott, E.A. Bryant, Chevrons—enigmatic sedimentary coastal features. Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie N.F. **52**, 375–402 (2008)

A. Scheffers, Tsunami imprints on the Leeward Netherlands Antilles (Aruba, Curaçao, Bonaire) and their relation to other coastal problems. Quatern. Int. **120**, 163–172 (2004)

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, Sedimentologic and geomorphologic tsunami imprints worldwide: a review. Earth Sci. Rev. **63**, 83–92 (2003)

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, Bimodal tsunami deposits: a neglected feature in paleo-tsunami research. Vol. 1, Eds by G. Schernewski, T, Dolch, *Geographie der Meere und Küsten. Coastline Reports*. (Elsevier, Amsterdam, 2004), pp. 67–75

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, Tsunami relics on the coastal landscape west of Lisbon, Portugal. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **23**, 3–16 (2005)

A. Scheffers, S. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, T. Browne, Wave-Emplaced coarse debris and megaclasts in Ireland and Scotland: Boulder transport in a high-energy littoral environment. J. Geol. **117**, 553–573 (2009)

M. Shah-Hosseini, C. Morhange, A. De Marco, J. Wante, E.J. Anthony, F. Sabatier, G. Mastronuzzi, C. Pignatelli, A. Piscitelli, Coastal boulders in martigues, french mediterranean: evidence for extreme storm waves during the little ice age. *Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie*, *Supplementary Issue*. (2013) doi:10.1127/0372-8854/2013/00132

J. Shaw, Subglacial erosional marks, Wilton Creek, Ontario. Can. J. Earth Sci. **25**, 1256–1267 (1988)

J. Shaw, Hairpin erosional marks, horseshoe vortices and subglacial erosion. Sed. Geol. **91**, 269–283 (1994)

S. Shi, A.G. Dawson, D.E. Smith, Coastal sedimentation associated with the December 12th, 1992 tsunami in Flores, Indonesia. Pure. Appl. Geophys. **144**, 525–536 (1995)

A. Smedile, P.M. De Martini, D. Pantosti, L. Bellucci, P. Del Carlo, L. Gasperini, C. Pirrotta, A. Polonia, E. Boschi, Possible tsunami signatures from an integrated study in the Augusta Bay offshore (Eastern Sicily–Italy). Mar. Geol. (2011). doi:10.1016/j.margeo.2011.01.002

D.E. Smith, S. Shi, R.A. Cullingford, A.G. Dawson, S. Dawson, C.R. Firth, I.D.L. Foster, P.T. Fretwell, B.A. Haggart, L.K. Holloway, D. Long, The Holocene Storegga slide tsunami in the United Kingdom. Quatern. Sci. Rev. **23**, 2291–2321 (2004)

S.S. Solomon, D.L. Forbes, Coastal hazards and associated management issues on South Pacific Islands. Ocean Coast. Manag. **42**, 523–554 (1999)

D. Sugawara, K. Minoura, F. Imamura, T. Takahashi, N. Shuto, A huge sand dome formed by the 1854 earthquake tsunami in Suruga Bay, Central Japan. ISET J. Earthq. Technol. **42**, 147–158 (2005)

C.A. Sussmilch, Note on some recent marine erosion at Bondi. J. Proc. R. Soc. NSW **46**, 155–158 (1912)

W. Szczuciński, M. Kokociński, M. Rzeszewski, C. Chagué-Goff, M. Cachão, K. Goto, D. Sugawara, Sediment sources and sedimentation processes of 2011 Tohoku-oki tsunami deposits on the Sendai Plain, Japan—Insights from diatoms, nannoliths and grain size distribution. Sed. Geol. **282**, 40–56 (2012)

M.P. Tuttle, A. Ruffman, T. Anderson, H. Jeter, Distinguishing tsunami from storm deposits in Eastern North America: The 1929 Grand Banks tsunami versus the 1991 Halloween storm. Seismol. Res. Lett. **75**, 117–131 (2004)

United States Geological Survey, (2005a), Cross section of tsunami deposit at Lampuuk survey site. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/sumatra05/Lampuuk/0872.html

United States Geological Survey, (2005b)Trench at Katukurunda showing the tsunami sand deposit about 37 cm thick. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/srilanka05/Katu5_23.html

A. Vött, F. Lang, H. Brückner, K. Gaki-Papanastassiou, H. Maroukian, D. Papanastassiou, A. Giannikos, H. Hadler, M. Handl, K. Ntageretzis, T. Willershäuser, A. Zander, Sedimentological and geoarchaeological evidence of multiple tsunamigenic imprint on the Bay of Palairos-Pogonia (Akarnania, NW Greece). Quatern. Int. **242**, 213–239 (2011)

R.L. Wiegel, Tsunamis, in *Earthquake Engineering*, ed. by R.L. Wiegel (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1970), pp. 253–306

G.P. Williams, Paleohydrological methods and some examples from Swedish fluvial environments: 1 cobble and boulder deposits. Geogr. Ann. **65A**, 227–243 (1983)

C. Wright, A. Mella, Modifications to the soil pattern of south-central Chile resulting from seismic and associated phenomena during the period May to August 1960. Bull. Seismol. Soc. Am. **53**, 1367–1402 (1963)

R. Young, E. Bryant, Catastrophic wave erosion on the southeastern coast of Australia: Impact of the Lanai tsunami ca. 105 ka? Geology **20**, 199–202 (1992)

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, Catastrophic wave (tsunami?) transport of boulders in southern New South Wales, Australia. Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie **40**, 191–207 (1996)

4 Coastal Landscape Evolution

4.1 Introduction

Large earthquakes on the sea floor, submarine slides, and asteroid impacts with the ocean can create tsunami waves that spread ocean-wide with profound effects on coastal landscapes. They can generate run-up heights 30 times greater than their open ocean wave height and sweep several kilometers inland. This penetration inland can only be duplicated on flat coastlines by storms if they are accompanied by a significant storm surge. Tsunami are thus catastrophic events and can leave a permanent imprint on the landscape. There has been little appreciation in the literature that coastal landscapes may reflect tsunami processes rather than those induced by wind-generated waves and wind. Catastrophic events—termed catastrophism—are not well respected in modern science. This chapter will describe the role of catastrophism in the development of modern geological thinking, show in more detail how tsunami are different from storms, describe various models of tsunami-generated landscapes, and illustrate these models with examples from around the world.

4.2 Catastrophism Versus Uniformitarianism

A tsunami was involved in one of the pivotal debates of modern scientific development (Huggett 1997). On November 1, 1755, an earthquake with a possible surface wave magnitude, M_s, of 9.0 destroyed Lisbon, then a major center of European civilization. Shortly after the earthquake a tsunami swept into the city, and over the next few days fire consumed what was left of Lisbon. The event sent shock waves through the salons of Europe at the beginning of the Enlightenment. The earthquake struck on All Saints' Day, when many Christian believers were praying in church. John Wesley viewed the Lisbon earthquake as God's punishment for the licentious behavior of believers in Lisbon, and retribution for the severity of the Portuguese Inquisition. Immanuel Kant and Jean-Jacques Rousseau viewed the disaster as a natural event and emphasized the need to avoid building in hazardous places. The Lisbon earthquake also gave birth to scientific study of geological events. In 1760, John Mitchell, geology professor at Cambridge University, documented the spatial effects of the earthquake on lake levels throughout Europe (Mitchell 1760). He found seiching along the coastline of the North Sea and in Norwegian fjords, Scottish lochs, Swiss Alpine lakes, and rivers and canals in western Germany and the Netherlands. He deduced that there must have been a progressive, wave-like tilting of the Earth outwards from the center of the earthquake and that this was different from the type of wave produced by a volcanic explosion.

Mitchell's work in 1760 on the Lisbon earthquake effectively represented the separation of two completely different philosophies for viewing the physical behavior of the natural world (Bryant 2005). Beforehand, the catastrophists—people who believed that the shape of the Earth's surface, the stratigraphic breaks evidenced in rock columns, and the large events that were associated with observable processes were cataclysmic—dominated geological methodology. More importantly, these catastrophic processes were Acts of God. The events had to be cataclysmic in order to fit the many observable sequences observed in the rock record into an age for the Earth of 4004 BC, determined from Biblical genealogy. Charles Lyell, one of the fathers of geology, sought to replace this catastrophe theory with gradualism—the idea that geological and geomorphic features were the result of cumulative slow change by natural processes operating at relatively constant rates. This idea implied that processes that shape the Earth's surface followed laws of nature defined by physicists and mathematicians. Whewell, in a review of Lyell's work, coined the term *uniformitarianism*, and subsequently a protracted debate broke out on whether or not the slow processes we observe at present apply to past unobservable events. To add to the debate, the phrase "The present is the key to the past" was also coined.

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_4,

In fact, the idea of uniformitarianism involves two concepts (Bryant 2005). The first implies that geological processes follow natural laws applicable to science. There are no Acts of God. This type of uniformitarianism was established to counter the arguments raised by the catastrophists. The second concept implies constancy of rates of change or material condition through time. This concept is nothing more than inductive reasoning. The type and rate of processes operating today characterize those that have operated over geological time. For example, waves break upon a beach today in the same manner as they would have a 100 million years ago, and prehistoric tsunami behave the same as modern ones described in our written records. If one wants to understand the sedimentary deposits of an ancient tidal estuary, one has to go no further than to a modern estuary and study the processes at work. Included in this concept is the belief that physical landscapes such as modern floodplains and coastlines evolve slowly.

Few geomorphologists or geologists who study Earth surface processes and the evolution of modern landscapes would initially object to this concept. However, the concept does not withstand scrutiny. For example, there is no modern analogy to the nappe mountain building processes that formed the Alps, or to the mass extinctions and sudden discontinuities that have dominated the geological record (Bryant 2005). Additionally, no one who has witnessed a fault line being thrusted up during an earthquake or Mt. St. Helens wrenching itself apart in a cataclysmic eruption would agree that all landscapes develop slowly. As Thomas Huxley so aptly worded it, gradualists had saddled themselves with the tenet of *Natura non facit saltum*—Nature does not make sudden jumps. J Harlen Bretz from the University of Chicago challenged this tenet in the 1920s (Baker 1978, 1981). Bretz attributed the formation of the Scablands of eastern Washington State to catastrophic floods. He subsequently bore the ridicule and rancor of the geological establishment for the next 40 years for proposing this radical idea. Not until the 1960s was Bretz proved correct when Vic Baker of the University of Arizona interpreted space-probe images of enormous channels on Mars as features similar to the Washington Scablands. At the age of 83, Bretz finally received the recognition of his peers for his seminal work.

Convulsive events are important geological processes, and major tsunami can be defined as convulsive (Clifton 1988). More importantly, it will be shown in the remainder of this book that mega-tsunami—in many cases bigger than tsunami described in historic and scientific documents—have acted to shape coastlines. Some of these mega-tsunami events have occurred during the last millennium. In coastal geomorphology, existing scientific custom dictates that in the absence of convincing proof, the evidence for convulsive events must be explained by commoner events of lesser magnitude—such as storms. However, this restriction should not imply that storms can be ubiquitously invoked to account for all sediment deposits or coastal landscapes that, upon closer inspection, have anomalous attributes more correctly explained by a different and rarer convulsive process. The alternate phenomenon of tsunami certainly has the potential for moving sediment and molding coastal landscapes to the same degree as, if not more efficiently than, storms. Tsunami can also operate further inland and at greater heights above sea level. Tsunami have for the most part been ignored in the geological and geomorphological literature as a major agent of coastal evolution. This neglect is unusual considering that tsunami are common, high-magnitude phenomena producing an on-surge with velocities up of 15 m s^{-1} or more.

4.3 Tsunami Versus Storms

In the past, rapid coastal change, especially in sandy sediments, has been explained by invoking storms. Where sediments have previously incorporated boulders, the role of storms versus tsunami has become problematic. However, much of the latter debate deals with isolated boulders or boulders chaotically mixed with sand deposited on low-lying coastal plains or atolls (Bourgeois and Leithold 1984). The pattern of stacked and aligned boulders found along the New South Wales coast mainly lie above the limits of storm waves or surges (Bryant et al. 1996). Where such boulders lie within the storm zone, they form bedforms that have never been linked to such events. More importantly, even a casual reconnaissance of the New South Wales, Australian coastline will show that storms inadequately account for the bedrock-sculptured features dominating the rocky coast. The uniform alignment of such forms, often not structurally controlled, also rules out chemical weathering. Along this coast, the largest storms measured last century in 1974 and 1978 only generated deep-water waves of 10.2 m, while the maximum probable wave for the coast is just over 13 m (Bryant 1988). The effectiveness of these wave heights cannot be exacerbated at shore by storm surges because the narrowness of the shelf and the nature of storms limit surges here to less than 1.5 m. There are three parameters crucial to many of the features outlined in the previous chapter. Two of these, wave height and period, define the energy of the wave; the third, duration, controls how that energy transports sediment, erodes surfaces and generates the landscape. Tsunami and storm waves, especially if the latter are prolonged, effectively overlap in terms of their energy levels and their transport capacity. It is no surprise that it is difficult to distinguish either process in the transport of boulders and sand. However, the duration of flow under a storm wave cannot match that under a tsunami. The peak landward flow under a storm wave rarely exceeds 7–8 s. This is not sufficient to generate bedrock sculpturing. Landward flow in the *tsunami window* lasts for tens of minutes. This gives enough time for high-velocity flow to sculpture highly resistant bedrock into the features described in the previous chapter. Tsunami appear to be the only mechanism capable of providing these conditions along the coast.

The effect of off-surge (backwash) in tsunami is rarely mentioned in the literature. Near the coast, such offshore flow is generally channelised as the volume of overwash drains seaward through inlets and along defined drainage channels. More important, undertow whereby flow in the water column moves seaward along the seabed can occur out to the shelf edge in depths of 100–130 m of water. Continental shelf profiles may be a product of repetitive combing by tsunami-induced currents (Coleman 1968). If this undertow contains any sediment, then it behaves as a density current and powerful ebb currents of 2–3 m s^{-1} can sweep down the continental slope and along the abyssal plain under the passage of a tsunami wave. These currents are two-to-three times greater than those observed for storms (Morton 1988). They can scour the seabed and deposit sand and gravels considerable distances from the shelf edge. Such flows may account for the presence of coarse, winnowed, lag deposits and 2–3 m diameter boulders at the toe of the continental slope in water depths of 200–400 m (Shiki and Yamazaki 1996).

4.3.1 The Nature of Tsunami Versus Storm Deposits

Storms are mainly responsible for two types of deposits: beaches consisting of gravels, cobbles, and boulders (Bourgeois and Leithold 1984), and overwash sand splays (Morton et al. 2007). Unless storm waves can overwash a beach, sand is generally moved shoreward only by fair-weather swell (Komar 1998). Gravel and cobble beaches are characterized by shape and size sorting of particles (Bourgeois and Leithold 1984). Larger disc-shaped particles tend to move to the top of the beach where they are deposited as a berm that may develop at the limit of storm-wave run-up. Smaller spherical particles tend to accumulate at the base of the foreshore. This difference is due to the greater potential for suspension transport of discs in swash and the greater rollability of spheres back down the beach face under backwash. Where sand is available, it tends to be trapped between the larger particles or accumulate at the bottom of the beach.

While tsunami can also overwash coasts and transport coarse sediment, the internal *fabric* of the deposits shows differences from those deposited by storm waves (Morton et al. 2007). First, sandy tsunami deposits rarely exceed 25 cm thickness, while storm deposits can be up to 10 times thicker than this. Second, tsunami can deposit layers of sediment up to several kilometers inland from the coast, whereas storms appear to build up an asymmetric wedge of coarse-grained sediment or berm that rarely extends 50–100 m inland (Dawson 1999). Third, tsunami deposits drape over the landscape, while storm deposits tend to fill in the depressions. Fourth, while both storm and tsunami deposits contain sand originating from beaches or dunes, tsunami deposits can contain finer sediment brought from the continental shelf. The presence of angular rip-up clasts of mud or mud layers is characteristic of tsunami deposits (Kortekaas and Dawson 2007). Mud is winnowed from storm deposits by repetitive backwash while mud clasts are rounded within short distances by repeated contact with the bed. Fifth, a single-bed tsunami deposit is massive with little evidence of bedding while a storm deposit tends to be bedded. Layers of fining upward sediment may be present in sandy tsunami deposits; but such layers may not be visually evident or related to the number of tsunami waves. In storm overwash deposits, such layers relate to individual waves and appear as beds. Where tsunami deposit multiple beds, layers show repeated alternation of current directions capped by mud drapes (Fujiwara 2008). The layers fine and thin upwards reflecting the changes of wave amplitude with time. The mud drapes are formed by suspension fallout between successive tsunami waves. Sixth, tsunami deposits along rocky coasts can contain a significant fraction of broken, angular, and rounded pebbles (Bryant et al. 1996). Breakage is produced by intense turbulence as the tsunami makes contact with rocky shores or rips up material from shore platforms. Storm deposits may contain some angular and broken pebbles, but the amounts are much less. Finally, tsunami deposits can contain unbroken shell and foraminifera because flow may be laminar and dominated by suspension. This hinders particle-to-particle contact or particle contact with the bed. Storm waves carry particles in traction. Contact between particles and the bed are frequent such that shell and foraminifera show signs of fracturing and abrasion.

Gravel and cobble storm-built beaches tend to be characteristic of eroding coasts, although there are exceptions. Thus, their preservation potential is poor. Coarse-grained tsunami beach deposits have a higher potential for preservation, if not in the longer geological record, then certainly at high sea level stillstands over the last few million years on tectonically stable coasts. These sediments often are deposited above the limits of storms, and unless eroded by subsequently larger tsunami, will remain stranded above the active coastal zone on such coasts.

Table 4.1 Comparison of tsunami and storm wave heights required to transport the boulders mentioned to this point in the text

Location	Boulder width (m)	Height of tsunami at shore (m)	Breaking storm-wave height (m)
Jervis Bay			
Mermaids Inlet	2.3	1.4	5.6
Little Beecroft Head			
ramp	4.1	2.7	10.8
clifftop	1.1	0.7	2.8
Honeysuckle Point	2.8	1.8	7.2
Tuross Head	1.3	0.8	3.2
Bingie Bingie Point	2.8	1.8	7.2
O'Hara Headland	1.1	0.7	2.8
Samson Pt., WA	1.0	0.6	2.4
Flores, Indonesia	1.5	2.0	8.0

Source Based on Young et al. (1996a)

4.3.2 Movement of Boulders

Tsunami and storm waves differ in the way that they transport bouldery material. The forces of storm waves and their ability to destroy stony breakwalls and move large boulders on rock platforms are well documented. Under exceptional circumstances, waves as high as 30 m have been recorded in the world's oceans (Bryant 2005). A boulder was tossed 25 m above sea level on the island of Surtsey in Iceland by storm waves. On the west coast of Ireland, boulders up to 78 tonnes in size have been moved by historical storms up to elevations of 11 m above high tide (Cox et al. 2012), although tsunami cannot be ruled out for larger boulders piled higher and of an older age (Scheffers et al. 2010). Waves with a force of 3 t m^{-2} in the 1800s moved blocks weighing 800 and 2,600 tonnes into the harbor at Wick, Scotland (Bascom 1959). There are many stories of pebbles and even cobbles being hurled against lighthouse windows situated on cliff tops. Probably one of the best-documented incidences showing the ability of storms to transport coarse material to the tops of cliffs occurred during Tropical Cyclone Ofa on the south coast of Niue in the southwest Pacific on February 5, 1990 (Solomon and Forbes 1999). Niue is a raised, relict coral atoll fringed by limestone cliffs rising up to 70 m above sea level. A platform reef, up to 120 m wide, has developed at the base of the cliffs. Ofa generated winds of more than 170 km h^{-1} and waves with a maximum significant height of 8.1 m. As it approached Niue, it produced waves 18 m high along the coast. The effect of these waves along the cliffs was dramatic. At Alofi, waves broke above the roof of a hospital situated on an 18 m high cliff. The lower floor of a hotel was severely smashed by the impact of storm-tossed debris. Coarse gravel and boulders 2–3 m in diameter were flung inland over 100 m from the cliff line. Storms can move boulders within the storm wave limit.

Isolated boulders tossed by storms, however, are different from the accumulations of boulders deposited by tsunami. The analysis used in the previous chapter to define the wave height of tsunami capable of moving boulders can be applied to storm waves (Nott 1997). The velocity of a wind-generated storm wave breaking at the shoreline can be approximated as follows:

$$v = (gHb)^{0.5} \tag{4.1}$$

This is half the velocity of an equivalent tsunami wave at shore. When Eq. (4.1) is combined with Eqs. (3.3)–(3.5) and solved for wave height, the following relationship is obtained:

$$H_b \geq 4H_t \tag{4.2}$$

This relationship holds for exposed and submerged boulders, and those that have originated from bedrock surfaces. Table 4.1 presents a comparison of the wave heights of tsunami and storms necessary to transport the boulders described so far in this book. Clearly, tsunami waves are more efficient than storm waves at transporting boulders inland. This fact becomes more relevant knowing that storm waves break in water depths 1.28 times their wave height. Hence, the heights for storm waves shown in Table 4.1 require much larger waves offshore to overcome the effects of wave breaking. Storm waves lose little energy only along coasts where cliffs plunge into the ocean. Unless storm waves reach a platform before breaking, they do not have the capability to move boulders more than 2 m in diameter, under traction, on most rocky coasts. While storm waves under ideal conditions can transport boulders, as shown by the effect of Cyclone Ofa on the island of Niue, they are unlikely to transport boulders and deposit them in imbricated piles at the top of cliffs. Boulder imbrication in contrast to pebble imbrication is rarely referenced in the coastal

Table 4.2 Comparison of tsunami and storm wave heights required to transport boulders along the Queensland coast north of Cairns

Location	Boulder width (m)	Weight (tonnes)	Height of tsunami at shore (m)	Breaking storm-wave height (m)
Cow Bay	6.3	247.0	11.2	44.8
Oak Beach	4.0	192.0	5.0	20.0
Taylor Point	4.2	90.0	9.1	36.4
Turtle Creek Beach	4.3	115.0	5.2	20.8
Cape Tribulation	4.1	86.0	5.8	23.2

Source Based on Nott (1997)

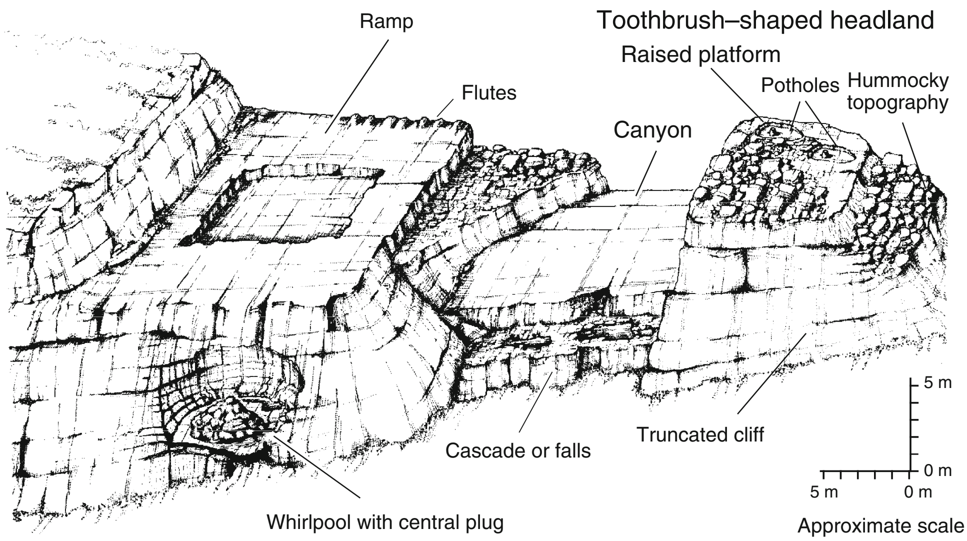


Fig. 4.1 Model for irregular, large-scale, sculptured landscapes carved by tsunami. Model is for headlands 7–20 m above sea level. From Bryant and Young (1996)

literature. Along the New South Wales south coast, imbrication is a dominant characteristic of boulder piles and a signature of tsunami (Young et al. 1996a). For example, at Tuross Heads, contact-imbricated boulders with an upstream dip of 30–50° are piled *en echelon* in two single files over a distance of 150 m. This pattern is similar to that produced in erosive fluvial environments by high-magnitude, unidirectional flow. The size of the imbricated boulders not only matches that produced by high-magnitude flows in streams but also that produced by the catastrophic flows hypothesized for meltwaters in front of, or beneath, large glaciers (Table 4.2).

4.4 Types of Coastal Landscapes Created by Tsunami

The modeling of spatial variation in modern sedimentary environments dominated by a specific process is termed a facies model. These models are well formulated for many processes such as tides, rivers, and waves (Walker and James 1992). Facies models are used to interpret the geological rock record. Rarely do facies models consider bedrock erosion. For example, while much literature has been written on the formation of beaches with their attendant surf zones and the long-term development of sandy coastal barriers, little has been written on the erosion of rocky coasts by waves. What has been written is elementary and perfunctory. What is a sea cave, a coastal stack, or an arch? The literature frequently refers to such features but sheds little light as to their formation, especially in resistant and massively bedded bedrock. Even the formation of rock platforms, the most studied feature of rocky coasts, is ambiguous. Erosion of platforms across bedrock of differing lithologies or structures is attributed to long-term wave abrasion or chemical erosion—processes that have been measured at localized points but never broadly enough to establish them as the main process. Catastrophic tsunami waves have the power to erode such surfaces in one instant. Many other aspects of cliffed and rocky coasts are treated in a similarly cursory fashion. If sea caves, stacks, arches, bedrock-ramped surfaces, sheared cliffs, imbricated boulder piles, and chevron ridges are the signature of tsunami, then how common are catastrophic tsunami in shaping the world's coastline? (Fig. 4.1).

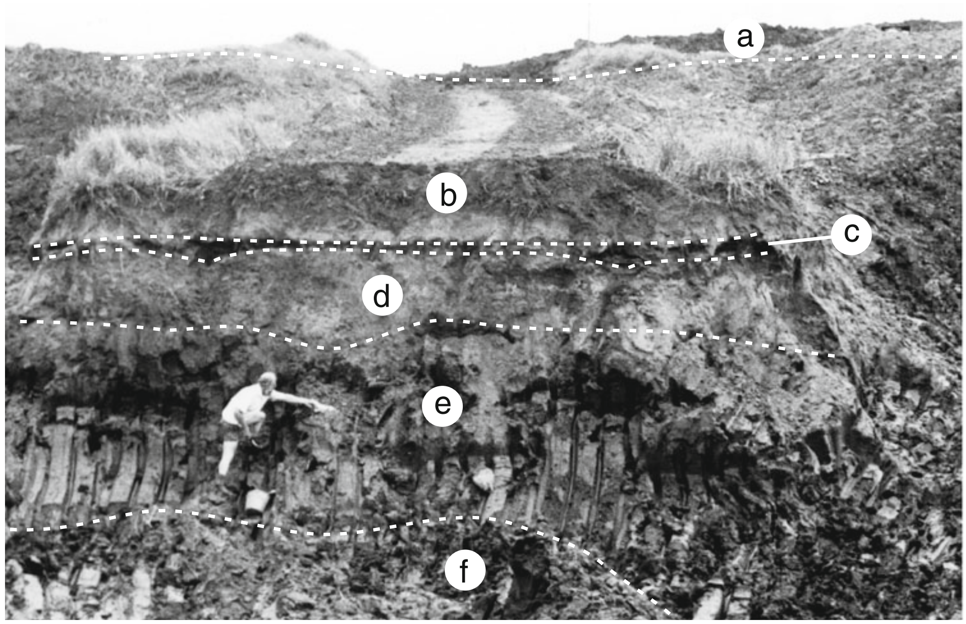


Fig. 4.2 Section through the barrier beach at Bellambi, New South Wales, Australia: **a** modern dune, **b** Holocene barrier sand dated using thermoluminescence (*TL*) at 7,400 BP, **c** clay unit, **d** tsunami sand TL—dated at 25,000 BP, **e** Holocene estuarine clay radiocarbon dated at 5,100 BP, and **f** Pleistocene estuarine clay TL—dated at more than 45000 years in age. The TL date of the tsunami sand indicates that the sands are anomalous. The Holocene ages overlap

4.4.1 Sandy Barrier Coasts

Large sections of the world's sandy coastline are characterized by barriers either welded to the coastline or separated from it by shallow lagoons. The origin of these barriers has been attributed to shoreward movement of sediment across the shelf by wind-generated waves, concomitantly with the Holocene rise of sea level (Komar 1998). Lagoons form where the rate of migration of sand deposits lags the rate at which the rising sea drowns land. This theory of barrier formation ignores the role of tsunami as a possible mechanism, not only for shifting barriers landward, but also for building them up vertically. For example, at Bellambi along the New South Wales coast of Australia, tsunami-deposited sands make up 20–90 % of the vertical accretion of a barrier beach that stands 3–4 m above present sea level (Fig. 4.2). This beach will be described in more detail subsequently (Young et al. 1995).

Tsunami in shallow water are constructional waves with the potential to carry large amounts of sand and coarse-grained sediment shoreward. Large aeolian dunes that may develop on stable barriers do not necessary impede tsunami (Minoura and Nakaya 1991; Andrade 1992). Instead, tsunami can overwash such forms, reducing the height of the dunes, depositing sediment in dune hollows, and spreading sand as a thin sheet across backing lagoons (Fig. 4.3). On the other hand, storm waves tend to surge through low-lying gaps in dune fields, sporadically depositing lobate washover fans in lagoons (Bryant and McCann 1973). Rarely will these fans penetrate far into a lagoon or coalesce. The seaward part of the barrier can also be translated rapidly landward tens of meters by the passage of a tsunami. This occurred along the barrier fronting Sissano lagoon during the Papua New Guinea Tsunami of July 17, 1998 (Kawata et al. 1999). The emplacement of a sand deposit overtop lagoonal sediments on a coastline with stable sea level may signify the presence of recent tsunami where historical evidence for such events is lacking. Pre-existing tidal inlets are preferred conduits for tsunami. Sediment-laden tsunami may deposit large, coherent deltas at these locations, and these may be mistaken for flood tidal deltas (Minoura and Nakaya 1991; Andrade 1992). These features may be raised above present sea level or form shallow shoals inside inlets. Because the sediment was deposited rapidly, these deltas may end abruptly landward in lagoons and estuaries, forming sediment thresholds that are stable under present-day tidal flow regimes. Channels through the lagoon can also be scoured by tsunami, with sediment being deposited on the landward side of lagoons as splays.

If the volume of sand transported by a tsunami is large, then a raised backbarrier platform may form from coalescing overwash fans or smaller lagoons may be completely infilled. The height of either the backbarrier platform or infilled lagoon may lie several meters above existing sea level. These raised lagoons may be misinterpreted as evidence for a higher sea level. If these surfaces are not covered by seawater or quickly vegetated, they may be subject to wind deflation, with the formation of small hummocky dunes. Under extreme conditions, tsunami waves may cross a lagoon, overwash the landward shoreline, and deposit marine sediment as chenier ridges. Such ridges ring the landward sides of lagoons in New South Wales. Finally, along ria coastlines, estuaries may be infilled with marine sediment for considerable distances upriver. High-velocity flood and backwash flows under large tsunami may form pool and riffle topography. This process

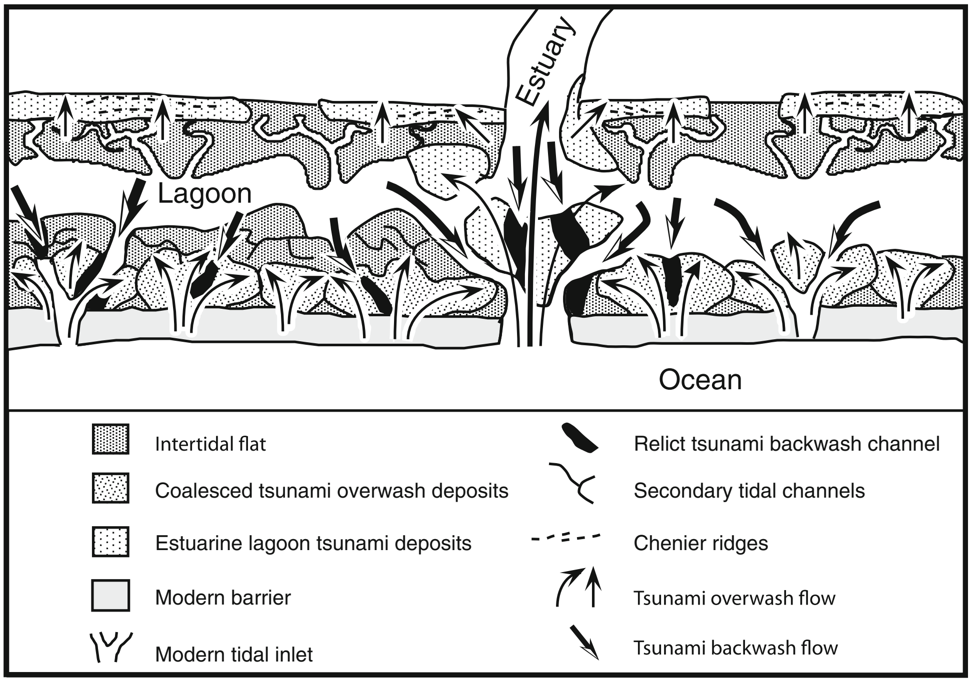


Fig. 4.3 Model of the effect of tsunami upon a sandy barrier coastline. Based on Minoura and Nakaya (1991), and Andrade (1992)

may account for pools that are tens of meters deep and morphologically stable under present tidal flow regimes in coastal estuaries along the New South Wales coast.

Water piled up behind barriers by tsunami overwash tends to drain seaward through existing channels. However, if the tsunami wave crest impinges at an angle to the coast, channels can be opened up, or widened, at the downdrift end of barriers. In some cases, on low barriers, water may simply drain back into the ocean as a sheet along the full length of the barrier. Because barriers are breached at so many locations, the resulting tidal inlets that form compete for the available tidal prism rushing into the lagoon under normal tides (Minoura and Nakaya 1991; Andrade 1992). As these inlets become less efficient in flushing out sediment, they lose their integrity and rapidly close. Hence, tsunami-swept barriers may show evidence of numerous relict tidal inlets without any obvious outlet to the sea. Reorganization of tidal flow in the lagoon because of these openings may lead to the formation of a secondary, shallow, bifurcating distributary channel network. In contrast, under storm waves, new tidal inlets are usually located opposite, or close to, contemporary estuary mouths (Bryant and McCann 1973).

4.4.2 Deltas and Alluvial Plains

The pattern on deltas and alluvial plains is different. If these low-lying areas are cleared of vegetation, the low frictional coefficient permits the tsunami wave to penetrate far inland before its energy is dissipated. The limit of penetration is defined by Eq. (2.14). In this instance, the wave can deposit silt or sand as a landward-tapering unit ranging from a few centimeters to over a meter in thickness. This feature is the most commonly identified signature of tsunami as described in Chap. 3. In some cases, this sand unit can be deposited 10 km or more inland. In extreme cases, where sand is abundant, a swash bar or chevron ridge may be deposited at the landward limit of penetration.

Very little attention has been paid to the resulting backwash, which according to hydrological principles must become concentrated into a network of interconnected channels that increase in size, but decrease in number seaward. Only one description of such a network has appeared in the literature to date (Young et al. 1996b), and this is for the Shoalhaven Delta on the New South Wales south coast (Fig. 3.3a). Here a large tsunami event deposited a fine sand unit up to 10 km from the coast. The sand contains open marine shells, such as *Polinices didymus*, *Austrocochlea constricta*, and *Bankivia fasciata* that are 4730–5050 years old. A network of meandering backflow channels drains off the delta to the southeast (Fig. 4.4). Significantly, these smaller channels are elevated above the regional landscape and are bordered by broad swamps. These channels are distinct from the main channel of the Shoalhaven River in that they have developed within Holocene sediment, whereas the river is entrenched into a Pleistocene surface that is buried about 4 m below the surface of the delta. The backwash channels are not only an order of magnitude smaller than the main river, but they also have a much lower carrying capacity. The channels increase in width from 40 m about 10 km upstream to 100 m at the mouth of the Crookhaven River, which exits to the sea at the sheltered

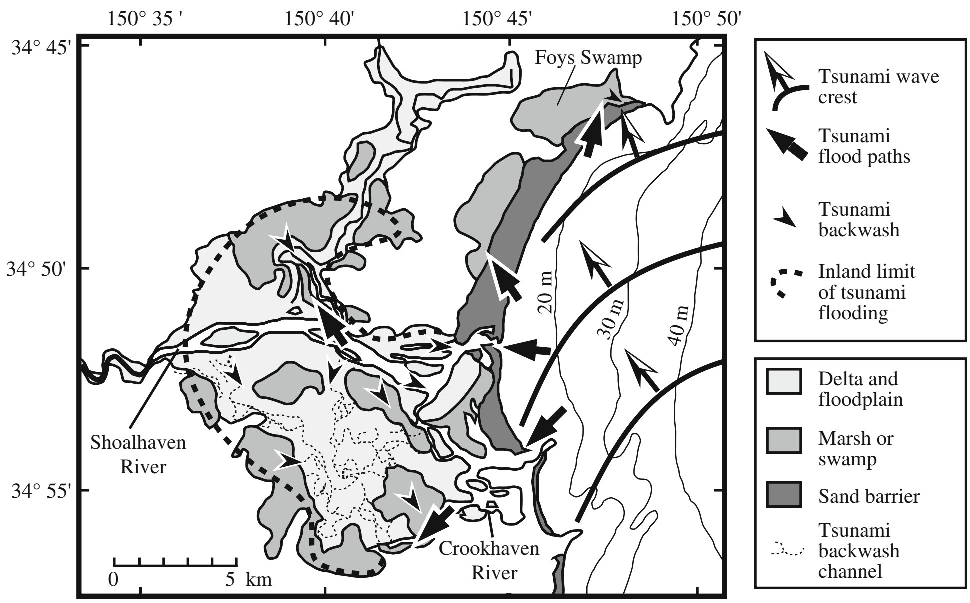


Fig. 4.4 Hypothesized tsunami overwashing of the Shoalhaven Delta, New South Wales, and the meandering backwash channels draining water off the Delta. A tsunami event 4730–5050 years ago—as determined from shell buried within a tapering sand layer within the delta—probably created these channels. The extent of this marine layer is also marked. A younger tsunami event around AD 1410 ±60 years may also be implicated in the formation of the backwash channels. Based on Young et al. (1996b)

southeast corner of the delta. The channels had a maximum discharge of 500 $m^3\ s^{-1}$ based upon the length of meanders. The modern Shoalhaven River has a bankfull discharge of 3,000 $m^3\ s^{-1}$ in flood. Many smaller streams were once tidal, but the channels have since undergone infilling with a reduction in their carrying capacity. The channels are 600 years old, coinciding with the regional age of a large paleo-tsunami predating European settlement. This age was obtained from oyster shells found on a raised pile of imbricated boulders that were swept into the entrance of the Crookhaven River as the tsunami approached from the south. The wave then climbed onto the delta via this entrance and the main channel of the Shoalhaven River (Fig. 4.4). The inferred direction of approach coincides with the alignment of nearby boulders deposited by tsunami on cliffs rising 16–33 m above sea level (Fig. 3.13). The tsunami also swept over a coastal sand barrier and onto the northern part of the delta (Foys Swamp), depositing a layer of sand and cobble 1.8 km inland of the modern shore. The small meandering channels on the southern part of the delta were created by southeast drainage of backwash from the deltaic surface after the tsunami's passage northwards up the coast.

4.4.3 Rocky Coasts

There are two distinct models of sculptured landscape for rocky coasts: smooth, small-scale and irregular, large-scale (Bryant and Young 1996). These are shown schematically in Figs. 4.1 and 4.5 respectively. The two models can be differentiated from each other by their degree of dissection. Smooth, small-scale bedrock-sculptured landscapes are restricted to headlands less than 7–8 m in height. Features consist of *S*-forms and bedrock polishing, and rarely exceed a meter in relief. *Dump* deposits and imbricated boulders usually are present nearby. The *S*-forms are directional, paralleling each other and the orientation of any imbricated boulders. The landscape is dominated on the side of headlands facing the tsunami by fields of overlapping muschelbrüche and sichelwannen grading into V-shaped grooves as slopes steepen. Where vertical vortices develop, broad potholes may form, but rarely with preserved central bedrock plugs. Crude transverse troughs develop wherever the slope levels off. At the crest of headlands, muschelbrüche-like forms give way to elongated fluting. The flutes taper downflow into undulating surfaces on the lee slope. Sinuous cavitation marks and drill holes develop on this gentler surface wherever flow accelerates because of steepening or flow impingement against the bed. On some surfaces, a zone of fluting and cavitation marks may reappear towards the bottom of the lee slope because of flow acceleration. Cavettos or drill holes develop wherever vertical faces are present. While cavettos are restricted to surfaces paralleling the flow, cavitation marks are ubiquitous.

Irregular, large-scale, bedrock-sculptured landscapes are most likely created by large tsunami generated by submarine landslides and asteroid impacts with the ocean. The

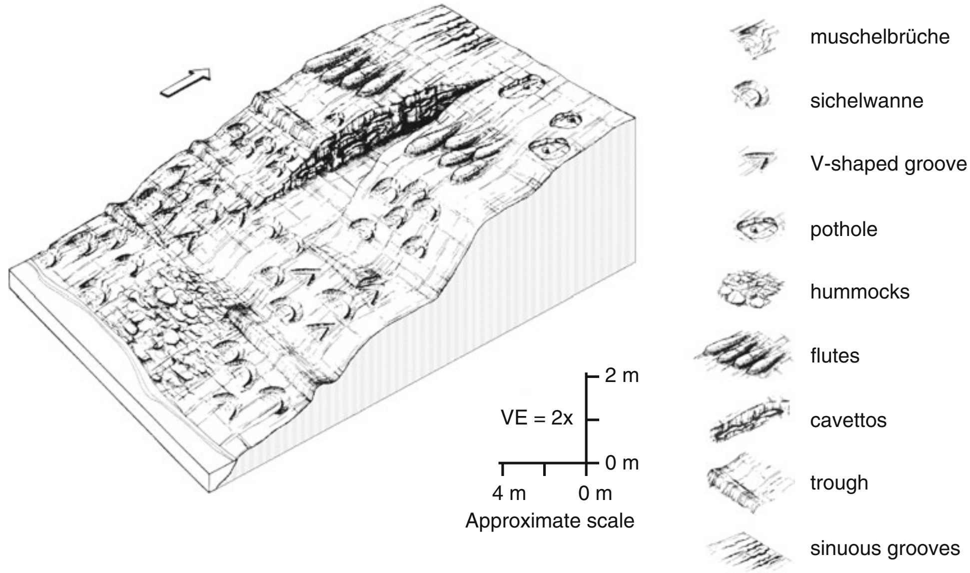


Fig. 4.5 Model for smooth, small-scale, bedrock surfaces sculptured by tsunami. Model is for headlands within 7 m of sea level. From Bryant and Young (1996)

landscape typically forms on headlands rising above 7–8 m elevation in exposed positions (Fig. 3.23). Many facets of the small-scale model can be found in this landscape. The large-scale model is characterized by ramps, whirlpools, and canyons, forming toothbrush-shaped headlands (Fig. 4.1). Ramps can extend from modern sea level to heights of 30 m and can evince zones of evacuated bedrock depressions (Fig. 3.22), cascades, and canyons (Fig. 3.23). Whirlpools up to 10–15 m deep (Fig. 3.26) are found primarily on the upflow side of the headlands, although they can also form on steep lee slopes. The base of whirlpools generally lies just above mean sea level, but some are drowned, with the central plugs forming stacks that are detached from the coastline. The base of whirlpools is controlled by the depth of large-scale vortex formation rather than by the level of the sea at the time of formation. Smaller potholes are also found in these environments. Generally, canyon features are inclined downflow. However, where the effects of more than one event can be identified, earlier canyons provide conduits across the headland for subsequent, concentrated erosive flow. Irregular, large-scale landscapes preserve a crude indication of the direction of tsunami approach, although the effects of wave refraction may complicate the pattern. Under extreme conditions, the complete coastal landscape can bear the imprint of catastrophic flow—headlands from 80–130 m high may be overwashed with sheets of water carving channels as they drained off the downflow side, headlands rising over 40 m above sea level may have their seaward ends truncated, talus and jagged bedrock may be stripped from cliff faces, platforms may be planed smooth to heights 20 m above sea level, and whole promontories may be sculptured into a fluted or drumlin-like shape. Finally, coastal tsunami flow is usually repetitive during a single erosive event, which consists of pulses of unidirectional, high-velocity flow as individual waves making up a tsunami wave train surge over bedrock promontories. In these instances, erosive vortices last for no more than a few minutes and the erosive event is completely over within a few hours.

4.4.4 Atolls

The islands of the South Pacific are exposed to both tropical cyclones and tsunami. One of the more notable features is the occurrence of alternating mounds and channels (Bourrouilh-Le Jan and Talandier 1985). Mounds called *motu*, consisting of sands and gravels derived from the beach and reef, separate the channels or *hoa* from each other (Fig. 4.6). The *motu* are drumlin-shaped with tails of debris trailing off into the lagoon. In many respects, they could also be interpreted as molded *dump* deposits. *Motu–hoa* topography appears to be restricted to atolls in the South Pacific. Many descriptions of this topography consider them features of storm waves. However, storm waves from tropical cyclones appear to modify prior *motu–hoa* topography rather than being responsible for it. Even under storm surge, bores generated by storms tend to flow through pre-existing *hoa* into the lagoon. Despite the steepness of nearshore topography around atolls, storm waves dissipate much of their energy by breaking on coral aprons fringing islands. The effect of storms is primarily restricted to the accumulation of coarse debris aprons in front of *motu–hoa* topography. For example, Cyclone Bebe in 1972 built a ridge on Funafuti that was 19 km long, 30 km wide and 4 m high (Scoffin 1993). The volume of sediment thrown into this ridge occupied 1.4×10^6 m^3 and weighed 2.8×10^6 tonnes. The ridge ran

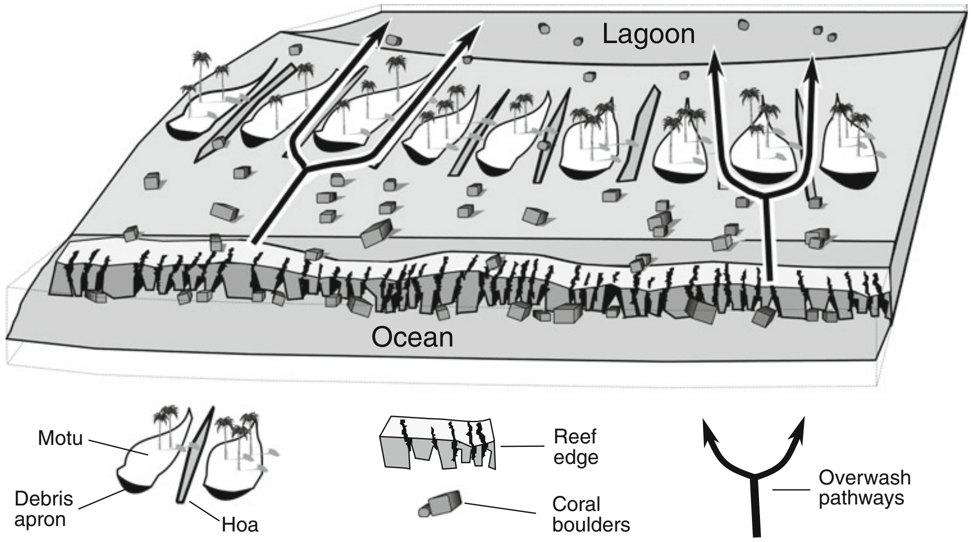


Fig. 4.6 Model for the impact of tsunami upon coral atolls in the South Pacific Ocean. Based on Bourrouilh-Le Jan and Talandier (1985). Only a selection of overwash pathways around mounds (*motu*) and through channels (*hoa*) cutting across the atoll are marked

continuously in front of *motu–hoa* topography around the atoll. More often, changes in the landscape produced by storms are patchy, whereas *motu* and *hoa* form a regular pattern over considerable distances on many atolls. *Motu–hoa* topography can be formed by a single tsunami overwashing low-lying atolls. *Motu* or mounds form under helical flow where opposing vortices meet, while *hoa* or channels are excavated where these vortices diverge. The prominent nature of such topography suggests that mega-tsunami may be responsible.

Large boulders deposited on atolls are also difficult to link to storm waves. They have been ripped off the reef edge and deposited in trains or dumped in piles on the reef fronting *motu*. In some cases, isolated boulders have been carried through *hoa* and deposited in the backing lagoon (Fig. 4.6). This process has not been observed during storms. While storm waves can erode boulders from the reef edge, they rarely transport them far. In fact, boulders wrenched from the reef edge by storms usually end up in a wedge-shaped apron of talus at the foot of the reef slope. More unusual is the sheer size of some of the boulders. One of the best examples occurs on the northwest corner of Rangiroa Island in the Tuamotu Archipelago (Talandier and Bourrouilh-Le Jan 1988). Here, one of the coral boulders measures 15 m × 10 m × 5 m and weighs over 1,400 tonnes. This boulder could have been moved easily by a tsunami wave 6 m high—Eq. (3.5)—but would have required a storm wave 24 m in height—Eq. (4.2). Most boulders found scattered across atolls consist of coral that is more than 1500 years old. However, the boulders rest on an atoll foundation that is as young as 300 years. This fact suggests that the boulders were deposited by a large tsunami at the beginning of the 18th century. Local legends in the South Pacific describe the occurrence of large catastrophic waves at this time concomitant with the abandonment of many islands throughout French Polynesia. Significantly, the legends have the sun shining at the time of the waves—a fact ruling out tropical cyclones.

The Indian Ocean Tsunami event of December 26, 2004 provided one of the few opportunities to observe the impact of a large tsunami upon atolls. This event will be described in detail in Chap. 6. On the Maldives, in the center of the Indian Ocean, the first wave was 2.5 m high and surged over every atoll (Kench et al. 2008). This was followed over the next 6 h by a succession of 4–5 diminishing waves at 15–140 min intervals. The waves eroded less than four percent of the islands; however they played a major role in the redistribution of sediment that normally would have been produced by the accumulative effects of seasonal changes in wave climate. Sediment was removed from the eastern side of atolls fronting the tsunami and either draped as a layer of sand 10–30 cm thick on top of the atoll or washed around the sides and deposited in the lee of islands. Where sediment was voluminous, this leeward deposition generated a trailing spit across the reef. Erosion at the front of the atoll left a permanent scarp that in many places exceeded two meters in height. Nowhere did the waves erode channels or *hoa* across the atolls, a fact indicating that Pacific island *motu–hoa* topography must be produced by much higher energy events. Tsunami such as the Indian Ocean event are not detrimental to atolls, but rather a contributing factor in vertical island building.

4.4.5 Island Landscapes

Other examples exist in the world where the signatures of tsunami dominate in preference to those induced by storms. Surprisingly, these come from places in the Caribbean Region where all geomorphic landscapes are assumed to be

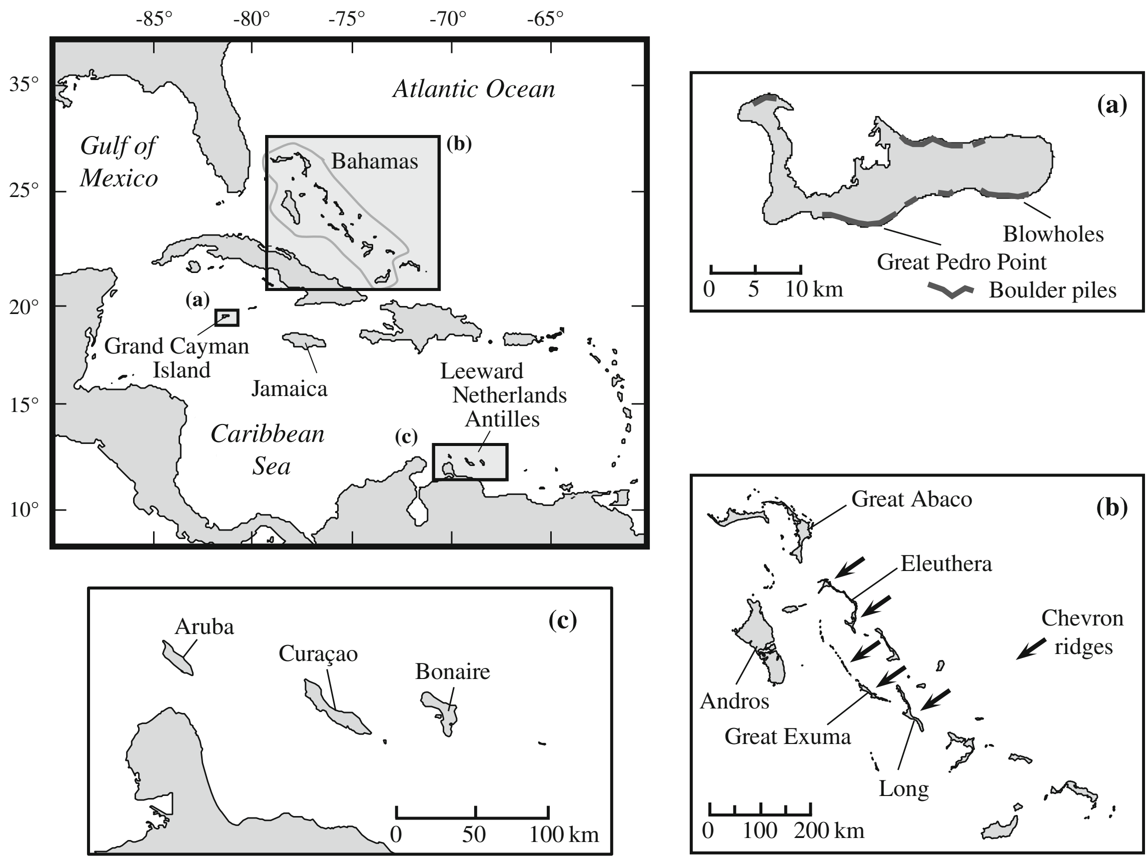


Fig. 4.7 The Caribbean Region. **a** Grand Cayman Island, **b** Bahamas, **c** Leeward Lesser Antilles

the product of tropical cyclones (hurricanes). The first of these examples comes from the Cayman Islands (Fig. 4.7a). The islands exist in a region where tsunami have played a major role in the region historically. For example, in June 1692, a powerful tsunami devastated Port Royal on the nearby island of Jamaica. The region is also dominated by tropical cyclones. For example, in 1785 a tropical cyclone destroyed every house and tree except one on the Cayman Islands. In 1932, a hurricane with winds of 330 km h^{-1} generated seas that carried huge rocks weighing several tonnes. The waves moved coral boulders 0.6–1.0 m in diameter shoreward from waters less than 15 m deep, constructing ramparts at shore.

Bigger boulders exist than those transported by these storms (Jones and Hunter 1992). The boulders appear to be related to a high-energy, prehistoric event dating around 1662 that moved slabs as large as 5.5 m in length, depositing some in clusters up to 150 m inland. Some clusters contain imbricated stacks of boulders, aligned in a north–south direction, roughly at right angles to the shoreline. At Great Pedro Point, blocks weighing up to 10 tonnes were moved 18 m vertically and 50–60 m inland of the cliff line. The largest boulder measures 5.5 m × 2.8 m × 1.5 m. All of the boulders were emplaced at least 12 m above sea level. Many of the boulders originated as giant rip-up clasts torn from terraces formed in dolomite or from boulder deposits at the base of sea cliffs. The terraces had solutional weathering pinnacles and ridges with a relief of 2 m that were planed flat. According to Eqs. (3.3) and (4.2), the largest boulder required a storm wave 12.5 m high to move it. The equivalent tsunami wave was only 3.1 m high. The storm waves could only exist if water depths were more than 16 m deep at the base of cliffs, otherwise they would have broken. This condition occurs at only one of the locations where boulders are found. Even here, it is doubtful if storm waves could have maintained sufficient energy to transport boulders more than 100–150 m inland.

A second example comes from the Bahamas (Fig. 4.7b), where the landscape has been created by either tsunami or storm waves. The Bahamas offer a range of features suggestive of tsunami from the Last Interglacial. Most interesting are V-shaped ridges up to several kilometers in length that have penetrated inland from the exposed Atlantic Ocean side of the islands (Hearty et al. 1998). The ridges are asymmetrical, averaging 3 km in length, with some exceeding 10 km. They are 20–100 m wide and stand

Table 4.3 Comparison of tsunami and storm wave heights required to transport boulders in the Bahamas

Location	Length (m)	Boulder width (m)	Thickness (m)	Volume (m^3)	Weight (tonnes)	Height of tsunami at shore (m)	Breaking storm-wave height (m)
Palaeo-boulders	13.0	11.5	6.5	972	1,846	5.9	23.7
	14.0	7.3	6.7	685	1,301	2.6	10.5
	9.3	6.0	4.0	223	424	2.8	11.3
	8.1	5.7	5.5	254	482	1.9	7.7
	7.2	5.7	5.0	205	390	2.1	8.2
Modern	7.8	4.7	2.5	92	174	2.7	10.9
	4.9	4.5	1.2	26	50	4.0	16.1
	3.8	2.5	2.0	19	36	1.0	4.0
	3.8	3.2	1.5	18	35	1.9	7.8
	6.4	2.7	0.5	9	16	3.9	15.7

Source Based on Hearty (1997)

8–25 m high, increasing in elevation towards their tip. Some ridges indicate that waves must have run up to elevations of 40 m above sea level at the time of deposition. There are up to 30 ridges, some tucked into each other. Nowhere does this involve more than four ridges. The ridges have a consistent orientation to the west-southwest that varies by no more than 10° along 300 km of coastline, despite a 60° swing in the orientation of the shelf edge. Internally, the ridges contain low-angle cross-beds, scour-and-fill pockets, pebble layers, and bubbly textures characteristic of rapid deposition found at the swash limit of accreting sandy beaches. The steepest-dipping beds are found towards the landward margin of the ridges. Because of their shape and the fact that smaller ones lie nestled within large forms, they have been termed chevron ridges. It was similarities to these ridges, found at Jervis Bay, New South Wales, that led to this term being used to identify one of the prominent signatures of large tsunami.

The chevron ridges on Eleuthera Island are associated with huge boulders up to 970 m^3 in size and weighing up to 2,330 tonnes (Hearty 1997). These have been transported over the top of cliffs more than 20 m high. The boulders were emplaced at the end of the Last Interglacial sea level highstand. They were transported up to 500 m landward—a distance greater than present-day boulders have been transported. The modern boulders are much smaller, averaging 22 m^3 in volume and weighing less than 175 tonnes (Table 4.3). However, some of these modern boulders are anomalous and suggestive of recent tsunami. For example, some have been transported up to 200 m landward and more than 10 m above sea level. Again, Eqs. (3.3) and (4.2) can be used to resolve the difference between the capacity of theoretical tsunami and storm waves to transport these boulders. Note that in these calculations a density of 1.9 g cm^{-3} has been used for the coral boulders. The largest of the modern coral boulders requires a storm wave about 16 m in height to be transported, whereas the paleo-boulders require maximum storm waves of about 24 m in height. Both of these sizes are difficult to obtain close to shore without breaking even under storm surges of 7–8 m that can be generated here by tropical cyclones. Local storms also do not account for the formation and consistent alignment of the chevron ridges. Tropical cyclones have winds that rotate around an eye that rarely exceeds 100 km in diameter. For the ridges to be produced by a cyclone, the storm would have had to maintain consistently strong winds and moved parallel to the islands over a much longer distance than is observed at present. The *echelon* nature of some chevron ridges, tucked one inside the other, also requires more than one storm—which appears unlikely.

Tsunami with a distant origin appear more feasible. The paleo and modern boulders require maximum tsunami wave heights of only 6 and 4 m respectively. Tsunami waves, as small as 1.0–2.0 m in height, could have moved some of the boulders. Tsunami generated by submarine landslides or comet/asteroid impact with the ocean produce up to four waves in their wave train. This fact could easily account for up to four chevron ridges nestled one within another—all with the same orientation. While the Bahamas are subject to submarine landslides along the shelf margin, a local source can be ruled out because waves would have radiated outwards from this source and not been able to produce the consistent ridge alignment over such an extended distance. Either distant submarine landslides or an comet/asteroid impact in the Atlantic Ocean accounts for the ridges and boulder deposits in the Bahamas. These possibilities will be discussed further in subsequent chapters.

A third example comes from Leeward Lesser Antilles, consisting of the islands of Aruba, Curaçao and Bonaire (Fig. 4.7c). The islands stand slightly elevated above present sea-level but are devoid of a fringing reef in an environment where coral should have no problem growing

(Scheffers 2002, 2004). An unusual feature is the carving into the island platforms by straight, short and reef-bordered channels called *bokas*. They are up to 100 m long, face eastwards, and bear an uncanny resemblance to *hoa* described above for atolls. Boulder ramparts, consisting of Pleistocene bedrock fragments 0.2–1.0 m in size, torn up from the ocean, rise to elevations of 6–10 m above sea level, well above the zone of storm waves. As well, ridges consisting of coral debris line the southern, southeastern and western leeward coastlines. The ridges extend over several hundred meters, are 10–50 m wide, and lie up to 3 m above sea-level. Boulders up to 255 tonnes are also scattered around the northeast facing shorelines. The islands are located at the southern border of tropical cyclone activity with an average of one storm coming within 185 km of the region every 4 years. However, even close storms are ineffectual in transporting large-size sediment. For example, the most significant, recent events were Hurricanes Lenny in 1999 and Ivan in 2004, with wind speeds over 160 and 230 km h^{-1} respectively (Scheffers 2004; Engel et al. 2010). While Ivan moved smaller boulders the size of those found on the islands, the largest boulders required storm waves three times higher based on modified equations of wave height derived from boulder dimensions (Engel et al. 2010). The largest boulders thus appear to be the unequivocal product of tsunami. Radiocarbon dating of coral in the onshore deposits suggests three tsunami events around 500 BP; 1,700–2,000 BP; and 3,000–3,300 BP.

4.5 Paleo-Landscapes: Australia

4.5.1 South Coast of New South Wales

Many of the examples used as signatures of tsunami in Chap. 3 and in the construction of landscape models described in this chapter come from the south coast of New South Wales (Fig. 3.3a). Dating evidence indicates that tsunami here have been a repetitive feature over the past 7000 years (Young et al. 1997; Bryant and Nott 2001). These tsunami have acted profoundly on the landscape at two scales. At the smaller scale, beaches have been overwashed, chaotically sorted sediments that include gravel and boulders have been dumped onto headlands, imbricated boulders have been deposited in aligned piles, and bedrock surfaces have been sculptured. At the larger scale, complete barrier sequences and rocky headlands bear the unmistakable signature of high-velocity flow that only tsunami can explain. While the evidence for tsunami as a dominant element of the landscape is pervasive, only a few examples can be presented in the space available here.

Many of the deltas and low coastal plains along this coast have been swept by tsunami. The model of tsunami overwash for deltas shown in Fig. 4.4 is found here (Young et al. 1996b). Buried sand layers have also been identified in many estuarine settings (Young et al. 1995). These units contain cobbles and marine shell, are up to 1 m thick, and can be found 10 km inland of the modern beach in sheltered positions that all but rule out deposition by normal wind-generated waves. Similar shell-rich sands have been found along the New South Wales coast trapped in sheltered embayments at Cullendulla Creek, Batemans Bay (Fig. 3.8), and at Fingal Bay, Port Stephens (Bryant et al. 1992, 1996). This coastline is also renowned for its sandy barriers entrapping large coastal lakes and enclosing lowlands. The evolution of these barriers has been explained in terms of high-frequency, low-magnitude marine and aeolian processes superimposed on the effects of changing sea level during the Late Quaternary. The sandy barriers were constructed at sea level highstands during the Last Interglacial over 90000 years ago, and during the Holocene between 3000 and 7000 years ago (Bryant et al. 1996, 1997). Although sandy marine barrier deposits dating from the Last Interglacial are well preserved on the north coast of New South Wales, they are paradoxically rare south of Sydney, where many of the signatures of tsunami have been identified. Here, many of the Holocene barrier deposits are in fact the product of tsunami overwash.

Two examples stand out—Bellambi Beach, Wollongong, and the sand barriers inside Jervis Bay about 100 km south of Sydney (Fig. 3.3a). At Bellambi (Fig. 4.2), a 1.0–1.2 m thick humate-impregnated sand that contains isolated, rounded boulders lies sandwiched between Holocene estuarine clay and beach sand (Young et al. 1995). The humate is anomalous because the sand dates much older than the Holocene, at an age of 22000–25600 years. At this time, the coastline was nowhere near its present location, but 130 m lower and 12 km offshore. Significantly, a 20–30 cm thick pumice layer is trapped near the southern end of the barrier about 2 m above present sea level. The pumice is 25000 years old and originated from volcanic eruptions north of New Zealand. Its composition does not match that of any modern pumice floating onto the coast. The pumice probably comes from relict beach deposits on the shelf. To maintain their older temporal signature, the humate sands were transported suddenly from the shelf to the present coastline during the building of the barrier. This process was carried out by a large tsunami about 4500–5000 years ago. The tsunami also picked up bouldery material from a headland 1 km away and mixed this with the sand. The pumice was not carried with any of this material. Being lighter than water, it floated to the surface of the ocean and drifted into the lagoon at the back of the barrier afterwards on sea breezes. If this scenario is correct, then the tsunami had to be large enough to generate bottom current velocities that could not only entrain sand, but also erode

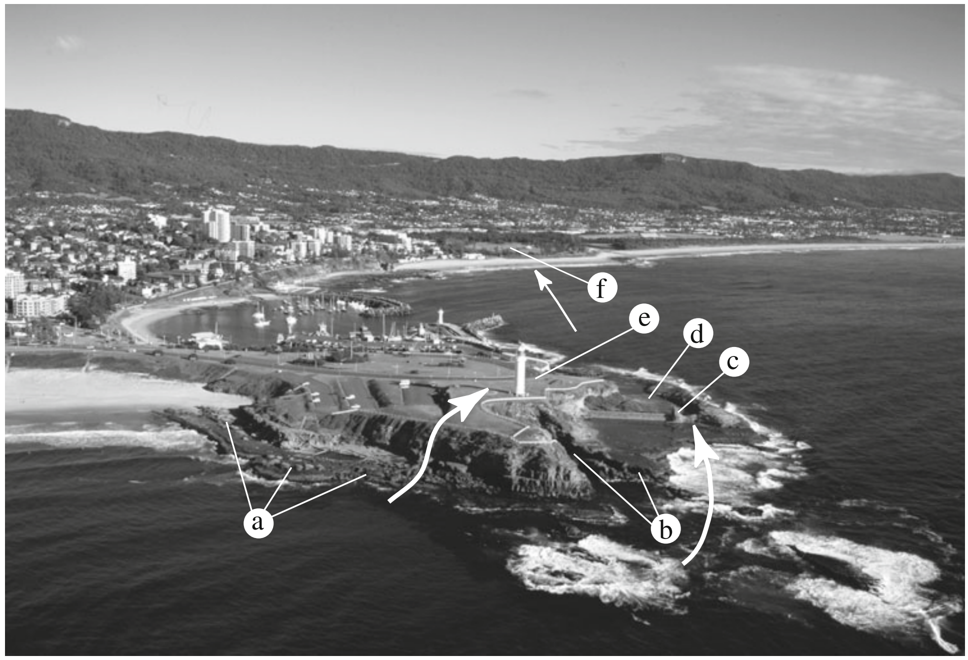


Fig. 4.8 Flagstaff Point, Wollongong, Australia. This headland, which is 20 m above sea level, was overridden and severely eroded by a paleo-tsunami that approached from the southeast (*white arrows*). Main features (*white lines*) are as follows: **a** boulder piles, **b** incipient whirlpool with fluted rim, **c** plug, **d** canyon, and **e** smear deposit over headland. Sediment was transported across the bay and deposited as a sand sheet in the distance (**f**)

humate-cemented sediment from water depths of 100 m at the edge of the continental shelf. For this to happen, distinct from the capability of storm waves, the tsunami had to be over 5 m high when it reached the shelf edge.

Tsunami-deposited barriers in the Jervis Bay region consist of clean white sand that originated from the leached A2 horizon of podsolized dunes, formed at lower sea levels on the floor of the bay during the Last Glacial over 10000 years ago (Bryant et al. 1997). The barriers form raised platforms 1–2 km wide and 4–8 m above present sea level on a tectonically stable coast. The barriers supposedly were built up over the last 7000 years; however, the sands yield an older age commensurate with their origin on the floor of the bay. Again, the sands must have been transported to the coast suddenly in order to maintain an older temporal signature. Transport occurred during one or more tsunami events.

The effect of tsunami on the rocky sections of this coast is even more dramatic. The scenic nature of many headlands is partially the consequence of intense tsunami erosion. Two headlands, Flagstaff Point and Kiama Headland, in the Wollongong area will be described here (Bryant and Young 1996). Both headlands are similar in that they protrude seaward about 0.5 km beyond the trend of the coast. Both were affected by the same erosive tsunami traveling northwards along the coast. The raised *dump* deposit and inverted keel-like stacks described in the previous chapter are located between the two headlands (Figs. 3.7 and 3.24 respectively). Flagstaff Point consists of massively jointed, horizontally bedded volcanic sandstones that have been deeply weathered, while Kiama Headland consists of weakly weathered, resistant basalt. Overwashing by high-velocity tsunami has severely eroded the seaward facets of both headlands, but with subtle differences. On Flagstaff Point, the tsunami eroded the softer material, forming a reef at the seaward tip and a rounded cliff along the southern side (Fig. 4.8). The wave planed the top of the headland smooth, spreading a smear deposit that consists of muds, angular gravel, and quartz sand across this surface. The wave also moved massive boulders into imbricated piles on the eroded platform surface on the south side. However, the most dramatic features were created by tornadic vortices on the northern side of the headland. These vortices were 8–20 m deep and rotated in a counterclockwise direction. The largest vortex was shed from the tip of the headland eroding a whirlpool with 20 m high sides into the cliff. Fluted bedrock on the outer surface of erosion outlines the vortex and its helical flow structure. The whirlpool is incomplete, indicating that the vortex developed towards the end of the wave's passage over the headland. As the wave wrapped around the headland, it broke as an enormous plunging breaker, scouring out a canyon structure along the northern side. The canyon is separated from the ocean by a buttress that rises 8 m above sea level at the most exposed corner, tapering downflow as the wave refracted around the headland. The tsunami then travelled across the sheltered bay behind the headland, carving giant cusps into a bedrock cliff on the other side. Finally, it swept inland depositing a large pebble- and cobble-laden sheet of sand up to 500 m inland.

At Kiama, the tsunami wave developed broad vortices, as water was concentrated against the southern cliff face (Fig. 4.9). While flow probably obtained velocities similar to those at Flagstaff Point, the weakly weathered basalt was

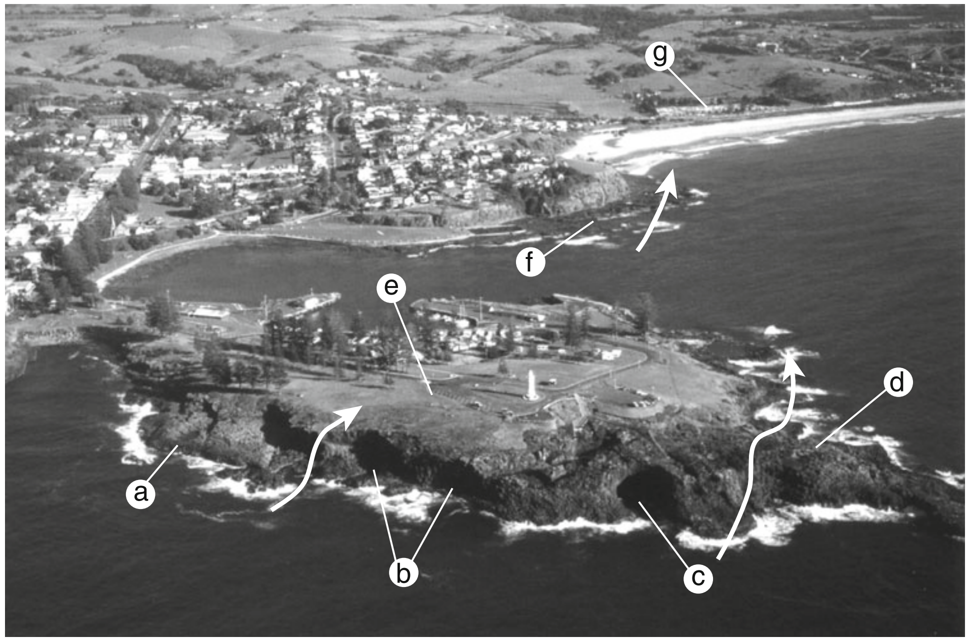


Fig. 4.9 Kiama Headland lying 40 km south of Flagstaff Point (Fig. 4.8). A paleo-tsunami also approached from the southeast (*white arrows*) and swept over the headland. Here caves have been bored into columnar basalts. Main features (*white lines*) are as follows: **a** large muschelbrüche-like feature, **b** incipient caves, **c** cave leading to blowhole, **d** hummocky topography on raised platform, **e** smear deposit over headland, and **f** sheared cliff face and planed platform. A sand sheet was again deposited across the bay (**g**)

more resistant to erosion. Vortices eroded into the headland along major joints forming broad caves. At one location, a vortex penetrated 50–80 m along a joint, creating a cave that blew out at its landward end to form the Kiama Blowhole. Where the headland was lower in elevation, vortices began to scour out large muschelbrüche about 50 m in length. The tip of the headland, instead of being eroded into a reef, was heavily scoured into hummocky bedrock topography to form a surface 8–10 m above sea level. Boulders were scattered across this surface. The wave also planed the top off the headland and deposited a 5–10 cm thick smear deposit that thickens downflow. The wave then crossed a small embayment in the lee of the headland, shearing the end off a cliff. Finally, the wave deposited quartz sand inland about a kilometer to the northwest.

4.5.2 Cairns Coast, Northeast Queensland

The signatures of tsunami are not restricted in Australia to the southeast coast. They also appear inside the Great Barrier Reef between Cairns and Cooktown along the northern Queensland coast (Fig. 3.3b). This, at first, would appear to be unlikely. Even if tsunami have occurred in this part of the Coral Sea, the Great Barrier Reef should have protected the mainland coast. Evidence now suggests that tsunami have indeed reached the mainland coast with enough force, not only to transport boulders, but also to begin sculpturing bedrock (Nott 1997; Bryant and Nott 2001). For example, at many locations, boulders weighing over a hundred tonnes can be found at elevations of 8–10 m above sea level. One of the largest boulders is found at Cow Bay. It has a volume of 106 m^3 and weighs 286 tonnes. At Oak Beach, imbricated boulders weighing up to 156 tonnes and measuring over 8 m in length can be found in piles (Fig. 4.10). Using Eqs. (3.3) and (4.2), it can be shown that tsunami rather than storm waves are the most feasible mechanism generating the flow velocities required to transport many of these boulders. These comparisons are presented in Table 4.2. All of the imbricated boulders can be transported by tsunami 5.0–11. 2 m in height. The highest waves are required to move the boulders found at Cow Bay. The smallest storm wave must be 20 m high to move these boulders. This is virtually impossible because such a wave would break before reaching the coastline, even when superimposed on surges that can be up to 7 m high. The tsunami waves can generate theoretical flow velocities ranging from 3.7–10.4 m s^{-1}, with a mean value of 5.8 m s^{-1}. The highest of these velocities is more than sufficient to produce cavitation and sculpture bedrock. Indeed, many of the bedrock surfaces near the boulder piles evince bedrock-sculpturing signatures. For example, the boulders found at Oak Beach are emplaced on an undulatory, smooth surface characteristic of erosion by transverse roller vortices (Fig. 4.10). *S*-forms are also evident on this bedrock surface. The northern headland of Oak Beach has also been dissected into a toothbrush shape that is covered with flutes, sinuous grooves, and cavitation drill holes (Fig. 4.11).

The tsunami in the Cairns region have originated in the Coral Sea outside the Great Barrier Reef. It appears that

Fig. 4.10 Boulders stacked by tsunami on the platform at the south end of Oak Beach, North Queensland. The largest boulder is 4.0 m in diameter. Note the smoothed bedrock surface with evidence of large overlapping muschelbrüche

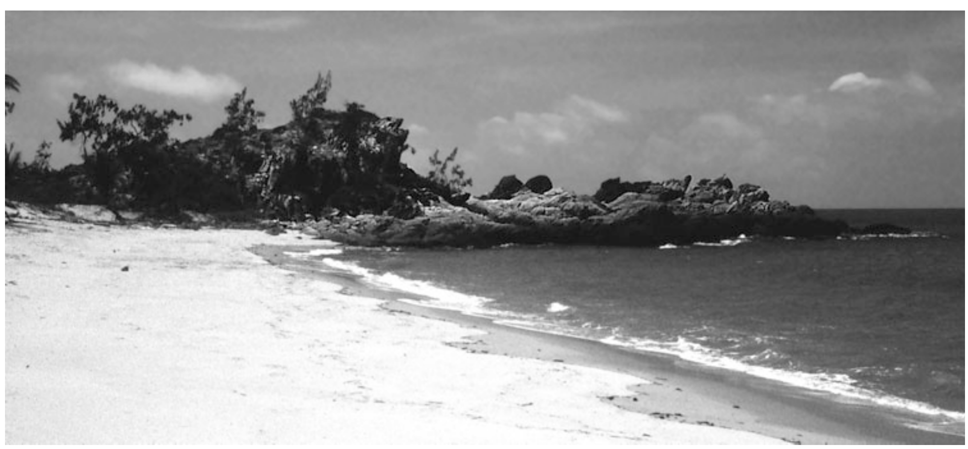


Fig. 4.11 The eroded headland at the north end of Oak Beach, North Queensland. The flutes protruding above the raised platform surface face towards the south–southeast, the same direction as the alignment of boulders shown in Fig. 4.10

probably paleo-tsunami penetrated the reef through openings such as Trinity Opening and Grafton Passage, which are more than 10 km wide and between 60 and 70 m deep (Fig. 3.3b). The alignment of boulders north of Cairns points directly towards Trinity Opening. At other locations, where the alignment of boulders is more alongshore, the tsunami waves appear to have been trapped through refraction and reflection between the reef and the mainland, and by major headlands jutting from the coast at Cape Tribulation and Cairns.

4.5.3 Northwest West Australia

Signatures for both historical and paleo-tsunami—on a massive scale—exist along the coast of West Australia (Bryant and Nott 2001; Nott and Bryant 2003; Nott 2004). The June 3, 1994 Tsunami that originated in Indonesia swept the coast of the North West Cape through gaps in the Ningaloo Reef, resulting in the inland deposition of marine fauna, sand, and isolated coral boulders up to 2 m in width. Coral boulders were also swept through gaps in the coastal dunes and

Fig. 4.12 Platform at Cape Leveque, West Australia. A paleo-tsunami swept over the island and cliffs in the background, and eroded the stack. Muschelbrüche outlined by the pools of standing water sculpture the platform surface. The bedrock surface was torn up along bedding planes. The boulders originated from the platform further seaward and were stacked in imbricated piles by flow traveling alongshore towards the camera

deposited 1 km inland across a flat, elevated plain by the tsunami following the eruption of Krakatau in 1883. Tropical cyclone storm surges have never reached this far inland on this coast. While some of the boulders were organized into piles, none shows any preferential alignment. These deposits can only be described as ephemeral *dump* deposits.

This contemporary evidence is dwarfed by the signature of paleo-tsunami along 1,000 km of coastline between Cape Leveque and North West Cape (Fig. 3.3c). The magnitude of some of this evidence is the largest yet found in Australia. At Cape Leveque, at least four waves from a paleo-tsunami dumped gravelly sands and shell in sheets and mounds along the coast, overriding headlands 60 m above sea level in some places. The sandstone platform in front of Cape Leveque was sculptured smoothly with the clear signature of large muschelbrüche, fluting, and transverse troughs. The seaward edge of this platform shows evidence of a preparation zone for boulders. Large slabs of bedrock 1–2 m thick were lifted repetitively up and down along bedding planes until they broke into blocks 4–5 m wide. At this point the fractured pieces were transported by tsunami flow and dumped alongshore into imbricated piles (Fig. 4.12). A similar process is present at Broome. Here sands and gravels were dumped 5 km inland at the back of a flat headland. The angle of approach of waves at both locations appears to have been from the southwest—a direction not matching the modeled approach of tsunami from Indonesia. In the Great Sandy Desert, aeolian ridges more than 30 km inland were truncated and remolded into chevron ridges by a paleo-tsunami. This distance is more than three times greater than the distance of penetration inland by any tsunami yet discovered for the south coast of New South Wales. Marine shell and lateritic gravels were deposited in these chevron dunes; lateritic boulders were stacked in front. Seven hundred kilometers further south, at Exmouth on North West Cape, transverse dune ridges were overridden from the east by large waves. Coral, shell, and cobble were mixed with aeolian sand and spread more than 2 km inland across the upper surface of at least seven dune ridges paralleling the coast.

By far the most dramatic evidence of tsunami occurs at Point Samson. Here, waves have impinged upon the coast from the Indian Ocean to the northeast. Shell deposits were deposited above the limits of storm surges (Fig. 4.13) and on top of hills 15 m above sea level. In one extreme case, three layers of sand with a total thickness of 30 m were deposited in the lee of a hill over 60 m high and lying more 500 m inland. The sands contain boulder floaters, coral pieces, and shell. Each layer appears to represent an individual wave in a tsunami wave train. Dating of shell deposits in the region indicates that the tsunami occurred at the end of the 11th century, before European discovery. In a valley leading back from the coast, large mega-ripples with a wavelength approaching 1,000 m and consisting of cross-bedded gravels, have been deposited up to 5 km inland. The spacing between the mega-ripples is an order of magnitude greater than that found at Jervis Bay, New South Wales. The flow depth is theorized to have been as great as 20 m with velocities of over 13 m s^{-1}. The dip in the bedding indicates flow transport from the Indian Ocean. The gravels also contain boulders over 1 m in diameter that have been chiseled into a spherical shape (Fig. 4.14). The tsunami

Fig. 4.13 Raised beds of cockles on a hill at Point Samson, northwest Western Australia. These shells extend 15 m above sea level. In this region, the paleo-tsunami flowed up the valley and over the hills in the background. The minimum age for the event, based on radiocarbon dating of the shells, is AD 1080

Fig. 4.14 Chiseled boulders deposited in bedded gravels in a mega-ripple about 5 km inland of the coast at Point Samson, northwest Western Australia. The dip in bedding aligns with bedrock-sculptured features in the area (Fig. 4.15) and shows flow from the northwest in the Indian Ocean

waves overrode hills 60 m high, another 1 km inland, carving wind gaps 20 m deep through ridges. Sand and gravel were then deposited a further 2 km inland of these ridges. Finally, ridges 15 m high were sculptured into hull-shaped forms with bedrock plucked from the flanks and crest by helical flow that encompassed the whole height of the ridge (Fig. 4.15). A cockscomb-like protuberance similar to that shown on the inverted keel-like stack in Fig. 3.24 was eroded towards the front of the ridge by intense vortices or hydraulic hammering.

Fig. 4.15 Streamlined inverted keel-shaped ridge with a cockscomb-like protuberance at Point Samson, northwest Western Australia. Note the resemblance of the cockscomb to that shown in Fig. 3.22. The wave travelled from *left*-to-*right*. Intense vortices embedded in helical flow plucked blocks of bedrock from the sides of the ridge. The ridge is aligned with other bedrock features in the region. Scale is the person *circled* at the *top*

Storms are significant events in the coastal environment. Nonetheless, tsunami are an alternative mechanism for reworking coastal sediment and ultimately for imprinting upon the landscape a signature of convulsive events that in some areas has not been removed over thousands of years. The difficulty in invoking storms for all coastal deposition and erosion lies not just in the insufficient magnitude of observed events but also in the inapplicability of storm wave processes to account for a suite of anomalous deposits. For instance, *dump* deposits, bouldery mounds, and chevron ridges contain chaotic mixtures of sediment that cannot be explained by storm waves because such waves erode sand from the shoreline, transport coarse sediment shoreward as a body, and sort debris in a shore normal direction. Storms also cannot account for bedrock sculpturing. Tsunami can move and deposit highly bimodal sediment mixtures and create the suites of high-magnitude depositional and erosional signatures that dominate many landscapes worldwide. This evidence cannot be ignored. The only question that remains is, "What causes these tsunami"? To answer this question one must examine the type of deposits and landscapes produced by earthquakes, volcanoes, and submarine landslides that are the main causative mechanisms of tsunami. In addition, comet/asteroid impacts with the ocean cannot be ignored. As will be shown, the flux of comets and asteroids has been substantially greater over the past two millennia than at present. This increased frequency has been observed and reported in legends, but never in documents that can be interpreted from a modern perspective, or that can withstand the scrutiny of contemporary scientific methodology. Authentication of comet/asteroid-generated tsunami as an underrated and significant hazard will be presented in Chap. 9.

References

C. Andrade, Tsunami generated forms in the Algarve barrier islands (South Portugal). Sci. Tsunami Hazards **10**, 21–33 (1992)

V.R. Baker, in *Paleohydraulics and Hydrodynamics of Scabland Floods*, ed. by V.R. Baker, D. Nummedal. The Channeled Scabland. NASA Office of Space Science, Planetary Geology Program, Washington, pp. 59–79 (1978)

V.R. Baker (ed.), *Catastrophic Flooding: The Origin of the Channeled Scabland*. (Dowden Hutchinson & Ross, Stroudsburg, 1981), p. 360

W.L. Bascom, Ocean waves. Sci. Am. **201**, 74–84 (1959)

J. Bourgeois, E.L. Leithold, in *Wave-Worked Conglomerates—Depositional Processes and Criteria for Recognition*, ed. by E.H. Koster, R.J. Steel. Sedimentology of Gravels and Conglomerates. Canadian Society of Petroleum Geologists Memoir, vol 10 (1984), pp. 331–343

F.G. Bourrouilh-Le Jan, J. Talandier, Sédimentation et fracturation de haute énergie en milieu récifal: tsunamis, ouragans et cyclones et leurs effets sur la sédimentologie et la géomorphologie d'un atoll: Motu et hoa, à Rangiroa, Tuamotu, pacifique SE. Mar. Geol. **67**, 263–333 (1985)

E.A. Bryant, The effect of storms on Stanwell Park, NSW beach position, 1943–1980. Mar. Geol. **79**, 171–187 (1988)

E. Bryant, *Natural Hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, 2005)

E.A. Bryant, S.B. McCann, Long and short term changes in the barrier islands of Kouchibouguac Bay, southern Gulf of St. Lawrence. Can. J. Earth Sci. **10**, 1582–1590 (1973)

E. Bryant, J. Nott, Geological indicators of large tsunami in Australia. Nat. Hazards **24**, 231–249 (2001)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, Bedrock-sculpturing by tsunami, South Coast New South Wales, Australia. J. Geol. **104**, 565–582 (1996)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, Evidence of tsunami sedimentation on the southeastern coast of Australia. J. Geol. **100**, 753–765 (1992)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, Tsunami as a major control on coastal evolution, Southeastern Australia. J. Coastal Res. **12**, 831–840 (1996)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, D. Wheeler, M.I. Pease, The impact of tsunami on the coastline of Jervis Bay, southeastern Australia. Phys. Geogr. **18**, 441–460 (1997)

H.E. Clifton, Sedimentologic relevance of convulsive geologic events. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. Spec. Pap. **229**, 1–5 (1988)

P.J. Coleman, Tsunamis as geological agents. J. Geol. Soc. Aust. **15**, 267–273 (1968)

R. Cox, D.B. Zentner, B.J. Kirchner, M.S. Cook, Boulder ridges on the Aran Islands (Ireland): recent movements caused by storm waves, not tsunamis. J. Geol. **120**, 249–272 (2012)

A.G. Dawson, Linking tsunami deposits, submarine slides and offshore earthquakes. Quatern. Int. **60**, 119–126 (1999)

E. Engel, H. Brückner, V. Wennrich, A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, A. Vött, F. Schäbitz, G. Daut, T. Willershäuser, S.M. May, Coastal stratigraphies of eastern Bonaire (Netherlands Antilles): new insights into the palaeo-tsunami history of the southern Caribbean. Sed. Geol. (2010). doi:10.1016/j.sedgeo.2010.08.002

O. Fujiwara, in *Bedforms and Sedimentary Structures Characterizing Tsunami Deposits*, ed. by T. Shiki, Y. Tsuji, K. Minoura, T. Yamazaki. Tsunamiites—Features and Implications, (Elsevier, New York, 2008), pp. 51–62

P.J. Hearty, Boulder deposits from large waves during the last interglaciation on North Eleuthera Island, Bahamas. Quatern. Res. **48**, 326–338 (1997)

P.J. Hearty, A.C. Neumann, D.S. Kaufman, Chevron ridges and runup deposits in the Bahamas from storms late in oxygen-isotope substage 5e. Quatern. Res. **50**, 309–322 (1998)

R. Huggett, *Catastrophism: Asteroids, Comets and Other Dynamic Events in Earth History* (Verso, London, 1997)

B. Jones, I.G. Hunter, Very large boulders on the coast of Grand Cayman: the effects of giant waves on rocky coastlines. J. Coast. Res. **8**, 763–774 (1992)

Y. Kawata, B.C. Benson, J.C. Borrero, J.L. Borrero, H.L. de Davies, W.P. Lange, F. Imamura, H. Letz, J. Nott, C.E. Synolakis, Tsunami in Papua New Guinea was as intense as first thought. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **80**(101), 104–105 (1999)

P.S. Kench, S.L. Nichol, S.G. Smithers, R.F. McLean, R.W. Brander, Tsunami as agents of geomorphic change in mid-ocean reef Islands. Geomorphology (2008). doi:10.1016/j.geomorph.2007.06.012

P.D. Komar, *Beach Processes and Sedimentation*, 2nd edn. (Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, 1998)

S. Kortekaas, A.G. Dawson, Distinguishing Tsunami and storm deposits: an example from Martinhal, SW Portugal. Sed. Geol. (2007). doi:10.1016/j.sedgeo.2007.01.004

K. Minoura, S. Nakaya, Traces of tsunami preserved in inter-tidal lacustrine and marsh deposits: some examples from northeast Japan. J. Geol. **99**, 265–287 (1991)

J. Mitchell, Conjectures concerning the cause, and observations upon the phenomena, of earthquakes. Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. **2**, 566–574 (1760)

R.A. Morton, Nearshore responses to great storms. Geol. Soc. Am. Spec. Pap. **229**, 7–22 (1988)

R.A. Morton, G. Gelfenbaum, B.E. Jaffe, Physical criteria for distinguishing sandy tsunami and storm deposits using modern examples. *Sed. Geol*. doi:10.1016/j.sedgeo.2007.01.003 (2007)

J. Nott, Extremely high-energy wave deposits inside the Great Barrier Reef, Australia: determining the cause—tsunami or tropical cyclone. Mar. Geol. **141**, 193–207 (1997)

J. Nott, The tsunami hypothesis-comparisons of the field evidence against the effects, on the Western Australian coast, of some of the most powerful storms on Earth. Mar. Geol. **208**, 1–12 (2004)

J. Nott, E. Bryant, Extreme marine inundations (Tsunamis?) of coastal Western Australia. J. Geol. **111**, 691–706 (2003)

A. Scheffers, Paleotsunami evidences from boulder deposits on Aruba, Curaçao and Bonaire. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **20**, 3–18 (2002)

A. Scheffers, Tsunami imprints on the Leeward Netherlands Antilles (Aruba, Curaçao, Bonaire) and their relation to other coastal problems. Quatern. Int. **120**, 163–172 (2004)

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, S. Haslett, S. Scheffers, T. Browne, Coastal boulder deposits in Galway Bay and the Aran Islands, western Ireland. Z. Geomorphol. Suppl. **54**, 247–279 (2010)

T.P. Scoffin, The geological effects of hurricanes on coral reefs and the interpretation of storm deposits. Coral Reefs **12**, 203–221 (1993)

T. Shiki, T. Yamazaki, Tsunami-induced conglomerates in Miocene upper bathyal deposits, Chita peninsula, central Japan. Sed. Geol. **104**, 175–188 (1996)

S.S. Solomon, D.L. Forbes, Coastal hazards and associated management issues on South Pacific Islands. Ocean Coast. Manag. **42**, 523–554 (1999)

J. Talandier, F. Bourrouilh-Le Jan, High Energy Sedimentation in French Polynesia: Cyclone or Tsunami?, in *Natural and Man-Made Hazards*, ed. by M.I. El-Sabh, T.S. Murty (Reidel, Dordrecht, 1988), pp. 193–199

R.G. Walker, N.P. James, *Facies Models: Response to Sea Level Change*, 2nd edn. (Geological Association of Canada, St. John's, Newfoundland, 1992)

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, E. Spassov, The imprint of tsunami in Quaternary coastal sediments of southeastern Australia. Bul. Geophys. J. **21**, 24–31 (1995)

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, Catastrophic wave (tsunami?) transport of boulders in southern New South Wales, Australia. Z. Geomorphol. **40**, 191–207 (1996a)

R. Young, K.L. White, D.M. Price, Fluvial deposition on the Shoalhaven deltaic plain, southern New South Wales. Aust. Geogr. **27**, 215–234 (1996b)

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, S.Y. Dilek, D.J. Wheeler, Chronology of Holocene tsunamis on the southeastern coast of Australia. Trans. Jpn. Geomorphol. Union **18**, 1–19 (1997)

Part III

Causes of Tsunami

5 Earthquake-Generated Tsunami

5.1 Introduction

The most common cause of tsunami is seismic activity. Over the past two millennia, earthquakes have produced 83.0 % of all tsunami in the Pacific Ocean (National Geophysical Data Center 2013). Displacement of the Earth's crust by several meters during underwater earthquakes may cover tens of thousands of square kilometers and impart tremendous potential energy to the overlying water. These types of events are common; however, tsunamigenic earthquakes are rare. Between 1861 and 1948, over 15,000 earthquakes produced only 124 tsunami (Lockridge 1988). Along the west coast of South America, which is one of the most tsunami-prone coasts in the world, 1,098 offshore earthquakes have generated only 20 tsunami. This low frequency of occurrence may simply reflect the fact that most tsunami are small in amplitude and go unnoticed. Two thirds of damaging tsunami in the Pacific Ocean region have been associated with earthquakes with a surface wave magnitude of 7.5 or more. The majority of these earthquakes have been *teleseismic* events affecting distant coastlines as well as local ones. One out of every three of these *teleseismic* events has been generated in the twentieth century by earthquakes in Peru or Chile. This chapter discusses the mechanics of tsunamigenic earthquakes, and presents evidence for a range of events at the lower end of the seismic energy spectrum. These events occurred in the 1990s and fueled a surge in research on tsunami. Large scale events at the mega-tsunami level will be described in Chap. 6.

5.1.1 Seismic Waves

Earthquakes occurring mainly in the upper 100 km of the ocean's crust generate tsunami. However, earthquakes centered over adjacent landmass have also produced tsunami. Earthquakes produce seismic waves transmitted through the Earth from an epicenter that can lie as deep as 700 km beneath the Earth's surface. These seismic waves consist of four types: *P*, *S*, Rayleigh, and Love waves (Geist 1997; Bryant 2005). *P* waves are primary waves that arrive first at a seismograph. The wave is compressional, consisting of alternating compression and dilation similar to waves produced by sound traveling through air. These waves can pass through gases, liquids, and solids. *P* waves can thus travel through the of Earth; however, at the core–mantle boundary, they are refracted, producing two 3,000 km wide shadow zones without any detectable *P* waves on the opposite side of the globe from an epicenter. To detect tsunami produced by earthquakes, seismic stations must be located outside these shadow zones. *S* or shear waves behave very much like the propagation of a wave down a skipping rope that has been shaken up and down. These waves travel 0.6 times slower than primary waves. The spatial distribution and time separation between the arrival of *P* and *S* waves at a seismograph station can be used to determine the location and magnitude of an earthquake. Love and Rayleigh waves spread slowly outwards from the epicenter along the surface of the Earth's crust. Love waves have horizontal motion and are responsible for much of the damage witnessed during earthquakes. Rayleigh waves have both horizontal and vertical motions that produce an elliptical rotation of the ground similar to that produced in water particles by the passage of an ocean wave. While it is logical to believe that earthquakes generate tsunami through the physical displacement of the seabed along a fault line that breaches the seabed, tsunami also obtain their energy from Rayleigh waves.

5.2 Magnitude Scales for Earthquakes and Tsunami

5.2.1 Earthquake Magnitude Scales

Earthquakes were originally measured using the Richter scale, M_L, defined as the logarithm to base ten of the maximum seismic-wave amplitude recorded on a seismograph at a

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_5,

distance of 100 km from an earthquake's epicenter (Bolt 1978). This scale saturates around a value of seven. A more useful scale measures the largest magnitude of seismic waves at the surface at a period of 20 s. This yields the surface wave magnitude, M_s. The M_s scale is so well recognized that it is commonly used to describe the size of tsunamigenic earthquakes. It has already been used in this text. An M_s magnitude earthquake of 8.0 occurs about twice per year, but only 10 % of these occur under an ocean with movement along a fault that is favorable for the generation of a tsunami. Earthquake-generated tsunami are associated with seismic events having an M_s magnitude of 7.0 or greater. Around the coast of Japan any shallow submarine earthquake with a magnitude greater than 7.3 will generate a tsunami. The tsunami period is also proportion to the magnitude of uplift. Small earthquakes tend to produce short tsunami wavelengths. Most tsunami-generating earthquakes are shallow and occur at depths in the Earth's crust between 0 and 40 km.

Unfortunately, the M_s scale also saturates, this time around a magnitude of eight, precisely at the point where significant tsunami begin to form. A better measure of the size of an earthquake is its seismic moment, M_o, measured in Newton meters (Nm) and based upon the forces acting along a fault line (Okal et al. 1991; Schindelé et al. 1995). From this a moment magnitude, M_w, can be determined from long period surface waves of more than 250 s using the following formula (Geist 1997; Geist 2012):

$$M_w = 0.67 \log_{10} M_o - 10.73 \tag{5.1}$$

where

M_w = moment magnitude scale (dimensionless)
M_o = seismic moment

The moment magnitude does not saturate and gives a consistent measure across the complete span of earthquake sizes. Only large earthquakes, with a moment magnitude, M_w, greater than 8.6, can generate destructive *teleseismic* tsunami, ones that impact across an ocean basin. Tsunami cannot be generated, without associated marine landslides, below a value of 6.3 because the energy released is not sufficient to generate long waves (Roger and Gunnell 2011). It should also be noted there is only a weak correlation in historical records between tsunami intensity and the magnitude of the source earthquake (Gusiakov 2008). This fact dictates that the prediction of a tsunami's characteristics for any coastline based solely on seismic data is a difficult task.

5.2.2 Tsunami Earthquakes

The preceding scales imply that the size of a tsunami should increase as the magnitude of the earthquake increases. This is true for most *teleseismic* tsunami in the Pacific Ocean; however, it is now known that many earthquakes with small and moderate seismic moments can produce large, devastating tsunami. The Great Meiji Sanriku earthquake of 1896 and the Alaskan earthquake of April 1, 1946 were of this type (Okal 1988). The Sanriku earthquake was not felt widely along the adjacent coastline, yet the tsunami that arrived 30 min afterwards produced run-ups that exceeded 30 m in places and killed 27,132 people. These types of events are known as tsunami earthquakes (Kanamori and Kikuchi 1993; Satake 1995). Besides the Sanriku and Alaskan events, significant tsunami earthquakes also occurred in the Kuril Islands on October 20, 1963, off Nicaragua on September 2, 1992, and off Java on June 2, 1994, with maximum run-ups of 15 m, 10.7 m, and 13.9 m respectively (Okal 1988, 1993; Geist 1997). Submarine landslides are thought to be one of the reasons why some small earthquakes can generate large tsunami, but this explanation has not been proven conclusively. Submarine landslides as a cause of tsunami will be treated in more detail in Chap. 7. Presently, it is believed that slow rupturing along fault lines causes tsunami earthquakes. Only broadband seismometers, sensitive to low-frequency waves with wave periods greater than 100 s, can detect slow earthquakes that spawn silent, killing tsunami. Figure 5.1 illustrates the difference between a tsunami earthquake and an ordinary one (Kanamori and Kikuchi 1993). The Hokkaido 1993 Tsunami was an ordinary event. The earthquake that generated it lasted for about 80 s and consisted of five large and two minor shock waves. The earthquake was regionally felt along the northwest coast of Japan. It produced a deadly tsunami. In contrast, the Nicaraguan Tsunami of 1992 had no distinct peak in seismic wave activity. Rather, the movement along the fault line occurred as a moderate disturbance, for at least 80 s, tapering off over the next half minute. The earthquake was hardly felt along the nearby coast, yet it produced a killer tsunami. Both of these events will be described in detail later in this chapter.

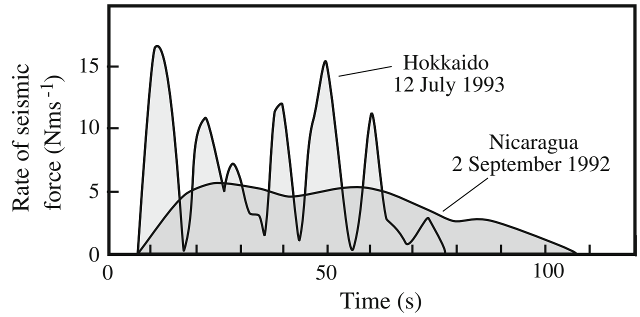


Fig. 5.1 Comparison of the rate of seismic force between normal (Hokkaido) and slow (Nicaraguan) tsunamigenic earthquakes. Based on Kikuchi and Kanamori (1995)

The energy released by slow earthquakes can be measured accurately; however, the change is not rapid enough

Table 5.1 Disparity between the surface wave magnitude, M_s, and the moment magnitude, M_w, of recent earthquakes illustrating tsunami earthquakes

Event	Date	Seismic magnitude M_s	Moment magnitude M_w	Maximum run-up (m)
Sanriku	15 June 1896	7.2	8.0	38.2
Unimak Island, Alaska	1 April 1946	7.4	8.2	35.0
Peru	20 November 1960	6.8	7.6	9.0
Kurile Islands	20 October 1963	6.9	7.8	15.0
Kurile Islands	10 June 1975	7.0	7.5	5.5
Nicaragua	2 September 1992	7.2	7.7	10.7
Java	2 June 1994	7.2	7.7	13.9

Source Based on Geist (1997) and Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999a, b)

to trigger a substantive response using the M_s scale based upon surface-wave detection algorithms. Instead, a potential tsunami earthquake can be detected better using the moment magnitude, M_w (Geist 1997). Technically, tsunami earthquakes are ones that occur in the ocean where the difference between the M_s and M_w magnitudes is significantly large. Table 5.1 illustrates this difference for some modern tsunami. Tsunami earthquakes happen with two conditions: where thick, accretional prisms develop at the junction of two crustal plates and wherever sediments are being subducted. Earthquakes under the former setting generated the 1896 Meiji, Sanriku and 1946 Unimak Island, Alaskan Tsunami. In contrast, the Peru, Kuril Islands, and Nicaragua Tsunami listed in Table 5.1 were generated beneath subduction zones. The mechanisms of tsunami earthquake generation will be discussed in more detail later.

5.2.3 Tsunami Magnitude Scales

Historically, the first scale proposed for measuring a tsunami was the Sieberg scale based on the destructive effect of a tsunami (Gusiakov 2008). It did not contain any measurement of tsunami wave height. The latter parameter was incorporated in the Imamura–Iida scale using approximately a hundred Japanese tsunami between 1700 and 1960 (Iida 1963):

$$m_{II} = \log_2 H_{rmax} \tag{5.2}$$

where

m_{II} = Imamura–Iida's tsunami magnitude scale (dimensionless)
H_{rmax} = maximum tsunami run-up height—Eqs. (2.11, 2.12, 2.13)

On the Imamura–Iida scale, the biggest tsunami in Japan—the Tōhoku 2011 Tsunami with a run-up height of 38.9 m—had a magnitude of 5.3. The Meiji Great Sanriku Tsunami of 1896 along the same coast, with a run-up height of 38.2 m, was comparable. Japanese tsunami have between 1 and

Table 5.2 Earthquake magnitude, tsunami magnitude, and tsunami run-up heights in Japan

Earthquake magnitude	Tsunami magnitude	Maximum run-up (m)
6.0	−2	<0.3
6.5	−1	0.5–0.75
7.0	0	1.0–1.5
7.5	1	2.0–3.0
8.0	2	4.0–6.0
8.3	3	8.0–12.0
8.5	4	16.0–24.0
8.8	5	>32.0

Source Based on Iida (1963)

10 % of the total energy of the source earthquake (Abe 1979). The relationship between the moment magnitude of an earthquake and the Imamura-Iida scale is presented in Table 5.2. Only earthquakes of magnitude 7.0 or greater are responsible for significant tsunami waves in Japan with run-up heights in excess of 1 m. However, as an earthquake's magnitude rises above 8.0, the run-up height and destructive energy of the wave dramatically increases. A magnitude 8.0 earthquake can produce a tsunami wave of between 4 m and 6 m in height. Magnitudes approaching a value of 9.0 are required to generate the largest Japanese tsunami.

The Imamura–Iida magnitude scale has now acquired worldwide usage. However, because the maximum run-up height of a tsunami can be so variable along a coast, Soloviev (1970) proposed a more general scale as follows:

$$i_s = \log_2(1.4\bar{H}_r) \tag{5.3}$$

where

i_s = Soloviev's tsunami magnitude (dimensionless)
$\bar{H}_r$ = mean tsunami run-up height along a stretch of coast (m)

This scale—now known as the Soloviev-Imamura scale (Gusiakov 2008)—and its relationship to both mean and

Table 5.3 Soloviev's scale of tsunami magnitude

Tsunami magnitude	Mean run-up height (m)	Maximum run-up height (m)
−3.0	0.1	0.1
−2.0	0.2	0.2
−1.0	0.4	0.4
0.0	0.7	0.9
1.0	1.5	2.1
2.0	2.8	4.8
2.5	4.0	7.9
3.0	5.7	13.4
3.5	8.0	22.9
4.0	11.3	40.3
4.5	16.0	73.9

Source Based on Horikawa and Shuto (1983)

maximum tsunami run-up heights are summarized in Table 5.3. Neither the Imamura–Iida nor the Soloviev-Imamura scales relate transparently to earthquake magnitude. For example, both tsunami scales contain negative numbers and peak around a value of 4.0. Most tsunami are also generated by earthquakes over a narrow range of magnitudes, whereas the two tsunami scales described above span a broader range. Several attempts have been made to construct a more identifiable tsunami magnitude scale. Abe (1983) established one of the more widely used of these scales as follows:

$$M_t = \log_{10} H_r + 9.1 + \Delta C \qquad (5.4)$$

where

M_t = tsunami magnitude at a coast
ΔC = a small correction on tsunami magnitude dependent on source region

Average ΔC corrections for Hilo, California, and Japan are −0.3, 0.2, and 0.0 respectively, irrespective of the source region of the tsunamigenic earthquake. There have been 17 historical events in the Pacific Ocean with a tsunami magnitude greater than 8.5. The largest of these was the May 22, 1960 Chilean Tsunami with an M_t value of 9.4. All Pacific-wide events have had a tsunami magnitude greater than 8.5. Ten of these events occurred in the twentieth century.

The tsunami magnitude scale has the advantage of being closely equated to the magnitude of earthquakes near their source because the average value of M_t for a coastline is set equal to the average M_w value of source earthquakes. Recently, emphasis has been placed upon near-field earthquakes and the M_t scale has been reformulated to include the exact distance between a coast and the epicenter of a tsunamigenic earthquake. For example, research on many tsunami on the east coast of Japan shows the following relationship (Abe 1983):

$$M_t = \log_{10} H_r + \log_{10} R_e + 5.80 \qquad (5.5)$$

where

M_t = tsunami magnitude (dimensionless)
R_e = the shortest distance to the epicenter of a tsunamigenic earthquake (km)

The constant in this equation is dependent upon the source region. At present, few values have been calculated beyond Japanese waters, so there is no universal value that can be easily inserted into Eq. 5.5. The Imamura–Iida scale has been converted to a form similar to Eq. 5.5 as follows (Hatori 1986):

$$m_{II} = 2.7\,(\log_{10} H_r + \log_{10} R_e) - 4.3 \qquad (5.6)$$

Finally, tsunami waves clearly carry quantitative information about the details of earthquake-induced deformation of the seabed in the source region. Knowing the tsunami magnitude, M_t, it is possible to calculate the amount of seabed involved in its generation using the following formula:

$$M_t = \log_{10} S_t + 3.9 \qquad (5.7)$$

where S_t = area of seabed generating a tsunami (m^2)

There is excellent agreement between the tsunami magnitudes calculated using Eqs. 5.4 and 5.7.

5.3 How Earthquakes Generate Tsunami

5.3.1 Types of Faults

Rupturing along active fault lines where two sections of the Earth's crust are moving opposite each other causes tsunamigenic earthquakes. Only three types of faults (Fig. 5.2) can generate a tsunami: a strike-slip earthquake on a vertical fault, a dip-slip earthquake on a vertical fault, and a thrusting earthquake on a dipping plane (Wiegel 1970; Okal 1988; Geist 1997). In each case, rupturing can occur at any point along a fault line deep in the Earth's crust. This location is known as the focal depth of the epicenter. It is a crucial parameter in determining whether or not an earthquake will generate a tsunami, especially in subduction zones that include a land component. Tsunami potential grows the more an epicenter lies under the seabed. The dip-slip and thrust fault line configurations are better at producing tsunami than the strike-slip pattern. From a depth of 30 km

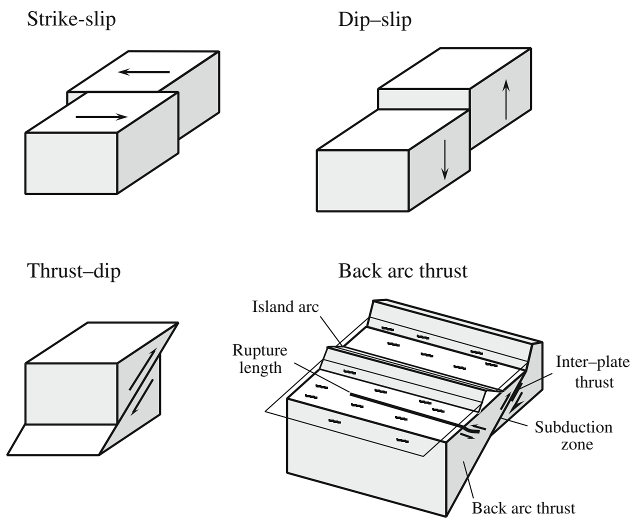


Fig. 5.2 Types of faults giving rise to tsunami. Based on Okal (1988) and Geist (1997)

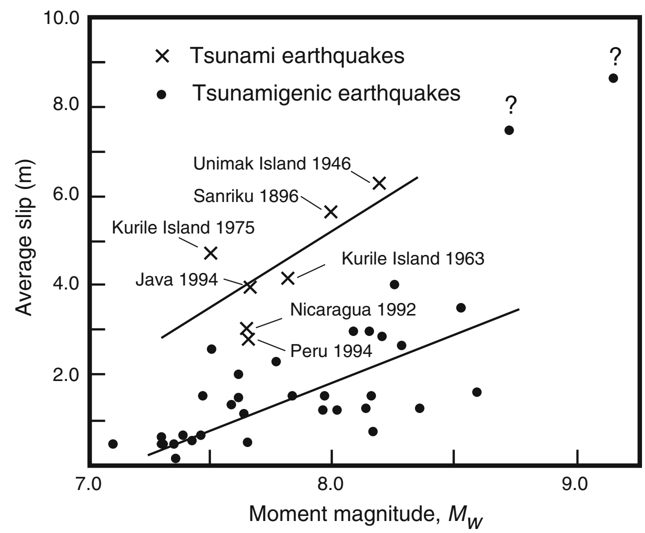


Fig. 5.3 Relationship between moment magnitude, M_w, and the average slip distance of an earthquake. Based on Geist (1997)

below the seabed to the surface, the thrust fault, which is characteristic of subduction zones (Fig. 5.2), becomes the preferred fault mechanism for tsunami generation. The greater the vertical displacement (or slip), then the greater the amplitude of the tsunami. The dip-slip mechanism is ideal for generating large tsunami. Where uplift occurs, a wave propagates with a leading edge; where subsidence occurs, the wave propagates with a receding backwash (Murata et al. 2010). Nowhere has this been more strikingly illustrated than with the generation of the Indian Ocean Tsunami of 2004. The east coast of India and Sri Lanka faced the zone of seafloor uplift and witnessed a wave crest approaching the shore. On the west coast of Thailand, which faced the zone of seafloor subsidence, water dramatically withdrew from the shoreline before the tsunami wave rolled in Ammon et al. (2005), Subarya et al. (2006).

About 90 % of earthquakes occur in subduction zones and these areas are the prime source for tsunami (Satake 1996). Subduction zones typically have average dips of 25° ± 9°, while the largest tsunami run-up is associated with higher dip values of between 20° and 30° (Geist 1997). As the dip angle decreases, the tsunami is more likely to have a leading trough. Faulting along subduction zones also results in subsidence at the coastline, a feature that compounds tsunami inundation for local earthquakes. Two tsunami actually develop in this case, one propagating shoreward and the other seaward. This tends to produce waveforms of different characteristics. The portion propagating seaward has a flatter crest and smaller amplitude than the wave moving landward. Large tsunami are not restricted to subduction zones. For example, back-arc thrusting away from a plate boundary (Fig. 5.2) produced the Flores, Indonesian Tsunami of December 12, 1992 and the Hokkaido Nansei–Oki Tsunami of July 12, 1993 (Satake 1996). In addition, the November 14, 1994 Mindoro, Philippines, Tsunami, which killed 78 people, was generated along a strike-slip fault, while the October 4, 1994 Kuril Islands Tsunami originated from the middle of a subducting slab. These anomalous events may also have involved a secondary mechanism such as a submarine landslide.

The greatest slip along faults tends to be concentrated towards the center of a rupture, and this can result in a higher initial tsunami (Okal 1988; Geist 1997). This abnormal amplitude may not be detected if the degree of slip along a fault is averaged. Tsunami earthquakes tend to have much greater slip displacement than tsunamigenic earthquakes of comparable magnitude (Fig. 5.3). For example, slip displacement for a tsunamigenic earthquake with a moment magnitude, M_w, of 8.0 is only 2 m. The equivalent tsunami earthquake has a value that is more than double this. The length and orientation of a rupture are also important in the generation of a tsunami (Geist 2012). Length obviously correlates with the amount of seafloor displacement. Analyses show that the amplitude of a tsunami is proportional to the cube of the length of rupturing. Long ruptures such as those that occur along the coast of South America have the potential to produce the largest Pacific-wide tsunami. Rupturing over a 1,000 km length of fault line caused the exceptional 1960 Chilean Tsunami.

At the other extreme, if the tsunami wavelength that is generated by an earthquake is less than the rupture length, then there is a beaming effect (Okal 1988; Geist 1997). For this reason, tsunami earthquakes, also have higher directivity and so can produce higher wave run-up along narrow sections of a coast. The effect of beaming or directivity on a coastline depends upon its orientation relative to that of the rupturing fault line. Most subduction zones in the Pacific Ocean direct tsunami towards the center of the ocean. Thus places like Hawaii and French Polynesia are particularly vulnerable. An exception to this occurs with tsunami originating in Alaska. Here most of the energy in a tsunami is beamed towards California and Chile. This certainly was the case with the Alaskan earthquake of 1964 (Ben-Menahem and Rosenman 1972). Alaskan earthquakes do not affect French Polynesia because of topographic modification across the intervening ocean. As one goes westwards along the Aleutian Island chain, the directivity of wave propagation sweeps towards Hawaii. For these reasons, once the epicenter of an earthquake has been located around the Pacific Rim, it is a simple task to plot the resulting tsunami's direction of travel and likely area of impact. Outside the Pacific Ocean, the east coasts of Indian and Sri Lanka received the full brunt of the Indian Ocean Tsunami of December 2004 because they were orientated parallel to the rupture zone extending northwards from Indonesia (Ammon et al. 2005; Subarya et al. 2006). Very little energy for this tsunami propagated into the southeastern Indian Ocean because this region lay in a shadow zone were beaming was minimal.

It is assumed that faulting occurs in massive rock units. Faulting is not this simple. In subduction zones, sedimentary rocks are often being buried (Geist 1997). Accretional wedges can built up on the seabed as surface sediments are scraped off as one plate dips below another. This is especially prominent where low-angle trusting is occurring. Marine sediments are also water saturated. Close to continents these sediments can contain organic material that decomposes into methane, leading to gas-rich layers. Both of these types of sedimentary layers have low densities. Thrust rupturing into these types of sedimentary layers can increase the excitation of tsunami waves by a factor of ten. Only 10 % of the force of the rupture needs to occur in the overlying sedimentary layer for this to happen. Tsunami earthquakes may also be generated by aftershocks associated with rupturing of an active fault through softer sediments near the seabed. In summary, the most prone area in the ocean for the generation of large tsunami is along a subduction zone where one plate moves upwards over another at a low angle, and where this movement propagates through less consolidated sediments near the seabed. In these circumstances, while the moment magnitude, M_w, of the tsunamigenic earthquake may be an order of magnitude smaller than expected, the resulting tsunami can be very large.

5.3.2 Seismic Gaps and Tsunami Occurrence

The concept of earthquake cycles depends upon crustal movement occurring at constant rates over geological time and the build-up of frictional drag along fault lines. Around the Pacific Rim, plates are moving at consistent rates. For instance, in the Alaskan region, the Pacific and North American Plates have generated continual earthquake activity over the past 150 years—as stresses build up to crucial limits and are periodically released at various points along the plate margin. However, stresses may not be released at some points. These appear in the historical record as abnormally aseismic zones surrounded by seismically active regions (Bryant 2005). The former locations are called seismic gaps and are believed to be prime sites for future earthquake activity. The Alaskan earthquake of 1964 filled in one of these gaps, and a major gap now exists in the Los Angeles area.

The seismic gap concept is flawed. Many earthquakes occur in swarms, with the leading earthquake not necessarily being the largest one. Tsunami generation also tends to occur in the area encompassing aftershocks. More significantly, when many tsunami events are examined, the arrival times of the first wave along different coastlines tend not to originate from a single point source. Also it is know that many segments along a subduction zone can fail in a single earthquake event (Stein and Okal 2011). The more segments that rupture, the greater the earthquake and the resulting tsunami. Hence sudden adjustment of plate contact along subduction zones can potentially occur along hundreds of kilometers of plate boundaries. The 2004 Indian Ocean and 2011 Japanese Tōhoku events were generated by this process. Additionally, earthquakes and the tsunami they generate are chaotic geophysical phenomena (Bak 1997). They should thus be generated by a spectrum of seismic waves with varying amplitudes and periods. If this is the case, then the system of tsunamigenic earthquakes behaves as white noise. One of the aspects of such systems is that earthquakes can recur at the same location rather than in areas that are more quiescent. This behavior is characteristic of subduction zone earthquakes (Satake 1996). For example, the October 4, 1994 Kuril Islands Tsunami occurred at the same location as a previous event in 1969. A casual glance at the source location of tsunami over time in the Pacific will show that tsunami originate repetitively within a 100 km radius of the same location in many regions (Fig. 1.2). Finally, seismic research is limited by the length of the seismological record—just over a century (Stein and Okal 2011). This record is no indicator of the frequency of tsunamigenic earthquakes at a particular location. Just because a large earthquake hasn't happened, doesn't mean it won't, especially along subduction zones. This point was brought home by the Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011. Paleo-studies indicated a magnitude 9 earthquake was possible in the region; historical records did not (Minoura et al. 2001). There is thus a pressing need for more paleo-studies in regions adjacent to any subducting plate.

5.3.3 Anomalies

There are two anomalies that have virtually been ignored in the tsunami literature. First, while it is generally perceived that tsunami can only be generated by earthquakes with an M_s magnitude of 7.0 or greater, reality is far different. One of the most definitive databases on tsunami is maintained by NOAA's National Geophysical Data Center (2013). It contains a record of 1684 earthquake-generated tsunami from 2000 BC to the present. Surprisingly, 50 % of earthquakes with a magnitude below 7.1 have generated identifiable tsunami. Fifty-three earthquakes with a magnitude of 5.8 or less have produced tsunami. Measurements exist for only 33 of these events. Despite the paucity of records, some of these small earthquakes have produced destructive tsunami. Twenty-five of the events generated tsunami that reached more than 1.0 m above sea level. Two earthquakes with magnitudes of 5.2 and 5.6 produced tsunami reaching 3.1 and 6.0 m respectively above sea level. The first occurred in southern California on August 31, 1930, while the latter occurred on the South Island of New Zealand on May 17, 1947. In the same category is the historical April 6, 1580 earthquake off Dover in the English Channel (Haslett and Bryant 2008). Based upon damage to churches and castles, the earthquake had an M_w magnitude of only 5.5 (Roger and Gunnell 2011). Large waves were reported reaching the shores of Kent and Calais. A boat passenger reported his vessel touching the seabed five times and estimating a wave height of approximately 9 m. At least 120 deaths were recorded at Dover—with more in France—and 165 ships were sunk. Modeling work has confirmed these historical observations as being related to an earthquake-generated tsunami but at a higher magnitude of M_w equal to 6.9 (Roger and Gunnell 2011). Otherwise, landslides into the English Channel had to be involved. Earthquake-triggered landslides may also explain many of the other anomalies in the NOAA database.

Second, vertical ground motions caused mainly by the passage of Rayleigh seismic waves can generate tsunami-like effects. The tsunamigenic potential of such movements is poorly researched. There are numerous accounts of seiching or sloshing of water in small enclosed bodies of water or narrow channels such as estuaries and rivers following earthquakes with M_s magnitudes of 6 or less. When ground displacement linked to faulting is filtered out, the magnitude of vertical ground motions can be substantial. For example, vertical ground motions exceeded 23.5 cm for the 6.7 M_w magnitude Northridge earthquake of January 17, 1994 (Ellsworth et al. 2004) and 100 cm for the M_w 7.9 magnitude Denali earthquake of November 3, 2002 in Alaska (Porter and Leeds 2000). These ground motions are large enough that they would have generated sizable tsunami had they occurred underwater. In Western Europe, earthquakes are shallow and the effects of vertical motion are independent of earthquake magnitude. In Greece, earthquakes with magnitudes as low as 4.2 have generated vertical motion of 8 cm, enough to cause substantial building destruction (Carydis 2004). While this amplitude appears small, similar uplift of the seabed in confined bodies of water could generate tsunami that can not only cause noticeable effects, but also explain some of the reports of tsunami following small earthquakes. The possibility of small earthquakes generating significant tsunami has been underestimated.

5.3.4 Linking Tsunami Run-Up to Earthquake Magnitude

For warning purposes, it is better to be able to predict the height of a tsunami along a coast given the magnitude of its source earthquake. Some tsunami approaching coasts tend to have a height that is consistent over long stretches of coastline. This certainly holds true along the east coast of Japan and the west coast of the United States. This fact can then be used to calculate the run-up height of a tsunami at various locations even if the slope varies—Eqs. (2.11, 2.12, 2.13). Figure 5.4 shows the relationships between the moment magnitude, M_w, of earthquakes and the amplitude of mean tsunami height recorded on tide gauges for the east coast of Japan and Papeete, Tahiti in the middle of the South Pacific Ocean (Okal 1988; Kajiura 1983). The data sets take into account both near field and distant earthquakes, and have the following linear relationships respectively:

$$\text{Japan:}\ \log_{10} \bar{H}_{tmax} = 0.5M_w - 3.3 \tag{5.8}$$

$$\text{Tahiti:}\ \log_{10} \bar{H}_{tmax} = 1.3M_w - 11.5 \tag{5.9}$$

where

$\bar{H}_{tmax}$ = mean maximum tsunami wave height (m) along a coast

The Japanese pattern characterizes dispersive tsunami propagating from point-like sources. Figure 5.4 indicates that tsunamigenic earthquakes generate tsunami that have less of an effect on Tahiti than they do on the east coast of Japan. The reason for this has already been discussed in Chap. 2. Further research has shown that tsunami arrival in the Pacific Ocean at a distant coast encompasses multiple reflections, scattering, nearshore response and any harbor resonance where most tide gauges are located (Geist 2012). This recent analysis is also shown on Fig. 5.4 for both tsunami earthquakes and inter-plate thrust earthquakes. All of the lines plotted in Fig. 5.4 are statistically significant.

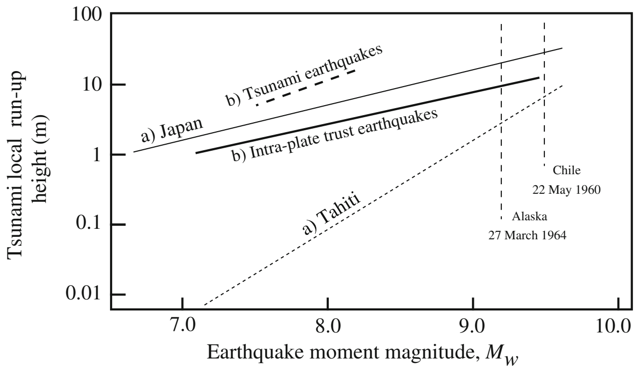


Fig. 5.4 Relationship between the moment magnitude, M_w, and local tsunami wave height for various coasts. **a** Results for the east coast of Japan and Tahiti based on Okal (1988) and Kajiura (1983). Heights are mean maximum run-ups. **b** Results for tsunami earthquakes and intra-plate earthquakes based on Geist (2012). Heights are mean run-ups

The recent research reinforces the earlier work by Kajiura (1983) for the Japanese coast. The only difference is that Kajiura's work was for maximum tsunami run-up height while Geist's (2012) research modeled mean run-up height. Tsunami earthquakes, as expected, produce higher run-ups for equivalent sized earthquakes. Tsunami earthquakes appear to be limited to moment magnitudes, M_w, below 8.3. The results show that it should be possible to predict local tsunami run-up heights for any Pacific Ocean earthquake knowing its moment magnitude, M_w. Unfortunately the time between an earthquake and the arrival of its tsunami locally may be very short.

5.4 Events of the 1990s

In the last decade of the twentieth century, there have been 83 tsunami events—a number much higher than the average historical rate of 57 per decade (Satake and Imamura 1995; Schindelé et al. 1995; González 1999). Similar to the majority of past events, these tsunami have involved earthquakes and have been concentrated in the Pacific Ocean region (Fig. 5.5). The number of deaths during the 1990s has totalled more than 4,000 (Table 5.4). Many of the events were unusual. For example, the October 9, 1995 Tsunami in Mexico generated run-up heights of 1–5 m elevation. However, in some places the rapidity of inundation was so slow that people could outrun it at a trotting pace (Anon 2005). A classic, slow tsunami earthquake caused the Nicaraguan event of September 2, 1992 (Satake and Imamura 1995). People at the shore hardly noticed the vibrations; yet, within an hour a deadly wave was racing overtop them. One of the most unusual tsunami was the Aitape, Papua New Guinea Tsunami of July 17, 1998 (González 1999). It formed the background for one of the stories used in Chap. 1. Again, a tsunami earthquake occurred, with flow depths of over 15 m being recorded. The tsunami that struck the Sea of Marmara, Turkey, on August 17, 1999 was unusual for two reasons (Altinok et al. 1999). First, it is a good example of a tsunami that was not restricted to an ocean, but that occurred in a small body of water. Second, it was caused by land subsidence because the earthquake occurred on a strike-slip rupture between the Eurasian and Turkish Plates—a feature not conducive to tsunami. Finally, the Vanuatu event of November 26, 1999 brought a slight glimmer of hope that we were getting it correct (Caminade et al. 2000). The tsunami did not receive the publicity of the Flores or PNG events, but on the island of Pentecost, it left a similar scene of destruction. The death toll was only five. People had fled to safety after they noticed a sudden drop in sea level. Though there was little memory of any previous tsunami, they had recently been shown an educational video based upon the PNG event and had reacted accordingly. This section will describe four of these events in Nicaragua, Flores, Japan, and Papua New Guinea.

5.4.1 Slow Nicaraguan Tsunami Earthquake of September 2, 1992

The Nicaraguan Tsunami earthquake occurred at 7:16 PM (00:16 UTC) on September 2, 1992, 70 km offshore from Managua (Fig. 5.6) (Satake et al. 1993; Satake 1994; Geist 1997). It had a shallow focal depth of 45 km. Aftershocks occurred along the strike, parallel to the coast of Nicaragua in a band 100 km wide and 200 km long. The rupture occurred as the result of slow thrusting along the shallow dipping, subduction interface between the Cocos and Caribbean Plates near a previously identified seismic gap. The rupture propagated smoothly up-dip and alongshore at a velocity of 1–5 km s^{-1} over a period of 2 min (Fig. 5.1). For these reasons, the earthquake was barely felt by residents along the coast. The earthquake's moment magnitude, M_w, was 7.7, a value at least half an order of magnitude greater than the surface wave magnitude, M_s, of 7.2—a disparity that characterizes tsunami earthquakes (Kanamori and Kikuchi 1993; Kikuchi and Kanamori 1995). The tsunami magnitude, M_t, was 7.9–8.0, much higher than should have been generated by an earthquake of this size.

The slow movement of the seabed generated a tsunami that reached the coastline 40–70 min later (Abe et al. 1993). Healthy adults, who were awake at the time, were able to outrun the tsunami. The tsunami killed 170 people, mostly children who were asleep and infirmed people who could not flee. Run-up averaged 4 m along 2 km of coastline (Fig. 5.6) and reached a maximum value of 10.7 m near El Tránsito (Fig. 5.7). This is about ten times higher than the

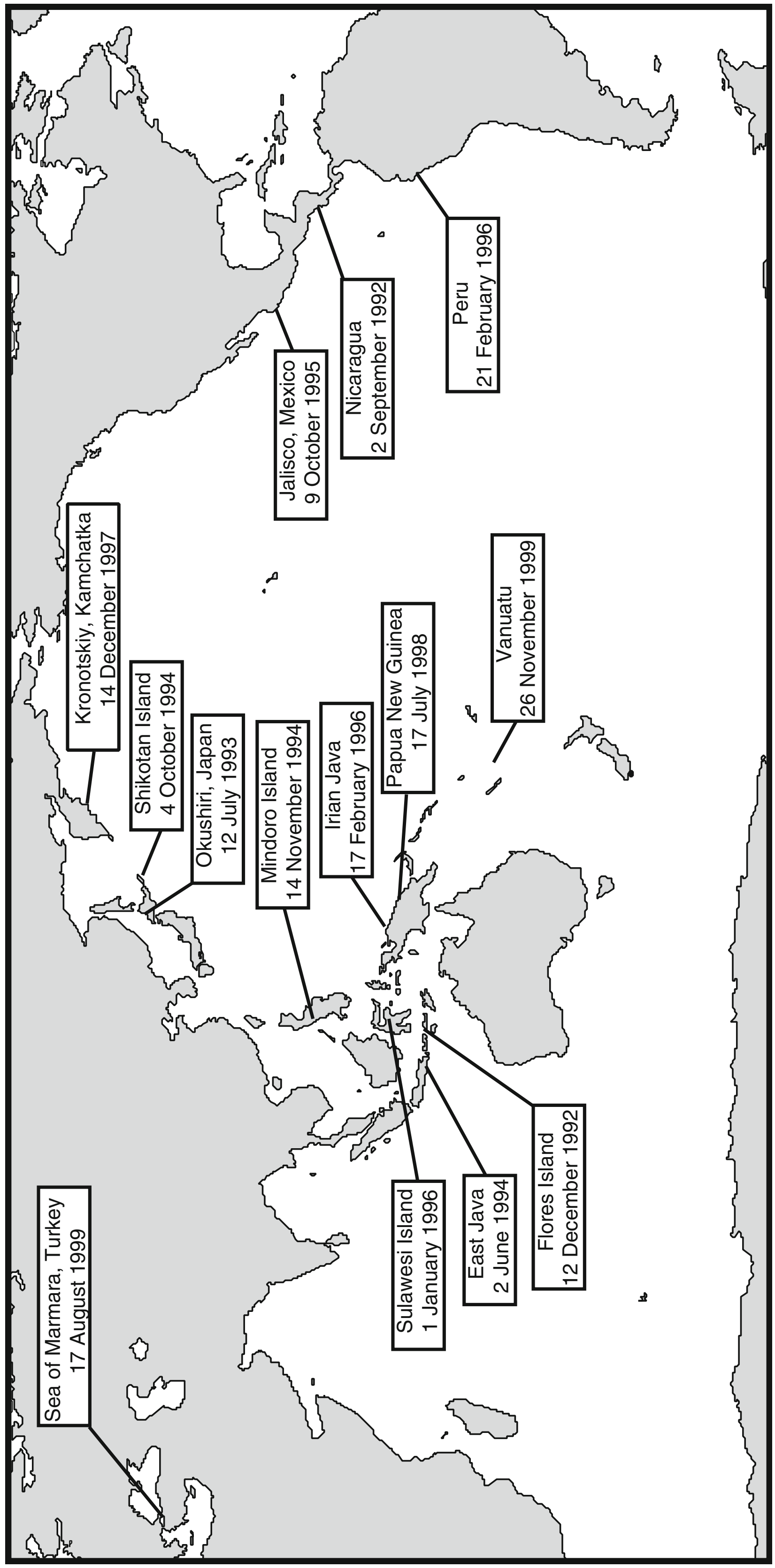


Fig. 5.5 Location of significant tsunami during the 1990s

Table 5.4 Major tsunami of the 1990s

Location	Date	Earthquake magnitude	Maximum height (m)	Death toll
Nicaragua	2 September 1992	$M_s = 7.2$	10.7	170
Flores, Indonesia	12 December 1992	$M_s = 7.5$	26.2	1713
Okushiri Island, Sea of Japan	12 July 1993	$M_s = 7.6$	31.7	239
East Java	2 June 1994	$M_s = 7.2$	14.0	238
Shikotan, Kuril Islands	4 October 1994	$M_s = 8.1$	10.0	10
Mindoro, Philippines	14 November 1994	$M_s = 7.1$	7.0	71
Jalisco, Mexico	October 9, 1995	$M_s = 7.9$	10.9	1
Sulawesi Island, Indonesia	1 January 1996	$M_s = 7.7$	3.4	24
Irian Java	17 February 1996	$M_s = 8.0$	7.7	108
Chimbote, Peru	21 February 1996	$M_s = 7.5$	5.0	2
Kronotskiy Cape, Kamchatka	14 December 1997	$M_s = 7.7$	8.0	–
Aitape, Papua New Guinea	17 July 1998	$M_s = 7.1$	15.0	2202
Sea of Marmara, Turkey	17 August 1999	$M_s = 7.8$	2.5	?
Pentecost Island, Vanuatu	26 November 1999	$M_s = 7.3$	5.0	5

Source Based on Satake and Imamura (1995) and Internet sources

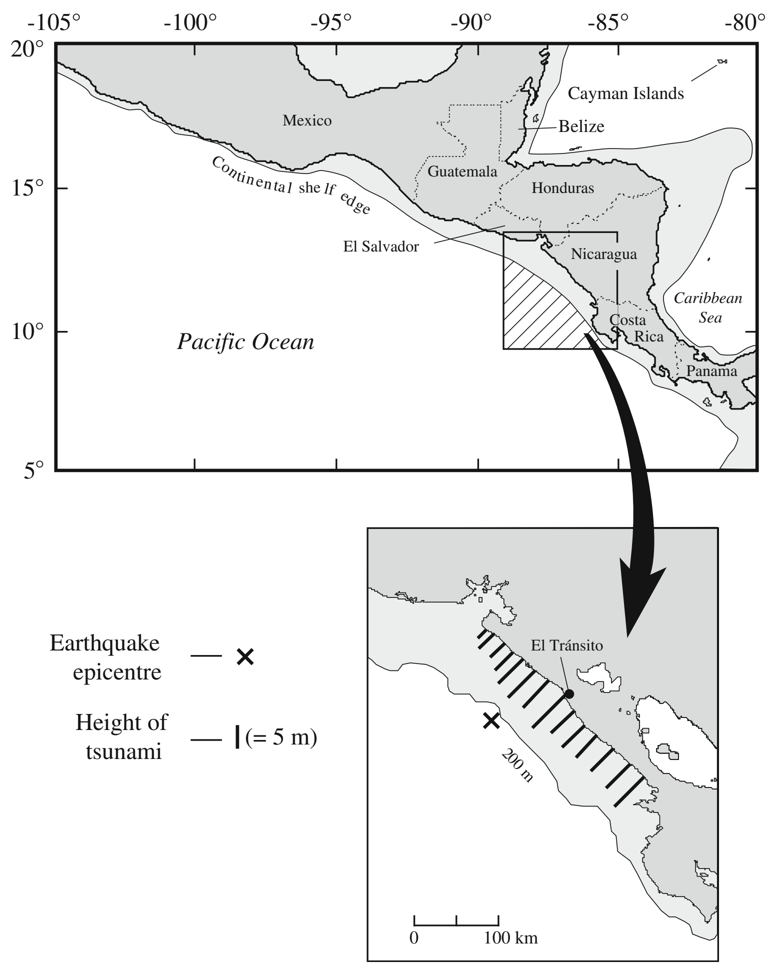


Fig. 5.6 Location and height of Nicaragua Tsunami of September 2, 1992. Height bars are scaled relative to each other

amplitude of a tsunami that should be generated by this size earthquake. Highest run-up correlated with zones of greatest release of seismic force and maximum slip along the fault. Sand was eroded from beaches and transported, together with boulders and building rubble, tens of meters inland (Fig. 5.7). The wave also propagated westwards into the

Fig. 5.7 El Tránsito, Nicaragua after the tsunami of September 2, 1992. While the second wave, which was 9 m high at this site, destroyed most of the houses, only 16 out of 1,000 people died because most fled following the arrival of the first wave, which was much smaller. *Photo Credit* Harry Yeh, University of Washington. *Source* NOAA National Geophysical Data Center

Pacific Ocean. A 1 m wave was measured on tide gauges on Easter and Galapagos Islands, and a 10 cm wave was measured at Hilo, Hawaii, and Kesen'numa, Japan.

5.4.2 Flores, December 12, 1992

The Flores Tsunami occurred at 1:29 PM (05:29 UTC) on December 12, 1992 along the north coast of the island of Flores in the Indonesian Archipelago (Fig. 5.8). An earthquake as the result of back-arc thrusting of the Indo-Australian Plate northward beneath the Eurasian Plate generated the tsunami (Yeh et al. 1993; Shi et al. 1995). The earthquake had a surface wave magnitude, M_s, of 7.5. Damaging earthquakes and their tsunami have tended to increase in the Flores-Alor region since 1977, with at least nine earthquakes being reported beforehand. The 1992 earthquake had an epicenter at the coast and produced general subsidence of 0.5–1.0 m. Within 2 or 3 min a tsunami arrived ashore to the east, and within 5 min the tsunami reached most of the coastline where damage occurred. The tsunami wave train consisted of at least three waves, with the second one often being the largest. The first wave, which came in as a wall, was preceded by a general withdrawal of water. Submarine landslides triggered by the earthquake may explain many of the tsunami's features including the small number of waves in the wave train and the larger run-up heights and shorter arrival times eastwards (Fig. 5.8). Run-up heights varied from 2–5 m in the central part of the island, to as much as 26.2 m in the village of Riang–Kroko (Fig. 3.6), on the northeast tip of Flores, where 137 of the 406 inhabitants were killed. This tsunami is only one of three that occurred in the twentieth century with run-up

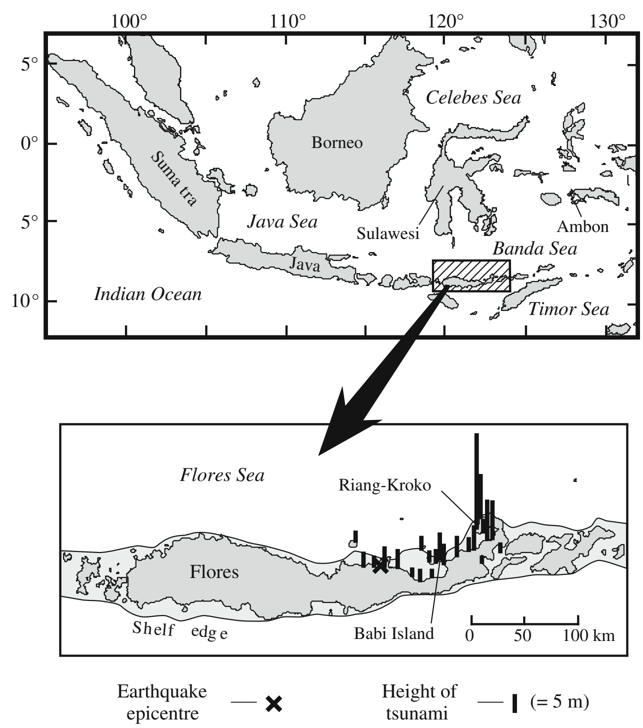


Fig. 5.8 Location and height of Flores, Indonesian Tsunami of December 12, 1992. Based on Tsuji et al. (1995). Height bars are scaled relative to each other

exceeding more than 20 m. Overall, two thousand deaths occurred as the waves destroyed entire villages (Tsuji et al. 1995). Damage was especially heavy on Babi Island, which lies 5 km offshore of the coast. Here the tsunami refracted around to the landward side of the island and ran up to heights of 7.2 m above sea level on the southwest corner (Yeh et al. 1994). Of the 1,093 inhabitants on this island,

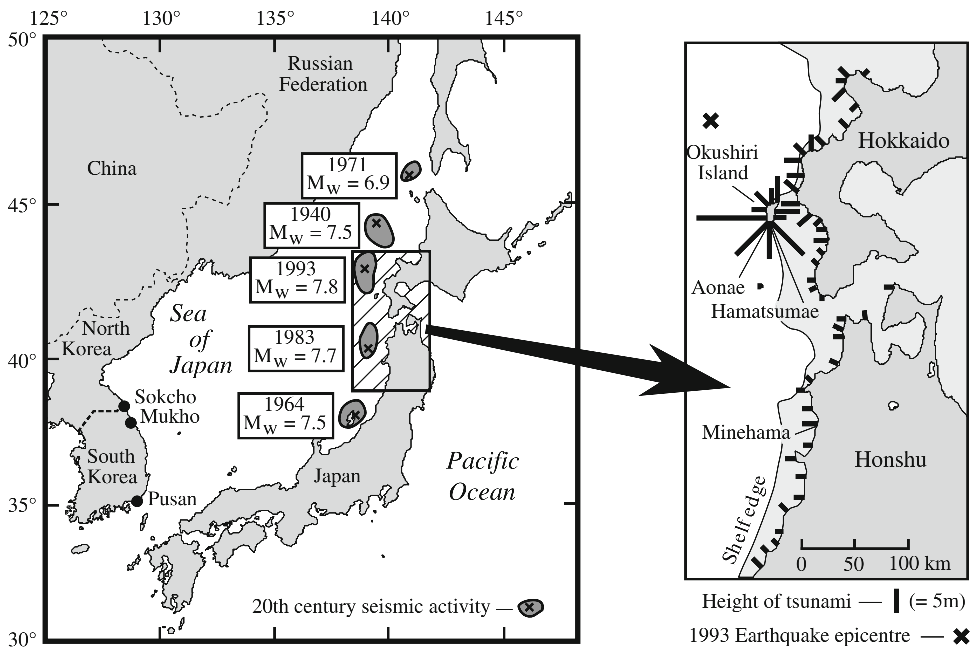


Fig. 5.9 Areas and epicenters of twentieth century seismic activity in the Sea of Japan. Based on Oh and Rabinovich (1994). Detailed map shows location and height of the Hokkaido Nansei-Oki Tsunami of July 12, 1993. Based on Shuto and Matsutomi (1995). Height bars are scaled relative to each other

263 were drowned. The tsunami also affected the southern coast of Sulawesi Island where 22 people were killed. Two hours after the earthquake, smaller waves arrived at Ambon–Baguala Bay on Ambon Island.

Along much of the affected coastline, widespread erosion took place, denoted by coastal retreat, removal of weathered regolith and soils, and gullying (Shi et al. 1995). Small cliffs were often created by soil stripping, probably as the result of downward eroding vortices within turbulent flow. The tsunami spread a tapering wedge of sediment 1–50 cm in thickness as much as 500 m from the coast. The wedge consisted of sand material swept from the beaches and shell and coral gravels torn up from the fringing reefs. Clay and silts appear to have been winnowed from the deposits by preceding tsunami backwash. Grain size tended to decrease, but sorting increased, towards the surface of these deposits. This pattern indicates an initial rapid rate of sedimentation. Grain size also tended to fine inland as the competence of the flow decreased concomitantly with a decrease in flow velocity. On Babi Island, there was a coarsening of grain size at the limit of run-up (Minoura et al. 1997). Saw-tooth changes in grain size upwards through the deposits indicate that more than one wave was responsible for laying down the sand sheet. Sediment sequences on Babi Island imply that two different tsunami struck: the first from the direction of the earthquake and the second as the result of a trapped edge wave refracting around the island. This second wave was stronger than the first as shown by the transport of coarser material including large molluscs. Modeling indicates that the first wave had a run-up velocity of 1 m s^{-1}, while the second one traveled faster at velocities of 2–3 m s^{-1}.

5.4.3 The Hokkaido Nansei-Oki Tsunami of July 12, 1993

In the late evening at 11:17 PM (13:17 UTC) on July 12, 1993 a strong earthquake with a moment magnitude, M_w, of 7.8 was widely felt throughout Hokkaido, northern Honshu, and adjacent islands (Yanev 1993). The earthquake occurred in the Sea of Japan, north of Okushiri Island (Fig. 5.9). The Sea of Japan has historically experienced 20 tsunami, 4 of which have occurred in the twentieth century. The 1993 event occurred in a gap between the epicenters of the 1940 and 1983 earthquakes (Fig. 5.9), and had a focal depth of about 34 km (Oh and Rabinovich 1994; Murata et al. 2010). This location coincides almost exactly with the epicenter of the Kampo earthquake of August 29, 1741, which produced a tsunami with a maximum run-up of 90 m along the adjacent Japanese coast. Aftershocks from the 1993 event covered an ellipsoid 150 km long and 50 km wide close to Okushiri Island. About 150 km of faulting may have been involved in the event. The earthquake consisted of at least five intense jolts spaced about 10 s apart (Fig. 5.1). Two to five minutes later a tsunami with an average run-up height of 5 m spread along the coast of Okushiri Island and killed 239 people—many of whom were still trying to flee the coastal area. On the southwestern corner of the island, run-up reached a maximum elevation of 31.7 m in a narrow gully. This was the highest run-up of the twentieth century in Japan, surpassing that of the deadly Showa Tsunami of 1933 (Shuto and Matsutomi 1995). Tsunami walls up to 4.5 m high protecting most of the populated areas were overtopped by the tsunami (Murata et al. 2010). Similar

Fig. 5.10 Damage at Aonae, Okushiri Island, due to the Hokkaido Nansei-Oki Tsunami of July 12, 1993. The earthquake, and not the tsunami, damaged the leaning lighthouse. Concrete foundations in the foreground have been wiped clear of shops, houses, and kiosks. Note the gravel and boulder *dump* deposit, and the similarity of the unit to that deposited by the Flores Tsunami in Fig. 3.6. *Photo Credit* Dennis J. Sigrist, International Tsunami Information Center at Honolulu, Hawaii. *Source* National Geophysical Data Center

walls have been constructed in and around Tokyo and other metropolitan areas of Japan to protect urban areas from tsunami. They have proven just as ineffective, especially following the Tōhoku Tsunami of 2011. In the town of Aonae, at the extreme southern tip of Okushiri Island, the first wave arrived from the west with a height of 7–10 m, overtopping the protective barriers and destroying the exposed southern section of the town (Fig. 5.10). About 10–15 min later a second tsunami struck the sheltered, unprotected, eastern section of the town from the east, igniting fires that burnt most of the remaining buildings (Shuto and Matsutomi 1995). The possibility that the second wave originated from aftershocks cannot be ruled out. The tsunami washed away half of the 690 houses in the town, although most were bolted to concrete foundations (Shimamoto et al. 1995). The tsunami also severely damaged port facilities, power lines, and roads, stripping away pavement and depositing it inland (Murata et al. 2010). At Hamatsumae, which lies in the sheltered southeast corner of the island, run-up measured 20 m above sea level. This high run-up was most likely due to refraction of a trapped soliton around the island—an effect similar to that produced around Babi Island during the Flores Tsunami (Yeh et al. 1994).

Within 5 min of the earthquake, the tsunami also struck the west coast of Hokkaido with a maximum run-up of 7 m elevation (Shuto and Matsutomi 1995). The simultaneous arrival times along Hokkaido and Okushiri Islands suggests that there may have been another tsunamigenic mechanism involved in generating the tsunami. Tsunami run-up decreased on the north coast of Honshu; however, southwards, it reached a height of 3.5 m at Minehama. 50–70 min after the earthquake, the tsunami reached the coastline on the opposite side of the Sea of Japan, striking the Russian coast with an average run-up of 2–4 m elevation (Oh and Rabinovich 1994). 40 min after this, the wave reached the South Korean coast at Sokcho and propagated southward to Pusan over the next 90 min. The tsunami wave height, as measured on tide gauges, was 0.2 m, 1.8 m, and 2.7 m respectively at Pusan, Sokcho, and Mukho. At Sokcho and Mukho, where the coastline and continental shelf edge are smooth and straight, waves were detectable for the next two days with periods averaging around 10 min. Along the Pusan coast, dominated by bays and islands, wave periods were two to three times longer and decayed more slowly. It appears that tsunami amplification took place along the central Korean Peninsula, while seiching occurred along the south coast in bays and harbors. There was also evidence of resonance effects in the Sea of Japan as a whole.

The tsunami's characteristics were heavily dependent upon the configuration of the coastline. At some locations sea level withdrew before the arrival of the tsunami crest, while at others the crest arrived first. Equal numbers of localities reported either the first or the second wave as the biggest. Run-up heights in many locations were two to three times greater than the initial height of the wave at shore. Calculations of the force required to remove houses bolted to concrete slabs indicate that flow velocities reached maximum values of between 10 and 18 m s^{-1} (Shimamoto et al. 1995). The tsunami deposited 10-cm thick sandy splays behind sand dunes (Sato et al. 1995).

Fig. 5.11 Message issued by the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center following the Papua New Guinea earthquake of July 17, 1998

Subject: Tsunami Information Bulletin
Date: Fri, 17 Jul 1998 09:46:05 GMT
From: TWS Operations <ptwc@PTWC.NOAA.GOV>
To: TSUNAMI@ITIC.NOAA.GOVTSUNAMI

BULLETIN NO. 001
PACIFIC TSUNAMI WARNING CENTER/NOAA/NWS
ISSUED AT 0943Z 17 JUL 1998

THIS BULLETIN IS FOR ALL AREAS OF THE PACIFIC BASIN EXCEPT CALIFORNIA, OREGON, WASHINGTON, BRITISH COLUMBIA, AND ALASKA.

. . THIS IS A TSUNAMI INFORMATION MESSAGE, NO ACTION REQUIRED . .

AN EARTHQUAKE, PRELIMINARY MAGNITUDE 7.1 OCCURRED AT 0850 UTC 17 JUL 1998, LOCATED NEAR LATITUDE 2S LONGITUDE 142E IN THE VICINITY OF NORTH OF NEW GUINEA

EVALUATION: NO DESTRUCTIVE PACIFIC-WIDE TSUNAMI THREAT EXISTS. HOWEVER, SOME AREAS MAY EXPERIENCE SMALL SEA LEVEL CHANGES.

THIS WILL BE THE ONLY BULLETIN ISSUED UNLESS ADDITIONAL INFORMATION BECOMES AVAILABLE.

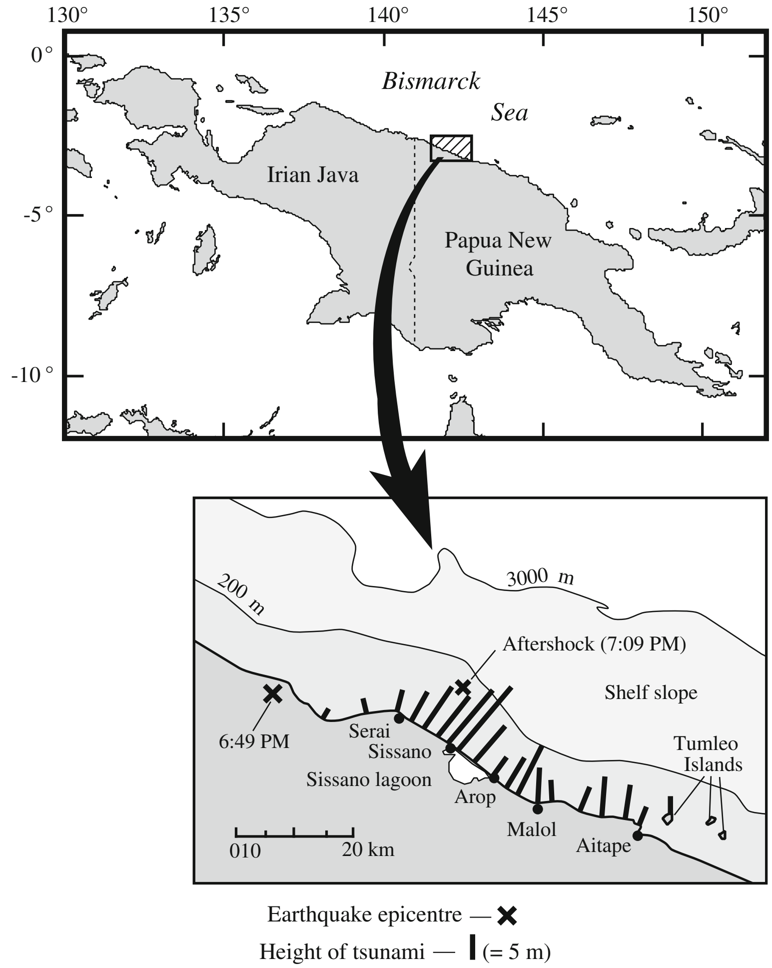
. . . NO PACIFIC-WIDE TSUNAMI WARNING IS IN EFFECT . . .

At Aonae, *dump* deposits several tens of centimeters thick were observed around obstacles and a sheet of poorly sorted sediment and debris was deposited throughout the village (Fig. 5.10). This material rarely was transported inland more than 200 m. Internal, seaward-dipping bedding in some deposits indicates that upper flow regime antidunes formed. Where it first made landfall, the second tsunami cut parallel grooves up to 40 cm deep across the foreshore. Erosion also occurred with the formation of turbulent vortices around obstacles and in channelised backwash. Flow velocities interpreted from these sediment features agree with those interpreted from structural damage to buildings.

5.4.4 Papua New Guinea, July 17, 1998

Historically, the Sissano coast of northwest Papua New Guinea (PNG) has been no more at risk from tsunami than any other South Pacific island in a zone of known seismic activity. Two previous earthquakes in 1907 and 1934—neither of which appears to have generated a tsunami of any note—appear responsible for the formation of Sissano lagoon (Tappin et al. 2001). Tsunami have occurred in the past, because a thin buried sand layer sandwiched within muds exists in the Arop area. At 6:49 PM (08:49 UTC) on July 1998, an earthquake with an M_s magnitude of 7.1 shook this coast (Kawata et al. 1999). 20 min later a moderate aftershock with a moment magnitude, M_w, of 5.75 jolted the coastline. Later analysis indicates that this second event was preceded by 30 s of slow ground disturbance. The location of the epicenter is still indeterminate; but the spread of aftershocks indicates that the earthquake was most likely centered offshore of Sissano lagoon, on the inner wall of the New Guinea trench that forms a convergent subduction zone where the Australian Plate is overriding the North Bismarck Sea (Tappin et al. 2001). The Pacific Tsunami Warning Center detected the first earthquake and issued an innocuous tsunami information message about an hour later (Fig. 5.11). In the meantime, a devastating tsunami with a tsunami magnitude, M_t, of 7.5 had already inundated the Sissano coastline shortly after the main aftershock. Tsunami flow depth averaged 10 m deep along 25 km of coastline (Fig. 5.12), reaching a maximum 17.5 m elevation. The wave penetrated 4 km inland in low-lying areas. In places, the inundation of water was still 1–3 m deep 500 m inland. The wave also was measured at Wutung on the Indonesian border, where it reached a height of

Fig. 5.12 Location and height of Aitape, Papua New Guinea Tsunami of July 17, 1998. Based on Kawata et al. (1999) and Tappin et al. (1999). Height bars are scaled relative to each other



2–3 m. It then propagated northwards to Japan and Hawaii where 10–20 cm oscillations were observed on tide gauges about seven hours later. Over 2,200 people lost their lives.

Theory indicates that a 7.1 magnitude earthquake could not have produced a tsunami higher than 2 m along this coastline. While the event would appear to be a tsunami earthquake, its moment magnitude, M_w, was also too low, having a value of 7.1—far less than that generated by tsunami earthquakes. Submarine landslides have been suggested as a cause for large tsunami following small tsunamigenic earthquakes (Tappin et al. 2001). This now appears to be the main cause of this tragic event, and is supported by the fact that there were only three closely spaced waves in the tsunami wave train. Sea level withdrew from the coast, although there is evidence that about 0.4 m of submergence took place at the coastline. Eastwards the wave did not approach shore-normal but travelled at an angle to the shore. This is unusual for seismically generated waves originating beyond the continental shelf, but fits dispersion away from the point source of a submarine slump. Offshore mapping has now delineated slump scars, fissures, and amphitheater structures associated with rotational slides. Given the closeness of the epicenter to shore, the tsunami should have arrived within 10 min of the earthquake. It took 10 min longer. Slumping takes time after an earthquake to generate a tsunami, and this fact can account for the delay. If a submarine landslide generated the tsunami, theoretically 5 km^3 of material would have had to be involved. Alternatively, numerous slides could have coalesced instantaneously over an area of 1,000 km^2. The most recent evidence indicates that a slump with a volume of 6 km^3 triggered the tsunami. Topographic focusing must have occurred to produce the tsunami flow depths measured along the Aitape coast.

The wave was unusual because it was associated with fire, bubbling water, foul-smelling air, and burning of bodies (Hovland 1999). Eyewitnesses reported that the crest of the tsunami was like a wall of fire with sparkles flying off it. In Chap. 1, this sparkling was attributed to bioluminescence, while the foul odor was linked to disturbance of methane-rich sediments in Sissano lagoon. The burnt bodies have been ascribed to friction as people were dragged hundreds of meters by the wave through debris and trees. These explanations may not be correct. Subduction zones incorporate organic material, which is converted to methane by anaerobic decomposition. The sudden withdrawal of 1–2 m depth of water can cause degassing of these sediments, leading to

Fig. 5.13 Overwash splay of sediment caused by the July 17, 1998 Tsunami at Arop, Papua New Guinea. The splay is up to two meters thick. Note the number of trees left standing despite the tsunami being over 15 m high and traveling at a velocity of 15–20 m s^{-1} near the shoreline. *Source* Dr. Bruce Jaffe and Dr. Guy Gelfenbaum, U.S. Geological Survey

bubbling water. The tsunami crest approached the coastline at 100 km h^{-1}. The atmospheric pressure pulse preceding this wave may have been sufficient to ignite this methane. Certainly, the pulse was strong enough to flatten people to the ground before the wave arrived. Those exposed to this flaming wall of water would have been severely burnt before being carried inland. The wave also deposited one of the classic sedimentary signatures of tsunami by moving a million cubic meters of sand onshore and spreading it as a 5–15 cm thick splay inland along the coast (Gelfenbaum and Jaffe 1998). At Arop, the sand deposit was up to 2 m thick and spread 60–675 m inland (Fig. 5.13). The basal contact of the deposit was erosional. Mud rip-up clasts were evident in places, indicating high-velocity turbulent flow. Grain size decreased both upwards throughout the deposit and landward—facts reflecting the reduced capacity of the flow to carry sediment with time.

The Papua New Guinea event raises a conundrum in ascribing tsunami to the occurrence of an antecedent earthquake no matter what its size. Secondary landslides are associated with many of the tsunami generate by the largest earthquakes. For example, many of the tsunami in Prince William Sound following the Alaskan earthquake of March 27, 1964 were due to localized submarine landslides (Kachadoorian 1965; McCulloch 1966). At present, slides are perceived only as a minor contributor to tsunami. This view may be neglectful given the fact that many tsunamigenic earthquakes occur along the slopes of steep continental shelves prone to topographic instability. For example, the Tokyo earthquake of September 1, 1923 caused the seafloor to drop in elevation up to 590 m (Shepard 1933). Under the circumstances, it has been difficult to resolve what process generated the PNG Tsunami which reached run-ups of over 15 m near Sissano Lagoon (Fig. 5.12). Tappin et al. (2001) convincingly show that a submarine slump was responsible for this large tsunami. This underrated aspect of tsunami will be discussed in depth in Chap. 7.

References

K. Abe, Size of great earthquakes of 1837–1974 inferred from tsunami data. J. Geophys. Res. **84**, 1561–1568 (1979)

K. Abe, A New Scale of Tsunami Magnitude, M_t, in *Tsunamis—Their science and Engineering*, ed. by K. Iida, T. Iwasaki (Terra Scientific Publishing, Tokyo, 1983), pp. 91–101

K. Abe, Y. Tsuji, F. Imamura, H. Katao, Y. Iio, K. Satake, J. Bourgeois, E. Noguera, F. Estrada, Field survey of the Nicaragua earthquake and tsunami of September 2, 1992. Bull. Earthq. Res. Inst. **68**, 23–70 (1993)

Y. Altinok, B. Alpar, S. Ersoy, A.C. Yalciner, Tsunami generation of the Kocaeli earthquake (August 17th 1999) in the Izmit Bay; coastal observations, bathymetry and seismic data. Turk. J. Mar. Sci. **5**, 131–148 (1999)

C.J. Ammon, C. Ji, H.-K. Thio, D. Robinson, S. Ni, V. Hjorleifsdottir, H. Kanamori, T. Lay, S. Das, D. Helmberger, G. Ichinose, J. Polet, D. Wald, Rupture process of the 2004 Sumatra-Andaman Earthquake. Science **308**, 1133–1139 (2005)

Anon., La Manzanillo Tsunami. University Southern California Tsunami Research Group website, (2005) http://www.usc.edu/dept/tsunamis/manzanillo/

P. Bak, *How Nature Works* (Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1997)

A. Ben-Menahem, M. Rosenman, Amplitude patterns of tsunami waves from submarine earthquakes. J. Geophys. Res. **77**, 3097–3128 (1972)

B.A. Bolt, *Earthquakes* (W. H. Freeman, New York, 1978)

E. Bryant, *Natural Hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, UK, 2005)

P.G. Carydis, The effect of the vertical earthquake motion in near field, in *Structures Under Shock and Impact VIII*, ed. by N. Jones, C.A. Brebbia, (WIT Press, UK, 2004), pp. 267–282

J.P. Caminade, D. Charlie, U. Kanoglu, S. Koshimura, H. Matsutomi, A. Moore, C. Ruscher, C. Synolakis, T. Takahashi, Vanuatu earthquake and tsunami cause much damage, few casualties. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **81**(641), 646–647 (2000)

W.L. Ellsworth, M. Celebi, J.R. Evans, E.G. Jensen, R. Kayen, M.C. Metz, D.J. Nyman, J.W. Roddick, R. Spudich, C.D. Stephens, Near-field ground motion of the 2002 Denali Fault, Alaska, earthquake recorded at Pump Station 10. Earthq. Spectra **20**, 597–615 (2004)

G. Gelfenbaum, B. Jaffe, Preliminary analysis of sedimentary deposits from the 1998 PNG Tsunami. United States Geological Survey, (1998) http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/itst.html

E.L. Geist, Local tsunamis and earthquake source parameters. Adv. Geophys. **39**, 117–209 (1997)

E.L. Geist, Phenomenology of tsunamis II: scaling, event statistics, and inter-event triggering. Adv. Geophys. **53**, 35–92 (2012)

F.I. González, Tsunami! Scientific American May, 44–55 (1999)

V.K. Gusiakov, Tsunami History–Recorded, in *The Sea*, vol. 15, Tsunamis, ed. by A. Robinson, E. Bernard (Harvard University Press, Cambridge, 2008), pp. 23–53

S.K. Haslett, E.A. Bryant, Historic tsunami in Britain since AD 1000: A review. Nat. Hazards Earth Syst. Sci. **8**, 587–601 (2008)

T. Hatori, Classification of tsunami magnitude scale. Bull. Earthq. Res. Inst. **61**, 503–515 (1986). (in Japanese)

K. Horikawa, N. Shuto, Tsunami disasters and protection measures in Japan, in *Tsunamis: Their Science and Engineering*, ed. by K. Iida, T. Iwasaki (Reidel, Dordrecht, 1983), pp. 9–22

M. Hovland, Gas, fire and water. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **80**, 552 (1999)

K. Iida, Magnitude, energy and generation of tsunamis, and catalogue of earthquakes associated with tsunamis. Int. Union Geodesy Geophysics Monogr. **24**, 7–18 (1963)

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission, Historical tsunami database for the Pacific, 47 BC–1998 AD. Tsunami Laboratory, Institute of Computational Mathematics and Mathematical Geophysics, (Siberian Division Russian Academy of Sciences, Novosibirsk, Russia, 1999a) http://tsun.sscc.ru/HTDBPac1/

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission, *ITSU Master Plan* (IOCINF-1124 Paris, 1999b), p. 39

R. Kachadoorian, Effects of the March 27, 1964 earthquake on Whittier, Alaska. US Geol. Surv. Prof. Pap. **542-B**, B1–B21 (1965)

K. Kajiura, Some statistics related to observed tsunami heights along the coast of Japan, in *Tsunamis: Their Science and Engineering*, ed. by K. Iida, T. Iwasaki (Terra Scientific Publishing, Tokyo, 1983), pp. 131–145

H. Kanamori, M. Kikuchi, The 1992 Nicaragua earthquake: a slow tsunami earthquake associated with subducted sediments. Nature **361**, 714–716 (1993)

Y. Kawata, B.C. Benson, J.C. Borrero, J.L. Borrero, H.L. de Davies, W.P. Lange, F. Imamura, H. Letz, J. Nott, C.E. Synolakis, Tsunami in Papua New Guinea was as intense as first thought. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **80**(101), 104–105 (1999)

M. Kikuchi, H. Kanamori, Source characteristics of the 1992 Nicaragua tsunami earthquake inferred from teleseismic body waves. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 441–453 (1995)

P.A. Lockridge, Historical Tsunamis in the Pacific Basin, in *Natural and Man-Made Hazards*, ed. by M.I. El-Sabh, T.S. Murty (Reidel, Dordrecht, 1988), pp. 171–181

D.S. McCulloch, Slide-induced waves, seiching, and ground fracturing caused by the earthquake of March 27, 1964, at Kenai Lake, Alaska. US Geol. Surv. Prof. Pap. **543-A**, A1–A41 (1966)

K. Minoura, F. Imamura, T. Takahashi, N. Shuto, Sequence of sedimentation processes caused by the 1992 Flores tsunami: evidence from Babi Island. Geology **25**, 523–526 (1997)

K. Minoura, F. Imamura, D. Sugawara, Y. Kono, T. Iwashita, The 869 Jogan tsunami deposit and recurrence interval of large-scale tsunami on the Pacific coast of northeast Japan. J Nat. Disaster Sci. **23**, 83–88 (2001)

S. Murata, F. Imamura, K. Katoh, Y. Kawata, S. Takahashi, T. Takayama, Tsunami: To survive from Tsunami. Advance Series on Ocean Engineering, vol. 32 (Kindle edition), (World Scientific, New Jersey 2010)

National Geophysical Data Center (2013). (NGDC/WDS) Global Historical Tsunami Database. Boulder, Colorado. http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/tsu_db.shtml

I.S. Oh, A.B. Rabinovich, Manifestation of Hokkaido southwest (Okushiri) tsunami, 12 July 1993, at the coast of Korea: 1. Statistical characteristics, spectral analysis, and energy decay. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **12**, 93–116 (1994)

E.A. Okal, J. Talandier, D. Reymond, Automatic estimations of tsunami risk following a distant earthquake using the mantle magnitude Mm. in *Proceedings of the 2nd UJNR Tsunami Workshop*, Honolulu, Hawaii 5–6 November 1990, National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, pp. 229–238 (1991)

E.A. Okal, Seismic parameters controlling far-field tsunami amplitudes: a review. Nat. Hazards **1**, 67–96 (1988)

E.A. Okal, Predicting large tsunamis. Nature **361**, 686–687 (1993)

L.D. Porter, D.J. Leeds, Correlation of strong ground motion for the 1994 Northridge earthquake. Geophys. J. Int. **143**, 376–388 (2000)

J. Roger, Y. Gunnell, Vulnerability of the Dover Strait to coseismic tsunami hazards: insights from numerical modelling. Geophys. J. Int. (2011). doi:10.1111/j.1365-246X.2011.05294.x

K. Satake, Seismotectonics of tsunami. in *Proceedings of the International Workshop on Tsunami Mitigation and Risk Assessment*, (Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy, Russia, August 21–24, 1996), http://omzg.sscc.ru/tsulab/paper4.html

K. Satake, Mechanism of the 1992 Nicaragua tsunami earthquake. Geophys. Res. Lett. **21**, 1522–2519 (1994)

K. Satake, Linear and nonlinear computations of the 1992 Nicaragua earthquake tsunami. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 455–470 (1995)

K. Satake, F. Imamura (eds.), *Tsunamis 1992–1994: Their Generation, Dynamics and Hazard* (Birkhäuser, Basel, 1995). 890p

K. Satake, J. Bourgeois, K. Abe, Y. Tsuji, F. Imamura, Y. Iio, H. Katao, E. Noguera, F. Estrada, Tsunami field survey of the 1992 Nicaragua earthquake. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **74**, 145 (1993)

H. Sato, T. Shimamoto, A. Tsutsumi, E. Kawamoto, Onshore tsunami deposits caused by the 1993 southwest Hokkaido and 1983 Japan Sea earthquakes. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 693–717 (1995)

F. Schindelé, D. Reymond, E. Gaucher, E.A. Okal, Analysis and automatic processing in near-field of eight 1992–1994 tsunamigenic earthquakes: improvements towards real-time tsunami warning. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 381–408 (1995)

F.P. Shepard, Depth changes in Sagami Bay during the great Japanese earthquake. J. Geol. **41**, 527–536 (1933)

S. Shi, A.G. Dawson, D.E. Smith, Coastal sedimentation associated with the December 12th, 1992 tsunami in Flores, Indonesia. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 525–536 (1995)

T. Shimamoto, A. Tsutsumi, E. Kawamoto, M. Miyawaki, H. Sato, Field survey report on tsunami disasters caused by the 1993 southwest Hokkaido earthquake. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 665–691 (1995)

N. Shuto, H. Matsutomi, Field Survey of the 1993 Hokkaido Nansei-Oki earthquake tsunami. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 649–663 (1995)

S.L. Soloviev, Recurrence of Tsunamis in the Pacific, in *Tsunamis in the Pacific Ocean*, ed. by W.M. Adams (East-West Center Press, Honolulu, 1970), pp. 149–163

S. Stein, E.A. Okal, The size of the 2011 Tohoku earthquake need not have been a surprise. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **92**, 227–228 (2011)

C. Subarya, M. Mohamed Chlieh, L. Prawirodirdjo, J.-P. Avouac, Y. Bock, K. Sieh, A.J. Meltzner, D.H. Natawidjaja, R. McCaffrey, Plate-boundary deformation associated with the Great Sumatra-Andaman Earthquake. Nature **440**, 46–51 (2006)

D. Tappin, T. Matsumoto, P. Watts, K. Satake, G. McMurty, M. Matsuyama, Y. Lafoy, Y. Tsuji, T. Kanamatsu, W. Lus, Y. Iwabuchi, H. Yeh, Y. Matsumotu, M. Nakamura, M. Mahoi, P. Hill, K. Crook, L. Anton, J.P. Walsh, Sediment slump likely caused 1998. Papua new Guinea tsunami. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **80**, 329, 334, 340 (1999)

D. Tappin, P. Watts, G. McMurty, Y. Lafoy, T. Matsumoto, The Sissano, Papua New Guinea tsunami of July 1998: offshore evidence on the source mechanism. Mar. Geol. **175**, 1–23 (2001)

Y. Tsuji, H. Matsutomi, F. Imamura, M. Takeo, Y. Kawata, M. Matsuyama, T. Takahashi, Sunarjo, P. Harjadi, Damage to coastal villages due to the 1992 Flores Island earthquake tsunami. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 481–524 (1995)

R.L. Wiegel, Tsunamis, in *Earthquake Engineering*, ed. by R.L. Wiegel (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1970), pp. 253–306

P. Yanev, Hokkaido Nansei-Oki Earthquake of July 12, 1993. *EQE Review* Fall Issue, (1993), pp. 1–6

H.H. Yeh, F. Imamura, C. Synolakis, Y. Tsuji, P. Liu, S. Shi, The Flores Island tsunamis. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **74**, 369 (1993)

H.H. Yeh, P. Liu, M. Briggs, C. Synolakis, Propagation and amplification of tsunamis at coastal boundaries. Nature **372**, 353–355 (1994)

6 Great Earthquake-Generated Events

6.1 Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to define the benchmark of run-up heights and geomorphic evidence produced by the greatest tsunamigenic earthquakes in recorded history. This is what we know for certain about the most common cause of tsunami. Against this benchmark, the evidence for submarine landslides and comet/asteroid impact with the ocean presented in Chaps. 8 and 9 respectively, can then be assessed. Unfortunately, the largest of these earthquake-induced events has occurred recently and brings home the point that tsunami research really hasn't decreased the threat or minimized loss of life.

6.2 Lisbon, November 1, 1755

At 9:40 AM on November 1, 1755, All Saints' Day, one of the largest earthquakes ever documented devastated southern Portugal and northwest Africa. Backward ray tracing simulations using the type of incompressible, shallow-water long-wave equations outlined in Chap. 2, position the epicenter on the continental shelf less than 100 km southwest of Lisbon (Fig. 6.2) (Baptista et al. 1996). This location lies close to the boundary of the Azores–Gibraltar Plate, which historically has given rise to many tsunamigenic earthquakes in the region (Moreira 1993). Tsunami have been generated beforehand in this region in 218/216 BC, 210 BC, 209 BC, 60 BC, AD 382, AD 881, AD 1531, AD 1731. The earthquake had an estimated surface wave magnitude, M_s, of 9.0, lasted for 10 min, and consisted of three severe jolts. The earthquakes may have generated submarine landslides that contributed to the subsequent tsunami. Heavy loss of life resulted in Lisbon and the Moroccan towns of Fez and Mequinez. Seismic waves were felt throughout Western Europe over an area of 2.5×10^6 km^2 (Reid 1914). Seiching occurred in ponds, canals, and lakes as far north as Scotland, Sweden, and Finland (Mitchell 1760).

Lisbon, a city of 275,000 inhabitants situated 13 km upstream on the Tagus River, was heavily damaged by the earthquake, and consumed by fires (Reid 1914; Myles 1985; Pararas-Carayannis 2013). As the fires spread throughout the city, survivors moved down to the city's docks. Some even boarded boats moored in the Tagus River. Between 40 and 60 min after the earthquake, the water withdrew from the harbor, and a few minutes later one of the most devastating tsunami in history occurred as a 15 m high wall of water swept up the river, over the docks, and into the city (Fig. 6.3). Just as violently, the backwash dragged bodies and debris back out into the estuary. Two other waves subsequently rolled into the city an hour apart. The tsunami also caused widespread destruction along the coastline of Portugal, where it swept inland up to 2.5 km. At Porto Novo, north of Lisbon, run-up was 20 m high, while at Alvor and Sagres on the southwest tip of Portugal it reached 30 m above sea level.

The tsunami also caused widespread devastation in southwest Spain and western Morocco, as well as crossing the Atlantic Ocean and sweeping islands in the Caribbean 5,700 km away. In southwest Spain, the tsunami caused damage to Cádiz and Huelva, and travelled up the Guadalquivir River as far as Seville. At Cádiz, the wave had a run-up of 2.5 m (Blanc 2011). At Gibraltar, the sea rose suddenly by about 2 m; however, the wave's height rapidly decreased as it travelled into the Mediterranean Sea. The Moroccan coast from Tangier to Agadir was severely affected by a wave about 2.7 m high. The waves swept into towns, killing many people. The tsunami wave also swept up the west coast of Europe into the North Sea, where it caused great disturbance to local shipping as boats in harbors were pulled from their moorings. At Kinsdale, Ireland, the tsunami was 1.7 m high. Waves 2–3 m high moved through the English Channel on a high tide. The third and fourth waves were the largest. Oscillations in sea level with periods ranging from 10 to 20 min occurred over the next 5 h in places. At Plymouth, the tsunami tore up muds and sandbanks at an alarming rate. The tsunami moved across

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_6,

Fig. 6.1 Artist's impression of the second and largest tsunami smashing into the Alaska Railway terminus at Seward in Prince William Sound, March 27, 1964. Locomotive 1828 was carried 50 m. Note that the locomotive has become a water-borne missile—a trait often generated by tsunami bores as described in Chap. 2. Drawing by Pierre Mion and appearing in December 1971 issue of *Popular Science*. *Source*http://www.alaskarails.org/historical/earthquake/photos/tidal-wave.jpg

the Atlantic, damaging the coastline of the Madeira and Azores Islands where wave heights of 1.0–1.5 m were reported. It reached the Caribbean Sea in the early afternoon. Reports from Antigua, Martinique, and Barbados noted that the sea first rose more than a meter, followed by the arrival of large waves. Run-up heights of 2–3 m appeared on Caribbean islands facing east. Significant oscillations continued at 5 min intervals over the next 3 h. In total, about 20,000 people may have been killed by the tsunami, although it is difficult to separate these deaths from those killed by the actual earthquake.

The Lisbon Tsunami had a profound effect on the Portuguese coastline. West of Lisbon at the mouth of the Tagus River, the tsunami stripped rock surfaces and deposited single large boulders, boulder ridges, pebbles and shells up to 50 m above sea level—high above the modern storm

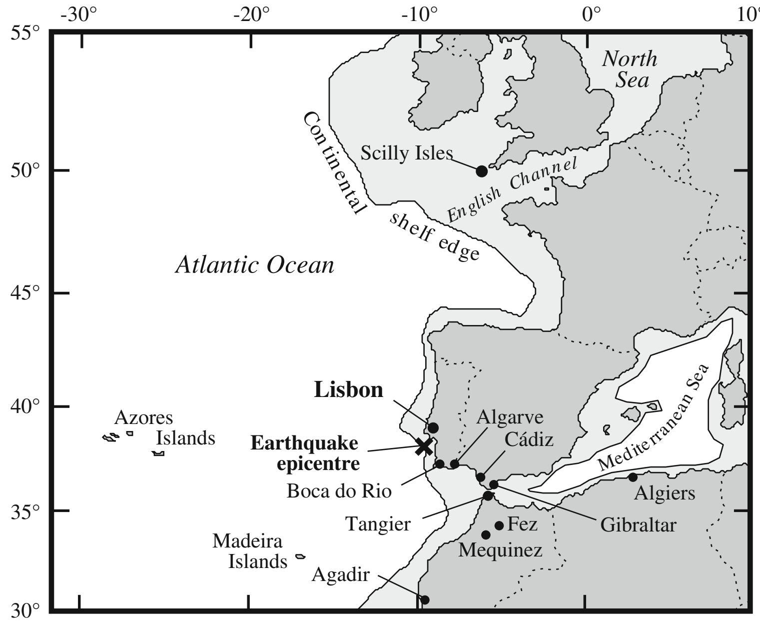


Fig. 6.2 Location map for the Lisbon Tsunami event of November 1, 1755

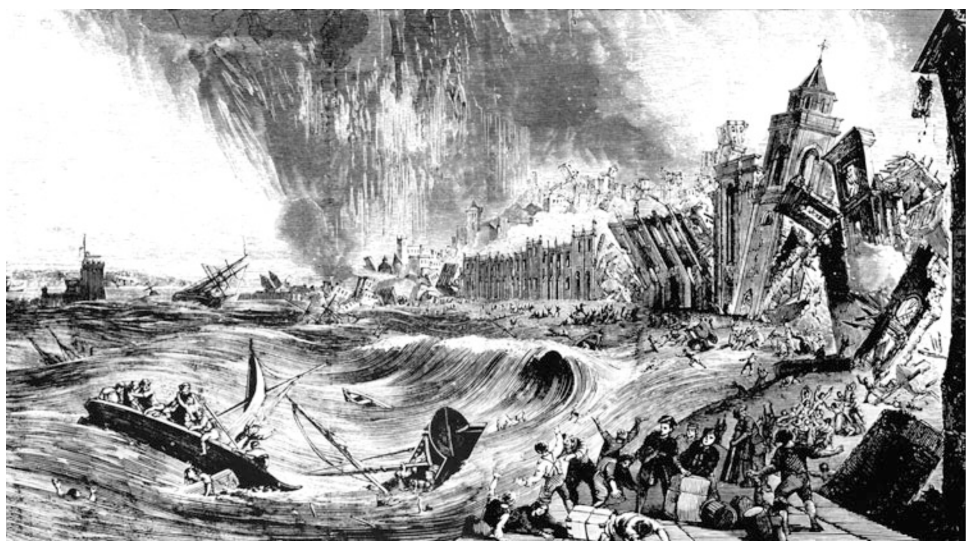


Fig. 6.3 Wood engraving by Justine of the tsunami sweeping up the Tagus River, Lisbon, following the November 1, 1755 earthquake. Note that the earthquake, subsequent fires, and tsunami have been incorrectly drawn as occurring at the same time. *Source* Mary Evans Picture Library Image No. 10047779/07

level—and higher than run-up elevations recorded elsewhere in the region (Scheffers and Kelletat 2005). Along the Algarve coastline of southern Portugal (Fig. 6.2), the main wave and eighteen secondary ones swept over the barrier coast (Andrade 1992; Hindson et al. 1996). At least four other tsunami subsequently affected the same coast between 1755 and 1769. Their impacts form the basis for the model of a tsunami effect on barrier coasts presented in the Chap. 4 (Fig. 4.3). All five tsunami events created extensive overwash deposits, infilled lagoons, and led to the creation of a backbarrier flat up to 800 m wide lying 4.0–4.5 m above high tide. A narrow foredune ridge now fronts this flat seaward. The flats today are poorly vegetated, with hummocky topography that traces out a labyrinth of second order drainage channels developed in response to tidal flooding through numerous inlets punched through the barrier by the tsunami. A lag of iron-stained gravels was left on the channel surfaces. The channels merge into first-order meandering ones that are incised progressively seaward into the backbarrier at the location of tidal inlets. The latter formed either major conduits for backwash or short-lived tidal inlets as the barriers recovered. Despite a tidal range of almost 4 m, most tidal inlets closed because the available tidal prism was insufficient to maintain strong enough currents to flush out sediment. Remnant channels are today truncated seaward by a foredune that has developed in the past 200 years. Some tidal inlets developed wide, flood-tidal deltas in the lagoon. These underwent extensive reworking as tidal currents moved the excessive amounts of sediment. These deltas now lie abandoned in the lagoon.

Along the south Portuguese coast, the tsunami wave also ran up valleys (Dawson et al. 1995). At Boca do Rio, the tsunami laid down a *dump* deposit and a tapering sand layer. The *dump* layer was deposited within 400 m of the coast by the first wave in the tsunami wave train. It consists of a chaotic mixture of muddy sand, cobbles, shell, sand-armored mud balls, and the odd boulder up to 40 cm in diameter. The shells incorporate the littoral bivalve *Petricola lithophaga* and the subtidal sponge *Cliona* spp. The overlying sand layer was laid down by subsequent waves. It consists of a 0.1–0.4 m thick unit sandwiched between silty clays. The unit tapers landward over a distance of 1 km. The sand size within the layer fines upwards from a coarse, gritty sand to a silty or clayey, fine sand. The sequence is indicative of high-energy flow that decreased landward. The layer also contains clay 3–12 μm in size that originated from the weathered substratum that was eroded by the passage of the tsunami. Estuarine and intertidal shell species such as *Mytilus edulis, Scrobicularia plana,* and *Tellina tenius* are present in the lower part of the layer together with gravels and mud balls 0.5–5.0 cm in size. Foraminifera such as *Elphidium crispum* and *Quinqueloculina seminulum,* both of which are found in 20–30 m depths of water, are present throughout the unit. Dating of the sands indicates that they were deposited by the Lisbon Tsunami. However two previous events around 2,440 ± 50 and 6,000–7,000 year ago cannot be excluded. Platy boulders up to 7 m in length were transported by the tsunami in southern Spain (Whelan and Kelletat 2005). Theoretical flow depths of 14–16 m have been calculated using these boulder dimensions.

Sediment signatures of tsunami were also deposited on the Scilly Isles, 40 km southwest of Land's End, England (Foster et al. 1991). Here, shallow lagoons backing wind-swept dune fields and lying about a meter above the high-tide limit were inundated by tsunami swash. The first wave arrived at high tide and produced a 4.5 m high run-up. The third and fourth waves were the largest. Coarse sandy layers 15–40 cm thick were deposited over sandy peats in three lagoons. Over the last 250 years, peat has subsequently covered these sands. Radiocarbon dating at the bottom of this peat indicates that the sands were deposited around the time of the Lisbon event.

6.3 Chile, May 22, 1960

Of the world's entire coastline, the west coast of South America is one of the most prone to recurrent large tsunami. Seismicity is linked to subduction of the Nazca Plate beneath the South American Plate. Earthquake epicenters tend to cluster along the coastline or at the base of the Andes Mountains. The most tsunamigenic section of coastline occurs on the border between Peru and Chile. Since historical records began in 1562, there have been 230 tsunami generated by earthquakes (Lockridge 1985). Five localities have had ten or more tsunamigenic earthquakes over this period within a 110 km radius of each other. Destructive tsunami occur at roughly 30–50 year intervals. Three events have had Pacific-wide impact: the events of August 13, 1868 and May 10, 1877, both near the town of Arica on the present border between Peru and Chile, and the event of May 22, 1960. The Arica events regionally had maximum run-ups of 21 and 24 m respectively along the South American coast. The 1868 Tsunami struck the town within half an hour of the main shock. The sea rose initially 5 m and then withdrew, leaving a 2 km wide strip of the seabed exposed. Several minutes later, the main wave came in and swept across the coastal plain (Fig. 2.11). Approximately 25,000 people lost their lives in this region alone. The tsunami then swept the Pacific Ocean with damage being reported in New Zealand, Hawaii, and Japan. The 1877 event was just as large, if not more widespread. Its run-up was 20 m high at Arica and 24 m high at Tocopilla, 600 km south of the epicenter. At Cobija in northern Chile, the tsunami arrived 5 min after the earthquake and reached 11.9 m above mean sea level, destroying the town (Fig. 6.4). The tsunami also swept the Pacific Ocean and had a particularly forceful impact on the coast of New Zealand, where run-up of 6 m was reported. In eastern Australia, the wave was responsible for the largest tsunami, 1.07 m, recorded on the Sydney tide gauge.

The May 22, 1960 Tsunami was generated by the last of over four dozen earthquakes occurring along 1,000 km of fault line parallel to the Chilean coastline (Myles 1985; Pararas-Carayannis 1998a). The first earthquake began at 6:02 AM on Saturday, 21 May and destroyed the area around Concepción. Large aftershocks continued until, at 3:11 PM Sunday May 22nd, the largest earthquake with M_s and M_w magnitudes of 8.9 and 9.5 respectively occurred with an epicenter at 39.5 °S, 74.5 °W, and a focal depth of 33 km (Fig. 6.5). Submarine uplift of 1 m and subsidence of 1.6 m ensued along a 300 km stretch of coast. Subsidence extended as far as 29 km inland with 13,000 km^2 of land sinking by 2–4 m. The length of rupturing occurred along 1000 km parallel to the coastline. Many fisherman and their families quickly put out to sea to escape the flooding that was to come. Within 10–15 min, the sea quickly rushed in as a smooth wave 4–5 m above normal tide level and just as quickly raced back out to sea taking with it boats and flotsam. This was only the harbinger of worse to come. Fifty minutes later, the sea returned as a thunderous 8 m wall of green water racing at 200 km hr^{-1}, drowning all those who had taken to the sea. An hour later, an even higher 11 m wave came ashore at about half the speed of its predecessor. This was followed by a succession of waves that so obliterated coastal

Fig. 6.4 The ruins of Cobija in northern Chile. The tsunami of May 10, 1877 destroyed the town, which was subsequently buried by alluvial gravels. The ruins contain layers of shelly sand brought ashore by the tsunami. Photograph courtesy Prof. Colin Murray-Wallace, *School* of *Earth* & Environmental Sciences, University of Wollongong

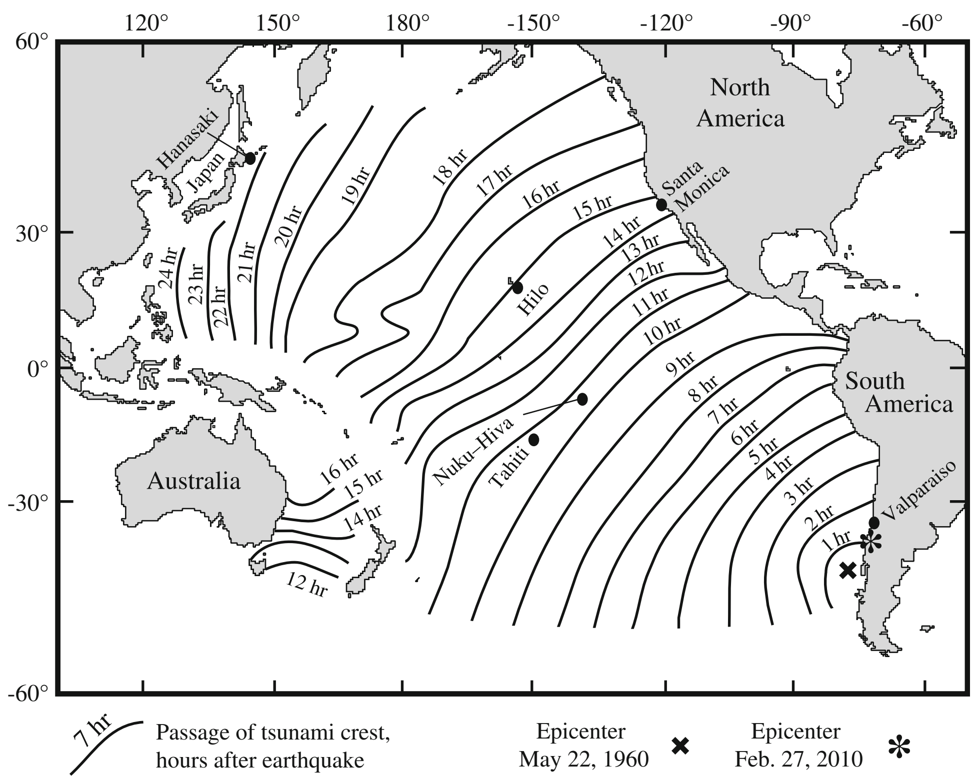


Fig. 6.5 Passage of the tsunami wave crest across the Pacific Ocean following the May 22, 1960 Chilean earthquake. Based upon Wiegel (1964) and Pickering et al. (1991)

towns between Concepción and the south end of Isla Chiloe that the only evidence left of their existence were the remains of streets (Fig. 6.6). Run-up along the Chilean coast near the source area averaged 12.2 m above sea level and ranged between 8.5 and 25 m (Table 6.1). Dunes were eroded by overwashing, and sand was transported as a thin layer tapering inland over alluvial sediments (Wright and Mella 1963). In the Valdivia region, 6–30 cm of beach sand was deposited up to 500 m inland, while in the Rio Lingue Valley where the tsunami reached a height of 15 m, a thin layer of sand was deposited up to 6 km inland. The total loss of life in Chile is unknown but probably lies between 5,000 and 10,000. The total property damage from the combined effects of the earthquake and tsunami in Chile was $417 million.

Fig. 6.6 Aerial view of Isla Chiloe, Chile, showing damage produced by the May 22, 1960 Tsunami. Two hundred deaths occurred here. *Source* National Geophysical Data Center, http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/seg/cdroms/Volcanoes/tif_24/648001/64800112.tif

Table 6.1 Statistics on the run-up heights of the May 22, 1960 Chilean Tsunami around the Pacific Ocean

Region	Average height (m)	Maximum height (m)	Range (m)
Source area	12.2	25.0	8.5–25.0
Chile	2.7	5.0	0.4–5.0
Peru	2.0	3.9	1.0–3.9
Central America	0.5	1.4	0.2–1.4
US West Coast	1.2	3.7	0.2–3.7
Canada	0.4	0.4	0.1–0.4
Alaska	1.3	3.3	0.4–3.3
Hawaii	3.1	10.5	1.5–10.5
Pacific Islands	4.3	12.2	0.5–12.2
Japan	2.7	6.4	0.2–6.4
New Zealand	0.6	0.9	0.4–0.9
Australia	0.5	1.8	0.2–1.8

Over the next 24 h, a series of tsunami wave crests spread across the Pacific, taking 2,231 lives and destroying property in such diverse places as Hawaii, Pitcairn Island, New Guinea, New Zealand, Japan, Okinawa, and the Philippines. Figure 6.5 shows the arrival time of the tsunami across the Pacific (Wiegel 1964; Pickering et al. 1991). The initial wave travelled at a speed of 670–740 km hr^{-1}, depending upon the depth of the ocean. Individual waves in the tsunami wave train had wavelengths of 500–800 km and periods of 40–80 min. In the open ocean, the wave height was only 40 cm high. The tsunami was measured at 630 sites around the Pacific Ocean. It is the most widespread tsunami to affect this basin. It was also responsible for the establishment of the modern Pacific Tsunami Warning System. The tsunami reached landfall first along the Mexican, New Zealand, and Australian coasts (Fig. 6.5). It travelled quickest northwards along the coast of the Americas across the North Pacific Ocean to Japan. The wave crest underwent refraction around islands in the west Pacific, particularly those in the Izu-Bonin and Marianas Island arcs. Detailed wave refraction analysis indicates that energy was focused towards Japan in the northwest Pacific, but dispersed elsewhere.

These effects are reflected in marigrams derived from tidal gauge records around the Pacific Ocean (Fig. 6.7). The marigrams show multiple peaks, the highest of which occurred sometime after the arrival of the first wave at some locations (Wilson et al. 1962 Tsuji 1991; and Heinrich et al. 1996). Run-ups for the event are summarized by region in Table 6.1. In the Southwest Pacific, the tsunami entered the Tasman Sea from the south about 12 h after the earthquake and caused rapid fluctuations in water levels in many harbors. Run-ups averaged 0.5–0.6 m respectively along the east coasts of New Zealand and Australia, reaching maximum values of 1.8 m. Boats were torn from their moorings or beached by currents generated by tsunami-induced seiching. Along the coastline of the Americas, where the coast bends eastwards, the tsunami had minimal effect with run-ups averaging only 40 cm. On the exposed sections of the west coast of the United States, wave run-up averaged 1.2 m, with values ranging between 0.2 and 3.7 m. The tsunami also had a variable impact on Pacific Ocean islands (Heinrich et al. 1996). On smaller islands fronted by steep offshore slopes and protecting fringing reefs, waves were only 1–2 m in height. However, where gradual bottom

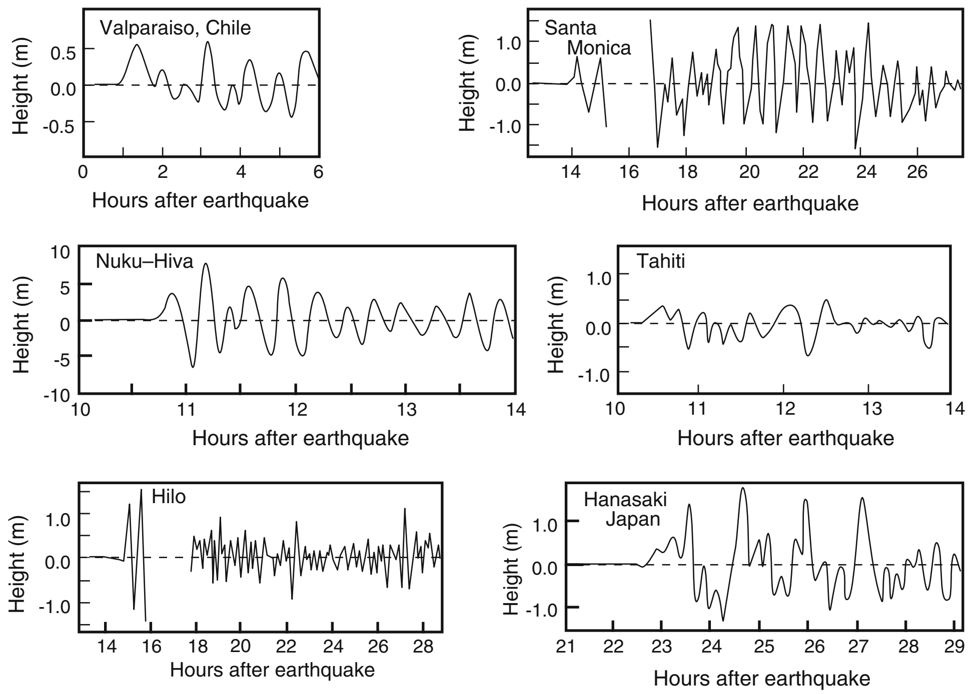


Fig. 6.7 Tide records or marigrams of the May 22, 1960 Chilean Tsunami around the Pacific Ocean. Records have had their daily tides removed. Based upon Wilson et al. (1962), Tsuji (1991), and Heinrich et al. (1996)

slopes existed and bays were present, wave heights were amplified by a factor of five and run-ups averaged 4.3 m. Hence, outside the source region, the Pacific Islands were affected the most by the tsunami. For example, on the Marquesas Islands, the wave height of the second wave exceeded 10 m at Nuku–Hiva and Hiva–Oa (Fig. 6.7). Here, the wave ran up valleys 500 m inland. The largest run-up on any Pacific island, 12.2 m, occurred on Pitcairn Island.

Hawaii was particularly affected by the tsunami that refracted around to the north side of islands (Lander and Lockridge 1989; Pararas-Carayannis 1998a). The greatest impact occurred at Hilo. Here, after traveling 10,000 km over a period of 14.8 h, the tsunami's arrival time at 9:58 AM was predicted to within a minute. In spite of more than 5 h warning, only 33 % of residents in the area affected in Hilo evacuated. Over 50 % only evacuated after the first wave arrived, and 15 % stayed behind even after the largest waves had beached. The first two waves did not do much damage, but the third wave was deadly. It swept inland 6 m above sea level, reaching a maximum run-up of 10.7 m. Sixty-one people were killed as the wave swept ashore. Many of those killed were spectators who went back to see the action of a tsunami hitting the coast. The waterfront at Hilo was devastated as the waves swept inland over five city blocks (Fig. 6.8). 10 tonne vehicles were swept away and 20 tonne rocks were lifted off the harbor's breakwall and carried inland 180 m. In the area of maximum destruction, only buildings of reinforced concrete or structural steel remained standing. Wooden buildings were either destroyed or floated inland, and piled up at the limit of run-up. About 540 homes and businesses were destroyed or severely damaged. Damage in Hawaii was estimated at $24 million. Subsequently the flooded area was turned into parkland to prevent a recurrence of the disaster.

Although warnings were issued for Japan, the waves struck this country very unexpectedly 22 h after being generated (Committee of the Field Investigation of the 1960 Chilean Tsunami 1961). The tsunami rose from 40 to 70 cm height in 200 m depth of water despite losing 40 % of its energy traveling across the Pacific. Dispersion dramatically reduced the height of the initial waves in the tsunami wave train. This effect is shown by the marigram for Hanasaki, Japan, in Fig. 6.7. In addition, resonance effects tended to enhance isolated waves in the wave train such that the maximum run-up occurred hours after the arrival of the first waves. Run-up heights averaged 2.7 m along the east coast, with a maximum value of 6.4 m recorded at Rikuzen. At Shiogama and Ofunato on the Sanriku coast of northern Honshu—where local earthquakes, but not distant Pacific ones, had produced such devastating tsunami over the past century—fishing boats were picked up and flung into business districts. Seiching at wave periods much lower than that of the main tsunami occurred in many harbors. Along the shoreline of Hokkaido and Honshu, 5,000 homes were washed away, hundreds of ships were sunk, 251 bridges were destroyed, 190 people lost their lives, and 854 were injured. Over 50,000 people were left homeless, with property damage estimated at over $350 million (Myles 1985).

At the beginning of this section, a 30–50 year interval was mentioned for the occurrence of significant tsunami-genic earthquakes along the Chilean coast. The 1960 event

Fig. 6.8 Aftermath of the May 22, 1960 Chilean Tsunami in the Waiakea area of Hilo, Hawaii, 10,000 km from the source area. The force of the debris-filled waves bent parking meters. *Photograph credit* U.S. Navy. *Source* National Geophysical Data Center, http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/seg/cdroms/Volcanoes/tif_24/648001/64800113.tif

was so big that it was considered that the next event would not occur within this timeframe. This anticipated event occurred 50 years later at 03:34 local time (06:34 UTC), on February 27, 2010 with a M_w 8.8 magnitude earthquake centered at 39.5° S, 74.5° W, 35 km below the seabed (Fig. 6.5). It was the sixth strongest earthquake recorded. Over 500 km of subducting faultline ruptured immediately north of the segment that ruptured in 1960 (Moreno et al. 2012). It is a classic example of an earthquake filling adjacent seismic gaps that had not moved since 1835 and 1928. Because two segments ruptured, one would expect not only a large earthquake, but also a big *teleseismic* tsunami. The expected magnitude of the tsunami did not eventuate because much of the slippage occurred at depth and towards land (Lorito et al. 2011). In fact, the seismic gaps may not have been closed and may still have the potential to generate a large *teleseismic* tsunami. These characteristics, which were only defined with precision afterwards, resulted in a large tsunami locally, but none of significance in the wider Pacific Ocean. At the time, the size and location of the earthquake triggered an immediate warning for a significant Pacific-wide tsunami. The closest DART buoy, located 1170 southwest of Lima, Peru, recorded a deep water amplitude of 22 cm that reinforced this warning (National Data Buoy Center 2013). Beaches, harbors and marinas around the Pacific were closed to the public or evacuated. Thirty minutes after the earthquake began, a tsunami rolled into the Chilean coastline at numerous locations with a height up to 2.6 m measured on tide gauges (Fritz et al. 2011; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). A maximum run-up of 29 m was recorded at Constitucion, Chile. Eighty-seven locations in Chile recorded run-ups greater than 10 m, of which ten reported run-ups in excess of 20 m. The death toll in Chile was 525 people with 25 missing. The energy of the tsunami was directed northwards into the Pacific Ocean, focusing on Japan, Hawaii and southern California where tide gauges registered maximum heights of 0.82, 0.98 and 1.2 m respectively. The greatest height, 1.79 m, was registered at Hiva Oa Island, French Polynesia. As a *teleseismic* tsunami event across the Pacific Ocean, the February 27, 2010 earthquake was surprisingly of little significance.

6.4 Alaska, March 27, 1964

The Alaskan earthquake struck on Good Friday, March 27, 1964 at 5:36 PM Alaska Standard Time (03:26 UTC, March 28, 1964) along a seismically active zone paralleling the Aleutian Islands (Fig. 6.9a) (Van Dorn 1964; Hansen 1965). The area is noted for large tsunamigenic earthquakes that have had a continuing impact upon the Pacific Ocean (Fig. 1.2b). Notable events that have affected Hawaii in recorded history occurred on January 20, 1878, April 1,

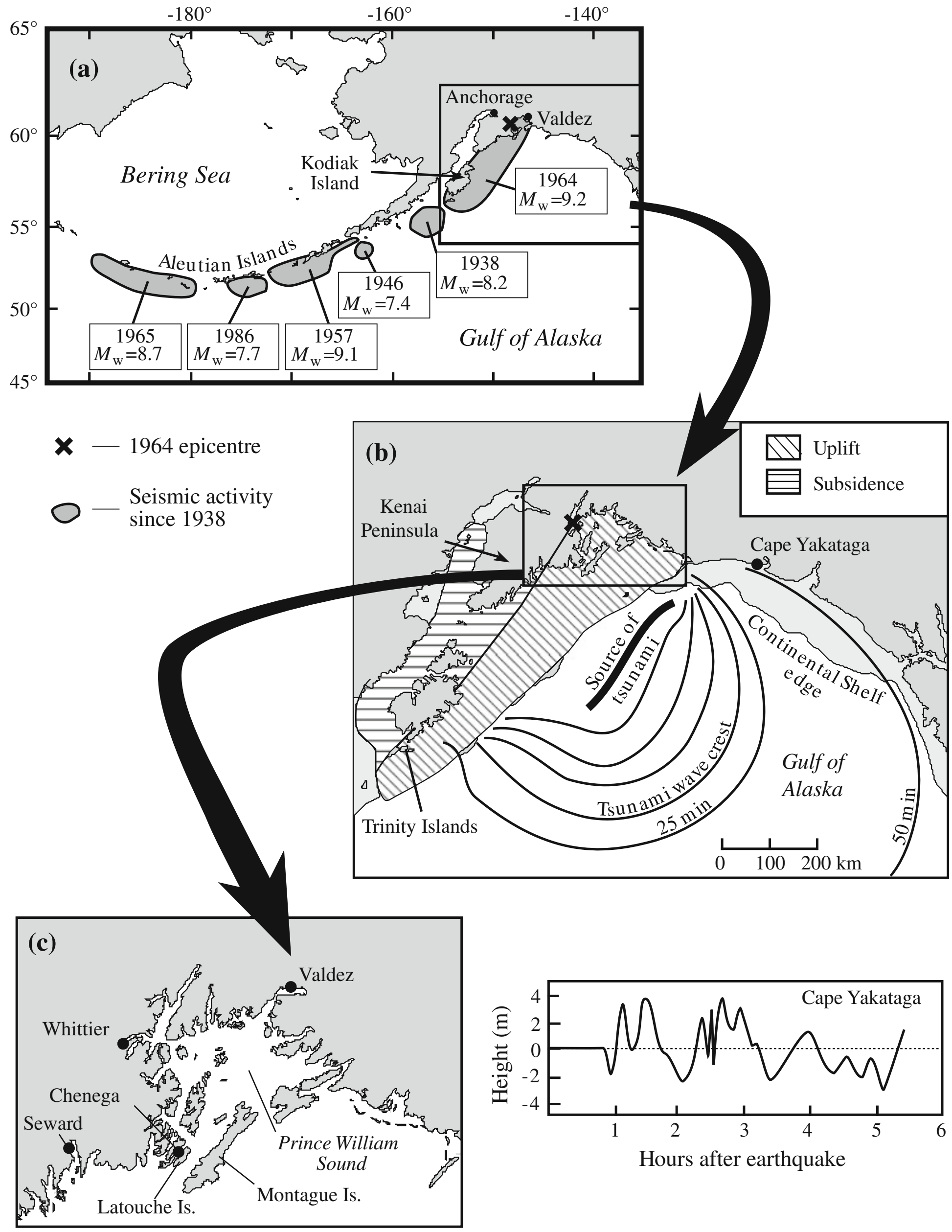


Fig. 6.9 Earthquake and tsunami characteristics of the Great Alaskan Earthquake of March 27, 1964. Based on Van Dorn (1965), Pararas-Carayannis (1998b), and Johnson (1999): **a** Location of seismic activity since 1938. **b** Gulf of Alaska land deformation caused by the earthquake and theorized open-Pacific tsunami wave front. **c** Detail of Prince William Sound

1946, and March 9, 1957 (Table 1.3). The most recent sequence of seismic activity began in 1938 with large earthquakes in 1938, 1946, 1957, 1964, and 1965 (Sokolowski 1999). The last three events are amongst the 10 largest earthquakes of the 20th century. The southwards movement of Alaska over the Pacific Plate at a shallow angle of 20° has generated these earthquakes, forming a subduction zone known as the Aleutian–Alaska Megathrust Zone. Shallow dip favors large trans-Pacific tsunami. The epicenter of the 1964 earthquake was located in northern Prince William Sound at 61.1° N, 147.5° W (Fig. 6.9a). The earthquake had a focal depth of 23 km and surface and moment magnitudes of 8.4 and 9.2 respectively—the largest ever measured in North America. The earthquake rang the Earth like a bell and set up seiching in the Great Lakes of North America and in Texas 5,000 km away. Water levels in wells oscillated in South Africa on the other side of the globe. The ground motion was so severe around the epicenter that the tops of trees were snapped off. More significant, ground displacement occurred along 800 km of the Danali Fault system parallel to the Alaskan coastline. Figure 6.9b shows that the dislocations followed a dipole pattern of positive and negative displacements on either side of a zero line running through the east coast of Kodiak Island, northeast to the western side of Prince William Sound (Johnson 1999). Maximum subsidence of 3 m occurred west of this line, while as much as 11 m of uplift occurred to the east. At some locations, individual fault scarps measured 6 m in relief. The earthquake was felt over an area of 1.3×10^6 km^2 while land movement covered an area of 520,000 km^2. Most of Prince William Sound and the continental shelf were affected by the latter deformation.

Approximately 215,000 km^2 of displacement contributed to the generation of the resulting tsunami over an area measuring 150 × 700 km (Van Dorn 1964). The total volume of crust shifted amounted to 115–120 km^3. More than 25,000 km^3 of water were displaced. Tsunami generation was also aided by some of the 52 major aftershocks that occurred in the area of uplift. As a result, two main tsunami-generating areas can be distinguished, one along the continental shelf bordering the Gulf of Alaska and the other in Prince William Sound (Lander and Lockridge 1989; Pararas-Carayannis 1998b). As the tsunami moved away from the Gulf of Alaska, it was forecast by the Pacific Tsunami Warning System, which had been revamped following the 1960 Chilean Tsunami. Within 46 min of the earthquake, a preliminary, Pacific-wide tsunami warning was issued by the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center in Honolulu. This was not sufficient to warn many Alaskan communities of impending tsunami. For example, the shores of Kenai Peninsula and Kodiak Island were struck by tsunami within 23 and 34 min respectively of the earthquake (Von Huene and Cox 1972). Three major tsunami developed in Prince William Sound. One was related to the earthquake and had its origin near the west coast of Montague Island, at the southern end of the Sound. The second was due to local landslides (Sokolowski 1999). The third developed much later in the Port of Valdez region, probably because of resonance within that part of the sound. Maximum positive crustal displacement in Prince William Sound occurred along the northwest coast of Montague Island and in the area immediately offshore. These earth movements caused a gradient in hydrostatic level and numerous large submarine slides in the area off Montague Island and at the north end of Latouche Island. Bathymetric surveys later showed that the combination of submarine slides and the tilting of the ocean floor due to uplift created the solitary wave observed in this region. The tsunami here did not escape the sound. At Chenega, a solitary wave reached 27.4 m above sea level within 10 min of the earthquake.

Landslide-generated tsunami were confined to Prince William Sound (Fig. 6.9c), where communities generally experienced wave run-ups of 12–21 m (Kachadoorian 1965; McCulloch 1966). At the ports of Seward, Whittier, and Valdez, docks, railway track, and warehouses sank into the sea because of flow failures in marine sediments (Hansen 1965). The settlements were swamped by 7 to 10 m high tsunami within an hour of the quake, but local run-ups were greater. None of these communities had any warning of the tsunami. At Seward, a swathe of the waterfront 100 m wide dropped into the ocean over a distance of 1 km. Twenty minutes later a 9 m high wave rolled into the town picking up the rolling stock of the Alaska Railroad, tossing locomotives like Dinky toys (Fig. 6.1), shearing off the pilings supporting the dock, destroying infrastructure and houses, and killing 13 people. Near the harbor, the Texaco oil storage tanks burst and caught fire, spilling flaming oil into the receding sea. An hour later, a second, higher wave roared in. It could not be missed in the dark because it incorporated the flaming oil and raced towards the town as a 10 m high wall of flame. Eerily, the remains of the dock's pilings had caught fire and bobbed like large Roman candles in the waters of Resurrection Bay as successively smaller waves raced in. At Whittier numerous slides occurred. One of the resulting tsunami reached a height of 32 m above sea level. At Valdez, a large submarine slide was generated at the entrance to the port by collapse into the bay of the terminal moraine at the end of Shoup Glacier. The resulting tsunami lifted driftwood to an elevation of 52 m above sea level and deposited silt and clay 15 m higher. In the town itself, which is situated on an outwash delta with a steep front, an area 180 m wide and 1.2 km long slid into the fjord taking most of the waterfront with it. Within 2 or 3 min, a 9 m high wave swept inland through the town (Fig. 6.10). Thirty-two people lost their lives, many as the docks collapsed and were then swamped by water. Of the 106 deaths in Alaska due to tsunami related to the Good Friday earthquake, up to 82 were caused by these localized events. About 5–6 h after the earthquake, further tsunami waves struck Valdez at high tide. The third wave came in at 11 AM March 27, and the fourth one at 1:45 AM March 28. This last wave took the form of a tidal bore and inundated the downtown section of Valdez. Apparently, these last tsunami were produced by resonance that had built up in the bay over a five hour period.

The main tsunami propagated southwards into the Pacific Ocean within 25 min of the earthquake (Fig. 6.9b) (Spaeth and Berkman 1967; Lander and Lockridge 1989; Pararas-Carayannis 1998b). Its wave period was exceptionally long, being an hour or more. This was caused by the long seiche period of the shallow shelf in the region where the tsunami originated. At many locations, the first wave arrived as a smooth, rapid rise in sea level rather than as a distinct wave. Seas then receded, to be followed by a bigger wave, often coincident with high tide. On Kodiak Island, the third and fourth waves were the highest and most destructive. Factors such as reflection, wave interaction, refraction, diffraction, and resonance had to be involved in the generation of this tsunami wave train. Kodiak Island sustained heavy damage with a maximum run-up of 10.6 m. The wave was focused south down the west coast of North America. Along the Canadian coast, the wave's height registered about 1.4 m on tide gauges (Table 6.2). However, exposed locations such as Shield Bay recorded a maximum run-up of 9.8 m elevation.

Fig. 6.10 Limits of run-up of the tsunami that swept Valdez harbor following the March 27, 1964 Great Alaskan Earthquake. A submarine landslide triggered by the earthquake generated this tsunami. The height of run-up was 9 m. Photograph courtesy of the World Data Center A for solid earth geophysics and United States National Geophysical Data Center. *Source* Catalogue of Disasters #B64C28-205

Table 6.2 Statistics on the run-up heights of the March 27, 1964 Alaskan Tsunami around the Pacific Ocean

Region	Average height (m)	Maximum height (m)	Range (m)
Source area	11.0	67.0	0.3–67.0
Canada	4.8	9.8	1.4–9.8
Washington State	1.8	4.5	0.1–4.5
Oregon	2.8	4.3	0.3–4.3
California	1.6	4.3	0.3–4.3
Central America	0.4	2.4	0.1–2.4
South America	1.2	4.0	0.1–4.0
Hawaii	2.3	4.9	1.0–4.9
Pacific Islands	0.2	0.6	0.1–0.6
Japan	0.4	1.6	0.1–1.6
Australia-New Zealand	0.2	0.2	–
Palmer Peninsula, Antarctica	0.4	–	–

The tsunami became the largest historical tsunami disaster to sweep the west coast of United States. Maximum wave heights reached 4.3–4.5 m in all of the three coastal states of Washington, Oregon, and California (Table 6.2). Many seaside towns received only 30 min warning of the wave's arrival. Greatest damage occurred at Crescent City, California, where bottom topography concentrated the wave's energy. Crescent City has been affected by numerous tsunami geologically. Coring of marshes in the area shows evidence for at least six previous events, one of which laid down a layer of sand 50 cm thick up to 500 m inland (Peterson et al. 2013). The Alaskan Tsunami laid down a sand layer only 1–3 cm thick 200 m inland in a marsh south of the city. Eleven people were killed in Crescent City by the Alaskan Tsunami, most because they returned to low-lying areas before the arrival of the fourth and largest wave. As with the Chilean Tsunami, dispersion had greatly reduced the height of the first couple of waves in the tsunami wave train. The fourth wave was preceded by a general withdrawal of water that left the inner harbor dry. The wave then rapidly swept ashore, capsizing or beaching fishing boats, destroying piers, and flooding thirty city blocks backing the coast. Up to \$8.8 million damage occurred in this one city out of the \$12 million damage along the west coast of the United States. Elsewhere the wave swept marinas, tore boats from moorings, and smashed piers. Fortunately, the waves diminished in height significantly before reaching San Francisco, where 10,000 people had flocked to the coast to witness the arrival of this rare event. Further south at San Diego, authorities were unable to clear sightseers from the beaches.

Following the arrival of the wave in California, warning sirens in Hawaii were sounded to alert the general population to evacuate threatened areas. The first wave arrived at Hilo 1.3 h after striking Crescent City. Along the exposed shores of Hawaii, run-up averaged 2.3 m high, reaching a maximum of 4.3 m at Waimea on the island of Oahu. Hilo, which had been badly affected by the Chilean Tsunami 4 years beforehand, experienced a run-up of only 3 m in height. Damage here was relatively minor because of the long warning time before the arrival of the waves and because much of the area affected by the Chilean Tsunami had not been resettled. Over the next few hours, the wave reached Japan and the South American coasts. In Japan, the effect of the tsunami was minor. The wave averaged 0.4 m high on tide gauges reaching a maximum elevation of 1.6 m (Table 6.2). Little damage was reported. However, the tsunami continued to be a major event along the coast of South America. Here, the wave averaged 1.2 m in height, reaching a maximum value of 4 m at Coquimbo, Chile. Unlike the Chilean event 4 years previously, individual Pacific islands were not badly affected by the Alaskan Tsunami. A maximum wave height of only 0.6 m was registered at the Galapagos Islands. Surprisingly, the Palmer Peninsula in the Antarctic recorded a wave height of 0.4 m—a value greater than that recorded on most Pacific Islands. South Pacific Islands appear to be immune from the effects of tsunami generated by Alaskan earthquakes.

6.5 The Indian Ocean Tsunami December 26, 2004

The Indo-Australia Plate is moving northwards against the southern extension of the Eurasian Plate at the rate of 37–57 mm yr^{-1}. However, no large earthquake with a moment magnitude, M_w, greater than 8.0 had occurred along the boundary of these two plates for over a century (National Geophysical Data Center 2006b). Severe earthquakes had occurred in the region previously in 1797 ($M_w = 8.2$), 1833 ($M_w = 9.0$), 1861 ($M_w = 8.5$), and 1881 ($M_w = 7.9$) with some producing destructive local tsunami. However, for over a century, the region was relatively quiescent seismically. On December 23, 2004 at 14:59:03 (UTC) the whole Australian Plate began to move starting with a magnitude 8.1 earthquake north of Macquarie Island 900 km southeast of Australia. Late Christmas Day, Greenwich Mean Time, an experimental seismometer located at the University of Wollongong, south of Sydney, Australia, measured the passage of a very long wave moving northwards through the Earth's crust. The Australian Plate was flexing. Two hours later at 7:58:47 AM local time at Jakarta (58 min and 47 s past midnight UTC), on December 26, 2004 (Boxing Day) the enormous pressures that had built up over the past century began to rupture the plate boundary 30 km below sea level at 3.3 °N, 95.9 °E, about 160 km offshore of northern Sumatra (Ammon et al. 2005; Lay et al. 2005; Subarya et al. 2006). For 10 min, the Indo-Australian Plate moved northwards slowly at first and then accelerating to a speed of 2.8 km s^{-1} over a distance of 1200–1300 km (Bilham 2005). As the plates unzipped, the Eurasian Plate jumped to the southwest. Between the Andaman Islands and Nias Island, slip displacements reached 15 m over a 600 km length of the plate boundary centered on Banda Aceh, Indonesia. Vertical, upward displacement of the sea floor off Sumatra reached 1–2 m and the ocean above heaved in response, displacing 30 km^3 of seawater that then propagated outwards along the 1200 km distance of the fault line. The size of the earthquake defied analysis for months because so much energy was concentrated in long seismic waves. In the end, the moment magnitude, M_w, was estimated at between 9.15 and 9.30, equivalent to 1.1×10^{18} J, more that the total energy released by all earthquakes globally over the previous 10 years. The number of aftershocks greater than 5 in magnitude was the greatest ever observed. The earthquake was felt as far north as Bangladesh and as far west as the Maldives. The whole surface of the earth moved vertically at least one centimeter. The shift in mass slowed the Earth's rotation by 2.7 m s. It was the second largest earthquake ever recorded.

A disaster of global proportions was unwinding as the deadliest tsunami in recorded history began to race across the Andaman Sea and the Indian Ocean. The event is definitive: it was the most devastating Sunday morning in human history, the deadliest tsunami ever, and for the Indian Ocean very unexpected. There was also one major difference between large tsunami in the Indian Ocean over a century ago and now. The increased population that had spread onto coastal plains in Sumatra, Sri Lanka, India, and Thailand since the Second World War were all vulnerable. There was no warning for the thousands who would die over the next 10 h, for the Indian Ocean had no tsunami warning capability. Nor would a warning system have been that effective because 73 % of the death toll occurred within 20–30 min of the earthquake. At Banda Aceh on the northern tip of Sumatra, the sea receded 10 min after the earthquake. Three minutes later the first wave measuring 5 m in height ran ashore. 5 minutes after this a second and more devastating wave arrived with heights of 15–30 m. Very few observations exist of the third and final wave, because most people were dead.

For the first time, the height of a tsunami could be measured using altimeters on satellites: TOPEX/Poseidon and Jason operated jointly by NASA and the French space agency (Fig. 6.11c), CNES, the European Space Agency's Envisat, and the U.S. Navy's Geosat Follow-On, that fortuitously passed above the wave front in the region of Sri Lanka. The tsunami as it spread outwards throughout the Indian Ocean had a height of 60 cm, exceeding the height of the Chilean Tsunami described previously (National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration 2006). The measurements backed up theory indicating that the tsunami in 4,500 m depths at the time of sensing had a shallow water wave speed of about 750 km h^{-1}. The length between wave crests in the tsunami wave train, after correcting for the speed of the satellite, was about 37 min. The wave took 10 h to cross the Indian Ocean (Fig. 6.11a).

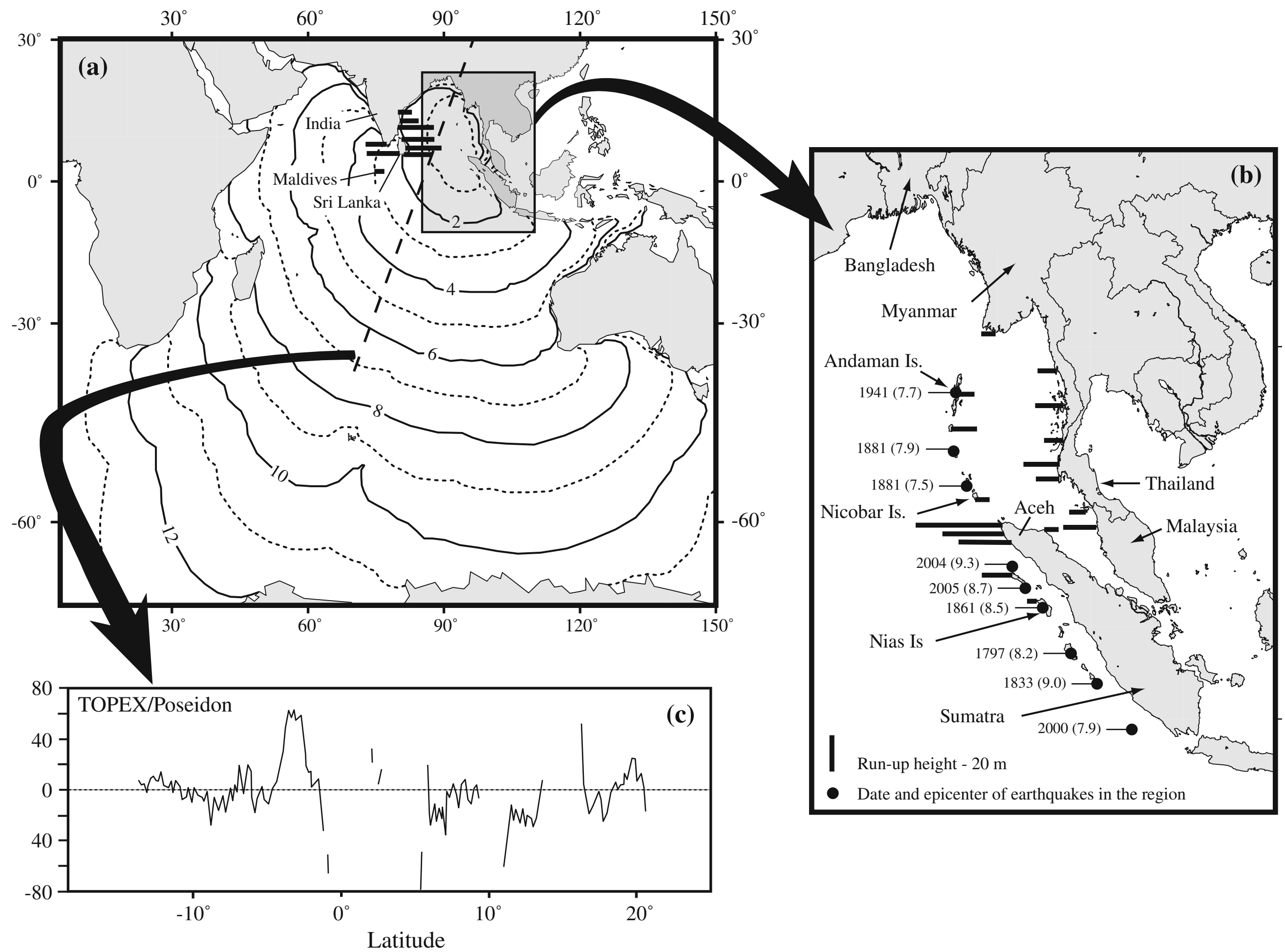


Fig. 6.11 Map of the Indian Ocean for the December 26, 2004 Sumatran earthquake. **a** Travel time of the tsunami across the ocean. Based on National Geophysical Data Center (2006a). **b** Location and magnitudes of epicenters of the 2004–2005 earthquakes and previous earthquakes in the region. Based on Subarya et al. (2006). **c** Height of the tsunami as measured by the TOPEX/Poseidon satellite 2 h after the earthquake. Based on National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (2006). Run-up heights in (**a**) and (**b**) based on Choi et al. (2006)

The height of the tsunami on local tide gauges is difficult to ascertain because many were destroyed (Choi, et al. 2006). No records exist in northern Sumatra. At Phuket, Thailand, a depth sounder located 1.6 km offshore from the coast recorded the passage of a 6 m high wave. However, closer to the coast, this wave did not appear to be more than 3.2 m high (Table 6.3). Along the east coast of India, the wave had a maximum inshore height—measured from the trough to the wave crest—of 3.2 m (Nagarajan et al. 2006). In Sri Lanka, the wave at Colombo on the sheltered west coast, measured only 2.2 m in amplitude. It was certainly higher than this on the exposed east coast, but no tide gauge recorded its passage. The tsunami became only one of three—Krakatau in 1883 and the Chilean Tsunami of 1960 described above were the other two—to propagate into other oceans. It was measured on almost every tide gauge globally (Titov et al. 2005). Surprisingly, mid-ocean ridges acted as waveguides beaming tsunami wave energy into other oceans and giving rise to some unexpected heights on distant shores on the other side of the globe. For example, the tsunami reached Rio de Janeiro, Brazil and Halifax, Canada where heights of 100 and 43 cm respectively were recorded (Table 6.3). The tsunami had to travel 24,000 km to reach Halifax. The energy was transmitted to these sites around Africa via the southwest Indian Mid-Ocean Ridge and then north into the Atlantic via the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Larger heights were measured at Callao, Peru 19,000 km away in the Pacific Ocean than on the Cocos Islands lying 1,700 km southwest of the epicenter in the Indian Ocean—68 cm versus 52 cm. The pathway to Callao again was via mid-ocean ridges. Energy was also trapped on continental shelves and transmitted parallel to coasts. Crescent City, California, on the west coast of the United States, more than 23,000 km from the source of the tsunami, registered a height of 61 cm.

Table 6.3 Significant tsunami heights for the December 26, 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami registering on world tide gauges

Ocean	Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max height (m)	Ocean	Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max Height (m)
Indian	Australia	Cocos Is.	−12.12	96.88	0.52	Pacific	Australia	Portland	−38.33	141.6	0.85
		Carnarvon	−24.88	113.67	1.25			Spring Bay	−42.55	147.93	0.60
		Geraldton	−28.76	114.59	2.05			Port Kembla	−34.48	150.92	0.50
		Bunbury	−33.35	115.66	1.90			Rosslyn Bay	−23.17	150.78	0.25
		Hillarys	−31.82	115.73	0.90		New Zealand	Jackson Bay	−43.98	168.62	0.65
		Esperance	−33.87	121.90	0.80			Timaru	−44.40	171.27	0.80
	Thailand	Rangong	9.58	98.38	1.38			Waitangi, Chatham Is.	−43.95	−176.57	0.50
		Ta Phao Noi	7.53	98.24	2.22		Russia	Severo-Kurilsk	50.67	156.17	0.26
		Kantang	7.40	99.51	3.20		United States	Kahului, Hawaii	20.57	−156.28	0.30
		Kuah	6.32	99.85	1.80			Kodiak, Alaska	57.40	−152.45	0.26
	India	Chennai	13.10	80.30	1.54			Crescent City, Calif	41.43	−124.13	0.61
		Kochi	9.96	76.26	1.34			Point San Luis, Calif.	35.15	−120.38	0.53
		Paradip	86.70	20.26	3.18			Santa Monica, Calif.	34.02	−118.3	0.38
		Tuticorin	78.15	8.80	1.38		Mexico	Manzanillo	19.05	−104.33	2.60
		Visakhapatnam	83.28	17.68	>2.58		Galapagas Islands	Baltra Is.	0.22	−90.42	0.36
	Sri Lanka	Colombo	6.93	79.85	2.19		Peru	Callao	12.05	−77.05	0.68
	Maldives	Hanimaadhoo	6.77	73.17	1.98		Chile	Arica	18.33	−70.18	0.72
		Male	4.17	73.50	1.51			Coquimbo	29.58	−71.27	0.36
		Gan	−0.70	73.17	0.89			Talcahuano	36.75	−73.02	0.43
	Diego Garcia Is.		−7.28	72.40	0.54						
	Oman	Salalah	17.00	54.07	2.55	Atlantic	France	Concarneau	47.58	−4.05	0.50
	Seychelles	Point La Rue	−4.68	55.53	2.86			Les Sables d'Olonne	47.15	−2.10	0.29
	Mauritius	Port Louis	−20.15	57.50	2.02		Canada	Halifax (NS)	44.73	−63.98	0.43
	Kenya	Lamu	−2.27	40.90	0.82		United States	Trident Pier	28.40	−80.60	0.34
	Tanzania	Zanzibar	−6.15	39.18	0.55		Purto Rico	Punta Guayanilla	17.97	−66.75	0.30
	South Africa	Richards Bay	−28.80	32.08	1.65			Magueyes Island	58.05	−67.05	0.75
		East London	−33.02	27.92	1.35		Brazil	Rio de Janeiro	−22.53	−43.17	1.00
		Port Elizabeth	−33.97	25.47	2.73		Falkland Is.	Port Stanley	−51.75	−57.93	0.45
		Mossel Bay	−34.18	22.13	2.60		South Africa	Simons Bay	−34.18	18.43	0.80

(continued)

Table 6.3 (continued)

Ocean	Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max height (m)	Ocean	Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max Height (m)
	Antarctica	Syowa Station	−69.00	39.57	1.00			Cape Town	−33.07	18.43	0.96
								Saldanha	−33.02	18.97	0.85
								Port Nolloth	−29.25	16.87	0.50
							South Orkney Is.	Signy	−60.72	−45.60	0.52
							Antarctica	East Ongul Island	−69.00	−39.57	0.75

Source West Coast & Alaska Tsunami Warning Center (2005), Gusiakov (2006), Nagarajan et al. (2006), and Stephenson et al. (2006)

The enormity of the tsunami generated the most intense research effort for such an event in history. Dozens of experts took to the field to document the evidence, measuring run-up at 965 sites throughout the northwest Indian Ocean where the tsunami was most destructive. The tsunami generated some of the greatest run-ups ever recorded (Table 6.4 and Fig. 6.11). At Banda Aceh, run-ups exceeding 20 m were measured at ten sites (Choi et al. 2006; National Geophysical Data Center 2006b). The greatest run-up reached 50.9 m at Labuhan. This height has only been exceeded four times previously—Indonesia in 1674 (80 m), Kamchatka in 1737 (63 m), and Japan in 1741 (90 m) and in 1771 (85.4 m). Run-up heights approaching 20 m were recorded in Thailand. On the flat coastal plains of Sri Lanka, and on the east coast of India, run-ups reaching 11.3 and 11.5 m respectively swept up to a kilometer inland. Here the second wave was the highest and backwash was a major factor in the disaster as it scoured out channels, and carried people and debris out to sea. Table 6.5 shows the greatest distance inland that the tsunami travelled (Choi et al. 2006; National Geophysical Data Center 2006b). This amounted to 5 km in Banda Aceh close to the fault line and up to 1.5 km in India 2,000 km away. In the Maldives, the height of the tsunami exceeded 4.0 m. This was high enough to overwash totally most islands, so that the distance of flooding inland became irrelevant. Flow velocities at Banda Aceh ranged between 5 and 8 m s^{-1}. The maximum velocity was estimated to be 16 m s^{-1}.

The wave also carried significant amounts of sand and mud inland from the shoreline plus thousands of small boulders consisting of coral and cemented beach rock (Nandasena et al. 2011). In Sumatra, coastal retreat amounting to tens of meters occurred with scouring of sediment to depths of 0.5–1.0 m being common. In Banda Aceh, a sand layer was laid down as a single massive unit that was 0.7 m thick (United States Geological Survey 2005a; Paris et al. 2007)—thicker than anything previously attributed to a tsunami (Fig. 6.12a). The sands often contained angular pebbles and soil rip-up clasts. While the deposits appeared layered, no one-to-one relationship between the number of layers and tsunami waves could be consistently identified. The layering appeared to be a function of variations in flow velocity as the wave moved inland. Backwash also played a role in modifying and redepositing sediment. In Sri Lanka, the sand layer was 0.37 m thick (Fig. 6.12b). Here, the sand deposits could be separated into distinct units representing the passage of more than one wave (United States Geological Survey 2005b). Grain size decreased upwards in each unit, a facet typical of tsunami deposits. On the west coast of Thailand and Malaysia where significant damaged also occurred, sand layers were so thin and discontinuous that there will probably be little permanent, sedimentological indication of

Table 6.4 Maximum run-up heights for the December 26, 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max height (m)
Indonesia	Labuhan	5° 72′	95° 14′	50.9
Thailand	Ban Thung Dap	9° 02′	98° 15′	20.0
Malaysia	Pasir Panjang	5° 18′	100° 19′	7.4
Myanmar	Sann Lan Village	13° 56′	98° 05′	2.9
Andaman-Nicobar Is	Passenger Jetty, Little Andaman	10° 35′	92° 34′	16.5
India	Devanampattinam	11° 44′	79° 47′	11.5
Sri Lanka	Patanangala Beach	6° 21	81° 30′	11.3
Maldives	Fanadhoo, Laamu	1° 50′	73° 30′	4.4
Madgascar	Faux Cap	−25° 34′	45° 32′	5.4

Source Choi et al. (2006), and National Geophysical Data Center (2006b)

Table 6.5 Maximum distance inland for the December 26, 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Distance (m)
Indonesia	Multiple	–	–	5000
Thailand	Ban Nam Kim	8° 52′	98° 17′	1673
Malaysia	Penang Island	5° 20′	100° 12′	3000
Myanmar	–	–	–	610
Andaman-Nicobar Is	Port Blair	11° 30′	92° 43′	500
India	Cuddalore	11° 46′	79° 47′	1500
Sri Lanka	Polhena	5° 10′	80° 32′	905
Maldives	Kulhudhuffushi	6° 37′	73° 04′	155

Source Choi et al. (2006), and National Geophysical Data Center (2006b)

the event. However, five locations have been found where three to five units of fining upward sand, ranging from 11 cm to 30 cm in thickness, were deposited (Hawkes et al. 2007). Again, there was no one-to-one relationship between the number of waves and the number of units. The coarse sand at the bottom of units was deposited under turbulent uprush or backwash deposition, while the fining upward sequences were deposited during periods of waning flow.

Paleo-tsunami studies identifying past tsunami events in the area show that the Indian Ocean has had many major tsunami events over the past 7,000 years similar in size and destruction to the December 26, 2004 Tsunami. Studies have been conducted in Sri Lanka (Jackson 2008), India (Klostermann et al. 2014), Thailand/Malaysia (Brill et al. 2011; Prendergast et al. 2012); West Aceh Province, Indonesia (Monecke et al. 2008), and the Maldives in the center of the Indian Ocean (Mörner and Dawson 2011; Klostermann et al. 2014). Tsunami layers have been dated using conventional radiocarbon and optical luminescence dating. The mean date for each tsunami layer found in these countries is plotted in Fig. 6.13. No event is evident across all five countries. This may reflect variations in the intensity of tsunami across the region, poor chronologies, or poor preservation potential of sand bodies in marshy, tropical settings. Given the error margin in the dates, regional communality exists for large tsunami at ~230, ~600, ~1200, ~4100 year, and ~6250 BP. The data are suggestive of a recent recurrence interval of 400–500 years. The number of paleo-tsunami layers found also indicates that the northeast Indian Ocean is a dangerous region for tsunami and that this risk has been underestimated.

The 2004 tsunami's impact in the region was horrific. For the first time, modern communications and the availability of video cameras in the hands of thousands of tourists brought the disaster into living rooms almost as it happened. Despite this instant communication, warnings were futile. The Pacific Tsunami Warning Center in Hawaii at first did not realise the magnitude of the event because automatic computer algorithms were tuned to shorter seismic wavelengths and yielded an initial M_w magnitude of 8.0. When it was realised that this was grossly underestimating the size of the event, there was no mechanism to warn countries in the Indian Ocean because none of the countries being affected belonged to the Pacific Warning Network. Such a warning may have been futile on Sumatra. Sumatra was simply too close to the epicenter, and the majority of the population too far from high land to flee to safety within the 20 to 30 min that it took the tsunami to reach the coast.

Table 6.6 shows the final death toll for thirteen countries where deaths occurred (United Nations 2006). Because the tsunami propagated outwards parallel to the fault rupture, very little of the wave traveled north or south through the Indian Ocean. Only two people died in Bangladesh. The wave also had little impact on the African coast. However, in Sumatra, Sri Lanka, and Thailand, it was a major disaster. The final death toll amounted to 229,866 people, the largest for any tsunami event and one of the greatest for any natural disaster. The biggest death toll occurred in Sumatra where at least 165,000 people died. This tally alone surpasses the death toll for any previous tsunami event. The tsunami arrived in Thailand at 10:00 AM and had a significant impact upon tourist resorts where tourists were just starting their day on the beaches. The death toll on these beaches was over 8,000 including Bhumi Jenson, the 21-year old

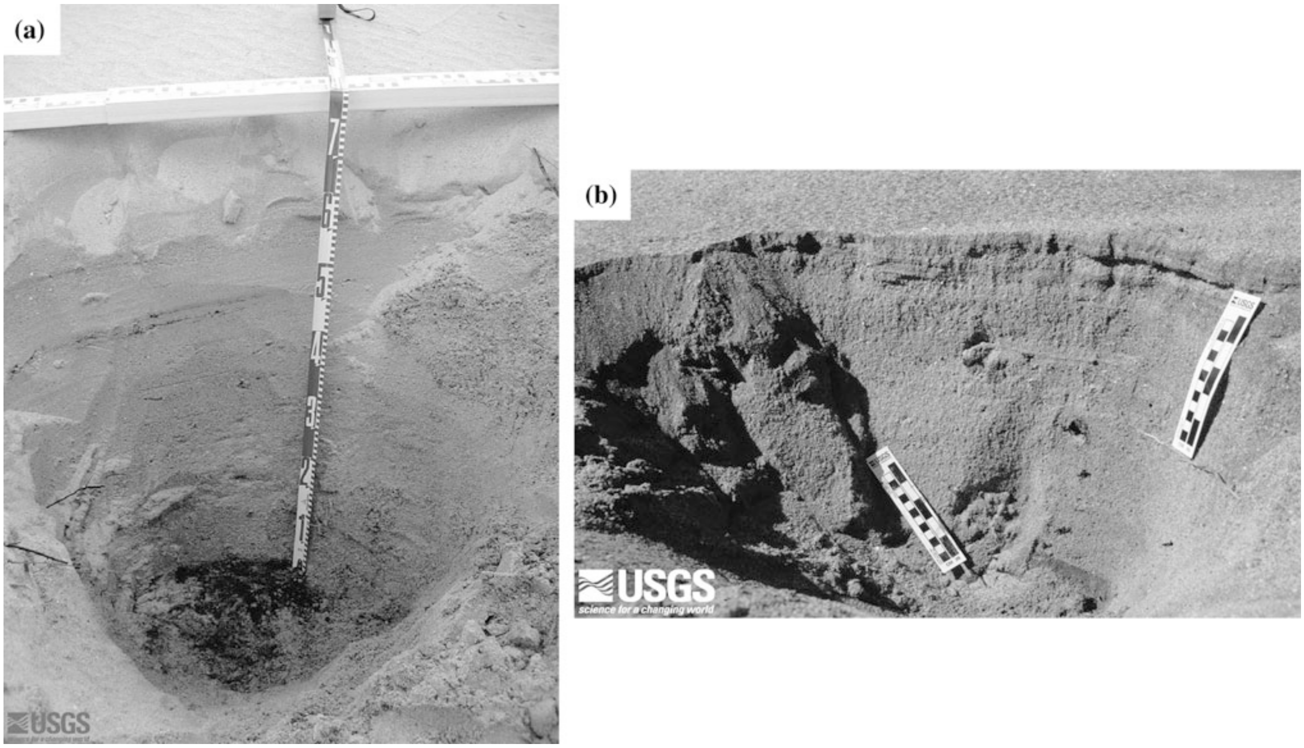


Fig. 6.12 Depth of sand layer deposited by the Indian Ocean Tsunami. **a** At Lampuuk on the coast directly west of Banda Aceh, northern Sumatra. The 0.7 m thickness of the layer is the greatest recorded for an earthquake-generate tsunami. *Source* U.S. Geological Survey. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/sumatra05/Lampuuk/0872.html. **b** At Katukurunda on the east coast of Sri Lanka with the greatest exposure to waves. The sand deposit is 37 cm thick. *Source* U.S. Geological Survey. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/srilanka05/Katu5_23.html

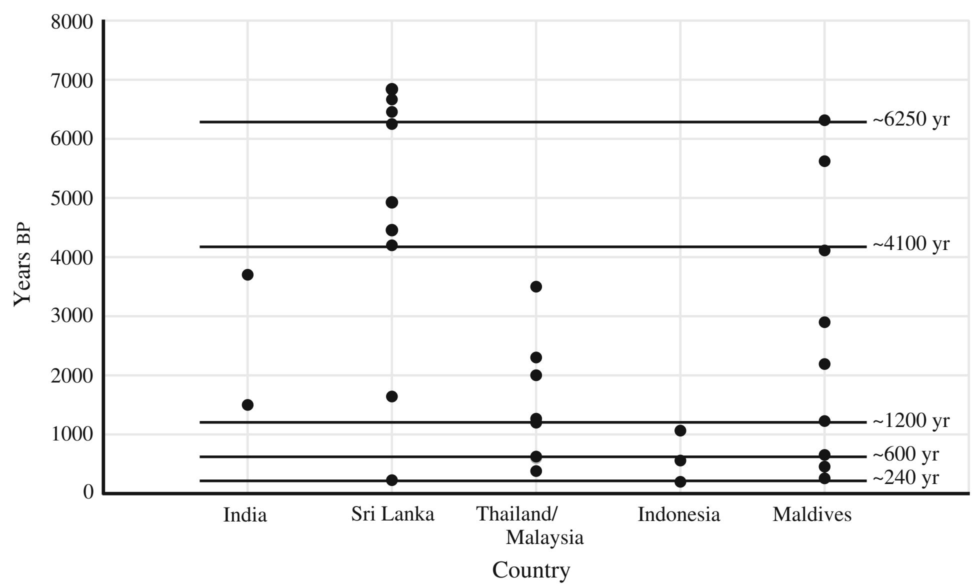


Fig. 6.13 Radiocarbon and optical luminescence dates obtained from tsunami deposits found around the northeast Indian Ocean. *Source* Jackson (2008), Mörner and Dawson (2011), and Klostermann et al. (2014)

grandson of the king, King Bhumibol Adulyadej. Thailand, as a result, became the first country in the Indian Ocean to establish afterwards its own tsunami warning system. Forensic identification had to be carried out on 3,750 bodies—the largest number outside wartime. Tourists enjoying a late breakfast captured the most dramatic images on video as the wave crashed into beachside dining rooms, through hotel lobbies, and finally over second floor balconies. Remarkably, a ten-year old schoolgirl, Tilly Smith, from the UK, remembered a geography lesson taught to her two

Table 6.6 Death tolls for the December 26, 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami

Country	Fatalities	Missing	Total
Indonesia	130,736	37,000	167,736
Sri Lanka	35,322	–	35,322
India	12,405	5,640	18,045
Maldives	82	26	108
Thailand	8,212	–	8,212
Myanmar	61	–	61
Malaysia	69	6	75
Somalia	78	211	289
Tanzania	13	–	13
Seychelles	2	–	2
Madagascar	2	–	2
Bangladesh	2	–	2
Kenya	1	–	1
Total	186,984	42,883	229,867

Source United Nations (2006)

weeks beforehand about tsunami and managed to convince her parents and others to flee from the beach because the sea was showing all the signs of such an impeding wave (Murata et al. 2010). In Sri Lanka and India, the wave arrived between 9 and 10 AM. In India, many Hindus were taking a holy dip in the ocean, while Christians had travelled to the seaside town of Vailankanni seeking a religious cure at a local shrine. Hundreds of pilgrims from both religions drowned. Whole villages lost all their children who had raced down to collect fish from the seabed in the drawdown that preceded the arrival of the first wave. Fishing communities were badly hit because fishermen and their families lived on the ocean. Fifteen thousand fishing boats were destroyed. In India, the death toll was 18,000, which is underestimated because India refused foreign assistance and in doing so virtually ignored the plight of its citizens on the Andaman Islands. In Sri Lanka, 35,000 were killed including nearly 2,000 passengers, who were drowned on the *Queen of the Sea*, which was washed from its tracks as it travelled near the coast on the morning the tsunami struck. This is the greatest death toll in any rail disaster. Overall, seventy percent of the deaths were women and children. More men knew how to swim and could climb trees, while women were more likely to be carrying children or trying to lead the elderly to safety. One and a half million people were made homeless in Sri Lanka alone.

Table 6.6 does not indicate the world impact of the tsunami. It became the greatest natural disaster for Sweden with 543 of that country's nationals killed while on holidays in the region, mainly in Thailand. Sweden proportionally lost 4 times as many citizens in the tsunami as the United States did in the World Trade Center attack on September 11, 2001. Death tolls for other nationals included 552 Germans, 179 Finns, 150 British, 106 Swiss, and 86 Austrians. Up to five times these numbers were holidaying in the region and affected by the event.

The economic destruction was just as great (Kawata et al. 2005). Unless a building was built of concrete—and few were—structures were bulldozed flat by the force of the initial wave (Fig. 6.14). Because the water had picked up so much debris and mud, its density had increased significantly. Such flows of dense slurry are best modeled as a debris flow, one of whose characteristics is the deposition *en masse* of sediment (Kain et al. 2012). Such transport makes it easier to transport boulders than through water flow alone as assumed in Eq. 3.3, and gives to tsunami deposits some of the characteristics of a *dump* deposit. Along the west coast of Sumatra, little sign of human habitation was left behind as the wave swept across a coastal plain several kilometers wide and smashed into the backing hills, leaving a tide mark 10 m or more above sea level as the most visual sign of recent inundation (Fig. 6.15). Migrant workers returning to their homes from southern cities told of walking through more than a 100 flattened villages without seeing a sign of life. The livelihoods, economic foundations and social fabric of a whole generation were destroyed: crops, homes, schools, police stations, and hospitals together with farmers, extended families, teachers, police, nurses and doctors. The destruction and death toll in Aceh were staggering: 1 million homes, 35,000 hectares of agricultural land, 240 markets, 300 primary schools, 27 police stations, 450 km of roads, 1,057 teachers together with 30,000 schoolchildren, 517 soldiers, and 1,404 police officers with 8,000 members of their families. Over 700 surviving police were so traumatized by the disaster that they did not report to work. Survivors refused to visit the sites of the devastation after dark because they could hear ghosts calling for help. Aceh was left without any established civilian government capable of handling the crisis. Estimates of the socio-economic impact ranged from \$15 billion to \$80 billion. On December 25, 2006, anyone in Sri Lanka or Thailand who said that their country could be devastated by tsunami would have been treated as a pariah. On December 27th they were champions.

6.6 Japanese Tōhoku Tsunami March 11, 2011

At 2:46:23 PM Japanese Standard Time (5:46:23 UTC), on March 11, 2011, one of the largest tsunamigenic earthquakes recorded with a M_w magnitude of 9.0 struck the Sanriku coastline of Japan with an epicenter 70 km east of the Oshika Peninsula at a depth of approximately 30 km (Fig. 6.16b) (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011; Kanamori 2011). Both the United States Geological Survey and the

Fig. 6.14 Total destruction of the urban landscape at Banda Aceh. Only houses and mosques made out of concrete were left standing. *Source* Guy Gelfenbaum, U.S. Geological Survey. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/sumatra05/Banda_Aceh/0730.html

Fig. 6.15 Site of Seaside Resort Hotel north of Leupueng on the west coast of northern Sumatra. Here the flow depth exceeded 10 m, scouring the soil from hillsides and depositing a mixture of sand, clay and boulders across the flatter plain. Compare this to the similar landscape produced by Flores, Indonesia Tsunami of December 12, 1992 shown in Fig. 3.6. *Source* Guy Gelfenbaum, U.S. Geological Survey. http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/sumatra05/Seaside.html

Japanese Meteorological Agency responsible for triggering Pacific Tsunami alerts underestimated the size of the event, initially assessing it as a 7.9 magnitude event—about 36 times less energy than actually occurred. As shown throughout the preceding chapters, this coastline of Japan has a well-documented history of tsunamigenic earthquakes. The largest historical events were the 1896 Meiji and 1933 Showa Tsunami. Geological evidence suggests that there have been large ones every 800–1100 years (Minoura et al. 2001).

The triggering earthquake—known as the Great East Japan Earthquake—ruptured an area roughly 300–500 km long and 200 km wide on the boundary between the subducting Pacific Plate and an overlying extension of the North American Plate 200 km offshore of the Tōhoku coast (Fig. 6.16b). The Pacific Plate is moving westward at a rate of 8–9 cm per year and effectively drags the overlying plate downwards until the accumulated stress causes a seismic slip-rupture event. The Tōhoku sequence began on March 9 with a magnitude 7.3 M_w earthquake that produced a 0.5 m tsunami in Ofunato (The Asahi Shimbun 2011). The March 11 rupture lasted 6 min starting with a slow rupture over a large area of the subducting plate that accelerated upslip, eventually leading to over 7 m of vertical motion of the seabed (Kanamori 2011; Ozawa et al. 2011; Pollitz et al. 2011). The end process generated most of the tsunami. The Japanese sea floor and coast west of the slip subsided by up to 1.2 m over a distance of 400 km. Over 1800 aftershocks occurred, with 80 registering a M_w magnitude over 6.0 and three a M_w magnitude over 7.0 (The Asahi Shimbun 2011). The Japanese Meteorological Agency, which is responsible

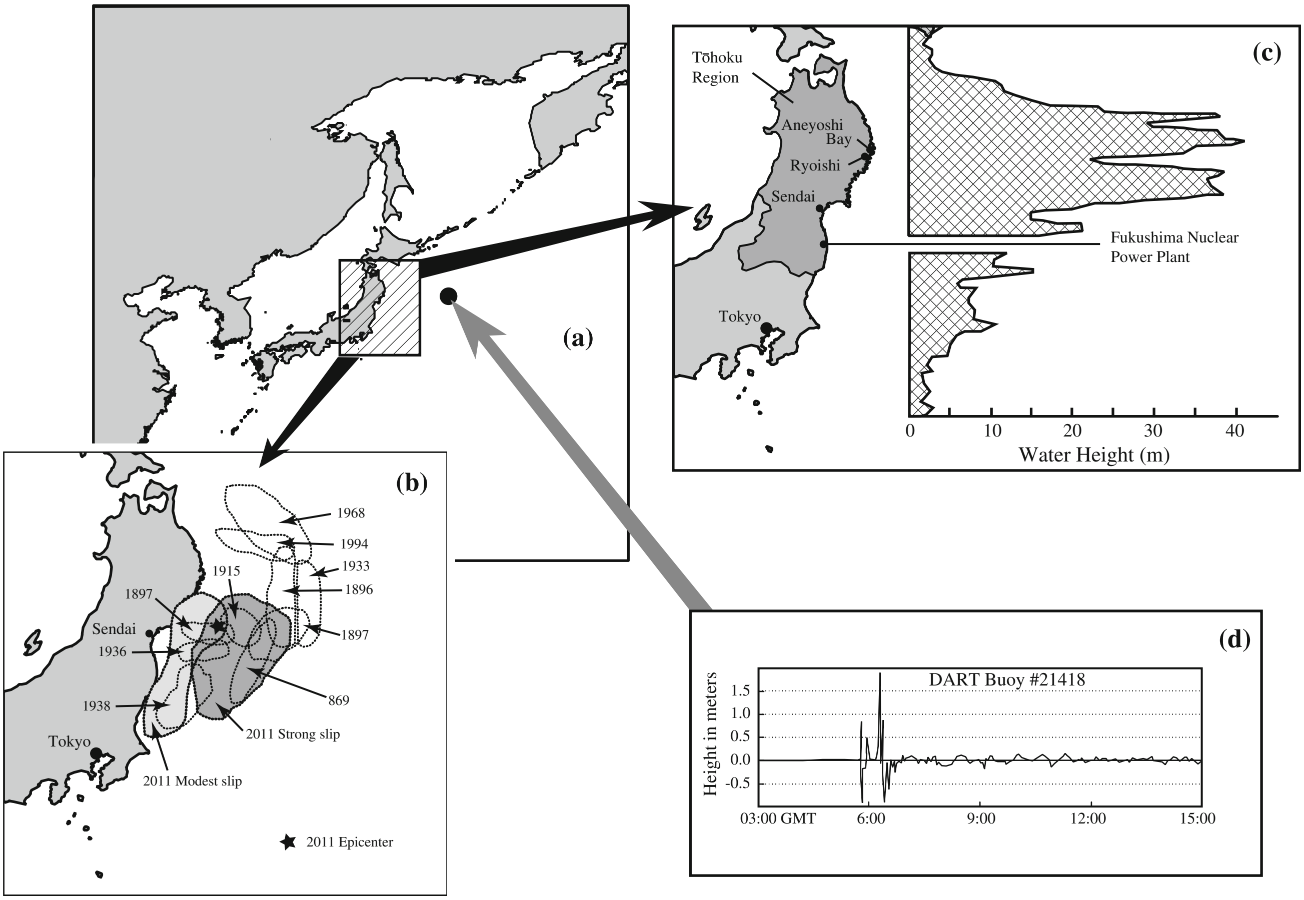


Fig. 6.16 Map of the Japanese Tōhoku Tsunami, March 11, 2011. **a** Location map. **b** Epicenter and slip zones of the March 11, 2011 earthquake together with those for historic events. Based on Kanamori (2011). **c** Run-up heights along the Japanese coast. Based on Earthquake Engineering Research Institute (2011), National Geophysical Data Center (2013). **d** Height of the tsunami as measured at DART Buoy #21418. Based on National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (2013)

Fig. 6.17 The first wave of the Tōhoku Tsunami March 11, 2011 swamping the coastal plain in front of Sendai Airport, Iwanuma, Miyagi Prefecture, northeastern Japan. © REUTERS/Picture Media\11-3-11\KYODO\SIN35\

for tsunami warnings, issued a series of bulletins beginning 4 min after the main earthquake (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). However, the initial warning assumed an earthquake with a magnitude of 7.9 and the Agency forecast 3–6 m high tsunami along the adjacent coast. This information was disseminated to emergency officials and to the public via television, radio, and cell phones. For the next 4 h, succeeding bulletins expanded the warning areas, and increased the expected water height; however, by then the damage was done. The arrival time of the tsunami was highly dependent upon local bathymetry and topography. The first tsunami wave arrived 29 min afterwards in the Chiba Prefecture and 55 min at Sendai Airport (Fig. 6.17). Generators at the Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Plant stopped at 3:41 PM, 55 min after the earthquake. In northern Miyagi and southern Iwate Prefectures the tsunami arrived at the coast 25–30 min after the earthquake. Run-up heights were extraordinary; depths of flow inconceivable (Fig. 6.16c, Table 6.7) (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). Over 5,400 water level measurements have been collected along 2,000 km of the Japanese coastline (Tōhoku Earthquake Tsunami Joint Survey Group 2011; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). The highest run-up of 38.9 m was measured at Aneyoshi Bay south of Miyako City in Iwate Prefecture, although a higher value has been reported. Flow depths exceeded 20 m in most populated coastal areas in Iwate and northern Miyagi Prefectures. On the coastal plain south of Sendai, peak water heights averaged 8–10 m. The highest run-ups were measured north of the epicenter because of a narrower continental shelf and steeper onshore topography. However landward extent of inundation was greatest where topography was flatter, especially on the Sendai Plain where the tsunami travelled 4.0–4.8 km inland (Abe et al. 2012; Chagué-Goff et al. 2012). This agrees well with a penetration limit of 4.2 km predicted by Eq. 2.14 for an initial 8 m tsunami traversing a flat, farmed surface. Flow velocities modeled from sediment characteristics ranged from 2.2 to 9.0 m s^{-1}, but were strongly dependent on the choice of Manning's *n* defining surface roughness. Highest velocities occurred in a 300-m wide zone landward of forested coastal dunes (Jaffe et al. 2012). The tsunami also entrained significant amounts of mud and debris to the extent that it behaved as a debris flow (Kain et al. 2012).

The tsunami also propagated into the Pacific Ocean. Travel times are shown in Fig. 2.7. Its height as it spread eastwards into the North Pacific Ocean is well documented because of the number of DART buoys placed there following the 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami. On the three buoys operated by the Japanese Meteorological Agency closest to the epicenter, the wave height exceeded 6 m in 5,195 m depth of water (National Geophysical Data Center 2013). The wave had a height of 1.86 m, 550 km away in 5,500 m depth of water (Fig. 6.16d). North of Hawaii, 6,180 km away, this height was 0.31 m; and by the time the wave reached Washington State in the United States, it only had a height of 0.18 m in 3,500 m depth of water. The wave thus had minimal impact on distant shores (Fig. 2.7). It was not a significant *teleseismic* tsunami event. The distribution of run-up heights on tide gauges around the Pacific Ocean supports this fact (Table 6.8). Heights, above 2.0 m were due to bathymetric focusing discussed already in Chap. 2. The greatest height of the tsunami at shore, outside of Japan, was 2.5 m at Klamath River, California and Severo, Kurilskiye, Russia. Sites further than Hawaii had more than 8 h warning because the earthquake was detected by the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center soon after it occurred. This did not prevented one death in California and minor damage to marinas and coastal structures (Earthquake Engineering

Table 6.7 Tsunami run-up heights along the Japanese coast for the Tōhoku Tsunami, March 11, 2011

Location	Height (m)
Hachinohe	2.7
Hirono	5.5
Kuji	18.6
Noda	17.0
Fudai	28.0
Iwaizumi	6.8
Miyako	37.9
Yamada	10.0
Otsuchi	19.0
Kamaishi	9.0
Ofunato	23.6
Rikuzentakata	19.0
Kesennuma	22.2
Minamisanriku	15.5
Ishinomaki	16.0
Higashiatsusmima	10.4
Matsushima	2.4
Shiogama	4.0
Shichigaharna	10.0
Tagaiyo	7.0
Sendai	9.9
Natori	12.0
Iwanuma	7.6
Watari	8.0
Yamamoto	5.0
Shinchi	7.9
Soma	8.0
Minamisoma	4.5

Source Earthquake Engineering Research Institute (2011)

Table 6.8 Significant tsunami heights for the Japanese Tōhoku Tsunami, March 11, 2011, registering on Pacific Ocean tide gauges

Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max height (m)	Country	Location	Latitude	Longitude	Max height (m)
United States	Adak, Ak	51.86	−176.63	1.10	Fiji	Lautoka	−17.60	177.43	0.29
	Nikolski, AK	52.94	−168.87	0.84	Tonga	Nuku'alofa	−21.13	−175.17	1.24
	Shemya Island, AK	52.73	174.10	1.57	Cook Islands	Rarotonga	−21.20	−159.78	0.29
Canada	Patracia Bay, BC	48.40	−123.40	0.79	Kirabati	Christmas Island	1.98	−157.47	0.53
	Winter Harbour, BC	50.51	−128.03	0.77	French Polynesia	Hiva Oa, Marquesas Islands	−9.81	−139.04	1.39
United States	Arena Cove, CA	38.91	−123.71	1.74		Nuku Hiva, Marquesas Islands	−8.92	−140.10	1.56
	Crescent City, CA	41.76	−124.18	2.47	Vanuatu	Port Vila	−17.75	168.30	0.80
	Klamath River, CA	41.55	−124.08	2.50	Nauru	Nauru	−0.53	166.90	0.27
	Moss Landing Harbor, CA	36.80	−121.78	2.00	Solomon Islands	Honiara	−9.43	159.96	0.21
	Smith River, CA	41.94	−124.20	2.00	Admiralty Islands	Lombrum	−2.04	147.40	1.08
	Kahului, Maui, HI	20.90	−156.47	2.00	Marshall Islands	Majuro	7.10	171.37	0.51
	Port Orford, OR	42.74	−124.50	2.02	Caroline Islands	Yap	9.52	138.13	0.20
	La Push, WA	47.91	−124.64	0.71	New Zealand	Owenga, Chatham Island	−44.02	−176.55	0.91
	Midway Islands	28.22	−177.36	1.57		Timaru	−44.39	171.25	0.78
	Saipan, N. Mariana Islands	15.23	145.73	1.20		Whitianga	−36.83	175.71	0.78
Mexico	Manzanillo	19.10	−104.30	1.70	Antarctica	Scott Base	−77.85	166.77	0.05
	Acapulco	16.83	−99.92	1.07	Australia	Port Kembla, NSW	−34.48	150.92	0.36
El Savador	Acajutla	13.57	−89.84	0.48		Spring Bay, Tasmania	−42.55	147.93	0.47
Ecuador	La Libertad	−2.23	−80.90	1.61	Indonesia	Holtekamp II	−2.63	140.78	2.20
	Galapagos Islands	−0.75	−90.31	2.26		Kampung Enggros I	−2.60	140.71	1.29
Peru	Pisco	−13.71	−76.22	1.50	Philippines	Virac Catanduanes	13.58	124.23	0.70
	Callao-La Punta	−12.05	−77.15	1.44	China	Shenjiamen	29.95	122.28	0.55
Chile	Corral	−39.87	−73.43	1.59	Russia	Burevestnik, Kurilskiye	44.93	147.63	2.00
	Constitucion	−35.36	−72.46	1.93		Malokuril'skaya Bay	43.87	146.82	2.29
	Arica	−18.47	−70.33	2.45		Severo, Kurilskiye	50.67	156.17	2.50
	Coquimbo	−29.93	−71.35	2.42					
	Easter Island	−27.15	−109.45	0.73					

Source NOAA http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/nndc/struts/results?EQ_0=5413&t=101650&s=9&d=92,183&nd=display

Research Institute 2011). The latter was exacerbated by the arrival of the tsunami at high tide at many places. The tsunami broke 125 km^2 of ice off the Sulzberger Ice Shelf in Antarctica, 13,000 km away (Brunt et al. 2011).

International Tsunami Survey teams entered the affected areas soon afterwards to measure the heights of run-up, flow water depths, flow directions, topographic influence on flow, and the extent and thickness of sediment deposits (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011; Goto et al. 2012). The purpose of these field investigations was to examine how tsunami characteristics varied with tsunami speed and flow depth, and distance from the coast; and how the tsunami interacted with topography and the built environment. Crucially scientists wanted to know if there was evidence of previous large events. On the rocky Sanriku coast, the Tōhoku Tsunami moved a considerable number of boulders weighing between 11 and 167 t up to 600 m inland (Nandasena et al. 2013). In all cases, boulders were transported by rolling. Maximum flow velocities exceeded 4.2–5.0 m s^{-1} and may have been as high as 21.7 m s^{-1}. Worrisome, an older boulder weighing 285 t was found in Settai that was probably transported by the Keicho Sanriku Tsunami in 1611. It had not been moved by the modern event and would have required even higher velocities to be transported. The Tōhoku Tsunami also deposited sand 2.8 km inland on the Sendai plain (Richmond et al. 2012; Wilson 2011); however, the tsunami had travelled 2.6 km further inland than this (Goto et al. 2012). Paleo-tsunami deposits had been found for the July 13, 869 Jogan Tsunami, generated by a smaller, modeled, tsunamigenic earthquake with a M_w moment magnitude of 8.3–8.4 (Abe et al. 1990; Minoura et al. 2001; Satake et al. 2008). This latter fact lead to the false assumption that the area could not be affected by great earthquakes and tsunami. Elsewhere, an older palaeotsunami deposit had been found dating at 3000 years BP (Minoura et al. 2001; Sawai et al. 2008). From the paleo-studies it was known before the Tōhoku Tsunami that the Sendai plain and, by association, the Sanriku coast was affected by great tsunami every 800–1100 years (Minoura et al. 2001). The surveys after the Tōhoku Tsunami confirmed the paleo-evidence (Wilson 2011; Okamura 2013). This research has led to two worrisome conclusions. First, many other devastating events are known that appear to have left no prominent sedimentological signature in the form of buried sand layers. The 1896 Meiji and 1933 Showa Tsunami are examples of this. Second, and crucially, the Tōhoku Tsunami flowed much further inland without leaving any widespread, sedimentological signature (Okamura 2013). This has implications for studies of pre-historic events based upon the mapping of buried sand layers described in Chap. 2. These paleo-events most likely affected a larger area than that inferred from the distributions of anomalous sand deposits.

In Japan, the death toll and economic loss were extraordinary. Over 23,295 people are estimated to have lost their lives. This figure is difficult to finalise because of the number of people who went missing—6,145 persons—and the fact that some deaths were caused by the actual earthquake. The economic loss has been estimated at $300 billion, making it the most costly disaster of all time (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). Damage consisted of 126,602 buildings totally collapsed, with a further 272,426 buildings 'half collapsed', and another 743,089 buildings partially damaged; 116 bridges destroyed; and 29 railways damaged (National Police Agency of Japan 2013). Many towns were obliterated (Fig. 6.18). The affected coastline contained 15 major ports and 319 minor fishing ones. Four of the former were destroyed and all suffered damage (Reuters 2011). The most significant facility damaged was the Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant complex (Fig. 6.16c). The reactors automatically switched off following the earthquake and emergency generators maintained the cooling system (Povinec et al. 2013). However 55 min after the earthquake a 15 m high tsunami swamped 12 of the 13 generators located in the basement of the turbine building. The wave height was twice that designed for the complex. Without cooling, meltdown began in three of the reactors and hydrogen gas was produced by the exothermic reaction of the fuel's zirconium cladding with steam and water at high temperatures. The containment vessels subsequently exploded over the next two days spreading radionuclides across the site and releasing them into the atmosphere. This created one of the most significant nuclear accidents in history. Over 4,500 fuel rods were left with insufficient cooling. Readings of 400 mSv hr^{-1} were recorded at the reactors, enough to give a human a lethal dose within minutes (The Asahi Shimbun 2011). A total of 146,520 residents within a 20 km radius of the complex were evacuated. Many may never be able to go home again. However, radiation spread beyond this exclusion zone, mainly to the northwest where readings of cumulative ambient dose, integrated until the end of March 2011, reached over 10 mSv more than 40 km from the reactors. Agricultural produce outside the containment zone was polluted by radiation. Lettuce 60 km from the plant in Fukushima Prefecture contained 164 times the permissible level of cesium. A month after the tsunami, the severity rating of the nuclear disaster was raised to level 7, the same rating as the Chernobyl disaster of 1986.

The effects of this disaster continue to date. Firstly, the broken Fukushima Nuclear Plant has not been contained. Approximately 380,000 tonnes of irradiated water used to cool the exposed fuel rods has been stored in 1,000 tanks on site (Varma 2013). About 300 of these tanks were never intended to hold radioactive liquid waste and have faulty seals. Over 300 tonnes of contaminated water has leaked

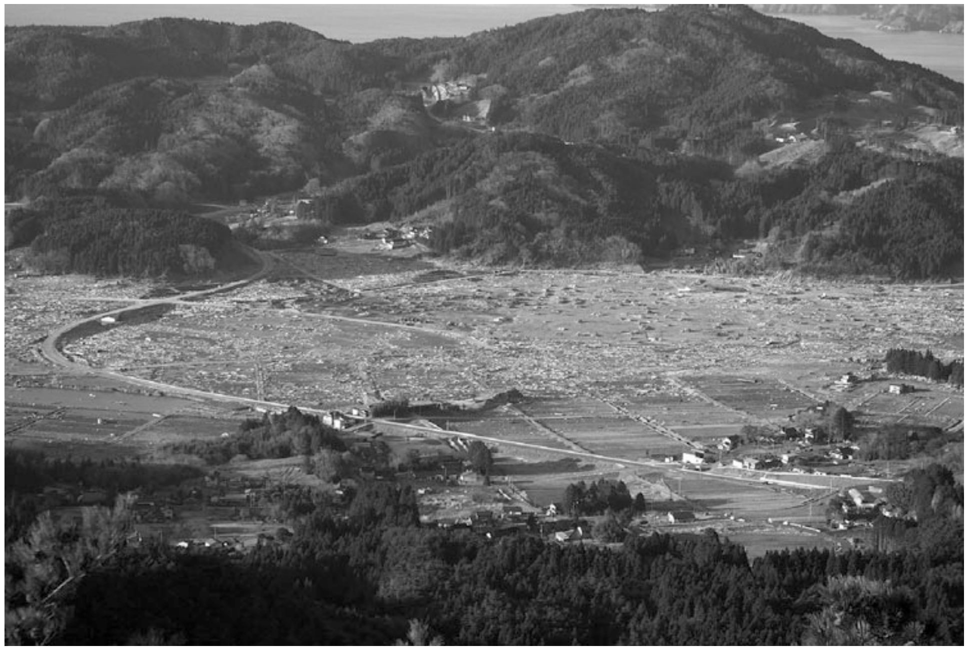


Fig. 6.18 View of total destruction in Rikuzentakata, Iwate, Japan three weeks after the Tōhoku Tsunami March 11, 2011. The city of 16,640 was swept within 20 min by a wall of water 9–15 m deep. Here 1,939 or 11.7 % of the population lost their lives (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). This is the greatest proportion of population of any town or city struck by the event. Photograph courtesy of Mitsukuni Sato of Iwate, Japan. *Source* http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Distant_view_of_Rikuzentakata.jpg

from one of these tanks due to corrosion or human error. This water has entered the water table at the site. Hundreds of tonnes of this water may be flowing into the Pacific Ocean daily. No solution presently exists to deal with the problem of contaminated water. Secondly, prohibitive levels of radiation persist over a wide area around the plant despite attempts to remove contaminated soil (Knight and Slodkowski 2013). Fallout did not disperse evenly around the plant. Instead it spread in plumes that resulted in an erratic distribution of radioactivity. About 83,000 people evacuated from around the plant still can't go home. While cleanup attempts continue, the reality is that areas contaminated by nuclear fallout may not be safe for habitation for decades. Part of the problem is that as fast as contaminated soil is removed, rain washes in more contaminants from adjacent hill slopes. Spot levels of high radiation, mainly from cesium, also exist outside prohibited areas. Finally, the backwash from the tsunami polluted the North Pacific Ocean with enormous amounts of flotsam that goes far beyond curiosities such as a child's soccer ball washing up on the shore of Alaska. Initially about 5 million tonnes of debris were swept into the ocean with most of it sinking to the bottom. However, about 1.5 million tonnes floated into the North Pacific Gyre (Amos 2012). Rubbish includes plastic, building remains, fishing nets, cars, shipping containers, the odd ship or house, and four floating docks. One of the latter measures 20 × 6 × 2 m and weighs 188 tonne (Ghaderi and Henderson 2013). The larger pieces pose a risk to shipping and can transport invasive marine species. Much of the debris will come ashore along the northwest coast of America; however, the plastics will tend to break down into micro-particles and be digested by marine life. What doesn't wash ashore will eventually be trapped within the stagnant, slow moving vortex called the Great Pacific Garbage Patch between Hawaii and California, adding to the increased pollution of the North Pacific Ocean. Earthquake-induced tsunami and their consequences are still an underrated hazard.

References

H. Abe, Y. Sugeno, A. Chigama, Estimation of the height of the Sanriku Jogan 11 earthquake-tsunami (A.D. 869) in the Sendai Plain. Zisin [Earthquakes] **43**, 513–525 (1990)

T. Abe, K. Goto, D. Sugawara, Relationship between the maximum extent of tsunami sand and the inundation limit of the 2011 Tohoku-oki tsunami on the Sendai Plain. Jpn. Sediment. Geol. **282**, 142–150 (2012)

C.J. Ammon, C. Ji, H.-K. Thio, D. Robinson, S. Ni, V. Hjorleifsdottir, H. Kanamori, T. Lay, S. Das, D. Helmberger, G. Ichinose, J. Polet, D. Wald, Rupture process of the 2004 Sumatra-Andaman earthquake. Science **308**, 1133–1139 (2005)

J. Amos, Path of tsunami debris mapped out (2012), http://www.bbc.co.uk/news/science-environment-17122155

C. Andrade, Tsunami generated forms in the Algarve barrier Islands (South Portugal). Sci. Tsunami Hazards **10**, 21–33 (1992)

M.A. Baptista, P.M.A. Miranda, J.M. Miranda, L. Mendes Victor, Rupture extent of the 1755 Lisbon earthquake inferred from numerical modeling of tsunami data. Phys. Chem. Earth **21**, 65–70 (1996)

R. Bilham, A flying start, then a slow slip. Science **308**, 1126–1127 (2005) (with corrections 30 Sept)

P.-L. Blanc, The Atlantic Tsunami on 1st Nov, 1755: World Range and Amplitude According to Primary Documentary Sources, in *The Tsunami Threat: Research and Technology*, ed. by N.-A. Mörner (InTech Publishing, Rijeka, Croatia, 2011), pp. 423–426

D. Brill, H. Brückner, K. Jankaew, D. Kelletat, A. Scheffers, S. Scheffers, Potential predecessors of the 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami—Sedimentary evidence of extreme wave events at Ban Bang Sak, SW Thailand. *Sedimentary Geology* (2011), doi:10.1016/j.sedgeo.2011.06.008

K.M. Brunt, E.A. Okal, D.R. MacAyeal, Antarctic ice-shelf calving triggered by the Honshu (Japan) earthquake and tsunami, March 2011. J. Glaciol. **57**, 785–788 (2011)

C. Chagué-Goff, A. Andrew, W. Szczuciński, J. Goff, Y. Nishimura, Geochemical signatures up to the maximum inundation of the 2011 Tohoku-oki tsunami—Implications for the 869 AD Jogan and other palaeotsunamis. Sed. Geol. **282**, 65–77 (2012)

B.H. Choi, S.J. Hong, E. Pelinovsky, Distribution of runup heights of the December 26, 2004 tsunami in the Indian Ocean. Geophys. Res. Lett. **33**, L13601 (2006). doi:10.1029/2006GL025867

Committee of the Field Investigation of the 1960 Chilean Tsunami, Report on the Chilean Tsunami of May 24, 1960 as observed along the Coast of Japan. Maruzen, Tokyo (1961)

A.G. Dawson, R. Hindson, C. Andrade, C. Freitas, R. Parish, M. Bateman, Tsunami sedimentation associated with the Lisbon earthquake of 1 Nov AD 1755: Boca do Rio, Algarve, Portugal. Holocene **5**, 209–215 (1995)

Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011. Learning from Earthquakes: The Japan Tohoku Tsunami of 11 March, 2011. EERI Special Earthquake Report, Oakland, November

H.M. Fritz, C.M. Petroff, P.A. Catalan, R. Cienfuegos, P. Winckler, N. Kalligeris, R. Weiss, S.E. Barrientos, G. Meneses, C. Valderas-Bermejo, C. Ebeling, A. Papadopoulos, M. Contreras, R. Almar, J.C. Dominguez, C.E. Synolakis, Field survey of the 27 February 2010 Chile tsunami, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by K. Satake, A. Rabinovich, U. Kanoglu, S. Tinti, The World Ocean: Past, Present, and Future, vol 2. Pure Applied Geophysics 168, (1989–2010)

I.D.L. Foster, A.J. Albon, K.M. Bardell, J.L. Fletcher, T.C. Jardine, R.J. Mothers, M.A. Pritchard, S.E. Turner, High energy coastal sedimentary deposits: An evaluation of depositional processes in southwest England. Earth Surf. Proc. Land. **16**, 341–356 (1991)

Z. Ghaderi, J.C. Henderson, Japanese tsunami debris and the threat to sustainable tourism in the Hawaiian Islands. Tour. Manage. Perspect. **8**, 98–105 (2013)

K. Goto, K. Fujima, D. Sugawara, S. Fujino, K. Imai, R. Tsudaka, T. Abe, T. Haraguchi, Field measurements and numerical modeling for the run-up heights and inundation distances of the 2011 Tohoku-oki tsunami at Sendai Plain, Japan. Earth Planet. Space **64**, 1247–1257 (2012)

V.K. Gusiakov, Measured run-up data for the 26 Dec 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami (2006), http://tsun.sscc.ru/tsulab/20041226wave_h.htm

W.R. Hansen, Effects of the earthquake of March 27, 1964 at Anchorage, Alaska. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper No. 542-A (1965)

A.D. Hawkes, M. Bird, S. Cowie, C. Grundy-Warr, B.P. Horton, A.T.S. Hwai, L. Law, C. Macgregor, J. Nott, J.E. Ong, J. Rigg, R. Robinson, M. Tan-Mullins, T.T. Sa, Z. Yasin, L.W. Aik, Sediments deposited by the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami along the Malaysia-Thailand peninsula. Mar. Geol. (2007). doi:10.1016/j.margeo.2007.02.017

P.H. Heinrich, S. Guibourg, R. Roche, Numerical modeling of the 1960 Chilean tsunami: impact on French Polynesia. Phys. Chem. Earth **21**, 19–25 (1996)

R.A. Hindson, C. Andrade, A.G. Dawson, Sedimentary processes associated with the tsunami generated by the 1755 Lisbon earthquake on the Algarve Coast, Portugal. Phys. Chem. Earth **21**, 57–63 (1996)

K.L. Jackson, Paleotsunami History Recorded in Holocene Coastal Lagoon Sediments, Southeastern Sri Lanka. Ph.D. University of Miami, Open Access Theses (2008), http://works.bepress.com/kelly_jackson/1/

B.E. Jaffe, K. Goto, D. Sugawara, B.M. Richmond, S. Fujino, Y. Nishimura, Flow speed estimated by inverse modeling of sandy tsunami deposits: Results from the 11 March 2011 tsunami on the coastal plain near the Sendai Airport, Honshu, Japan. Sed. Geol. **282**, 90–109 (2012)

J.M. Johnson, Heterogeneous coupling along Alaska-Aleutians as inferred from tsunami, seismic, and geodetic inversions. Adv. Geophys. **39**, 1–106 (1999)

R. Kachadoorian, Effects of the March 27, 1964 earthquake on Whittier, Alaska. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper No. 542-B, pp. B1–B21 (1965)

C.L. Kain, C. Gomez, A.E. Moghaddam, Comment on 'Reassessment of hydrodynamic equations: Minimum flow velocity to initiate boulder transport by high energy events (storms, tsunamis), ed. by Nandasena, R. Paris, N. Tanaka [Mar. Geol. **281**, 70–84]. Mar. Geol. **319–322**, 75–76 (2012)

H. Kanamori, The 2011 Tohoku-oki earthquake-overview. Seismol. Res. Lett. **82**, 452–453 (2011)

Y. Kawata, Y. Tsuji, Y. Sugimoto, H. Hayashi, H. Matsutomi, Y. Okamura, I. Hayashi, H. Kayane, Y. Tanioka, K. Fujima, F., Imamura, M. Matsuyama, T. Takahashi, M. Maki, S. Koshimura, T. Yasuda, Y. Shigihara, Y. Nishimura, K. Horie, Y. Nishi, H. Yamamoto, J. Fukao, S. Seiko, F. Takakuwa, Comprehensive analysis of the damage and its impact on coastal zones by the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami disaster (2005), http://www.tsunami.civil.tohoku.ac.jp/sumatra2004/report.html

L. Klostermann, E. Gischler, D. Storz, J.H. Hudson, Sedimentary record of late Holocene event beds in a mid-ocean atoll lagoon, Maldives, Indian Ocean: potential for deposition by tsunamis. Mar. Geol. **348**, 37–43 (2014)

S. Knight, A. Slodkowski, For many Fukushima evacuees, the truth is they won't be going home. Reuters 11 Nov (2013), http://www.reuters.com/article/2013/11/11/us-japan-fukushima-idUSBRE9AA03Z2013111

J.F. Lander, P.A. Lockridge, *United States Tsunamis (Including United States Possessions) 1690–1988* (National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, 1989)

T. Lay, H. Kanamori, C.J. Ammon, M. Nettles, S.N. Ward, R.C. Aster, S.L. Beck, S.L. Bilek, M.R. Brudzinski, R. Butler,H. R. DeShon, G. Ekström, K. Satake, S. Stuart Sipkin, The Great Sumatra-Andaman Earthquake of 26 December 2004. Science **308**, 1127–1133 (2005)

P.A. Lockridge, (1985) Tsunamis in Peru–Chile. World Data Center A for Solid Earth Geophysics, National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, Rpt. SE-39

S. Lorito, F. Romano, S. Atzori, X. Tong, A. Avallone, J. McCloskey, M. Cocco, E. Boschi, A. Piatanesi, Limited overlap between the seismic gap and coseismic slip of the Great 2010 Chile Earthquake. Nat. Geosci. (2011). doi:10.1038/ngeo1073

D.S. McCulloch, Slide-induced waves, seiching, and ground fracturing caused by the earthquake of March 27, 1964, at Kenai Lake, Alaska. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 543-A, A1–A41 (1966)

K. Minoura, F. Imamura, D. Sugawara, Y. Kono, T. Iwashita, The 869 Jogan tsunami deposit and recurrence interval of large-scale tsunami on the Pacific coast of northeast Japan. J. Nat. Disaster Sci. **23**, 83–88 (2001)

J. Mitchell, Conjectures concerning the cause, and observations upon the phenomena, of earthquakes. Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. **2**, 566–574 (1760)

K. Monecke, W. Finger, D. Klarer, W. Kongko, B. McAdoo, A.L. Moore, S.U. Sudrajat, A 1,000-year sediment record of tsunami recurrence in northern Sumatra. Nature **455**, 1232–1234 (2008)

V.S. Moreira, Historical Tsunamis in Mainland Portugal and Azores: Case Histories, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by S. Tinti (Kluwer, Dordrecht, 1993), pp. 65–73

M. Moreno, D. Melnick, M. Rosenau, J. Baez, J. Klotz, O. Oncken, A. Tassara, J. Chen, K. Bataille, M. Bevis, A. Socquet, J. Bolte, C. Vigny, B. Brooks, I. Ryder, V. Grund, B. Smalley, D. Carrizo, M. Bartsch, H. Hase, Toward understanding tectonic control on the M_w 8.8 2010 Maule Chile earthquake. Earth Planet. Sci. Lett. **321–322**, 152–165 (2012)

N.-A. Mörner, S. Dawson, Traces of tsunami events in off- and on-shore environments: Case Studies in the Maldives, Scotland and Sweden, in *The Tsunami Threat: Research and Technology*, ed. by N.-A. Mörner (InTech Publishing, Rijeka, 2011), pp. 371–388

S. Murata, F. Imamura, K. Katoh, Y. Kawata, S. Takahashi, T. Takayama, *Tsunami: To survive from Tsunami. Advance Series on Ocean Engineering* 32, Kindle edn. (World Scientific, New Jersey, 2010)

D. Myles, *The Great Waves* (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1985)

B. Nagarajan, I. Suresh, D. Sundar, R. Sharma, A.K. Lal, S. Neetu, S.S.C. Shenoi, S.R. Shetye, D. Shankar, The Great Tsunami of 26 December 2004: A description based on tide-gauge data from the Indian subcontinent and surrounding areas. Earth Planet. Space **58**, 211–215 (2006)

N.A.K. Nandasena, R. Paris, N. Tanaka, Numerical assessment of boulder transport by the 2004 Indian Ocean tsunami in Lhok Nga, west Banda Aceh (Sumatra, Indonesia). Comput. Geosci. **37**(9), 1391–1399 (2011)

N.A.K. Nandasena, N. Tanaka, Y. Sasaki, M. Osada, Boulder transport by the 2011 Great East Japan tsunami: Comprehensive field observations and whither model predictions? Mar. Geol. **346**, 292–309 (2013)

National Data Buoy Center, NDBC Historical Data Station 32412 (2013), http://www.ndbc.noaa.gov/download_data.php?filename=32412t2010.txt.gz&dir=data/historical/dart/

National Geophysical Data Center, (NGDC/WDS) Global Historical Tsunami Database. Boulder, Colorado (2013), http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/tsu_db.shtml

National Geophysical Data Center, Indian Ocean travel time maps: 26 Dec 2004 Sumatra, Indonesia (2006a), http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/seg/hazard/img/2004_1226.jpg

National Geophysical Data Center, Tsunami Events of the Indian Ocean Region (2006b), http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/seg/hazard/tsu_db.shtml

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), March 11, 2011 DART Data (2013), http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/dart/2011honshu_dart.html

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), NOAA Scientists able to measure tsunami height from space (2006), http://www.noaanews.noaa.gov/stories2005/s2365.htm

National Police Agency of Japan, Damage Situation and Police Countermeasures associated with 2011Tohoku district - off the Pacific Ocean Earthquake 8 Nov (2013), http://www.npa.go.jp/archive/keibi/biki/higaijokyo_e.pdf

V. Okamura, Reconstruction of the 869 Jogan tsunami and lessons from the 2011 Tohoku earthquake. Synthesiology (English edition) **5**, 234–249 (2013)

S. Ozawa, T. Nishimura, H. Suito, T. Kobayashi, M. Tobita, T. Imakiire, Coseismic and postseismic slip of the 2011 magnitude-9 Tohoku-Oki earthquake. Nature **475**, 373–376 (2011)

G. Pararas-Carayannis, The Great Lisbon Earthquake and Tsunami of 1 Nov 1755 (2013), http://www.drgeorgepc.com/Tsunami1755Lisbon.html

G. Pararas-Carayannis, The 1960 Chilean Tsunami (1998a), www.drgeorgepc.com/Tsunami1960.html

G. Pararas-Carayannis, The March 27, 1964 Great Alaska Tsunami (1998b), www.drgeorgepc.com/Earthquake1964Alaska.html

R. Paris, R. Lavigne, P. Wassmer, J. Sartohadi, Coastal sedimentation associated with the December 26, 2004 tsunami in Lhok Nga, west Banda Aceh (Sumatra, Indonesia). Mar. Geol. **238**, 93–106 (2007)

C.D. Peterson, J.J. Clague, G.A. Carver, K.M. Cruikshank, *Recurrence Intervals of Major Paleotsunamis as Calibrated by Historic Tsunami Deposits in Three Localities: Port Alberni, Cannon Beach, And Crescent City, Along the Cascadia Margin* (Natural Hazards, Canada and USA, 2013). doi:10.1007/s11069-013-0622-1

K.T. Pickering, W. Soh, A. Taira, Scale of tsunami-generated sedimentary structures in deep water. J. Geol. Soc. Lond. **148**, 211–214 (1991)

F.F. Pollitz, R. Bürgmann, P. Banerjee, Geodetic slip model of the 2011 M9.0 Tohoku earthquake. Geophys. Res. Lett. **38**, L00G08 (2011)

P.P. Povinec, K. Hirose, M. Aoyama, Chapter 3: Fukushima Accident, in *Fukushima Accident*, ed. by P.P. Povinec, K. Hirose, M. Aoyama (Elsevier, Boston, 2013), pp. 55–102

A.L. Prendergast, M. Cupper, K. Jankaew, Y. Sawai, Indian Ocean tsunami recurrence from optical dating of tsunami sand sheets in Thailand. Mar. Geol. **295–298**, 20–27 (2012)

H.F. Reid, The Lisbon earthquake of 1 Nov 1755. Bull. Seismolo. Soc. Am. **4**, 53–80 (1914)

Reuters, Status of Japanese ports 5 days after devastating quake and tsunami. March 15 (2011)

B. Richmond, W. Szczuciński, C. Chagué-Goff, K. Goto, D. Sugawara, R. Witter, D.R. Tappin, B. Jaffe, S. Fujino, Y. Nishimura, J. Goff, Erosion, deposition and landscape change on the Sendai coastal plain, Japan, resulting from the March 11, 2011 Tohoku-oki tsunami. Sed. Geol. **282**, 27–39 (2012)

K. Satake, Y. Namegaya, S. Yamaki, Numerical simulation of the AD 869 Jogan tsunami in Ishinomaki and Sendai Plains. Annual Report on Active Fault and Paleoearthquake Researches 8, pp. 71–89 (2008), http://unit.aist.go.jp/actfault-eq/english/reports/h19seika/index.html

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, Tsunami relics on the coastal landscape west of Lisbon, Portugal. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **23**, 3–16 (2005)

T.J. Sokolowski, The Great Alaskan Earthquake and tsunamis of 1964 (1999), http://wcatwc.arh.noaa.gov/64quake.htm

M.G. Spaeth, S.C. Berkman, The tsunamis as recorded at tide stations and seismic sea wave warning system. U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey Technical Report C&GS **33**, 38–110 (1967)

F. Stephenson, A. Rabinovich, J. Cherniawsky, R. Thomson, B. Crawford, E. Kulikov, J. Gower, 26 Dec 2004 and March 28, 2005 Indian Ocean tsunami events. Fisheries and Oceans Canada (2006), http://www-sci.pac.dfo-mpo.gc.ca/osap/projects/tsunami/tsunamiasia_e.htm

C. Subarya, M. Mohamed Chlieh, L. Prawirodirdjo, J-P. Avouac, Y. Bock, K. Sieh, A.J. Meltzner, D.H. Natawidjaja, R. McCaffrey, Plate-boundary deformation associated with the Great Sumatra–Andaman Earthquake. Nature **440**, 46–51 (2006)

The Asahi Shimbun, Catastrophe: A Special Report on Japan's 3/11 Quake and Tsunami (iBook Edition) (2011), http://ajw.asahi.com/appendix/311Disaster/Catastrophe.html

V. Titov, A.B. Rabinovich, H.O. Mofjeld, R.E. Thomson, F.I. González, The global reach of the 26 December 2004 Sumatra Tsunami. Science **309**, 2045–2048 (2005)

Tohoku Earthquake Tsunami Joint Survey Group, Nationwide field survey of the 2011 off the Pacific Coast of Tohoku earthquake tsunami. J. Japan Soc. Civ. Eng. **B2–67**, 63–66 (2011)

Y. Tsuji, Decay of the initial crest of the 1960 Chilean tsunami scattering of tsunami waves caused by sea mounts and the effects of dispersion, in *Proceeding of the 2nd UJNR Tsunami Workshop* (National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, 1991) pp. 13–25

United Nations, The human toll. Office of the special envoy for tsunami recovery (2006), http://www.tsunamispecialenvoy.org/country/humantoll.asp

United States Geological Survey. Cross section of tsunami deposit at Lampuuk survey site (2005a), http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/sumatra05/Lampuuk/0872.html

United States Geological Survey. Trench at Katukurunda showing the tsunami sand deposit about 37 cm thick (2005b), http://walrus.wr.usgs.gov/tsunami/srilanka05/Katu5_23.html

O.W. Van Dorn, Source mechanism of the tsunami of March 28, 1964, in *Proceedings of the 9th Conference on Coastal Engineering* (American Society Civil Engineers, New York, 1964) pp. 166–190

O.W. Van Dorn, Tsunamis Adv. Hydrosci. **2**, 1–48 (1965)

S. Varma, Fukushima reactor disaster: six workers get drenched in radioactive water. The Times of India, 9 Oct 9 (2013), http://articles.timesofindia.indiatimes.com/2013-10-09/rest-of-world/42861645_1_tepco-crippled-fukushima-nuclear-plant-radioactive-water

R.V. Von Huene, D.C. Cox, Locally Generated Tsunamis and Other Local Waves, *The Great Alaska Earthquake of 1964* (National Academy of Sciences, Washington, 1972), pp. 211–221

B.W. Wilson, L.M. Webb, J.A. Hendrickson, The nature of tsunamis, their generation and dispersion in water of finite depth. U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey, National Engineering Science Company Technical report no. SN 57–2, pp. 43–62 (1962)

R. Wilson, Field work and observations from Japan, five months after the M9.0 Tohoku earthquake and tsunami of March 11, 2011. EERI Tohoku Japan earthquake and tsunami clearinghouse (2011), http://www.eqclearinghouse.org/2011-03-11-sendai/2011/09/29/observations-from-August-2011-trip-by-rick-wilson/

West Coast & Alaska Tsunami Warning Center 2005. Indian Ocean Tsunami of 26 Dec 2004 (2005) http://wcatwc.arh.noaa.gov/IndianOSite/IndianO12-26-04.htm

F. Whelan, D. Kelletat, Boulder deposits on the southern Spanish Atlantic Coast: possible evidence for the 1755 AD Lisbon tsunami? Sci. Tsunami Hazards **23**, 25–38 (2005)

R.L. Wiegel, *Oceanographical Engineering* (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1964), pp. 95–108

C. Wright, A. Mella, Modifications to the soil pattern of south-central Chile resulting from seismic and associated phenomena during the period May to August 1960. Bull. Seismol. Soc. Am. **53**, 1367–1402 (1963)

7 Great Landslides

7.1 Introduction

Chapter 6 on tsunamigenic earthquakes continually alluded to submarine landslides as being a contributing factor in the generation of anomalous tsunami. For example, the tsunami that swept Prince William Sound following the Great Alaskan Earthquake of 1964 and the one that swept the Pacific Ocean following the 1946 Alaskan earthquake are now recognized as being the products of submarine landslides (Sokolowski 1999). The latter event was large enough to affect Hawaii. Unfortunately, the evidence of sliding is difficult to obtain, especially in regions where detailed side-scan sonar surveys have not been performed beforehand (Fig. 7.1).

About 70 % of the Earth's surface consists of oceans containing tectonically and volcanically active areas near subduction zones. The oceans also consist of very steep topography along continental shelf margins, on the sides of ocean trenches, and on the myriad of oceanic volcanoes, seamounts, atolls, and guyots that blanket the ocean floor (Moore 1978; Lockridge 1990; Canals et al. 2004). Sediment moves under gravity down these slopes through a variety of processes that include slumps, slides, debris flows, grain flows, and turbidity currents. Debris flows can move without incorporating water; however, where material mixes with water, a dense turbid slurry of sediment can move as a current along the seabed under the effects of gravity. The latter are known as turbidity currents and form distinct deposits that were described in Chap. 3. Substantial volumes of material are transported long distances, on slopes as low as 0.1°, across the deep ocean seabed by slides, flows, and turbidity currents. Slides consist of basal failure of topography that moves downslope in coherent blocks. As the slide progresses downslope it may disintegrate, producing a debris flow that mainly consists of disaggregated sediments. Where large volumes of material are involved, these processes can generate tsunami ranging from small events concentrated landward of the failure to mega-tsunami an order of magnitude larger than those generated historically by earthquakes (Moore 1978; Masson et al. 1996). The most notable event to occur in the twentieth century was the Grand Banks Tsunami of November 18, 1929. This event, to be discussed in detail subsequently, resulted from a slide that had a volume of 185 km^3 (Piper et al. 1999). Geologically, larger slides with volumes over 5,000 km^3 are known (Masson et al. 1996, 2006). For example, debris flows around the Hawaiian Islands have involved these volumes, while the Agulhas slide off the South Africa coast contains a total of 20,000 km^3 of material (Table 7.1, Fig. 7.2).

Landslides can take the form of slumping of rock and unconsolidated sediment, or rotation of material along planes of weakness in the rock (Moore 1978). The latter often leaves a distinct scar or headwall eroded into the continental shelf slope or exposed on land as an amphitheater formed in cliff lines. Rotational slides may also generate transverse cracks across the body of the slipped mass and tensional cracks above the head scarp, which gives rise to subsequent failure. As shown in Chap. 5, earthquakes are the most likely triggering mechanism for landslides, especially submarine ones that have commonly been associated with tsunami.

7.2 Causes of Submarine Landslides

On dry land, slope failure can be modeled using the Mohr-Coulomb equation (Bryant 2005) as follows

$$\tau_s = c + (\sigma - \xi)\tan\varphi \qquad (7.1)$$

where
τ_s = the shear strength of the soil (kPa)
c = soil cohesion (kPa)
σ = the normal stress at right angles to the slope (kPa)
ξ = pore water pressure (kPa)
φ = the angle of internal friction or shearing resistance (degrees)

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_7,

Fig. 7.1 Woodcut portraying the great flood of January 30, 1607 in the lowlands surrounding Bristol Channel, UK. Analysis of historical records and field evidence lends support for a tsunami as the cause of the flooding. A likely source would be a submarine slide off the continental shelf edge near Ireland. *Source* White (1607)

Table 7.1 Area and volume of large submarine slides and their associated tsunami

Location	Area (km^2)	Volume (km^3)	Tsunami features
Hawaiian Islands			
Nuuanu slide	23,000	5,000	
Alika 1 and 2	4,000	600	May be responsible for the Lanai event, run-up >365 m
Storegga slides, Norway	112,500	5,580	
First	52,000	3,880	
Second	88,000	2,470	
Third	6,000	Included in above	Maximum wave height of 5 m swept east coast of Scotland
Agulhas, South Africa	–	20,000	
Sunda Arc, Burma	3,940	960	
Saharan Slide	48,000	600	
Canary Islands	40,000	400–1,000	May be the cause of tsunami that swept the Bahamas (see Chap. 4)
Grand Banks, 1929	160,000	760	3 m high tsunami wave, Burin Peninsula, Newfoundland
Bulli, SE Australia	200	20?	May explain tsunami features in Sydney-Wollongong area

Source Based on Moore (1978), Harbitz (1992) and Masson et al. (1996)

In this equation, pore water pressure is a crucial determinant in failure. Sediments that are water-saturated are more prone to failure, while factors that temporarily increase pore water pressure such as the passage of seismic waves can reduce the term ($\sigma-\xi$) to zero. At this point, the strength of a soil becomes completely dependent upon the cohesion within loose sediment or within stratified rocks. Material on submerged continental shelves and island flanks are water saturated and devoid of vegetation. Their slopes were drowned and became prone to failure because of a Holocene rise in sea level amounting to 100–130 m in the last 3,000–6,000 years. This resulted in an additional weight on the seabed of 103–133 $\times$ 10^6 t km^{-2}. Pore water pressure also increased internally within sediment lying at deeper depths with this rise in sea level. Slides in these environments usually occur close to the time of initial saturation. The Storegga slides off Norway may be the best example of such a process (Dawson et al. 1988; Dawson 1999).

Changes in sea level do not have to be large to induce failure. Storm surges associated with the passage of a tropical cyclone can load and deload the shelf substantially (Bryant 2005). For example, along the east coast of the United States, 7 m high surges are common. The resulting increase in weight on the seabed can be 7.2 $\times$ 10^6 t km^{-2}. If this is preceded by deloading due to the drop in air pressure as the cyclone approaches shore, than the total change in weight can amount to 10 $\times$ 10^6 t km^{-2}. In areas where the Earth's crust is already under strain, this pressure change may be

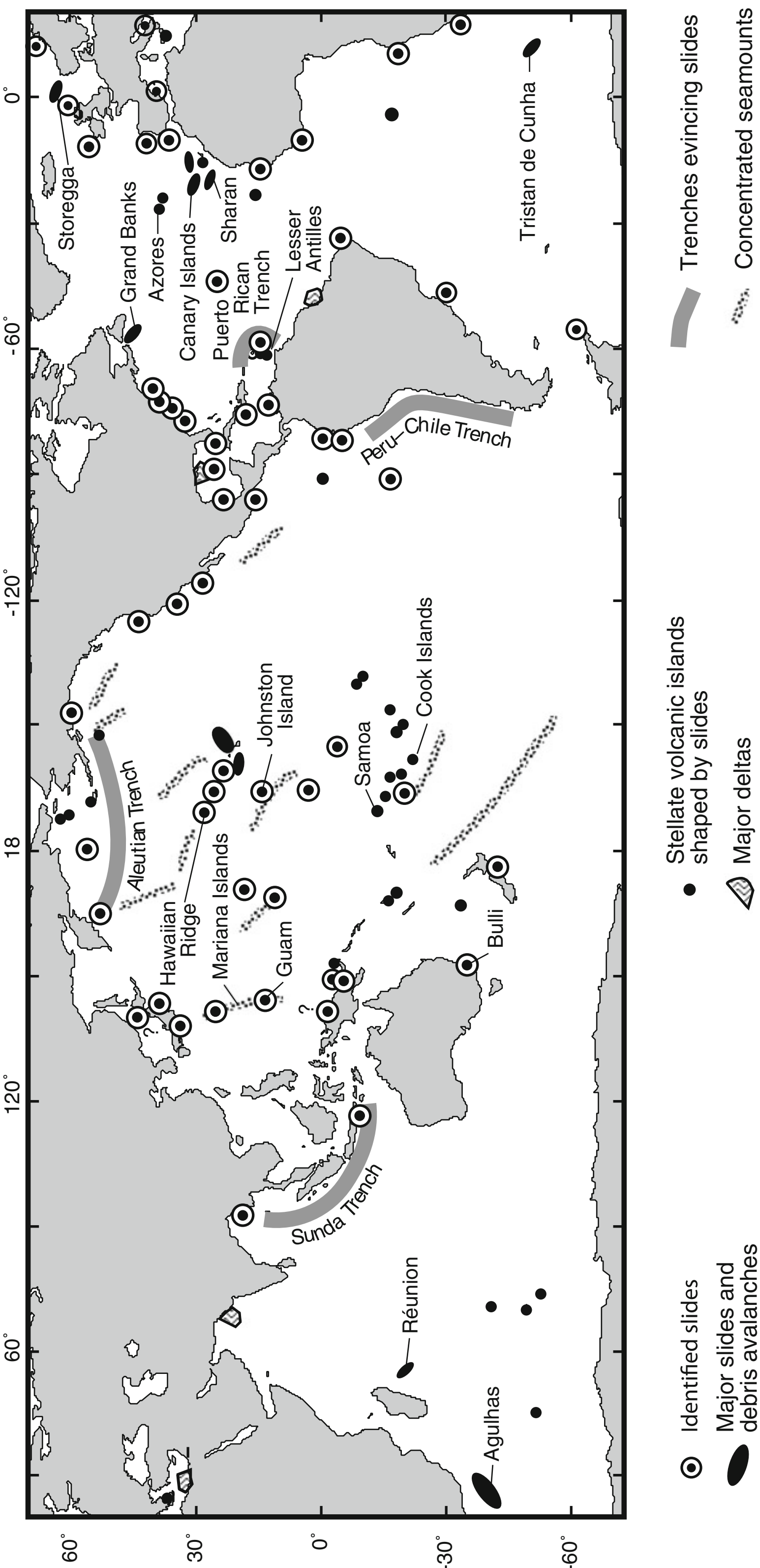


Fig. 7.2 Location of major submarine slides and debris flows globally. Those parts of the oceans with topography susceptible to underwater landslides are also marked. Based on Moore (1978), Keating et al. (1987), Holcomb and Searle (1991) and Canals et al. (2004)

sufficient to trigger an earthquake. The classic example of a cyclone-induced earthquake occurred during the Great Tokyo Earthquake of 1923. A typhoon swept through the Tokyo area on September 1st and was followed by an earthquake, a submarine slide, and an 11 m high tsunami that evening. In all, 143,000 people were killed. Measurements after the earthquake indicated that parts of Sagami Bay had deepened by 100–200 m with a maximum displacement of 590 m

(Shepard 1933). These changes are indicative of submarine landsliding. In Central America, the coincidence of earthquakes and tropical cyclones has a higher probability of occurrence than the joint probability of both events. Finally, failures on the submerged front of the Mississippi Delta have occurred primarily during tropical cyclones.

The internal pressure within submerged sediment can also be increased by the formation of natural gas through anaerobic decay of organic matter that has accumulated through the deposition of terrestrially derived material (Masson et al. 1996). This process is known as under-consolidation and occurs when fluid pressure within sediments exceeds the hydrostatic pressure. Methane is also locked into sediment on lower slopes, but because of the near-freezing water temperature and the extreme pressure, it is preserved as a solid gas hydrate. If this hydrate decomposes back to methane, then either the increased pressure due to the release of the gas into the sediment or the formation of voids can cause failure.

Slopes of ongoing sediment accumulation can become overloaded and oversteepened, leading to failure (Keating et al. 1987; Holcomb and Searle 1991; Whelan and Kelletat 2003). This was a major process on continental slopes during glacials when sea level was lower. The increase in grade and exposure of continental shelves to subaerial weathering permitted increased volumes of sediment to be emplaced on the shelf slope. The process dominated the terminal end of major river deltas. Slides in these environments consist of rotational slumps. In solid rock, cohesion may be low because of shear planes that exist along the bedding planes between sedimentary layers or by joints running through the rock. Stratigraphically favorable conditions for landslides include massive beds overlying weaker ones, alternating permeable and impermeable beds, or clay layers. Structurally favorable conditions include steeply or moderately dipping foliations and cleavage; joint, fault, or bedding planes. Rock that is strongly fractured or jointed; or contains slickenside because of crushing, folding, faulting, earthquake shock, columnar cooling, or desiccation; is also likely to fail. Many rock units and sediment deposits on shelves thus have the potential for collapse.

Mid-ocean volcanic islands are particularly prone to large landslides (Keating et al. 1987; Masson et al. 2006). On average, four such failures have occurred on these types of islands each century over the past 500 years. Shield volcanoes over hot spots accrete through successive lava flows that solidify quickly when they contact seawater. The islands consequently can rise 4,000 m or more above the seabed as steep pedestals emplaced on poorly consolidated, deep ocean clays. If weathering occurs between flow events, then subsequent flows are deposited higher in the edifice over weaker strata that may become zones for failure. If a landslide occurs early in the building phase of a volcano, then its seaward-dipping surface and its cover of blocky debris can become an unstable, low-friction foundation for ensuing lava flows. Eruptive events may inflate the volcano, steepening bedding planes, and fracturing the dome-like structure. Fracture lines may become zones for dyke intrusion that can over-pressurize rock and increase its volume by more than 10 %. For example, on the east side of Oahu, Hawaii, dykes make up 57 % of the horizontal width of the shield volcano. In addition, the weight of edifices standing over 4,000 m high can cause crustal subsidence that fractures the volcano further. Many volcanoes contain rift zones extending throughout the edifice along these zones of weakness. The flanks of these volcanoes are being pushed sideways, over the top of the sediment layer at their base under the force of gravity or by magma injection. Rates of spreading range between 1 and 10 cm per year. For example, the southern flank of Kilauea is presently moving at this higher rate away from a rift zone known as the Giant Crack. Giant landslides occur on the unbuttressed flanks of such volcanoes giving the volcano a tristar shape etched by steep headwall scars. This process is common on young volcanoes usually less than a million years in age, and has been a notable feature of the Hawaiian and Canary Islands.

While, the above causes appear logical, the database of dated slides available to prove these factors is limited. The best data set contains 68 submarine slides that have occurred over the past 175,000 years (Urlaub et al. 2013). It encompasses both low and high sea-level stages and periods of sediment accretion off major rivers. Landslides are distributed randomly through time showing no significant trends, peaks or clusters. While river–fed systems appear to have more slides during low and rising sea levels, the relationship is not statistically significant. Finally it is not possible to ascribe submarine landslides to earthquakes. While earthquakes trigger slides, a significant number of slides have occurred on passive continental margins with generally low levels of seismicity. At present, submarine landslides and any tsunami that they may generate appear to be random events.

7.3 How Submarine Landslides Generate Tsunami

The characteristics of tsunami generated by landslides are different from those simply generated by the displacement of the seabed by earthquakes. One of the more important differences is the fact that the direction of propagation of tsunami generated by landslides is more focused (Watts 1998). The slide moves in a downslope direction, and the wave propagates both upslope and downslope with the slide. As a result, the tsunami wave has a shape that becomes exaggerated close to the source and is best characterized by an *N*-wave (Fig. 2.4). The wave train is led by a very low-crested

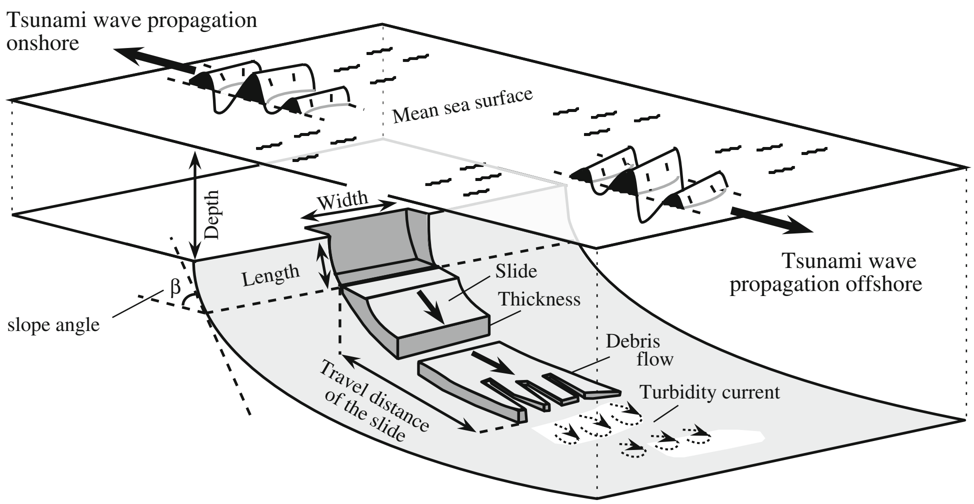


Fig. 7.3 Schematic representation of a coherent submarine slide

wave followed by a trough up to three times greater in amplitude. The lead wave may travel faster than the slide. The second wave in the wave train has the same amplitude as the trough, but over time, it decays into three or four waves with decreasing wave periods. The initial inequality between the crest of the first wave and the succeeding trough enables landslide-generated tsunami to obtain greater run-up heights than those induced by earthquakes.

Wave generation by landslides depends primarily upon the volume of material moved, the depth of submergence, and the speed of the landslide (Watts 1998). The volume of material can be determined knowing the height of the slide, its horizontal length, and the initial slope (Fig. 7.3). However, the characteristics of a slide critical to modeling tsunami are inevitably determined well after the event. The easiest slide to model is one where material fails as a coherent block. However, most slides disintegrate into a debris avalanche and eventually a turbidity current. Turbidity currents are irrelevant in the generation of tsunami, because by the time sediment has become mixed with water and begun to stratify in the water column, the tsunami has been generated and is moving away from its source area. Turbidity currents are only important in laying down distinct deposits that are more than likely a signature of paleo-tsunami.

Most slides slowly accelerate reaching a terminal velocity that depends upon the slide's mass and density, and the angle of the slope (Watts 1998). Hence, a submarine landslide takes time to develop and generate any tsunami. If an earthquake triggers a tsunamigenic submarine landslide, the time between the earthquake and the arrival of the tsunami at shore is longer than expected. The wavelengths and periods of landslide-generated tsunami range between 1–10 km and 1–5 min respectively. These values are much shorter than those produced by earthquakes. The wave period of a landslide-generated tsunami increases as the size of the slide increases and the slope decreases. It is independent of water depth, the depth of submergence, and the mass of the block. As a first approximation, the simplest slide to model is one that occurs on a slope of 45°. In this case, the maximum height of a tsunami wave above still water can be approximated by the following formula:

$$H_{max} \sim c^{1.75} d^{-0.75} \tag{7.2}$$

where

c = the thickness of the slide (m)
d = the initial depth of submergence in the ocean (m)
H_{max} = the maximum height of a tsunami wave above still water

Submarine landslides rarely exceed 50 m s^{-1}, while their associated tsunami travel at 100–200 m s^{-1}. Recent modeling indicates that these latter velocities may approximate 1,500 km hr^{-1}. Hence, tsunami generated by submarine landslides outpace the slide that forms them and produces several simple long waves in a wave train (Pelinovsky and Poplavsky 1996). In this case, that maximum tsunami wave height becomes independent of bottom slope and the following equation may apply:

$$H_{max} = 0.25\pi c^2 d^{-1} \tag{7.3}$$

These heights can be used to calculate other characteristics of the tsunami when it reaches shore using the equations presented in Chap. 2.

7.4 Historical Tsunami Attributable to Landslides

Both terrestrial and submarine landslides can produce tsunami. While historically rare, both are impressive. For example, the largest tsunami run-up yet identified occurred at Lituya Bay, Alaska, on July 9, 1958 following a rockfall triggered by an earthquake (Miller 1960). Water swept 524 m above sea level opposite the rockfall, and a 30–50 m tsunami wave propagated down the bay towards the ocean. This tsunami will be described in detail subsequently. Miller (1960) describes many similar slides. For example, there have been seven tsunamigenic events in Norway, which together have killed 210 people. The heights of these tsunami ranged between 5 and 15 m with run-ups of 70 m above sea level close to the source. Five of these events occurred in Tafjord in 1718, 1755, 1805, 1868, and 1934. In the April 7, 1934 event, 1×10^6 m^3 of rock dropped 730 m from an overhang into the fjord. The initial tsunami was 30–60 m high, decaying to 10 m several kilometers away. It traveled at a velocity of 22–43 km hr^{-1}. Historically, a slide sixteen times this volume has occurred in Tafjord. Loen Lake in Norway has also been subject to slide-induced tsunami, with three events occurring in 1936 alone. The largest of these produced run-ups of 70 m above lake level, killing 73 people. In the United States, slides have also generated tsunami in Disenchantment Bay, Alaska on July 4, 1905, and several times in Lake Roosevelt, Washington. The Disenchantment Bay event produced maximum run-up of 35 m, 4 km from the source, while slides into Roosevelt Lake have generated run-ups of 20 m on at least two occasions. One of the more unusual tsunami produced by a rockslide occurred in the Vaiont Reservoir in Italy in October 1963. Here, 0.25×10^9 m^3 of soil and rock fell into the reservoir sending a wave 100 m high over the top of the dam and down the valley, killing 3,000 people. Even small earthquakes can generate tsunamigenic submarine landslides, sometimes hours after the event. The Kona earthquake of 1951 in Hawaii had a magnitude of only 6.7; yet, it produced a tsunami with a maximum run-up of 1.5 m as the result of a landslide that occurred 3 h afterwards.

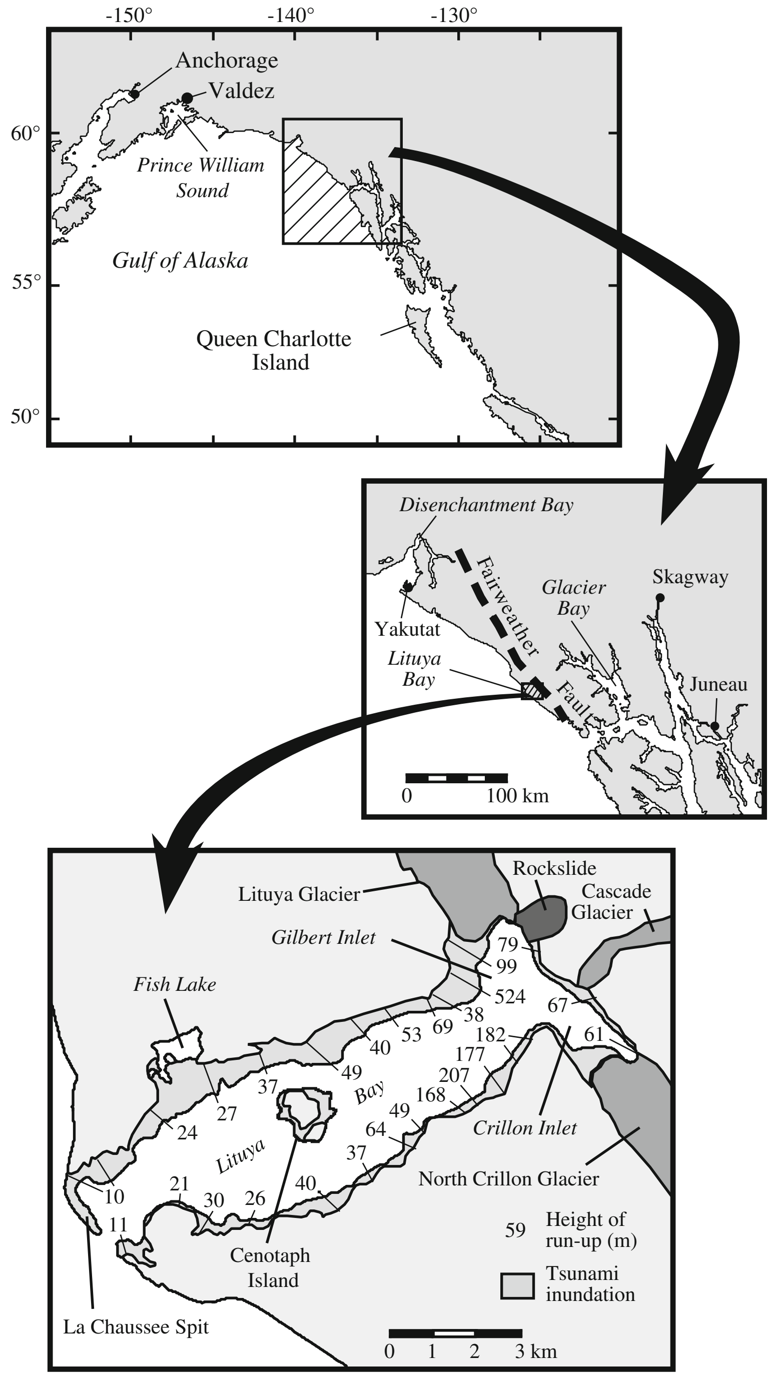
Tsunami generated by submarine slides have been common historical occurrences. For example, the Grand Banks earthquake of November 18, 1929 triggered a submarine landslide that is famous for the turbidity current that swept downslope into the abyssal plain of the North Atlantic (Heezen and Ewing 1952). Less well known is the devastating tsunami that swept into the Newfoundland coast (Whelan 1994). Similarly, the 11 m high tsunami that swept the foreshores of Sagami Bay after the Great Tokyo Earthquake of September 1, 1923 is now thought to have been produced by submarine landslides (Moore 1978; Bryant 2005). Major tsunami generated by submarine slides triggered by earthquakes have also occurred at Port Royal, Jamaica, in June 1692; at Ishigaki Island, Japan, on April 4, 1771; and at Seward, Valdez, and Whittier, Alaska, following the Great Alaskan Earthquake of 1964. The Port Royal Tsunami flung ships standing in the harbor inland over two-story buildings and killed 2,000 inhabitants, while the Ishigaki Island Tsunami carried coral 85 m above sea level and killed 13,486 people.

Historically, 66 tsunami events involving either submerged or terrestrial landslides have taken 14,661 lives in the Pacific and Indian Ocean regions (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). In the twentieth century, submarine slides have occurred off the Magdalena River, Colombia, and the Esmeraldas River, Ecuador, in the Orkdals Fjord, and off several Californian submarine canyons. In 1953, submarine landslides cut cables in Samoa and produced a 2 m high tsunami. On July 18, 1979, a tsunami generated by a landslide, unaccompanied by any earthquake or adverse weather, destroyed two villages on the southeast coast of Lomblen Island, Indonesia, killing at least 539 people. Smaller tsunami were produced by submarine slides at Nice, France, on October 16, 1979; at Kitimat Inlet, British Columbia, on April 27, 1975; and in Skagway Harbor, Alaska, in November 1994. In the latter two cases, run-ups of 8.2 and 11 m respectively were observed.

7.4.1 The Lituya Bay Landslide of July 9, 1958

Lituya Bay is a T-shaped, glacially carved valley lying entirely on the Pacific Plate. Glaciers reach almost to sea level in Crillon and Gilbert Inlets at the head of the Bay (Fig. 7.4). The main bay measures 11.3 km long and 3 km wide, with a 220 m maximum depth. Cenotaph Island obstructs the center of the bay, and La Chaussee Spit, which is the remnant of an arcuate terminal moraine left over from the last glaciation, blocks the entrance to the sea. The bay has been subject to giant waves geologically (Miller 1960). For example, run-ups of 120 and 150 m above sea level were produced by events in 1853 and on October 27, 1936 respectively. The July 9, 1958 event is the largest, however, reaching an elevation of 524 m above sea level. The trigger for the event was an earthquake with a magnitude, M_s, of between 7.9 and 8.3 that occurred around 10:16 PM along the Fairweather Fault at the junction of the Pacific and North American Plates. The earthquake's epicenter was 20.8 km southeast of the head of Lituya Bay. Vertical and horizontal ground displacements of 1.1 and 6.3 m respectively occurred along the fault and reached the surface in Crillon and Gilbert Inlets at the head of Lituya Bay. Vertical and horizontal accelerations reached 0.75 and 2.0 g respectively in the region. None of these disruptions was sufficient to generate a giant wave. The earthquake triggered landslides in the northern part of the embayment. Terrestrial landslides are inefficient mechanisms for tsunami generation because only about 4 % of their energy goes into forming waves. No known landslide has ever produced a wave the size of the Lituya Bay wave, which reached eight times the height above sea level of the largest slide-generated wave recorded in any Norwegian fjord. A Jökulhlaup or water burst from an ice-dammed lake high up on Lituya Glacier also could have caused the wave. The water level in this lake dropped 30 m following the earthquake, and the hydraulic head was certainly sufficient to generate a giant wave. However, neither

Fig. 7.4 Location map of Lituya Bay, Alaska



the volume of water nor the rate at which the lake drained was sufficient to allow such a high wave to develop. Besides, the maximum wave run-up did not occur near the discharge point for any Jökulhlaups or glacier water bursting from the glacier.

The tsunami appears to have been created by a sudden impulsive rockfall. Within 50–60 s of the earthquake, 30.5×10^6 m^3 of consolidated rock dropped 600–900 m from the precipitous northeast shoreline of Gilbert Inlet into the bay (Fig. 7.5). The impact of this rockfall was analogous to that of a meteoroid crashing into an ocean—a phenomenon that will be described in Chap. 9. The impact not only displaced an equivalent volume of water, it also created a large radial crater in the bottom sediments of the lake that left an arcuate ridge up to 250 m from the shoreline (Pararas-Carayannis 1999). The sudden displacement of water and sediment sheared 400 m off the front of Lituya Glacier and flung it high enough into the air that a distant observer reported seeing the glacier lift above a ridge that had hidden it from view.

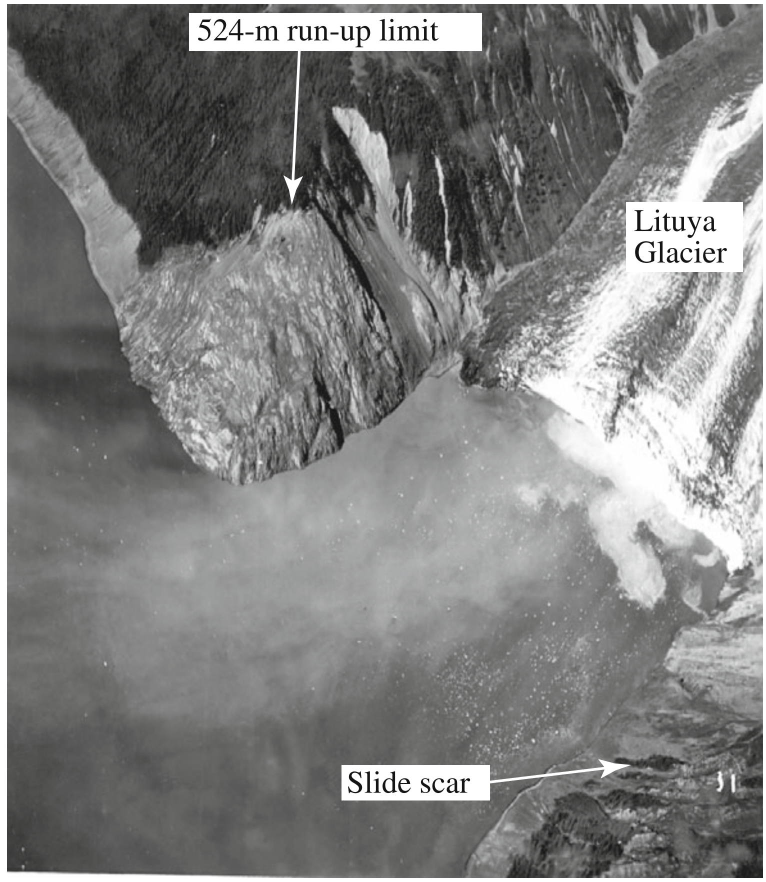


Fig. 7.5 Site of the 524 m high run-up produced by the wave in Lituya Bay. *Source* http://libraryphoto.cr.usgs.gov/htmllib/btch229/btch229j/btch229z/mdj01289.jpg

On the opposite spur to the glacier, splash from the impact swept upslope to a height of 524 m above sea level, or more than three times the water depth of Gilbert Inlet. This splash has been mistaken for a giant wave of solid water; however it probably entrained a considerable volume or air. The rockfall, in combination with ground uplift at the head of the bay, generated a solitary wave 30 m high that swept down the bay to the ocean at a speed of 155–210 km hr^{-1}. Mathematical modeling using incompressible, shallow-water long-wave equations described in Chap. 2 supports these figures. Run-up from the wave swamped an area of 10.4 km^2 on either side of the bay and penetrated as much as 1 km inland (Fig. 7.6). Soil and glacial debris were swept away, exposing clean bedrock; however, little erosion of bedrock took place despite theoretical water velocities as high as 30 m s^{-1}.

7.4.2 Grand Banks Tsunami, November 18, 1929

The Grand Banks Tsunami was produced by a submarine landslide or slump triggered at 5:02 PM by an earthquake that had a surface wave magnitude, M_s, of 7.2. The earthquake had an epicenter in about 2,000 m depth of water (Fig. 7.7). Numerous submarine slides occurred in a 120–260 km wide swathe over a distance of 245 km along the slopes of the continental shelf (Piper et al. 1999). At least 7,200 km^2 of sea floor failed. The slides occurred at two scales, as small rotational slumps 2–5 m thick and as larger ones 5–30 m thick. These coalesced over several hours into debris flows and then a turbidity current. The event is noteworthy because it was the first submarine debris flow detected and published. The turbidity current was hundreds of meters thick and swept downslope over the next 11 h, cutting 12 telephone cables between Europe and North America (Heezen and Ewing 1952; Canals et al. 2004). Based upon the time when each cable was broken, the turbidity current obtained a maximum velocity of 15–20 m s^{-1}. At its terminus, the resulting turbidite covered an area of 160,000 km^2 of seabed with 185 km^3 of sediment, to a maximum depth of 3 m (Piper et al. 1999). Sediment was deposited more than 400 km from the site of the slump in water depths of more than 2,500 m. This is one of the biggest turbidity currents yet identified either historically or geologically.

Little publicity has been given to the tsunami that followed the 1929 event (Whelan 1994). Two and a half hours after the earthquake, a 3 m high wave surged into the Burin Peninsula on the south coast of Newfoundland, directly opposite the headwall of the slide (Fig. 7.7). The wave was

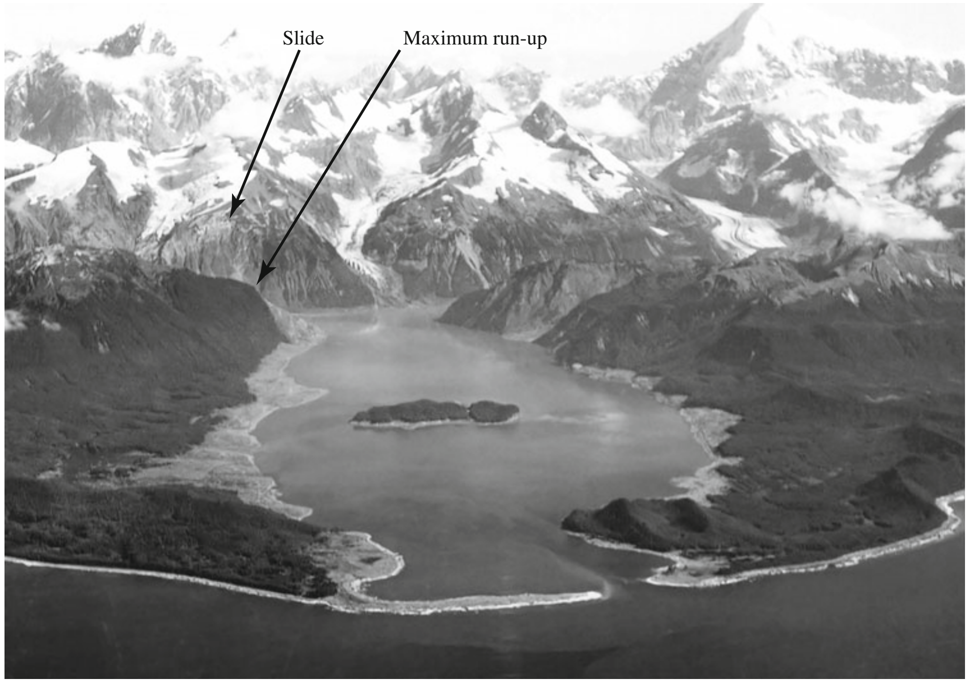


Fig. 7.6 Aerial photograph of the foreshores of Lituya Bay swept by the tsunami of July 9, 1958. *Source* http://libraryphoto.cr.usgs.gov/htmllib/btch132/btch132j/btch132z/mdj01278.jpg

caused by backfilling of the depression left in the ocean by the removal of material that formed the turbidity current. It is difficult to attribute the wave to a single rotational slide because hundreds were involved. However, a cluster of large slides occurred in 600 m depth of water directly south of the Burin Peninsula. The wave traveled at a velocity of 140 km hr^{-1} and was concentrated by refraction into the coves along this coast, where 40 isolated fishing communities were sheltered. The story in Chap. 1 refers to this wave as sheep riding a rising mountain of water in the moonlight (Fig. 1.1). The tsunami wave train reached the coast on top of a high spring tide and surged up the steep shores as three successive waves, destroying boats and houses and carrying sediment into small coastal lagoons (Tuttle et al. 2004). The characteristic tsunami signature of a fining-upwards sand layer, sandwiched between peats, has been identified in the lagoons at Taylors Bay and Lamaline. Run-up varied between 2 and 7 m with an extreme value of 13 m elevation at St. Lawrence. Two other waves in rapid succession followed the first wave. Twenty-eight people died in Newfoundland. So isolated were the communities that news of the disaster did not reach the outside world until two days later. The tsunami was not restricted to Newfoundland (Long et al. 1989). The wave also radiated out from the headwall of the slide and swept down the coast of Nova Scotia, without killing anybody. Fortunately, by the time it reached Halifax, the wave was only 0.5 m high. The wave also spread throughout the North Atlantic Ocean and was measured on tide gauges as far away as South Carolina and Portugal, although no damage was reported (Whelan 1994).

The event is considered rare for this part of the North American coast, with a recurrence interval of 1,000–35,000 years (Whelan 1994). However, a similar, but smaller, event occurred in the same region in 1884. This tsunami was also triggered by an earthquake and submarine cables were broken. Since European settlement in North America, three other large earthquakes along the east coast could have generated tsunami if they had happened at sea or triggered submarine landslides. These events occurred at Cape Anne, Massachusetts, in 1755; Charleston, South Carolina, in 1886; and Baffin Bay in 1934. While rare, the Grand Banks slide illustrates that the east coast of North America is susceptible to deadly tsunami caused by slides. Large submarine slides are a common bathymetric feature of the eastern continental margin of North America and the Gulf of Mexico, and will occur again.

7.5 Geological Events

7.5.1 Hawaiian Landslides

Some of the best evidence for giant submarine landslides has been discovered on the Hawaiian Islands using Geologic Long-Range Inclined Asdic (GLORIA), SeaBeam, and HMR-1 wide-swathe, side-scanning sonar systems (Lipman et al. 1988; Moore et al. 1989; Moore et al. 1994b). These systems sweep a swathe 25–30 km wide and measure features on the seabed down to 50 m in size. At least 68 major landslides more than 20 km long have been mapped over a

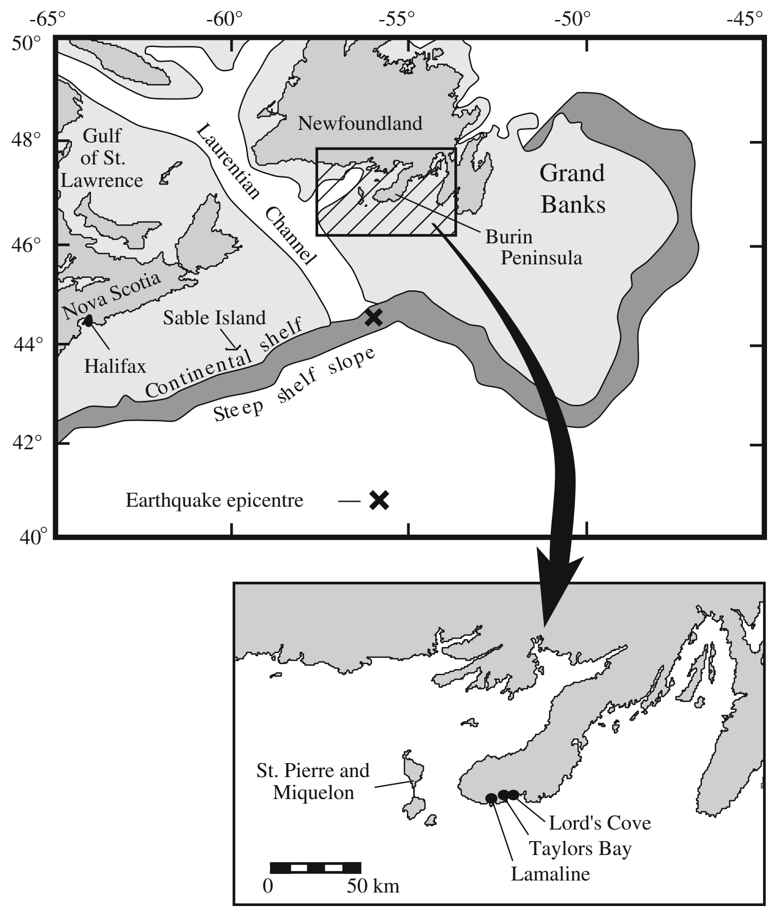


Fig. 7.7 Location of the Grand Banks earthquake of November 18, 1929 and the Burin Peninsula of Newfoundland affected by the resulting tsunami

2,200 km length of the Hawaiian Ridge (Moore et al. 1994b), between the main island of Hawaii in the southeast and Midway Island in the northwest (Fig. 7.8). The average interval between events is estimated to be 350,000 years. Because shield volcanoes typically have triple junction rift zones, amphitheaters are cut into the volcano at the headwall of giant landslides (Carracedo et al. 1999). If landslides have been ubiquitous on an island, then the island takes on a stellate shape termed a *Mercedes star*. On older volcanoes, these head scarps may be buried by subsequent volcanic activity (Moore et al. 1994b). Some of the largest landslides occur near the end of shield building when a volcano stands 2–4 km above sea level. The major trigger for the avalanches are earthquakes on the younger islands; however, on the older islands mass failures are even triggered by storm surges and internal waves. The length of the slides increases from 50 to 100 km for the older western volcanoes to 150–300 km for the younger eastern ones—making them some of the longest slides on Earth. The volume of material in each slide is as much as 5,000 km^3 (Masson et al. 1996, 2006). Smaller landslides having volumes of tens of cubic kilometers have also been detected in shallower waters but not mapped in detail because of the difficulty of using side-scan sonar at these depths. In total, about half of the volume of the Hawaiian Ridge consists of landslide material. The landslides can be grouped into slower-moving slumps and faster-moving debris flows. The latter have the potential for generating colossal tsunami wave heights.

Slumps have an internal consistency whereby large chunks slough off from a volcano along fault lines or rifting zones to a depth of 5 km (Moore et al. 1994b). Parts of slumps may produce smaller debris avalanches. Slumps and their resulting tsunami are historically common in Hawaii. In 1868, slumps associated with an earthquake with a recorded magnitude, M_s, of 7.5, produced a 20 m high tsunami that killed 81 people. In 1919, a similar magnitude earthquake produced a submarine landslide off Kono that resulted in a 5 m high tsunami run-up. In 1951, a small earthquake generated a local tsunami at Napoopoo. Two hours later, part of a cliff fell into Lealakakua Bay and generated another local tsunami. Most recently in 1975, an earthquake again with a recorded magnitude, M_s, of 7.5 caused a 60 km section of the flank on Kilauea to subside 3.5 m and to move 8 m into the ocean. The resulting tsunami had a maximum run-up height of 14.3 m, killing two people.

Submarine debris avalanches are morphologically similar to those witnessed on volcanoes on land where speeds of

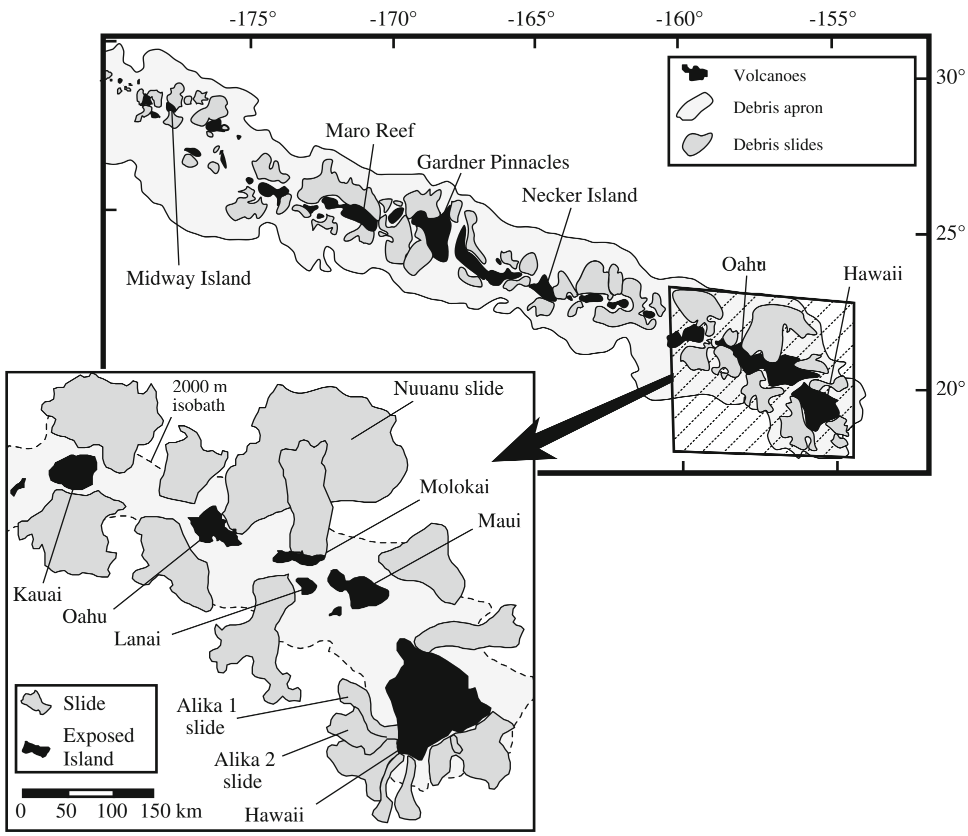


Fig. 7.8 Location of submarine slumps and debris flows on the Hawaiian Ridge. Based on Moore et al. (1989), and Moore et al. (1994a, b)

several hundred kilometers per hour have been inferred (Moore et al. 1994b). If the Hawaiian debris avalanches obtained similar velocities, then they were major agents for tsunami generation in the Pacific. Unlike slumps, debris avalanches are thinner, having thicknesses of 0.05–2.0 m; however, they may travel as far as 230 km on slopes as little as 3°. The largest submarine avalanche is the Nuuanu debris avalanche on the northern side of Oahu Island (Fig. 7.8). It is 230 km long, with a maximum thickness of 2 km at its source. It covers an area of 23,000 km^2 and has a volume of 5,000 km^3 (Table 7.1) (Masson et al. 1996). This represents one of the largest debris avalanches on Earth. It possibly occurred 200,000 years ago and would have sent a wave 20 m high crashing into the United States west coast (Ward 2001). Debris avalanches are characterized by hummocky terrain at their distal end with some of the hummocks consisting of blocks of volcanic rock measuring 1–10 km in width (Masson et al. 1996). The largest individual block identified so far occurs in the Nuuanu deposit and measures 30 × 17 × 1.5 km^3.

The Alika debris avalanches on the western side of the main island of Hawaii are two of the youngest events in the island chain (Fig. 7.8). The older avalanche, Alika 1, covers an area of 2,300 km^2; the younger, Alika 2, is slightly smaller, covering an area of 1,700 km^2 (Lipman et al. 1988). Together, both failures incorporate 600 km^3 of material, although the volume of material missing from the western side of Hawaii Island totals 1,500–2,000 km^3—much of it originating underwater down to 4,500 m depths. The second slide traveled more than 50 km from the coast in a northwesterly direction towards the small island of Lanai. Uncharacteristically steep slopes, reaching 2,000 m above sea level on the southwest side of Mauna Loa, appear to represent the headwall of the slides. Failure occurred in the unbuttressed flanks of Mauna Loa and Hualalai volcanoes along rift zones infilled with dykes. Sedimentation rates on these slide deposits suggest that they are only a few hundred thousand years old.

This age and the potential of the slides for tsunami generation link them to anomalously high gravel and boulder deposits of a similar age on nearby islands to the northwest (Moore and Moore 1988). These deposits reach elevations above sea level of 61 m on the southeastern tip of Oahu, 65 m on the south coast of Molokai, 73 m on the west coast of Maui, 79 m on the northwest corner of Hawaii, and 326 m on the south coast of Lanai. On Lanai, catastrophic wave run-up may have deposited discontinuous dune-like boulder ridges, known as the Hulopoe Gravel, up gullies and on interfluves. The waves were also erosive removing a 2 m depth of weathered soil and basalt in a 2 km wide strip parallel to the coast. The highest elevation of stripping is 365 m above sea level on Lanai and 240 m on the west side of Kahoolawe. On the northeast sides of both islands, the height of stripping only reached 100 m above sea level. Because all islands are rising, the elevation of run-up would have been lower than these values at the time of the tsunami.

This stripping removed spherically weathered basaltic boulders up to 0.5 m in diameter from the soil and swept then downslope. These boulders were then re-entrained by subsequent waves, together with coral gravel, and deposited in three inversely graded beds up to 4 m thick. The size of boulders and thickness of the deposit decreases upslope to a 150 m elevation. The larger particles support each other and are imbricated upslope—facts indicative of transport in suspension or as bedload. The voids between the large clasts are infilled with silt and pebbles that include marine foraminifera and sea-urchin spines. Fine calcareous material can be found filling crevices to an altitude of 326 m on Lanai. Mollusk shells are scattered throughout the deposit with species derived from 20 to 80 m depth of water characteristic of a slightly warmer environment than exists at present. The surface of the deposit consists of a branching network of ridges with a relief of 1 m and a spacing of 10 m. The ridges are asymmetric in profile with the steepest end facing downslope—a fact suggesting that backwash was the last process to mould the surface.

The hydrodynamics of the flow can be determined from this internal *fabric* and morphology. The inverse grading is suggestive of a thin, fast moving sheet of water typical of wave run-up or backwash. With a dune spacing of 10 m and a maximum boulder size of 1.5 m, the flow of water was 1.6 m deep—Eq. 3.3 and obtained a minimum velocity of 6.3 m s^{-1}—Eq. 3.1. These conditions are favorable for deposition of inversely graded deposits under run-up or backwash. The boulder-sized material and high elevation of deposition and stripping indicate that the flow velocity and run-up limits were an order of magnitude greater than that produced by storm waves or by tsunami generated by a distant tectonic event. The latter have a recorded maximum run-up height of no more than 17 m on these islands. The presence of multiple beds indicates a wave train that included three or four catastrophic waves, with the second wave being most energetic and reaching a maximum elevation of 365 m above sea level. If run-up height is set at ten times the tsunami wave height approaching shore, then the tsunami wave was 19–32 m high when it reached the coast. This is a conservative estimate, given the steep slopes of the islands and the fact that the swash was sediment-laden. Only waves generated by submarine landslides or asteroid impacts with the ocean are this big. The first wave in the tsunami wave train picked up material from the ocean, washed over and dissected any offshore reefs, and carried all this material in suspension, at high velocity, up the slopes of the islands. The first wave was so powerful on Molokai that it cracked the underlying bedrock to a depth of 10 m (Moore et al. 1994a). These crevices were then subsequently infilled with fluidized sediment. The first wave also picked up boulders from the weathered surface as it swept upslope. These were then mixed with the marine debris in the backwash and laid down by subsequent waves into graded beds. The last backwash molded the surface of the deposits into dune bedforms.

The asymmetry in the elevation of maximum stripping around Lanai and Kahoolawe suggests that the source of the tsunami had to be from the southeast. Uranium–thorium dates from the coral on Lanai show that the event occurred during the Last Interglacial around 105,000 years ago (Moore and Moore 1988). However, the deposit on Molokai represents an older event that occurred at the peak of the Penultimate Interglacial 200,000–240,000 years ago (Moore et al. 1994a). The most likely source of the tsunami was one or more of the Alika submarine debris avalanches off the west coast of the main island of Hawaii (Moore and Moore 1988). Slides to the southwest of Lanai cannot be ruled out, but they are older than the age of the deposits. If this latter source caused the tsunami, then the wave must have been generated by water backfilling the depression left in the ocean. This mechanism is similar to that proposed for the tsunami that swept the Burin Peninsula on November 18, 1929. The tsunami could also have been generated by an asteroid impact in the Pacific Ocean off the southeast coast of Hawaii. Asteroids as agents of tsunami generation will be discussed in Chap. 9. Unfortunately, the Hulopoe Gravel on Lanai has been questioned as a tsunami deposit (Keating and Helsley 2002). Some locations covered in Hulopoe Gravel also contain soil profiles between layers, and it is difficult to envisage deposition up gullies that should have then been scoured by backwash. Finally, the imprint of human activity cannot be ignored in the deposition of either some of the boulder piles or molluscs on Lanai.

7.5.2 The Canary Islands

The Canary Islands have formed over the last 20 million years as shield volcanoes that rise from depths of 3,000–4,000 m in the ocean to heights of 1,000 m above sea level (Carracedo et al. 1998). The islands are similar to the Hawaiian Islands in that their origin has been linked to hotspot activity. Because of structural control and scarring by at least 19 landslides, the islands have taken on *Mercedes star* outlines (Fig. 7.9) (Carracedo et al. 1999). The scars consist of large amphitheaters or depressions that are backed by high cliffs. The most prominent of these lies on the island of El Hierro where landslides have left a Matterhorn-like peak. As well, Tenerife has been shaped by multiple landslides (Masson et al. 2006). Giant landslides occur more frequently on the younger islands of Tenerife, La Palma and El Hierro to the west that are less than 2 million years old. On average,

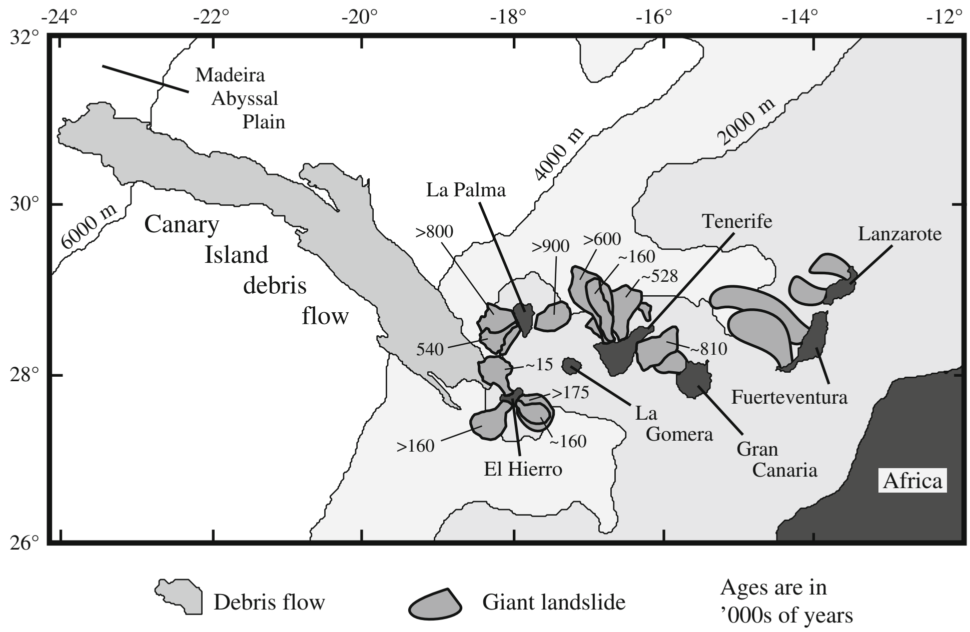


Fig. 7.9 The giant landslides of the Canary Islands. Based on Masson (1996), Carracedo et al. (1999) and Masson et al. (2006). Ages based on Masson et al. (2006) and Boulesteix et al. (2013)

one landslide has occurred somewhere in the Canary Islands every 10,0000 years; however most events are irregular. Most of the landslides are debris avalanches, with slumps only occurring on El Hierro, which is the youngest island to develop. El Hierro has undergone the most recent activity (Masson 1996). The youngest slide on the northwest corner of El Hierro contains by far the largest mass of debris identified as originating from the Canary Islands. It is 50–75 m thick and covers an area of 1,500 km^3 (Fig. 7.9). It appears linked to a single catastrophic failure involving 700–800 km^3 of material that occurred 13,000–17,000 years ago when global sea levels were over 100 m lower than present. Its headwall scarp is at least 8 km long and up to 900 m high. Closer to shore, the debris avalanche contains individual blocks 1.2 km in diameter and 200 m high. Most of the other debris flows have formed on the west side of the islands with some having accreted through multiple events (Carracedo et al. 1999; Masson et al. 2006). There are two slides, one each on Tenerife and La Palma, which have approximately the same age between 528,000 and 540,000 years at a time of rising sea-levels following a global ice age (Boulesteix et al. 2013). It is possible that a large slide can trigger another on an adjacent island through isostatic readjustment or a large tsunami. Seven turbidites, ranging in volume from 5 to 125 km^3 and linked geochemically to the islands, have been mapped on the abyssal plain west of the Canary Islands up to 600 km away (Masson et al. 1996, 2006). All are less than 650,000 years old. The slides associated with these turbidites reach volumes of 1,000 m^3 and were most likely induced by over steepening of the volcanoes through successive eruptions or by the emplacement of vertical dykes.

Tsunami deposits have now been identified in the Canary Islands and linked by their juxtaposition to landslides on Tenerife (Masson 1996; Masson et al. 1996). None has been dated, however, so they cannot be associated with any specific debris avalanche. One deposit has been mapped on the Jandia Peninsula on the south side of Fuerteventura Island (Carracedo and Day 1997). The deposit is unstratified and consists of well-rounded boulders and pebbles, marine molluscs, and angular pieces of basalt. It lies at an elevation of 35–75 m above present sea level up to 1 km inland. Fuerteventura Island is tectonically stable, so the elevation of the deposit cannot be attributed to tectonic uplift. A similar deposit, consisting of two upwards-coarsening beds of beach boulders and shell, has also been discovered up to 90 m above present sea level at Agaete, on the northwest coast of Gran Canaria. A deposit containing shell also exists more than 200 m above sea level on La Palma.

7.5.3 The Storegga Slide of 7,950 BP

In 1812, Sir James Hall postulated that a range of bedrock sculpturing features that included hairpin erosion marks several meters in length and the crag-and-tail hills that make up the city of Edinburgh were shaped by a tsunami similar to the one that had destroyed Lisbon in 1755 (Hall 1812). It was one of the first attempts in geology to explain the evolution of a landscape by invoking a single physical process. Hall of course was wrong. He knew nothing about continental glaciation that was subsequently used to explain the landforms. He was also unfortunate in picking the wrong landforms as examples. Had he examined the raised

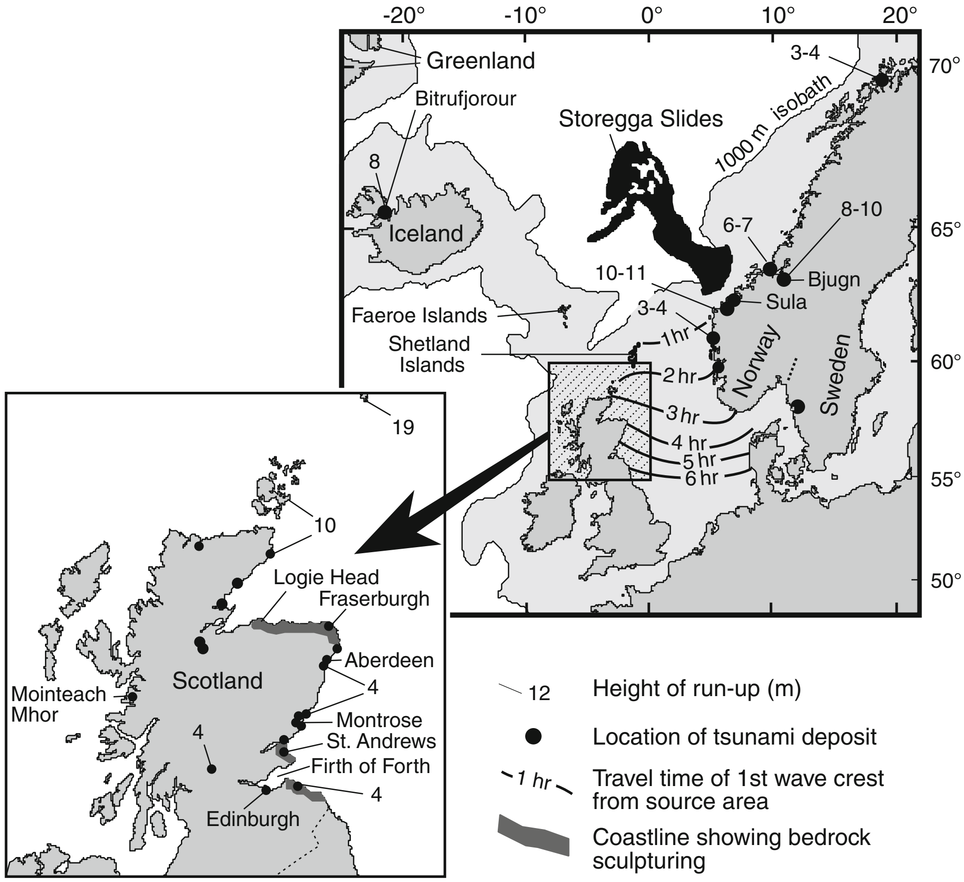


Fig. 7.10 Location of Storegga slides near Norway and coastlines in the North Atlantic affected by the resulting tsunami from the second event. Run-ups based on Dawson (1994) and Bondevik et al. (1997a, b). Travel times in the North Sea are from Henry and Murty (1992)

estuary plains—known as carseland (Long et al. 1989; Dawson et al. 1988; Smith et al. 2004), or the rocky headlands that dominate the east coast of Scotland, he would have found not only his signatures for catastrophic tsunami, but also many of the additional ones presented in Chap. 3. The tsunami did not originate in the North Atlantic as Hall envisaged, but from the region of known submarine slides at Storegga off the east coast of Norway (Fig. 7.10). While not large enough to swamp the hills of Edinburgh, they were certainly a significant factor in molding the coastal landscape of eastern Scotland.

There have been five Storegga (great edge) slides in the past 30,000 years involving 5,580 km^3 of sediment that collapsed along 290 km of the continental slope of Norway (Masson et al. 1996; Canals et al. 2004). These slides sit on a series of much older ones stacked up on the seabed over the past half million years. The recent slides traveled over 500 km across the sea floor at velocities up to 50 m s^{-1} (Fig. 7.10). The average thickness of the resulting deposits is 88 m, with values as high as 430 m (Jansen et al. 1987). The slides contain blocks measuring 10 km × 30 km that are up to 200 m thick. Sediment moved into water more than 2,700 m deep and formed turbidity currents over 20 m thick. This thickness is seven times more than that of the turbidite deposited by the Grand Banks slide of November 18, 1929 (Piper et al. 1999). The triggering mechanism for the Storegga slides is uncertain; but earthquakes, decomposition of gas hydrates within sediments, and excess pore pressures developed as a result of the rapid sedimentation that loaded the Norwegian slope during intervening glacial periods have been suggested as causes (Jansen et al. 1987; Masson et al. 2006). The first slide occurred over 30,000 years ago, while the last two occurred close together between 6,000 and 8,000 years ago. The first slide was the biggest, involving 3,880 km^3 of sediment; however, any tsunami that it generated happened at lower sea levels and had little visible effect on today's coastline. The last two slides moved or remobilized 1,700 km^3 of sediment.

Most of the evidence for catastrophic tsunami comes from the second Storegga slide, which has been radiocarbon-dated as being 7,950 ± 190 years old (Smith et al. 2004; Bondevik et al. 1997b). The modeled deep-water wave height of the tsunami was 8–12 m at its source and 2–3 m where it swept into the North Sea and the open Atlantic Ocean (Harbitz 1992; Ward 2001). Equation 7.2 yields a tsunami height of 2.3 m in the open ocean based upon the geometry of the slide (Pelinovsky and Poplavsky 1996). The tsunami had a wave period of 2–3 h—values that are much longer than those normally associated with earthquake-induced tsunami. The first wave reached the northeast coasts of Iceland and the northeast tip of Scotland in just over 2 h (Ward 2001). Figure 7.10 shows that the tsunami then took another 8 h to propagate through the North Sea (Henry and Murty 1992). Most of the tsunami's energy was focused towards Greenland and Iceland. Based on shallow-water long-wave equations, the tsunami was 3 m high approaching the coast of Greenland and Iceland, and 1 m high approaching Scotland. Maximum run-up heights were 10–15 m for the first slide and 5–8 m for the second. Along the east coast of Scotland, modeled run-ups ranged from 3.0 to 5.5 m. These values may be conservative. If the slide moved at a maximum theorized velocity of 50 m s^{-1} or initially underwent rapid acceleration, then the calculated run-up heights of the second slide were 13.7 m along the east coast of Iceland and Norway, 11.5 m along the east coast of Greenland, and 18–5.3 m along the north and east coasts of Scotland respectively. These latter figures agree with field evidence in Scotland showing that the wave reached 4 m above contemporary sea level at most locations in northeastern Scotland, 10 m at the northern tip of Scotland, and 24.8 m on the Shetland Islands (Smith et al. 2004). Along the Norwegian coast, tsunami deposits indicate that run-ups reached 10–11 m above sea level along the coastline adjacent to the headwall of the slide, and up to 4 m elsewhere (Bondevik et al. 1997a, b).

The most prominent signature of the Storegga Tsunami is the presence of thin sand layers sandwiched between silty clays and buried 3–4 m below the surface of the raised estuarine plains or carseland of eastern Scotland (Fig. 7.10). These deposits have been described at over 17 sites and are best developed in the Firth of Forth region, where they can be found more than 80 km inland (Long et al. 1989; Dawson et al. 1988; Smith et al. 2004). This long penetration up what was then a shallow estuary is beyond the capacity of even the largest storms in the North Sea and requires tsunami wave amplitudes at the maximum range of those modeled. Generally, the tsunami deposited these sand layers 4 m above the high-tide limit. The presence of these buried sand layers has been known since 1865; however, it wasn't until the late 1980s that researchers realised that the sands were evidence of tsunami originating from the Storegga submarine slides. The basic characteristics of the sands have already been described in Chap. 3. The sands, some of which are gravelly, include marine and brackish diatoms and peat fragments from the underlying sediments. The most common diatom species is *Paralia sulcata* (Ehrenberg) Cleve, which constitutes over 60 % of specimens. Many of the diatoms are broken and eroded—features indicative of transport and deposition under high-energy conditions. Generally, the anomalous layer comprises grey, micaceous, silty fine sand less than 10 cm thick, although thicknesses of 75 cm have been found. In places, multiple layers exist, consisting of a series of layers of moderately sorted sand. Grain size fines upwards both within individual units and throughout the series. Detailed size analysis indicates that as many as five waves may have reached the coast, with the first and second waves having the greatest energy (Fig. 3.4).

This sequence of sands is also well preserved in raised lakes along the Norwegian coast (Bondevik et al. 1997a, b). As the tsunami raced up to 11 m above sea level, it first eroded the seaward portion of coastal lakes around Bjugn and Sula, located adjacent to the headwall of the Storegga slides (Fig. 7.10). The wave then laid down a graded or massive sand layer containing marine fossils. As the wave lost energy upslope, it deposited a thinner layer of fining sand. Only one wave penetrated the upper portions of the lakes, but closer to the sea, up to four waves deposited successively thinner layers of sediment in deposits 20–200 cm thick (Fig. 7.11). As each wave reached its maximum limit inland, there was a short period of undisturbed flow during which larger debris such as rip-up clasts, waterlogged wood fragments; and fine sand and organic debris, torn up and mulched by the passage of the tsunami wave, accumulated over the sands. Fish bones from the marine species *Pollachius viern*s (coalfish) and buds from *Alnus spp.* (alder) were found in the organic mash. Both the length of the fish bones and the stage of development of the buds indicate that the event occurred in the late autumn. Each backwash eroded into the freshly deposited organic layer, but because water was ponded in lakes, velocities were not as high as in the run-up. Finally, when the waves abated, fine silt and sand settled from suspension in the turbid lake waters and capped the tsunami deposit with thin, muddy layers of silt termed *gyttja*.

The buried sand is not the only evidence of the Storegga Tsunami. The 1 m to 3 m open ocean amplitude of the wave ensured that its effects were widespread throughout the North Atlantic. Besides the buried sands, a raised *dump* deposit of sand and cobbles has been found at Bitrufjorour, Iceland (Dawson 1994). Large aligned boulders have also been found along the Skagerrak coast of Sweden pointing towards the slides. Finally, a buried splay of sand, sandwiched between two peat layers, rises to the surface of an infilled embayment on the west coast of Scotland at Mointeach Mohr (Price et al. 1999). The extent and sheltered location of this site rules out storm surge as the mechanism of deposition. The contact between the sand and the older, lower peat unit is erosional, with pieces of the lower peat incorporated into the sand. It appears that the sands in the tsunami deposit originated from the beach and dunes at the mouth of the embayment and were deposited rapidly landward in a similar fashion to the model proposed for tsunami-swept barriers in Chap. 4 (Fig. 4.3).

This evidence certainly indicates that the tsunami was large enough to have been very erosive along exposed rocky

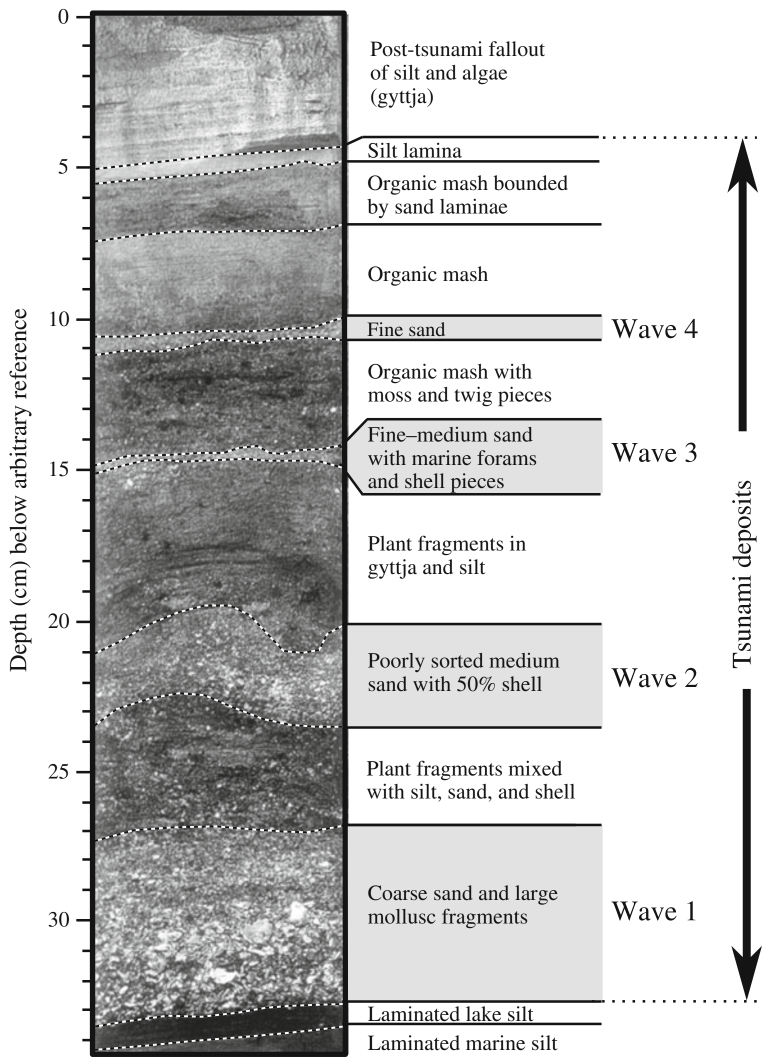


Fig. 7.11 Alternating layers of sand and organic debris deposited by four successive tsunami waves of diminishing height in Kvennavatnet Lake basin near Bjugn, Norway, following the second Storegga Slide. From Fig. 6 in Bondevik et al. (1997a). The photograph is ©Blackwell Publishing Ltd. and is reproduced by permission

coasts. Indeed, bedrock-sculptured features and tsunami-generated landscapes of the type described in Chaps. 3 and 4 respectively are present along the east coast of Scotland in the Edinburgh area and prominently along the Grampian coastline north of Aberdeen (Fig. 7.10). Ironically, many of these features are similar to those originally described by Hall in his ill-fated hypothesis. For example, a raised fluted rock drumlin is cut into Carboniferous sandstone on the low-tide platform at St. Andrews (Fig. 7.12). The crest of the feature lies 2 m above high tide and over 150 m from the backing cliff. Although weathered, the sides of the flute still preserve the distinct form of cavettos, while the upper surface is imprinted with muschelbrüche (scalloped-shaped depressions) aligned parallel to the alignment of features. Transverse troughs, formed by roller vortices, have been carved out from the surrounding platform and are not only aligned with the strike of the sandstone beds, but also perpendicular to the rock drumlin alignment. The platform surface rather than being planed by storm waves has a relief of 0.4–0.6 m, dominated by rock plucking that forms smaller flutes aligned parallel to the main feature.

Similar, but more effective, erosion with large-scale development of fluted promontories is most prominent along the Grampian coastline between Fraserburgh and Logie Head. The sand layer deposited by the Second Storegga Tsunami reaches its maximum thickness, 75 cm, along the coast at Fraserburgh. Platforms and promontories have been cut into sandstones and metamorphic slates, phyllites, and schists. One of the better examples of large-scale sculpturing occurs at MacDuff. Here, bedrock has been shaped into large rock drumlins or flutes rising 7–8 m above the high-tide line (Fig. 7.13). The drumlins are dominated by profuse rock plucking, are detached from each other and the backing cliff, and rise *en echelon* landward, where they

Fig. 7.12 Raised rock drumlin or flute on the platform at St. Andrews, Scotland. The rock drumlin preserves sculptured *S*-forms in the form of muschelbrüche and cavettos. Weathering has subsequently modified these features. Roller vortices have cut transverse troughs into the platform surfaces

Fig. 7.13 Detached rock drumlins or flutes lying *en echelon* along the coastline at MacDuff, Scotland. Plucking dominates as the main mechanism of erosion, but smooth sculptured features such as potholes and muschelbrüche can be distinguished at a smaller scale. The porthole has formed through vortex formation on the front and back of the stack. The porthole and islet in the middle point towards the headwall of the Storegga slide

end abruptly in a well-developed cliff whose base is slightly raised, about 2–3 m above the berm line of the modern beach. While plucking dominates, the sides of some flutes have been carved smoothly and the *en echelon* arrangement is suggestive of helical flow under catastrophic flow. Despite the irregular nature of the eroded bedrock surfaces, smooth potholes appear on the seaward sides of some flutes. These potholes lie above the present active wave zone. In one case, vortex formation on the front and back of a stack has carved out a porthole aligned towards the headwall of the Storegga slides (Fig. 7.13). Similar forms have been linked to tsunami in eastern Australia, where vortices peel off the ends of headlands (Fig. 3.25). Further north, at Gardenstown and Cullen, isolated fluted stacks over 4 m high are present in the middle of embayments (Fig. 7.14). The features are so remotely linked to the adjacent rock coastline that in some cases they appear as stranded erosional remnants in the middle of beaches. Their upper parts often lie above the limit of present storm waves. Many flutes still show evidence of cavettos along their sides. The alignment of the flutes is structurally controlled, but the features are best developed where the strike of the bedrock points towards the headwall of the Storegga slides.

Tsunami also have molded headlands. For example, at Logie Head, the end of the headland, which rises over 15 m above present sea level, is separated from the main cliffline by an erosional depression (Fig. 7.15). The toothbrush-shaped form is similar to the eroded headlands of southeast Australia interpreted as a prominent signature of tsunami-eroded bedrock terrain (Figs. 3.23 and 4.1). Concentrated

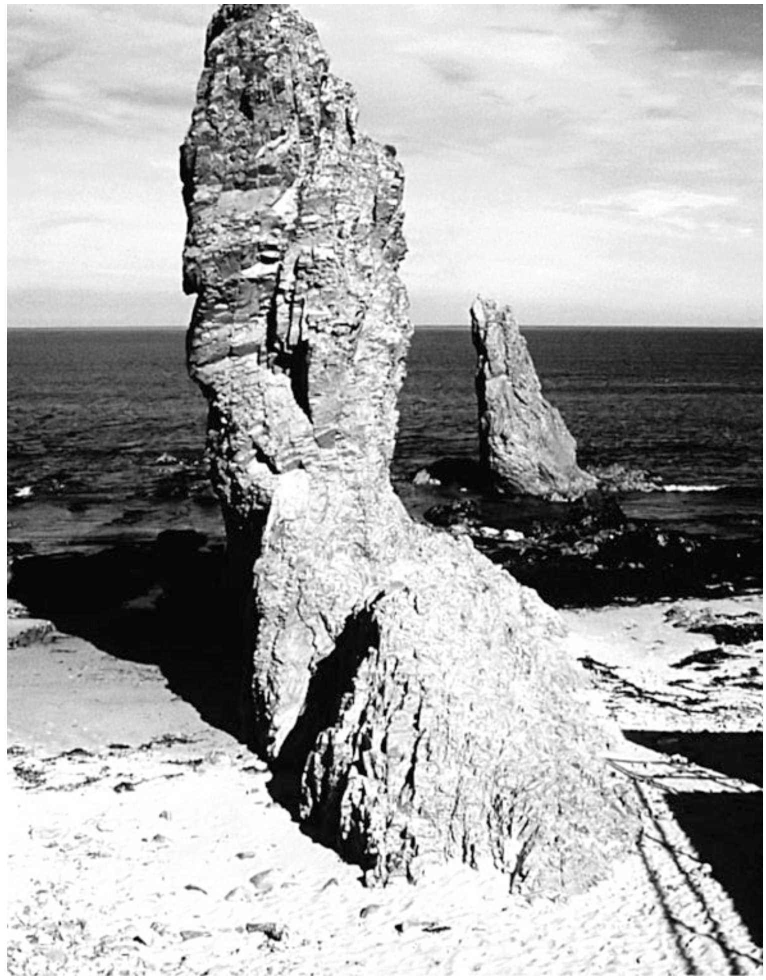


Fig. 7.14 Fluted stacks about 4 m high on the beach at Cullen, Scotland. Although weathered, each stack still preserves numerous cavettos on its flanks. The flutes align towards the headwall of the Storegga Slide

high-velocity flow or even wave breaking over the back of the headland generates such erosional forms. Large storms can be ruled out as a mechanism for molding these bedrock-sculptured features. Although North Sea storms can generate 15 m high waves superimposed on a 2 m high storm surge, such waves are short in wavelength and break offshore of headlands. Both fluted terrain and the chiseled headland at Logie Head require sustained, high-velocity, unidirectional flow that only a catastrophic tsunami resulting from a mega-slide or asteroid impact into the sea could produce.

It might also be conceivable to attribute such features to glacial activity or to sub-glacial flow. After all, the features Hall described were later attributed to just such a process. Indeed, the orientation of flutes along the Grampian coastline corresponds to flow lines for the Late Devensian ice sheet that covered this region. However, the fluted features at St. Andrews (and east of Edinburgh at Dunbar), which also point in the same general direction as those along the Grampian coast, are not aligned with the direction of ice sheet movement. Finally, if the flutes are the products of glaciation or catastrophic sub-glacial water flow, then the features should not be limited just to the immediate coastline. Their similarity to features in southeastern Australia, which at no time has been affected by glacial ice during the Pleistocene, implies a common mechanism for both localities. It is only fitting that after 150 years, evidence can be found in eastern Scotland for Hall's (1812) hypothesis for bedrock sculpturing by catastrophic tsunami—albeit on a smaller scale than he envisaged.

7.6 Bristol Channel, United Kingdom, January 30, 1607

In northwestern Europe, the Storegga slides are not unique. The 1,000 m bathymetric contour is the site of at least 15 other slides on the continental slope between west Ireland and northern Norway (Kenyon 1987). The largest of these is equivalent in size to the smallest Storegga slide. At least seven of these slides exist along the coast of Ireland within a few hundred kilometers of the coast. Remnant slides also exist on underwater platforms between the British Isles and Iceland with a debris flow, again as large as the smaller

Fig. 7.15 The toothbrush-shaped headland at Logie Head. The larger depression has formed either by catastrophic wave breaking near the shoreline or by concentrated high-velocity flow

Storegga slide, situated at the base of the Rockall Trough (Øvrebø et al. 2005). These slides are undated. However, one of them may have failed in historical time and affected the Bristol Channel and Severn Estuary on the west coast of the United Kingdom.

Historic floods here are reasonably well documented; however, the flood of the January 30, 1607 was catastrophic (Bryant and Haslett 2007). It flooded 518 km^2 along 570 km of coastline (Fig. 7.16), killed up to 2,000 people (Fig. 7.1), and resulted in economic loss from which the region never recovered. It was Britain's worst disaster on land. The area affected extended from Barnstaple in Devon and Carmenthen in Wales to the head of the Severn Estuary at Gloucester (Morgan 1882; Boon 1980; Skellern et al. 2008). Flooding was most severe around Burnham-on-Sea, Kingston Seymour, and Newport. The greatest death toll appears to be centered on Burnham-on-Sea. At Bridgwater, 10 km south of this town, 500 drowned and were buried in a mass grave. Many local churches around Kingston Seymour and Newport record the event with commemorative plaques showing that flood levels were 7.74 and 7.14 m respectively above mean sea level. In the former region, floodwaters 1.5 m deep persisted across the flat marshland for ten days. Many of the lowlands in the upper reaches of the Channel were protected by levees with sluice gates strategically placed to drain water at low tide after heavy rains. It took ten days for rescuers to get to the gates and open them to release the impounded waters.

There are many historical documents reporting the event, which showed many of the characteristics of recent catastrophic tsunami (Anon 1607, 1762; White 1607; Bryant and Haslett 2003). The flood occurred on a clear day and took residents by surprise:

> …for about nine of the morning, the same being most fayrely and brightly spred, many of the inhabitants of these countreys prepared themselves to their affayres then they might see and perceive afar off as it were in the element huge and mighty hilles of water tombling over one another in such sort as if the greatest mountains in the world had overwhelmed the lowe villages or marshy grounds. Sometimes it dazzled many of the spectators that they imagined it had bin some fogge or mist coming with great swiftness towards them and with such a smoke as if mountains were all on fire, and to the view of some it seemed as if myriads of thousands of arrows had been shot forth all at one time. (Mee 1951).

The reference to dazzling, fiery mountains, and myriads of arrows, is similar to accounts of tsunami on the Burin Peninsula, Newfoundland in 1929 where the tsunami crest was shining like car headlights, and in Papua New Guinea in 1998 where the tsunami was frothing and sparkling. In addition the wave approached at great speed:

> …affirmed to have runne …. with a swiftness so incredible, as that no gray-hounde could have escaped by running before them. (Morgan 1882).

Finally, a fully laden 60 tonne ship ready to set sail at Appledore in north Devon was transported from the harbor onto marshland by the wave, a situation that is unlikely if storm conditions were prevailing at the time.

Geomorphic evidence for tsunami in the Channel can be found in the form of transported and imbricated boulders; bedrock sculpturing on coastal platforms and ramps; and, at isolated locations, wholesale erosion of the coastal landscape (Bryant and Haslett 2007). Features of bedrock sculpturing are ephemeral, but telling. At Ifracombe, 30 cm high flutes are cut into slate beds at a low 5° angle aligned with the direction of tsunami approach (Fig. 7.17). These smaller flutes are superimposed upon sail-like structures about 5 m high having the same orientation. The flutes give the sails a cockscomb-like appearance similar to those in Figs. 3.24 and 4.14 linked to mega-tsunami. At Ogmore, erosion has cut through beds dipping 5° seaward producing

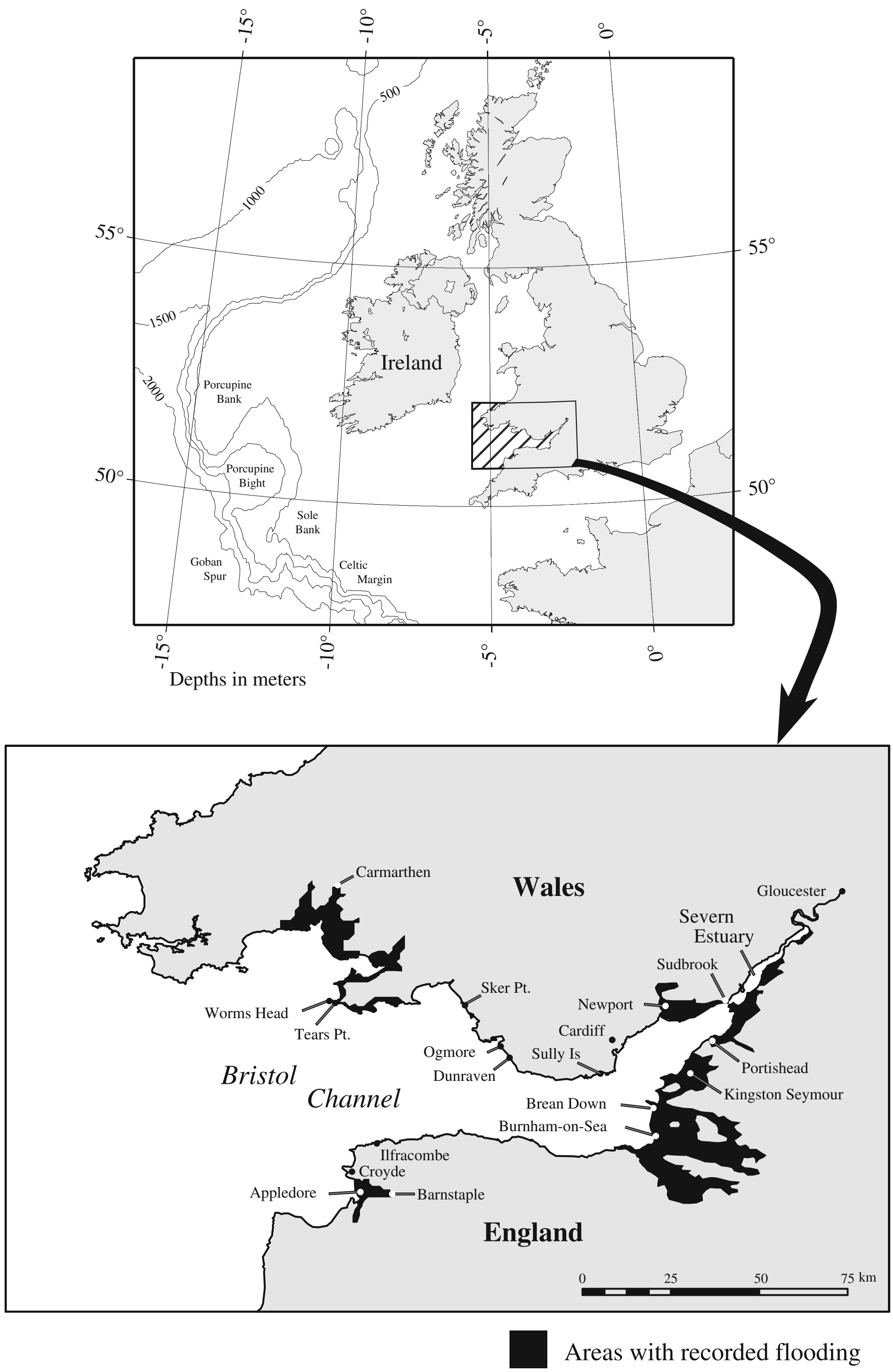


Fig. 7.16 Location map of the Bristol Channel, U.K. *Black* area shows extent of the 1607 flooding

a shallow vortex pool with a central plug (Fig. 7.18). This feature is similar to those produced along the New South Wales coast by mega-tsunami (Fig. 3.21). Hummocky topography representing the presence of a myriad of vortices exists on a ramped surface rising above the level of high tides at Worms Head. Finally, there are indications that tsunami have reshaped some of the rocky coastline in the channel. At Sully Island west of Cardiff, Triassic Red Beds overlie Carboniferous Limestone. Here, a raised platform surface 3–4 m above high-tide mark has been eroded with removal of the weaker Red Beds. At Ball Rock, 0.5 km up the channel and sheltered by Sully Island from storm waves, erosion has generated an inverted toothbrush-shaped headland (Fig. 7.19) similar to those generated by high velocity

Fig. 7.17 Fluting in bedrock at Ifracombe, Devon, U.K

Fig. 7.18 Shallow vortex pool with central plug at Ogmore, south Wales

tsunami flow along the New South Wales coast of Australia (Fig. 3.23).

Also relevant are numerous deposits of boulders around the channel and estuary (Bryant and Haslett 2007). The characteristics of these boulders and the velocities and wave heights required to move them are summarized in Table 7.2. The latter are calculated using the equations presented in Chap. 3. The largest boulder in the coastal zone is found at Brean Down and weighs 132 tonnes. It requires a tsunami wave only 5.3 m high to move it as opposed to a storm wave 21.3 m high. Because of its flat profile, the boulder with the greatest resistance to flow—found at Tears Point—requires a tsunami height of 8. 4 m and a storm wave height of 33.6 m to transport it. The highest storm waves measured in the channel are much less than these heights. The 1:50 year wave height is about 10 m at the ocean end of the channel, 4.7 m at sites like Brean Down and Tears Point half way up the Channel, and 3.5 m at the entrance to the Severn Estuary. In contrast, theoretical tsunami wave heights required to move the boulders increase inland from 4 m at the ocean end to 6 m at the beginning of the Severn Estuary. This increase is inversely proportional to the height of storm waves and the width of the channel—the latter being a result that would be

Fig. 7.19 Inverted toothbrush-shaped promontory at Ball Rock near Sully Island, south Wales

Table 7.2 Boulder dimensions and inferred tsunami flow characteristics at various sites around the Bristol Channel and Severn Estuary, U.K

Area	Site	A-axis (m)	B-axis (m)	C-axis (m)	Volume (m^3)	Weight (tonnes)	Velocity of run-up (m s^{-1})	Distance inland (km)	Height of Tsunami at shore (m)	Breaking storm-wave height (m)
Severn Estuary	Sudbrook	4.5	3.6	0.7	11.2	25.6	16.2	4.9	6.1	24.4
	Portishead	2.6	2.5	0.2	1.5	3.4	14.9	4.0	5.7	22.7
Inner Bristol channel	Brean Down	5.2	4.8	2.1	51.4	132.0	14.5	3.7	5.3	21.3
	Sully Island	2.2	1.6	0.3	0.9	2.3	11.8	2.1	3.7	14.9
	Dunraven Bay	2.9	2.8	0.6	5.2	13.3	13.8	3.2	4.8	19.3
	Ogmore	4.9	3.1	1.1	15.8	40.6	13.5	3.1	4.6	18.6
	Sker Point	4.4	4.1	0.9	15.3	41.5	18.1	6.7	8.4	33.6
Outer Bristol channel	Tears Point	2.1	2.1	0.4	1.8	4.7	12.3	2.4	3.8	15.4
	Croyde	3.0	2.3	0.7	4.5	11.8	12.4	2.5	3.9	15.7

Source Bryant and Haslett (2007)

expected as a tsunami travelled up a funnel-shaped channel. Maximum run-up velocities reach 16.2 m s^{-1} at the entrance to the Severn Estuary. These velocities are in the range needed for bedrock sculpturing. When the tsunami heights derived from boulders are inserted into Eq. 2.14, the wave could have penetrated 2.5 and 6.7 km across the lowlands of Outer and Inner Bristol Channel respectively. In the Severn Estuary upstream from Sudbrook, the wave could have reached 4.9 km inland. These values agree with the observations of the extent of flooding (Bryant and Haslett 2003; Haslett and Bryant 2005)

There are other characteristics besides hydrodynamic ones that implicate tsunami as the mode of transport. Table 7.3 catalogues each site according to the ten characteristics of boulder deposits indicative of tsunami transport (Bryant and Haslett 2007). Three locations: Dunraven, Tears Point, and Brean Down have nine of these ten characteristics. The fact that boulders are deposited in groups, have not been flicked into position by storm waves, show signs of lateral transport and have imbrications that match the approach of the tsunami wave are strong indicators that a tsunami entered the channel and began to move large boulders. One of the best sites showing evidence for a tsunami occurs at Dunraven. Here, the boulders occur in a train, are clearly imbricated against each other, and do not show evidence of percussion at contacts—all features indicative of suspension transport (Fig. 7.20). Hydrodynamically, the largest boulder here requires a storm wave of 19.3 m in height, but a tsunami wave only 4.8 m high. In addition, two rock types are mixed together showing that boulders have not simply fallen from the cliffs, but have been moved laterally inland. This site is more intriguing in that isolated boulders, deposited on the adjacent beach through cliff retreat, all begin shoreward of the deposit as if the beach were swept clean of boulders at one point in time commensurate with deposition of the boulder train. Rates of

Table 7.3 Proportion of boulders showing tsunami-transport characteristics, Bristol Channel, U.K

Characteristic of tsunami transported boulders	Sudbrook	Portishead	Brean down	Sully Island	Dunraven	Ogmore	Sker point	Tears point	Croyde	Number of sites showing characteristic (out of 9)
Deposited in groups	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	9
Only boulders	✔	✔		✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	7
Imbricated and contact-supported				✔	✔		✔	✔		4
Evidence of suspension transport				✔	✔		✔	✔		4
Evidence of lateral transport	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔		✔	✔		7
Above the storm wave limit		✔					✔	✔	✔	4
Not flicked by storm waves	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	9
Hydrodynamic determinations exclude storms	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔			7
Imbrication matches direction of Tsunami approach	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔		✔	✔	✔	8
Other nearby signatures of Tsunami				✔	✔	✔		✔		4
Total number of characteristics (out of 10)	6	7	5	9	9	4	9	9	5	

Source Bryant and Haslett (2007)

cliff retreat along this coast range from 0.30 to 34 m yr^{-1} (Williams and Davies 1987). The coast, in general, has retreated 120 m between 1590 and 1990. At Dunraven, the cliff has retreated 111 m from the seaward margin of the scattered boulders on the beach (Bryant and Haslett 2007). Based on these data, it appears that the cliff in Dunraven Bay was positioned at the current seaward margin of the boulder lag around AD 1634–1672 and that the imbricated boulders in Fig. 7.20 were transported by a high-energy event prior to this time, but not earlier than 1590. The 1607 flood event fits within these temporal constraints.

A possible trigger for a tsunami in this region is most likely an earthquake or submarine slide, or a combination of both. Indeed, there is at least one historic account of an earth tremor on the morning of January 30, 1607 (Disney 2005). The steep continental slope offshore of Ireland has a number of locations where large slope failures have occurred—such as the Celtic Margin, Goban Spur, Sole Bank, Porcupine Bank and Porcupine Bight—that could have generated tsunami that could have reached the Bristol Channel at this time (Kenyon 1987). Recently, large failures have been studied in the Rockall Trough (Øvrebø et al. 2005), Porcupine Bight (Huvenne et al. 2002) and elsewhere along the continental slope (Evans et al. 2005). The quest is to map and date these slides.

7.7 The Risk in the World's Oceans

7.7.1 Other Volcanic Islands

Large debris avalanches are now known to be associated with at least two other mid-ocean volcano complexes, La Réunion in the West Indian Ocean and Tristan da Cunha in the South Atlantic Ocean (Fig. 7.2). On Réunion, the Grand Brule slide fans out from the east coast. It consists of four nested submarine landslides that have reached depths of 0.5, 1.1, 2.2, and 4.4 km below sea level (Whelan and Kelletat 2003). The Tristan da Cunha complex consists of three volcanoes rising 3,500 m from the sea floor (Holcomb and

Fig. 7.20 Imbricated boulder train at the eastern end of Dunraven Beach, south Wales

Searle 1991). All three of these islands are bound by near-vertical cliffs 150–500 m high. In places, these cliffs form amphitheaters that appear to be the headwalls of former landslides. The largest of these occurs on the northwest side of Tristan da Cunha itself and is associated with a debris avalanche more than 100 m thick, covering an area of about 1,200 km^2 and having an estimated volume of 150 km^3. The slide has been tentatively dated as younger than 100,000 years.

If amphitheater forms in cliffs or a stellate-shape island are the signatures of former landslides (Whelan and Kelletat 2003), then this process could have removed between 10 and 50 % of the exposed portion of most volcanic islands. For example, in the Pacific Ocean such features appear on American and Western Samoa, Tahiti, the Society chain, and the Marquesas Group (Keating 1998; Holcomb and Searle 1991) (Fig. 7.2). On these islands, the highest sea cliffs do not face the prevailing winds or swell but are protected from marine erosion by reefs. On the island of Tutuila in the Samoan Islands and on the islands of the Manua Group up to half of the volcanic complex is missing. On the Samoan islands, SeaMARC II side-scan sonar reveals profuse slump blocks, chaotic slumps, landslide sheet flows, turbidites, and avalanche debris flows. Landslides have also removed large portions of the upper parts of Guam in the Mariana Islands and of Rarotonga, Mangaia, and Aiutaki in the Cook Islands. As well, the western half of Volcán Ecuador in the Galápagos Islands is missing. In the Atlantic Ocean, the Cape Verde group and the Island of St. Helena also have marked sea cliffs, while in the Caribbean Sea large headwall scars are evident on the westward sides of Dominca, St. Lucia, and St. Vincent Islands in the Lesser Antilles. The Azores Islands are also faceted with amphitheater scars. In the Indian Ocean, large landslides can be inferred from Gough, Marion, Prince Edward, Amsterdam, St. Paul, Bouvetoya, Possession, and Peter I Islands.

Nor do volcanoes have to emerge above sea level to have undergone failure. The seas are pockmarked by numerous atolls, guyots (eroded volcanic islands), and seamounts evincing amphitheater and stellate forms similar to the above (Fairbridge 1950). Mass wasting is one of the major mechanisms reducing high volcanic islands to guyots. Mapping of submerged guyots on the Hawaiian Ridge shows the same density of landslides as present around the main islands. There are approximately a thousand seamounts higher than 1,000 m in the Pacific Ocean (Holcomb and Searle 1991). Over 300 of these seamounts lie along the Mariana Island arc in the west Pacific (Fig. 7.2). Many seamounts show extensive turbidites on their flanks and have the potential to generate landslides 20–50 km^3 in size. The perceived view of an uneroded circular or elliptical atoll is also illusionary. For example, on Johnston Atoll in the Line Islands south of Hawaii, one or more major landslides have removed much of the southern margin. Blocks of carbonate up to a kilometer in size have been detected on the adjacent seabed, which in places has been infilled to a depth of 1,500 m. Ninety-five percent of atolls are in fact polygonal in shape, with deep embayments cut into at least one seaward flank (Stoddart 1965). If the aprons around these features are signs of past landslides, then such deposits cover 10 % of the ocean. Whenever there has been a failure, there has been the potential for a tsunami. Whelan and Kelletat (2003) estimate that over the past 2 million years that there have been at least 100 mega-tsunami generated by landslides off volcanoes.

7.7.2 Other Topography

Other topography besides volcanoes can also produce submarine landslides. These include river deltas, passive continental margins, submarine canyons, deep-sea fans, the walls of deep trenches near subduction zones, and the slopes of mid-ocean ridges (Moore 1978). Some of the sites where slides have been identified as originating from these types of topography are mapped in Fig. 7.2. Major river deltas are prone to landslides because of the volume of sediment continually being built up on their submerged distal ends. The rivers with the largest sediment loads—the Amazon, Mississippi, Nile, and Indus—have built up relatively steep fans more than 10 km thick (Masson 1996; Masson et al. 1996). The Amazon Fan consists of several major slide deposits, the largest of which covers an area of 32,000 km^2. Two debris flows have been mapped in 1,000–3,000 m depth of water off the Mississippi delta. The larger of the two is 100 km wide and 300 km long. There are also the two mega-turbidite deposits in the Mediterranean Sea mentioned in Chap. 1 with volumes of 300–600 km^3 (Rothwell et al. 2000).

Passive continental margins lie along tectonically inactive edges of crustal plates (Moore 1978). Many of the slides emanating from these margins are derived from sedimentary units that are only 10–100 m thick. Sediment has accumulated over time along these margins through subaerial erosion. Failure occurs on slopes parallel to bedding planes. While the size of these slides is small compared to the Hawaiian ones, the widespread nature of the evidence is worrisome. For example, the eastern seaboard of the United States has at least four large submarine canyons cutting through the shelf edge, leading to distributary fans on the abyssal plain. Levees on the fans indicate that large debris or gravity flows have occurred often. Slides are numerous off the west coast of Africa, where hummocky slides, block fields, debris flows, and turbidity deposits have all been mapped. Few submarine slides have yet been detected off the west coast of North America, mainly because bathymetry has not been mapped in detail. However, a 6.8 km^2 slide with a volume of 1 km^3 occurred on April 27, 1975 off the fjord delta at Kitimat, British Columbia (Lipman et al. 1988). The resulting tsunami had a run-up height of 8.2 m. A 75 km long slide also has been detected off the Monterey Fan in California (Lipman et al. 1988). One area that has been mapped well is the continental slope on the north side of the Aleutian Islands facing the Bering Sea (Carlson et al. 1991). The area is relatively quiet seismically but is underlain by gas hydrates or a zone of sedimentary weakness. Here, mass failures up to 55 km long and containing blocks 1–2 km across have been identified emanating from some of the largest canyons in the world on low slopes of 0.5–1.8°. The volume of the landslides ranges between 20 and 195 km^3.

The sides of deep ocean trenches are only susceptible to submarine slides if ocean sediment has accumulated here as part of a tectonic process. Thick sediment layers can pile up on oversteepened slopes as the result of tectonic off scraping (Moore 1978). Slides from trenches have been reported in the Sunda, Peru–Chile, Puerto Rican, and eastern and western Aleutian trenches. One of the largest slides occurs in the Sunda Trench off the Bassein River in Burma (Moore 1978). The slide covers an area of 3,940 km^2 and has a volume of 960 km^3. The slide was triggered either by an earthquake or by overloading of sediments brought down the Irrawaddi River at lower sea levels. Along other trenches, localized slides of 10 km length appear to be a common feature. Where crustal plates are sliding past each other, slides can develop in subduction zones. The Ranger slide off the coast of California is one of the biggest of this type identified to date (Moore 1978). It covers an area of 125 km^2 and incorporates 12 km^3 of material. Even mid-ocean ridges can generate slides. Along the Mid-Atlantic Ridge, one such slide, comprising 19 km^3 of material, was caused by the failure of a 4 km × 5 km block on the flank of a mountain bordering the rift (Tucholke 1992)

More worrisome are the coasts where no mapping has been carried out. Most of the coastline surrounding the Indian Ocean has not been mapped in enough detail to identify individual slides. Even in a developed country such as Australia, parts of the east coast have only been mapped since 1990 using side-scan sonar. This coastline is passive and assumed to have low seismicity. However, numerous slides off the continental shelf have been identified (Jenkins and Keene 1992; Clarke et al. 2012). One of the largest measures 10 km × 20 km, and is located 50 km south of Sydney. The age of the latter slide is unknown, but there is now substantial evidence for the presence of recent large tsunami along the adjacent coastline (Young et al. 1995). As described in Chap. 4, the signatures of tsunami are common elsewhere around Australia, but unfortunately any link to submarine slides remains speculative without detailed mapping.

References

Anon, *Lamentable Newes Out of Monmouthshire in Wales* (Pamphlet Published in London, London, 1607)

Anon, The 1607 flood. Gentleman's Mag **32**, 306 (1762)

S. Bondevik, J.I. Svendsen, G. Johnsen, J. Mangerud, P.E. Kaland, The Storegga tsunami along the Norwegian coast, its age and run-up. Boreas **26**, 29–53 (1997a)

S. Bondevik, J.I. Svendsen, J. Mangerud, Tsunami sedimentary facies deposited by the Storegga tsunami in shallow marine basins and coastal lakes, western Norway. Sedimentology **44**, 1115–1131 (1997b)

G.C. Boon, Caerleon and the Gwent Levels in early historic times, in *Archaeology and coastal change. Society of Antiquities Occasional Papers*, vol. 1, ed. by F.H. Thompson (1980), pp. 24–36

T. Boulesteix, A. Hildenbrand, V. Soler, X. Quidelleur, P.-Y. Gillot, Coeval giant landslides in the Canary Islands: implications for global, regional and local triggers of giant flank collapses on oceanic volcanoes. J. Volcanol. Geoth. Res. **257**, 90–98 (2013)

E. Bryant, *Natural Hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2005)

E. Bryant, S.K. Haslett, Was the AD 1607 coastal flooding event in the Severn Estuary and Bristol Channel (UK) due to a tsunami? Archaeol. Severn Estuary **13**, 163–167 (2003)

E.A. Bryant, S. Haslett, Catastrophic wave erosion, Bristol Channel, United Kingdom: impact of Tsunami? J. Geol. **115**, 253–269 (2007)

M. Canals, G. Lastrasa, R. Urgelesa, J.L. Casamora, J. Mienertb, A. Cattaneoc, M. De Batistd, H. Haflidasone, Y. Imbod, J.S. Labergb, J. Locatf, D. Longg, O. Longvah, D.G. Massoni, N. Sultanj, F. Trincardic, P. Brynk, Slope failure dynamics and impacts from

seafloor and shallow sub-seafloor geophysical data: case studies from the COSTA project. Mar Geol **213**, 9–72 (2004)
R.R. Carlson, H.A. Karl, B.D. Edwards, Mass sediment failure and transport features revealed by acoustic techniques, Beringia margin, Bering Sea, Alaska. Mar. Geotechnol. **10**, 33–51 (1991)
J.C. Carracedo, S. Day, H. Guillou, E. Rodríguez Badiola, J.A. Canas, F.J. Pérez Torrado, Hotspot volcanism close to a passive continental margin: The Canary Islands. Geol. Mag. **135**, 591–604 (1998)
J.C. Carracedo, S. Day, H. Guillou, F.J. Pérez Torrado, Giant Quaternary landslides in the evolution of La Palma and El Hierro, Canary Islands. J. Volcanol. Geoth. Res. **94**, 169–190 (1999)
J.C. Carracedo, S. Day, *A possible tsunami breccia deposit on Fuerteventura, Canary Islands* (International Workshop on Immature Oceanic Islands, La Palma, 1997), 18–25 Sep
S. Clarke, T. Hubble, D. Airey, P. Yu, R. Boyd, J. Keene, N. Exon, J. Gardner, Submarine landslides on the upper Southeast Australian passive continental margin: Preliminary findings, in *Submarine Mass Movements and their Consequences. Advances in Natural and Technological Hazards Research*, vol. 31, ed. by Y.Yamada (Springer, Netherlands, 2012), pp. 55–66
A.G. Dawson, Geomorphological effects of tsunami run-up and backwash. Geomorphology **10**, 83–94 (1994)
A.G. Dawson, Linking tsunami deposits, submarine slides and offshore earthquakes. Quatern. Int. **60**, 119–126 (1999)
A.G. Dawson, D. Long, D.E. Smith, The Storegga slides: evidence from eastern Scotland for a possible tsunami. Mar. Geol. **82**, 271–276 (1988)
M. Disney, An Atlantic tsunami created our greatest environmental disaster, and it could happen again. The Times (2005) 4 Jan 2005
D. Evans, Z. Harrison, P.M. Shannon, J.S. Laberg, T. Nielsen, S. Ayers, R. Holmes, R.J. Hoult, B. Lindberg, H. Haflidason, D. Long, A. Kuijpers, E.S. Andersen, P. Bryn, Paleo Slides and other mass failures of Pliocene to Pleistocene age along the Atlantic continental margin of NW Europe. Marine Pet. Geol. **22**, 1131–1148 (2005)
R.W. Fairbridge, Landslide patterns on oceanic volcanoes and atolls. Geogr. J. **115**, 82–88 (1950)
J. Hall, On the revolutions of the earth's surface. Trans. R. Soc. Edinb. **7**, 169–212 (1812)
C.B. Harbitz, Model simulations of tsunamis generated by the Storegga Slides. Mar. Geol. **105**, 1–21 (1992)
S.K. Haslett, E. Bryant, The AD 1607 coastal flood in the Bristol Channel and Severn Estuary: historical records from Devon and Cornwall (UK). Archaeol. Severn Estuary **15**, 163–167 (2005)
B.C. Heezen, M. Ewing, Turbidity currents and submarine slumps, and the 1929 Grand Banks earthquake. Am. J. Sci. **250**, 849–873 (1952)
R.F. Henry, T.S. Murty, Model studies of the effects of the Storegga Slide tsunami. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **10**, 51–62 (1992)
R.T. Holcomb, R.C. Searle, Large landslides from oceanic volcanoes. Mar. Geotechnol. **10**, 19–32 (1991)
V.A.I. Huvenne, P.F. Croker, J.-P. Henriet, A refreshing 3D view of an ancient sediment collapse and slope failure. Terra Nova **14**, 33–40 (2002)
Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission, Historical tsunami database for the Pacific, 47 BC–1998 AD. Tsunami Laboratory, Institute of Computational Mathematics and Mathematical Geophysics, Siberian Division Russian Academy of Sciences, Novosibirsk, Russia (1999), http://tsun.sscc.ru/HTDBPac1/
E. Jansen, S. Befring, T. Bugge, T. Eidvin, H. Holtedahl, H.P. Sejrup, Large submarine slides on the Norwegian continental margin: sediments, transport and timing. Mar. Geol. **78**, 77–107 (1987)
C.J. Jenkins, J.B. Keene, Submarine slope failures of the southeast Australian continental slope: a thinly sedimented margin. Deep-Sea Res. **39**, 121–136 (1992)
B.H. Keating, Side-scan sonar images of submarine landslides on the flanks of atolls and guyots. Mar. Geodesy **21**, 124–144 (1998)
B.H. Keating, C.E. Helsley, The ancient shorelines of Lanai, Hawaii, revisited. Sed. Geol. **150**, 3–15 (2002)
B.H. Keating, P. Fryer, R. Batiza, G.W. Boehlert (eds.), *Seamounts, Islands and Atolls,* vol. 43 (American Geophysical Union Monograph, Washington, 1987)
N.H. Kenyon, Mass-wasting features on the continental slope of northwest Europe. Mar. Geol. **74**, 57–77 (1987)
P.W. Lipman, W.R. Normark, J.G. Moore, J.B. Wilson, C.E. Gutmacher, The giant submarine Alika Debris Slide, Mauna Loa, Hawaii. J. Geophys. Res. **93**, 4279–4299 (1988)
P.A. Lockridge, Nonseismic phenomena in the generation and augmentation of tsunamis. Nat. Hazards **3**, 403–412 (1990)
D. Long, D.E. Smith, A.G. Dawson, A Holocene tsunami deposit in eastern Scotland. J. Quat. Sci. **4**, 61–66 (1989)
D.G. Masson, N.Y. Kenyon, P.P.E. Weaver, Slides, debris flows, and turbidity currents, in *Oceanography: An Illustrated Guide,* ed. by C.P. Summerhayes, S.A. Thorpe. (Manson Publishing, London, 1996), pp. 136–151
D.G. Masson, Catastrophic collapse of the volcanic island of Hierro 15 ka ago and the history of landslides in the Canary Islands. Geology **24**, 231–234 (1996)
D.G. Masson, C.B. Harbitz, R.B. Wynn, G. Pedersen, F. Løvholt, Submarine landslides: processes, triggers and hazard prediction. Philos. Trans. R. Soc. **364A**, 2009–2039 (2006)
A. Mee, *Monmouthshire* (Hodder and Stoughton, London, 1951)
D.J. Miller, Giant waves in Lituya Bay, Alaska. United States Geological Survey Professional Paper 354-C (1960), pp 51–86
D.G. Moore, Submarine slides, in *Rockslides and avalanches, 1: Natural phenomena*, ed. by B. Voight (Elsevier Scientific, Amsterdam, 1978), pp. 563–604
G.W. Moore, J.G. Moore, Large-scale bedforms in boulder gravel produced by giant waves in Hawaii. Geol. Soc. Am. Spec. Pap. **229**, 101–110 (1988)
J.G. Moore, D.A. Clague, R.T. Holcomb, P.W. Lipman, W.R. Normark, M.E. Torresan, Prodigious submarine landslides on the Hawaiian Ridge. J. Geophys. Res. **94**, 17465–17484 (1989)
J.G. Moore, W.R. Normark, R.T. Holcomb, Giant Hawaiian landslides. Ann. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci. **22**, 119–144 (1994a)
J.G. Moore, W.B. Bryan, K.R. Ludwig, Chaotic deposition by a giant wave, Molokai, Hawaii. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. **106**, 962–967 (1994b)
O. Morgan, Goldcliff and the ancient Roman inscribed stone found there. Monmouthshire and Caerleon Antiquarian Association Paper (1882), pp. 1–17
National Geophysical Data Center, (NGDC/WDS) Global Historical Tsunami Database. Boulder, Colorado, (2013), http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/tsu_db.shtml
L.K. Øvrebø, P.D.W. Haughton, P.M. Shannon, Temporal and spatial variations in Late Quaternary slope sedimentation along the undersupplied margins of the Rockall Trough, offshore west Ireland. Norw. J. Geol. **85**, 279–294 (2005)
G. Pararas-Carayannis, Analysis of mechanism of the giant tsunami generation in Lituya Bay. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **17**, 193–206 (1999), http://library.lanl.gov/tsunami/ts173.pdf
E. Pelinovsky, A. Poplavsky, Simplified model of tsunami generation by submarine landslides. Phys. Chem. Earth **21**, 13–17 (1996)
D.J.W. Piper, P. Cochonat, M.L. Morrison, The sequence of events around the epicentre of the 1929 Grand Banks earthquake: initiation of debris flows and turbidity current inferred from sidescan sonar. Sedimentology **46**, 79–97 (1999)
D.M. Price, E.A. Bryant, R.W. Young, Thermoluminescence evidence for the deposition of coastal sediments by tsunami wave action. Quatern. Int. **56**, 123–128 (1999)

R.G. Rothwell, M.S. Reeder, G. Anastasakis, D.A.V. Stow, J. Thomson, G. Kähler, Low sea-level stand emplacement of megaturbidites in the western and eastern Mediterranean Sea. Sediment. Geol. **135**, 75–88 (2000)

F.P. Shepard, Depth changes in Sagami Bay during the great Japanese earthquake. J. Geol. **41**, 527–536 (1933)

D.E. Smith, S. Shi, R.A. Cullingford, A.G. Dawson, S. Dawson, C.R. Firth, I.D.L. Foster, P.T. Fretwell, B.A. Haggart, L.K. Holloway, D. Long, The Holocene Storegga slide tsunami in the United Kingdom. Quatern. Sci. Rev. **23**, 2291–2321 (2004)

A. R. Skellern, S. K. Haslett, S. P. Open, The potential area affected by the 1607 flood event in the Severn Estuary, UK: A preliminary investigation. Archaeol. Severn Estuary **18**, 59–65 (2008)

T.J. Sokolowski (1999) The Great Alaskan Earthquake and tsunamis of 1964 http://wcatwc.arh.noaa.gov/64quake.htm

D.R. Stoddart, The shape of atolls. Mar. Geol. **3**, 369–383 (1965)

B.E. Tucholke, Massive submarine rockslide in the rift-valley wall of the Mid-Atlantic Ridge. Geology **20**, 129–132 (1992)

M.P. Tuttle, A. Ruffman, T. Anderson, H. Jeter, Distinguishing tsunami from storm deposits in Eastern North America: the 1929 Grand Banks Tsunami versus the 1991 Halloween Storm. Seismol. Res. Lett. **75**, 117–131 (2004)

M. Urlaub, P.J. Talling, D.G. Masson, Timing and frequency of large submarine landslides: implications for understanding triggers and future geohazard. Quatern. Sci. Rev. **72**, 63–82 (2013)

S.N. Ward, Landslide tsunami. J. Geophys. Res. **106**, 11201–11215 (2001)

P. Watts, Wavemaker curves for tsunamis generated by underwater landslides. J. Waterw. Port Coast. Ocean Eng. **124**, 127–137 (1998)

M. Whelan, The night the sea smashed Lord's Cove. Canadian Geographic Nov/Dec (1994), pp. 70–73

F. Whelan, D. Kelletat, Submarine slides on volcanic islands–a source for mega-tsunamis in the Quaternary. Prog. Phys. Geogr. **27**, 198–216 (2003)

E. White, *A True Report of Certaine Wonderfulle Overflowings of Waters, now Lately in Summerset-Shire, Norfolke and other Places of England* (Pamphlet Printed in London, London, 1607)

A.T. Williams, P. Davies, Rates and mechanisms of coastal cliff erosion in Lower Lias rocks, in *Coastal Sediments '87*, vol. 2, ed. by N.C. Kraus (American Society Civil Engineers, New York, 1987), pp. 1855–1870

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, E. Spassov, The imprint of tsunami in Quaternary coastal sediments of southeastern Australia. Bul. Geophys. J. **21**, 24–31 (1995)

8 Volcanic Eruptions

8.1 Introduction

Historically, volcanoes cause 4.6 % of tsunami and 9.1 % of the deaths attributable to this hazard, totaling 41,002 people (Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999; National Geophysical Data Center 2013). Two events caused this disproportionately large death toll: the Krakatau eruption of August 26–27, 1883 (36,000 deaths) (Fig. 8.1) and the Unzen, Japanese eruption of May 21, 1792 (4,300 deaths). Tsunami account for 20–25 % of the deaths attributable to volcanic eruptions. The eruption of Santorini around 1470 BC is not included in these statistics because of a lack of written record. Santorini and the Krakatau eruption of 1883 will be discussed in more detail subsequently in this chapter. The main locations of the 65 tsunami linked to eruptions historically are plotted in Fig. 8.2 (Latter 1981; Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission 1999). The vast majority of these are restricted to the Japanese-Kuril Islands and the Philippine-Indonesian Archipelagos. Both of these regions form island arcs where one plate is being subducted beneath another. Explosive volcanism with caldera formation is a common occurrence in these regions. Other isolated cases of eruptions that have generated tsunami are associated with hot spots beneath the Pacific Plate. Unfortunately, volcano-induced tsunami neither have been recorded well nor described except for a few events such Krakatau in 1883.

8.2 Causes of Volcano-Induced Tsunami

There are ten mechanisms whereby volcanic eruptions can generate tsunami (Latter 1981). These together with their major events are summarized in Table 8.1. Submarine landslides sloughed off from non-erupting volcanoes are not included in this table because they were dealt with in the preceding chapter. Many of the events listed in Table 8.1 were catastrophic. The majority of volcanic eruptions are accompanied by seismic tremors. If these are substantial enough and the volcano lies near or in the ocean, the tremors can trigger tsunami. For example, the eruption of Vesuvius in the southeast corner of the Bay of Naples on the west coast of Italy, in August AD 79, was preceded by a tsunami induced by seismic activity. Pliny the Elder, the commander of the Roman fleet at Misenum, sailed to the coast at the base of the mountain to rescue inhabitants 5 days before the final eruption. He could not get near the shore because of a sudden retreat of the shoreline. Two of the largest events due to seismic activity occurred on the January 10, 1878 and January 8, 1933 with the eruptions of Yasour Volcano in the New Hebrides and Severgin Volcano in the Kuril Islands, respectively. The respective tsunami reached 17 and 9 m above sea level.

Pyroclastic flows, or *nuées ardentes,* are generated by the collapse under gravity of hot vertically ejected ash clouds (Blong 1984). When these reach the ocean surface, they spread out rapidly as density flows that can either displace water or transfer energy to the ocean and generate a tsunami (Latter 1981). The size of the resulting tsunami depends upon the density of the flow. If the density is less than seawater, then the ash cloud rides the surface of the ocean, generating a small wave. However, if the flow is denser than seawater, the cloud will sink to the bottom of the ocean and will displace water piston-like in front of it. In some cases, these flows can travel tens of kilometers along the seabed. Pyroclastic flows have the potential to generate devastating tsunami remote from the source of the eruption. For example, Tambora in 1815 generated a tsunami 2–4 m high in this manner despite lying 15 km inland. The May 7, 1902 eruption of Mt. Pelée, Martinique produced a *nuée ardente* that swept into the harbor of St. Pierre and generated a tsunami that travelled as far as Fort de France, 19 km away (Lockridge 1988). Two of the largest of these types of events occurred in Indonesia during the eruption of Ruang on March 5, 1871 and Krakatau on August 26–27, 1883, producing tsunami 25 and 10 m high, respectively (Latter 1981).

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_8,

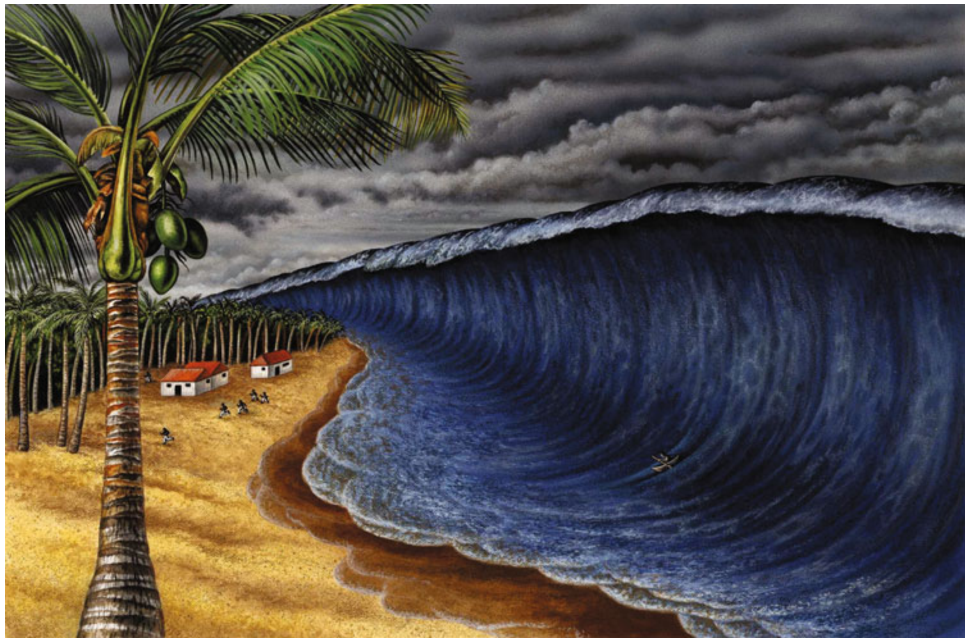


Fig. 8.1 An artist's impression of the tsunami from the third explosion of Krakatau hitting the coast of Anjer Lor at about 10:30 AM on August 27, 1883. ©Lynette Cook

Submarine eruptions within 500 m of the ocean surface can disturb the water column enough to generate a surface tsunami wave (Latter 1981). Below this depth, the weight and volume of the water suppress surface wave formation. Tsunami from this cause rarely propagate more than 150 km from the site of the eruption. One of the largest such tsunami occurred during the eruption of Sakurajima, Japan, on September 9, 1780, when a 6 m high wave was generated. More significant are submarine explosions that occur when ocean water meets the magma chamber. This water is converted instantly to steam. In the process, it produces a violent explosion. Krakatau during its third explosive eruption in 1883 produced a tsunami 40 m high in this manner.

Formation of a caldera during the final stages of an explosive eruption near the sea can permit water to flow rapidly into the depression. This sets up a wave train that can propagate away from the caldera within 5 min. Stratovolcanoes are particularly prone to collapse. In the *Ring-of-Fire* subduction zone around the Pacific Ocean there are hundreds of these types of volcanoes (Lockridge 1988). Krakatau's numerous eruptions produced calderas that may have been responsible for some of the tsunami observed in the Sunda Strait (Latter 1981). A comparable event occurred on Ritter Island, Papua New Guinea, on March 13, 1888. Here, the formation of a caldera 2.5 km in diameter produced a 12–15 m high tsunami. While the initial wave heights radiating out from the caldera can be large, the actual volume of water displaced may be small. In addition, because the height of the wave decays inversely to the square root of the distance travelled, the effect of the tsunami diminishes rapidly away from the point source.

The slopes of a volcano are inherently unstable during eruptions because of earthquakes, inflation, or collapse operating on essentially landforms that are complex rubbish piles of stacked lava flows, weathered soils, and prior debris flows (Keating et al. 1987). Collapsing material can form a debris avalanche that can travel at speeds of 100 m s^{-1}. Horseshoe-shaped scars are left behind as evidence of the failure. The extent of debris avalanching was described in the previous chapter (Whelan and Kelletat 2003). If there have been an estimated 100 mega-tsunami producing events over the past 2 million years, then hundreds of smaller events must have occurred. For small avalanches of 0.1–1.0 km^3 in volume, the travel distance ranges between six and eleven times the elevation of the initial avalanche. For higher volumes, the travel distance can increase to 8–20 times the vertical drop. For example, the collapse of a 2,000 m high volcano could generate a debris avalanche that can travel 16–22 km from its source. Avalanching is a significant hazard associated with volcanoes in Alaska, Kamchatka, Japan, the Philippines, Indonesia, Papua New Guinea, the West Indies, and the Mediterranean Sea. In most cases, the resulting landslide is localized enough to generate small tsunami that are highly directional in their propagation away from the volcano. However, some of the greatest death tolls have been caused by such events. For example, during the eruption on May 21, 1792 of Unzen Volcano, in Japan, 0.34 km^3 of material sloughed off its flank (Blong 1984). The landslide travelled 6.5 km before sweeping into the Ariake Sea, where it generated a tsunami

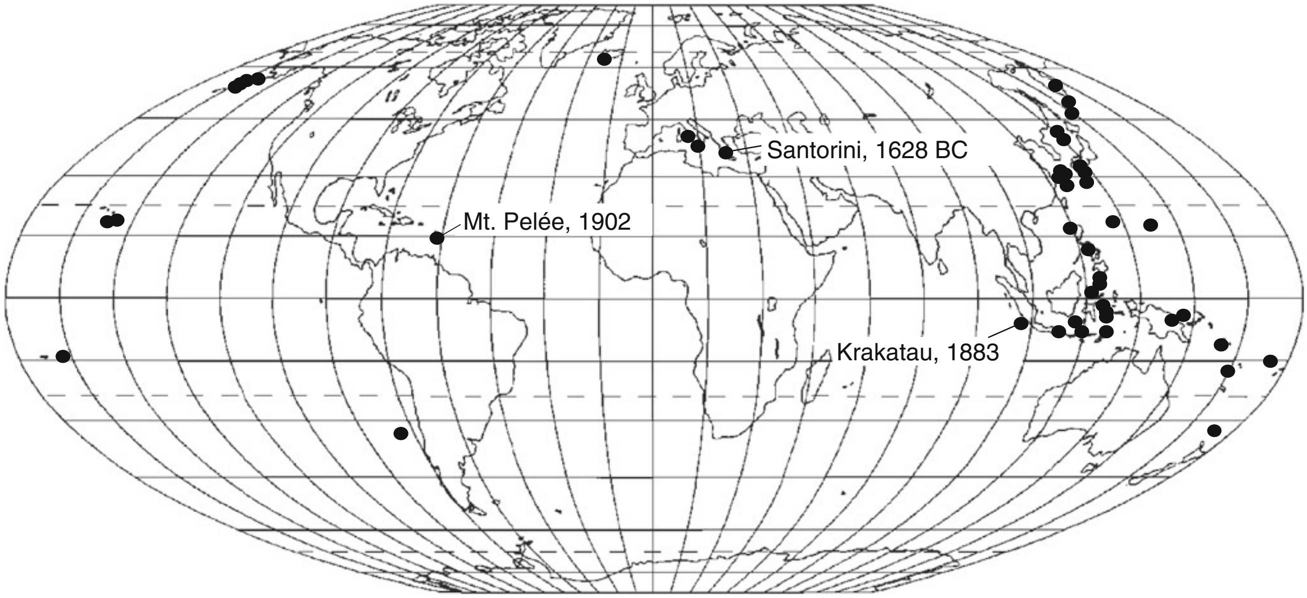


Fig. 8.2 Location of volcanoes that have generated tsunami in recorded history. Based on Latter (1981), and Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999)

Table 8.1 Causes of historical tsunami induced by volcanoes

Mechanism	Percentage of events	Examples	Date	Height (m)
Volcanic earthquakes	22.0	New Hebrides	10 January 1878	17
Pyroclastic flows	20.0	Ruang, Indonesia	5 March 1871	25
		Krakatau, Indonesia	26–27 August 1883	>10
Submarine explosions	19.0	Krakatau, Indonesia	26–27 August 1883	42
		Sakurajima, Japan	9 September 1780	6
Caldera formation	9.0	Ritter Island	13 March 1888	12–15
		Krakatau, Indonesia	26–27 August 1883	2–10
Landslides	7.0	Unzen Volcano, Japan	21 May 1792	6–9
Basal surges	7.0	Taal Volcano, Philippines	numerous	?
Avalanches of hot rock	6.0	Stromboli, Italy	numerous	?
Lahars	4.5	Mt. Pelée, Martinique	5 May 1902	4.5
Atmospheric pressure wave	4.5	Krakatau, Indonesia	26–27 August 1883	<0.5
Lava	1.0	Matavanu Volcano, Samoa	1906–2007	3.0–3.6

Source Based on Latter (1981)

with run-ups 35–55 m above sea level along 77 km of coastline on the Shimabara Peninsula and along the opposite side of the sea, 15 km away. Six thousand houses were destroyed, 1,650 ships were sunk, and 14,524 people lost their lives. Similar-magnitude waves were generated by landslides on Paluweh Island, Indonesia, on August 4, 1928 (160 dead), and recently on Ili Werung Volcano, Indonesia on July 18, 1979 (500 dead) (Latter 1981). Mt. St. Augustine at the entrance to Cook Inlet, Alaska, also has the potential to generate 5–7 m high tsunami through sloughing (Lockridge 1990). Eleven major debris avalanches, occurring at 150–200 year intervals, have originated from this volcano. One of the largest occurred on October 6, 1883. The avalanche swept 4–8 km into Cook Inlet on the north side of the volcano. Within half an hour, a 9 m high tsunami flooded settlements at English Bay, 85 km up the inlet.

Basal surges or lateral blasts are formed when a volcano erupts sideways (Latter 1981). Taal Volcano in Lake Bombon, Philippines, has been subject to at least five basal surge events since 1749. All of the resulting tsunami took lives. Avalanches of hot rock can generate tsunami when ejecta, piled up on the side of an erupting volcano, collapses into the sea. These events occur frequently on Stromboli volcano in Italy. The resulting tsunami are usually localized and have not been associated with any deaths. Lahars are ash deposits that fail after becoming saturated with water (Blong 1984). Failures occur during an eruption because of the displacement of ground water, mixing of ash with water in a crater lake, or melting of snow and ice at the crest of the volcano. When the lahar reaches the ocean, it can generate significant tsunami; however, these are usually localized because the lahar tends to flow down valleys. For example, on May 5, 1902, a 35 m high lahar from Mt. Pelée swept down Rivière Blanche north of the nearby town of St. Pierre (Latter 1981). When it reached the sea, it generated a 4.5 m high tsunami that only affected the lower part of the town, killing one hundred people. Large explosive volcanoes generate a pressure pulse through the atmosphere. Krakatau, in 1883, generated tsunami in the Pacific Ocean, and in Lake Taupo in the middle of the North Island of New Zealand, via this mechanism (Choi et al. 2003). However, nowhere did the tsunami exceed more than 0.5 m in height. The 1955–1956 eruption of Bezymianny on the Kamchatka Peninsula in Russia also generated a global pressure wave, but the resulting tsunami in the Pacific Ocean did not reach more than 0.3 m in height (Latter 1981). Finally, if lava reaches the ocean en masse it can generate tsunami. These events are rare and have only been noted at one or two locations, with no widespread destruction being produced. For example, the lava from the eruption of Matavanu Volcano on Savaii, Samoa in 1907 generated a tsunami 3.0–3.6 m high when it poured into the sea. No deaths were reported.

8.3 Krakatau, August 26–27, 1883

The eruption of Krakatau on August 26–27, 1883 was one of the largest explosive eruptions known to humanity. It is the only eruption for which detailed historical information exists on volcano-induced tsunami. To date, the mechanisms generating tsunami during its eruption are still debated. The volcano lies in the Sunda Strait between Sumatra and Java, Indonesia (Fig. 8.3). The Javanese *Book of Kings* describes an earlier eruption, referring to Krakatau as Mount Kapi (Keys 1999). Then, the volcano exploded and created a sea wave that inundated the land and killed many people throughout the northern part of Sunda Strait. Krakatau had last been active in 1681, and during the 1870s the volcano underwent increased earthquake activity. In May 1883, one vent became active, throwing ash 10 km into the air. By the beginning of August, a dozen Vesuvian-type eruptions had occurred across the island. On August 26th, loud explosions recurred at intervals of 10 min, and a dense tephra cloud rose 25 km above the island (Verbeek 1884). The explosions could be heard throughout the islands of Java and Sumatra. In the morning and later that evening, small tsunami waves 1–2 m in height swept the strait, striking the towns of Telok Betong on Sumatra's Lampong Bay, Tjaringin on the Java coast north of Pepper Bay, and Merak (Fig. 8.3) (Myles 1985). On the morning of August 27th, three horrific explosions occurred (Verbeek 1884; Myles 1985). The first explosion at 5:28 AM destroyed the 130 m peak of Perboewatan, forming a caldera that immediately infilled with seawater and generated a tsunami. At 6:36 AM, the 500 m high peak of Danan exploded and collapsed, sending more seawater into the molten magma chamber of the eruption and producing another tsunami. The third blast, at 9:58 AM, tore the remaining island of Rakata apart. Including ejecta, 9–10 km^3 of solid rock was blown out of the volcano. About 18–21 km^3 of pyroclastic deposits spread out over 300 km^2 to an average depth of 40 meters (Self and Rampino 1981). Fine ash spread over an area of 2.8×10^6 km^2, and thick pumice rafts impeded navigation in the region up to 5 months afterwards. A caldera 6 km in diameter and 270 m deep formed where the central island had once stood. This third blast was the largest sound ever heard by humanity, and was recorded 4,800 km away on the island of Rodriguez in the Indian Ocean and 3,200 km away at Elsey Creek, Northern Territory, Australia (Latter 1981). Windows 150 km away were shattered. The atmospheric shock wave travelled around the world seven times. Barometers in Europe and the United States measured significant oscillations in pressure over 9 days following the blast. The total energy released by the third eruption was equivalent to 200 megatons of TNT. (Kinetic energy for volcanic eruptions and asteroids exploding in the atmosphere or impacting with the ocean is expressed in megatons of TNT. One megaton of TNT is equivalent to 4.185×10^{15} J.)

The two pre-dawn blasts each generated tsunami that drowned thousands in Sunda Strait. The third blast-induced wave was cataclysmic and devastated the adjacent coastline of Java and Sumatra within 30–60 min (Fig. 8.3). The coastline north of the eruption was struck by waves with a maximum run-up height of 42 m (Verbeek 1884; Blong 1984; Myles 1985). The tsunami penetrated 5 km inland over low-lying areas. The largest wave struck the town of Merak. Here, the 15 m high tsunami was increased to 40 m because of the funnel-shaped nature of the bay. The town of Anjer Lor was swamped by an 11 m high wave (Fig. 8.1), the town of Tjaringin by one 23 m in height, and the towns

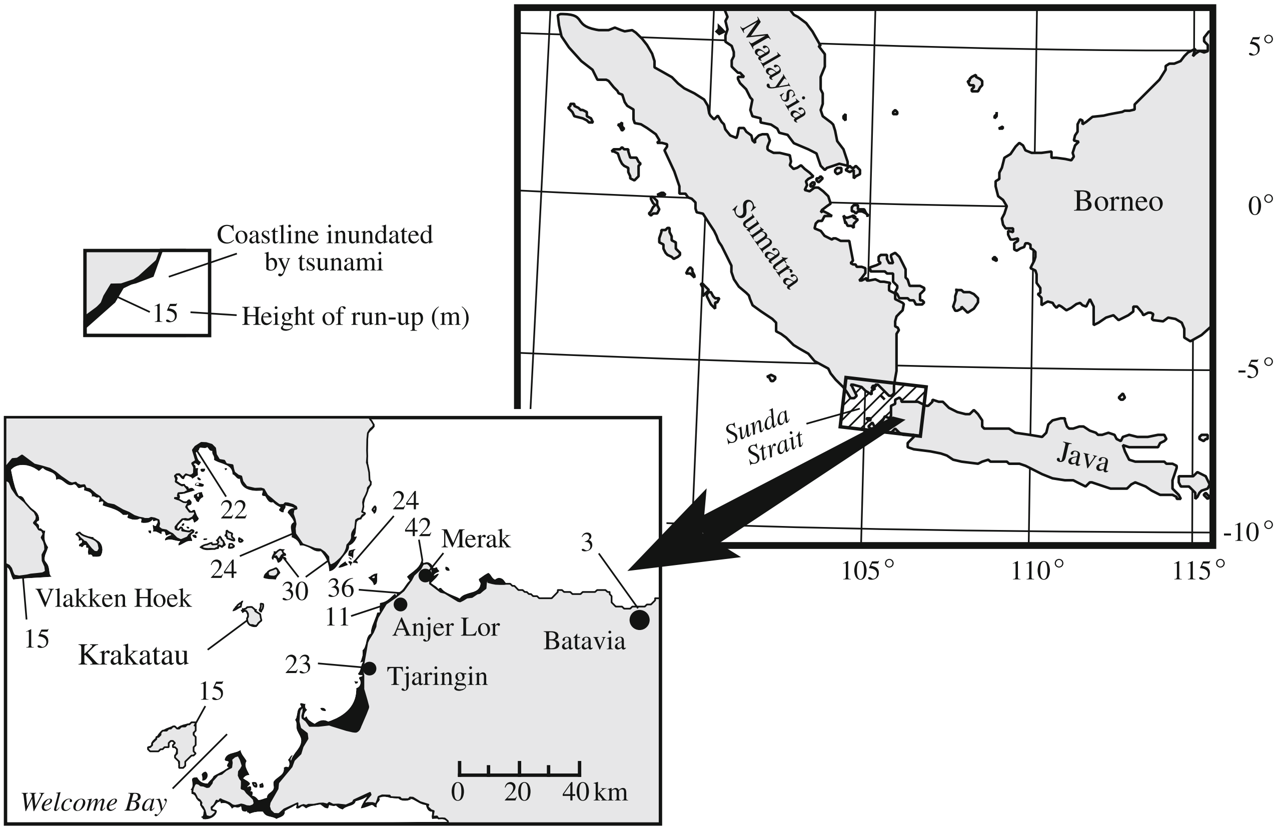


Fig. 8.3 Coastline in the Sunda Strait affected by tsunami following the eruption of Krakatau August 26–27, 1883. Based on Verbeek (1884), Blong (1984), and Myles (1985)

Fig. 8.4 Coral boulder moved by the tsunami generated by the eruption of Krakatau at Anyer, Indonesia. *Source* Dr. Laura Kong, Director of the ITIC (Honolulu)

of Kelimbang and Telok Betong were each struck by a wave 22–24 m high. In the latter town, the Dutch warship *Berouw* was carried 2 km inland and left stranded 10 m above sea level. Coral blocks weighing up to 600 tonnes were moved onshore (Fig. 8.4). Within the Strait, 11 waves rolled in over the next 15 h, while at Batavia (now Jakarta) 14 consistently spaced waves arrived over a period of 36 h. Between 5,000 and 6,000 boats in the strait were sunk. In total, 36,417 people died in major towns and 300 villages were destroyed because of the tsunami.

Within 4 h of the final eruption, a 4 m high tsunami arrived at North West Cape, West Australia 2,100 km away (Bryant and Nott 2001). The wave swept through gaps in the Ningaloo Reef and penetrated 1 km inland over sand dunes. 9 h after the blast, 300 riverboats were swamped and sunk at Kolkata (formerly Calcutta) on the Ganges River 3,800 km away (Myles 1985). The wave was measured around the Indian Ocean at Aden on the tip of the Arabian Peninsula, Sri Lanka, Mahe in the Seychelle Islands, on the Island of Mauritius, and at Port Elizabeth, South Africa 8,300 km away. Tsunami waves were measured over the next 37 h on tide gauges in the English Channel, in the Pacific Ocean, and in Lake Taupo in the center of the North Island of New Zealand, where a 0.5 m oscillation in lake level was observed (Choi et al. 2006). Around the Pacific Ocean, tide gauges in Australia and Japan and at San Francisco and Kodiak Island measured changes of 0.1 m up to 20 h after the eruption (Pararas-Carayannis 1997). Honolulu recorded higher oscillations of 0.24 m with a periodicity of 30 min. Smaller, subsequent eruptions of Krakatau generated lesser tsunami throughout the strait until October 10th. The last tsunami was observed in Welcome Bay, where it surged 75 m inland beyond the high-tide mark.

The tsunami in the Pacific has been attributed to the atmospheric pressure wave because many islands that would have effectively dissipated long-wave energy obscured the passage from the Sunda Strait into this ocean. The atmospheric pressure wave also accounts for seiching that occurred in Lake Taupo, which is not connected to the ocean (Choi et al. 2003). Finally, it explains the long waves observed along the coast of France and England when the main tsunami had effectively dissipated its energy in the Indian Ocean. The generation of tsunami in Sunda Strait and the Indian Ocean has been attributed to four causes: lateral blast, collapse of the caldera that formed on the north side of Krakatau Island, pyroclastic flows, and a submarine explosion (Nomanbhoy and Satake 1995). Lateral blasting may have occurred to a small degree on Krakatau during the third explosion; however, its effect on tsunami generation is not known. During the third explosion, Krakatau collapsed in on itself, forming a caldera about 270 m deep and with a volume of 11.5 km^3. However, modeling indicates that this mechanism underestimates tsunami wave heights by a factor of three within Sunda Strait. Krakatau generated massive pyroclastic flows (Self and Rampino 1981). These flows probably generated the tsunami that preceded the final explosion. At the time of the third eruption, ash was ejected into the atmosphere towards the northeast. Theoretically, a pyroclastic flow in this direction could have generated tsunami up to 10 m in size throughout the strait; however, the mechanism does not account for measured tsunami run-ups of more than 15 m in height in the northern part of Sunda Strait. The pyroclastic flow now appears to have sunk to the bottom of the ocean and travelled 10–15 km along the seabed before depositing two large islands of ash. The 40 m high run-up measured near Merak to the northeast supports this hypothesis. The tsunami's wave height corresponds with the depth of water around Krakatau in this direction. As well, the third explosion of Krakatau at 9:58 AM more than likely produced a submarine explosion as ocean water encountered the magma chamber. Van Guest's description of the eruption—presented in Chap. 1—indicates that the magma chamber was visible in the strait before the third explosion at 10 o'clock in the morning. A submarine explosion could have generated tsunami 15 m high throughout the Strait. If the explosion had a lateral component northwards, as indicated by the final configuration of Krakatau Island, then this blast, in conjunction with the pyroclastic flow, would account for the increase in tsunami wave heights towards the northern entrance of Sunda Strait (Fig. 8.3).

8.4 Santorini, Around 1470 BC

The prehistoric eruption of Santorini around 1470 BC, off the island of Thera in the southern Aegean Sea north of Crete (Fig. 8.5), is probably the biggest volcanic explosion witnessed by humans (LaMoreaux 1995; Menzies 2012). It is also one of the most controversial because legend, myth, and archaeological fact frequently are intertwined and distorted in the interpretation of the sequence of events. The eruption has been linked to the lost city of Atlantis described by Plato in his *Critias,* to the destruction of Minoan civilization on the island of Crete 120 km to the south (Pararas-Carayannis 1998), and to the exodus of the Israelites from Egypt in the Bible (Bryant 2005). Certainly, Greek flood myths refer to this or similar events that generated tsunami in the Aegean. Plato's story of Atlantis is based on an Egyptian story that has similarities with Carthaginian and Phoenician legends.

The great Minoan empire was a Bronze Age maritime civilization centered on the island of Crete that flourished from 3000 to 1400 BC (Menzies 2012). The Minoan seafarers dominated trade in the eastern Mediterranean, and on this basis were able to accumulate great wealth and prevent the development of any other maritime power that could have threatened them. The Minoans were noted for their cities and great palaces at Ayía, Knossos, Mallia, Phaestus, Triáda, and Tylissos—all decorated by detailed and lively frescoes. By far the largest and best-known palace was that

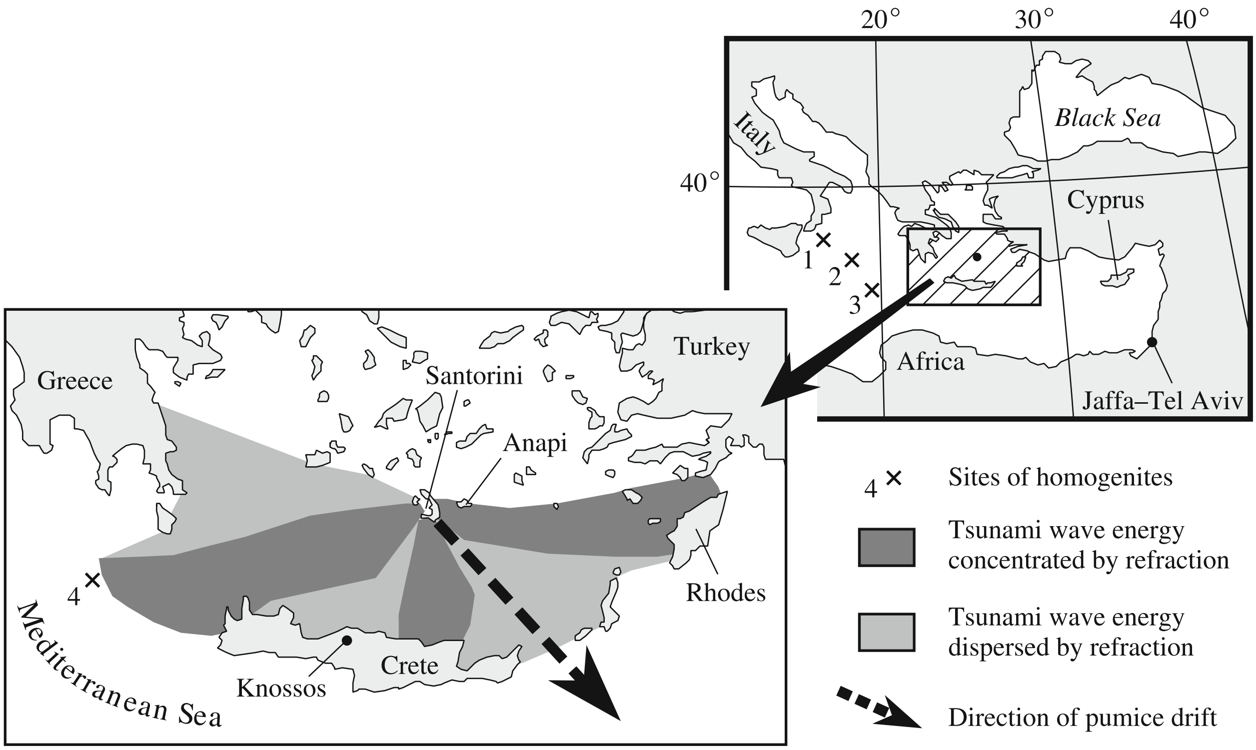


Fig. 8.5 Eastern Mediterranean region affected by the Santorini eruption around 1470 BC. The numbers refer to sites where homogenites exist (*1*) Calabrian Ridge (*2*) Ionian Abyssal Plain (*3*) Bannock Basin, and (*4*) Mediterranean Ridge. Refraction patterns based on Kastens and Cita (1981)

of the legendary king Minos at Knossos, rivaling any other Middle Eastern structure in size. The eruption of Santorini, also known as Stronghyli—the round island—did not destroy Minoan civilization, but it certainly weakened it. The tsunami from the eruption is believed to have sunk most ships near the coast and in harbors, and to have greatly disrupted sea trade that was pivotal to the stability of the civilization. Ash falls also disrupted agriculture. Within 50 years of the eruption of Santorini, the Mycenaean Greeks, who had escaped its effects, were able to conquer the Minoans and take over their cities and palaces.

Santorini volcano is part of a volcanic island chain extending parallel to the coast of Asia Minor (Fig. 8.5). The Aegean is the only zone in the eastern Mediterranean where subduction of plate boundaries is active (Pichler and Friedrich 1980; Druitt et al. 1999). Of all these volcanic islands, only two, Santorini and Nisyros, have erupted in recorded times. Santorini forms a complex of overlapping shield volcanoes consisting of basaltic and andesitic lava flows. The volcano has erupted explosively at least 12 times during the last 200000 years. Its height has been reduced over this time from a single mountain 1,500 m high to three islands less than 500 m in height surrounding a submerged caldera. The eruption around 1470 BC was the most recent of these and was one of the largest eruptions on Earth in the last 10000 years. The timing is debatable (LaMoreaux 1995). Acidity in Greenland ice cores suggest that the major eruption occurred in 1390 ± 50 BC, although radiocarbon dating on land suggests an age around 1450 or 1470 BC. Dendrochronology based on Irish bog oaks and Californian bristlecone pine puts the age of the event as old as 1628 BC. At this latter time, Chinese records report a dim sun and failure of cereal crops because of frost. Large volcanic events cool temperatures globally by as much as 1 °C over the space of several years. The range of dates may not be contradictory because there is evidence that Thera may have erupted several times over a time span of 200 years.

The timing of the Santorini eruption has also been linked to the plagues of Egypt (Exodus 6:28–14:31) and the exodus of the Israelites from that country (Myles 1985; LaMoreaux 1995; Bryant 2005). In 1 Kings 6:1 the exodus is dated as occurring 476 years before the rule of Solomon. Scholars believe that Solomon began his rule in 960 BC, putting the Exodus around 1436 BC. Other evidence indicates that the exodus occurred in 1477 BC. Both dates encompass the reign in Egypt of either Hatshepsut or her son Tuthmosis III of the 18th dynasty. The transition of rule between the two rulers is known as being a time of catastrophes. In the biblical account, the river of blood may refer to pink pumice from the Santorini eruption preceding the explosion. This pumice, after it was deposited, would easily have mixed with rainwater and flowed into any stream or river, coloring it red. The 3 days of darkness possibly refer to tephra clouds blowing south across Egypt at the beginning of the eruption. The darkness was described as a "darkness, which could be felt". Egyptian documents around 1470 BC refer to a time of prolonged darkness and noise, to a period of 9 days that "were in violence and tempest: none…could see the face of his fellow", and to the destruction of towns and wasting of Upper Egypt. There is also direct reference to the collapse of trade with Crete (Keftiu). Volcanic shards have been found in soils on the Nile delta with the same chemical composition as tephra on the Santorini Islands. The parting of the Red Sea most likely occurred in the marshes at the northern end of the sea. The Bible attributes the parting to wind (Exodus 14:21). The wind may refer to the atmospheric pressure wave produced by the explosion of the volcano. Such waves, akin to that generated by Krakatau in 1883, can generate seiching or tsunami in enclosed basins or distant oceans.

The eruption around 1470 BC had four distinct phases (Pichler and Friedrich 1980; Cita et al. 1996). The first was a Plinian phase with massive pumice falls. This was followed by a series of basal surges producing profuse quantities of pumice up to 30 m thick on Santorini. The third phase was associated with the collapse of the caldera and production of pyroclastic flows. About 4.5 km^3 of dense magma was ejected from the volcano, producing 10 km^3 of ash. The volume of ejecta is similar in magnitude to that produced by the Krakatau eruption in 1883. The ash drifted to the east-southeast, but did not exceed 5 mm thickness in deposits on any of the adjacent islands, including Crete. The largest thickness of ash measured in marine cores appears to originate from pumice that floated into the eastern Mediterranean. It is possible at this stage that ocean water made contact with the magma chamber and produced large explosions, which generated tsunami in the same way that the eruption of Krakatau did. The final phase of the eruption was associated with the collapse of the caldera in its southwest corner. The volcano sunk over an area of 83 km^2 and to a depth of between 600 and 800 m. According to the Krakatau model, this final event produced the largest tsunami, directing most of its energy westwards (Fig. 8.5). It is estimated that the original height of the tsunami was 46–68 m in height, and maybe as high as 90 m. The average period between the dozen or more peaks in the wave train was 15 min.

Evidence of the tsunami is found in deposits close to Santorini. On the island of Anapi to the east, sea-borne pumice was deposited to an altitude of 40–50 m above present sea level (Yokoyama 1978). Considering that sea levels at the time of the eruption may have been 10 m lower, this represents run-up heights greater than those produced by Krakatau in the Sunda Strait. On the Island of Crete, the wave arrived within 30 min with a height of approximately 11 m (Johnstone 1997). Refraction focused wave energy on the northeast corner of Crete, where run-up heights reached 40 m above sea level. In the region of Knossos, the tsunami swept across a 3 km wide coastal plain reaching the mountains behind. Massive *dump* deposits containing imbricated cobbles were emplaced along this coast (Bruins et al. 2008). The backwash concentrated in valleys and watercourses, and was highly erosive. Evidence for the tsunami is also found in the eastern Mediterranean on the western side of Cyprus, and further away at Jaffa–Tel Aviv in Israel (Yokoyama 1978; Myles 1985; Cita et al. 1996). At the latter location, pumice has been found on a terrace lying 7 m above sea level at the time of the eruption. However, the tsunami wave here had already undergone substantial defocussing because of wave refraction as it passed between the islands of Crete and Rhodes. The greatest tsunami wave heights occurred west of Santorini. Based upon linear wave theory, the wave in the central Mediterranean Sea was 17 m high (Kastens and Cita 1981). Closer to Italy over the submarine Calabrian Ridge, it was 7 m high. Bottom current velocities under the wave crest in these regions ranged between 20 and 50 cm s^{-1}—great enough to entrain clay-to-gravel sized particles. The maximum pressure pulse produced on the seabed by the passage of the wave ranged between 350 and 850 kdyne cm^{-2}. Spontaneous liquefaction and flow of water-saturated muds is known to occur under pressure pulses of 280 kdyne cm^{-2} and greater.

Some of the evidence for a large tsunami comes from the discovery of unusual deposits on the seabed of the central Mediterranean Sea, where wave heights were highest. These deposits—labeled homogenites—formed in the deep sea as the result of settling from suspension of densely concentrated, fine-grained sediment (Kastens and Cita 1981). This process produced homogeneous units up to 25 m thick with a sharp basal contact. Homogenites can be linked hydrodynamically to the passage of a tsunami wave. As sediment fails via liquefaction due to the pressure pulse, oscillatory flow under the wave suspends finer particles, creating turbulent clouds of sediment. It is estimated that the slurries exceeded concentrations of 16,000 mg L^{-1}. In comparison, the highest measured sediment concentrations on the ocean seabed and in muddy tidal estuaries rarely exceed 12 and 300 mg L^{-1} respectively. Gravity sorting occurred under this extreme concentration. Sand-sized particles settled first to the bottom and were deposited at the erosional contact with the seabed as a fining upward unit, whose thickness ranged from a few centimeters to several meters. Finer clay-sized sediment was deposited over the next few days as a massive undifferentiated clay deposit that was up to 20 m or more thick. Homogenites differ from turbidites described in

Chap. 3 by their greater thickness, lack of laminations, and undifferentiated particle size. Homogenites differ from debris flows by the absence of large clasts or rock pieces derived from continental sediments.

Four types of homogenites can be differentiated (Cita et al. 1996). In the western Mediterranean, on the Ionian Abyssal Plain, a 10 to 20 m thick deposit, with an estimated volume of 11 km^3, was laid down on the seabed over an area of 1,100 km^2. It appears that the tsunami wave slammed into the continental shelf of north Africa and either directly or indirectly triggered a mega-turbidity current. This current carried terrigenous and shelf sediment into the deep Mediterranean Sea, eroding flanks of undersea ridges and depositing homogenites with an erosional base on upslopes. In one location, this turbidity current rode up a ridge 223 m above the abyssal plain and deposited sediment. In the eastern part of the Mediterranean, bottom velocities and the related powerful pressure pulse liquefied sand into depressions, forming uniform deposits several meters thick with a sandy base overlying an erosional contact. These deposits form in cobblestone-shaped basins with a vertical relief of 200 m. Finally, in the Bannock Basin, the passage of the wave destabilized evaporites. The resulting deposits are 12 m thick and consist of 3 m of sand overlain by 9 m of graded mud deposited from suspension in high-density brines trapped at the bottom of 100 m deep depressions in the seabed. All of the homogenites found in the Mediterranean are derived from a single event and date around the time of the Santorini eruption. Homogenites are not found in the eastern Mediterranean Sea, where tsunami wave heights were insufficient to cause resuspension or liquefaction of bottom sediment.

Since the Santorini eruption around 1470 BC, there have been many others (Pichler and Friedrich 1980; Druitt et al. 1999). Since 197 BC at least 9 eruptions have formed the two islands that presently exist in the center of the caldera. Eruptions in 1650, 1866, and 1956 have given rise to tsunami with damaging consequences. An earthquake preceded the 1650 eruption and generated a 50 m high tsunami that swept 4 km inland in places. The 1866 event generated two tsunami that had run-up heights of 8 m along nearby coasts. Earthquakes associated with the latest eruption on 9 July 1956 produced a tsunami that had a run-up height of 24 m and killed 53 people. The Santorini volcano remains one of the most dangerous in terms of tsunami in the world today.

The last three chapters have summarized how geophysical processes originating from the Earth generate tsunami. When reviewed, the magnitudes of tsunami associated with these processes are indeed impressive. Tsunami have dispersed across the Pacific after numerous historical earthquakes. Five events since 1600 have produced run-up heights of 51–115 m in elevation. The Indian Ocean event of 2004 and the Lisbon event of 1755 indicate that catastrophic tsunami can occur in any ocean. Volcanic eruptions, while rarer in terms of tsunami, have generated similar magnitude run-ups, but these have been localized. The Santorini eruption of around 1470 BC may hold the record for the biggest volcano-induced tsunami with an initial wave height of 90 m. Tsunami generated by submarine landslides may be bigger yet. The Lituya Bay landslide of July 9, 1958 generated a wave that achieved a run-up height of 524 m above sea level. Whether or not this wave consisted of a mixture of water and air is a moot point. In terms of area affected, the Storegga slide of 7950 ± 190 years ago may have been the biggest—considering that some suspicion hangs over some of the evidence attributed to the Lanai slide in Hawaii. Many of the tsunami induced by these processes produced some of the signatures of tsunami outlined in Chaps. 3 and 4. However, only the Storegga event can be linked to the full range of signatures that includes bedrock-sculpturing features. A dichotomy thus exists in that observable tsunami have not commonly been linked to bedrock-sculpturing features that exist so widely along rocky coasts, especially those in Australia. One mechanism, comet/asteroid impact with the ocean, is capable of generating tsunami equivalent to or bigger than the largest tsunami produced by other mechanisms. The nature of cosmogenically induced tsunami will be discussed in the next chapter.

References

R.J. Blong, *Volcanic hazards: a sourcebook on the effects of eruptions* (Academic Press, Sydney, 1984)

H.J. Bruins, J.A. MacGillivray, C.E. Synolakis, C. Benjamini, J. Keller, H.J. Kisch, A. Klügel, J. van der Plicht, Geoarchaeological tsunami deposits at Palaikastro (Crete) and the late Minoan IA eruption of Santorini. J. Archaeol. Sci. **35**, 191–212 (2008)

E. Bryant, *Natural Hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2005)

E. Bryant, J. Nott, Geological indicators of large tsunami in Australia. Nat. Hazards **24**, 231–249 (2001)

B.H. Choi, E. Pelinovsky, K.O. Kim, J.S. Lee, Simulation of the trans-oceanic tsunami propagation due to the 1883 Krakatau volcanic eruption. Nat. Hazards Earth Syst. Sci. **3**, 321–332 (2003)

B.H. Choi, S.J. Hong, E. Pelinovsky, Distribution of runup heights of the December 26, 2004 tsunami in the Indian Ocean. Geophys. Res. Lett. **33**, L13601 (2006). doi:10.1029/2006GL025867

M.B. Cita, A. Camerlenghi, B. Rimoldi, Deep-sea tsunami deposits in the eastern Mediterranean: new evidence and depositional models. Sed. Geol. **104**, 155–173 (1996)

T.H. Druitt, L. Edwards, R.M. Mellors, D.M. Pyle, R.S.J. Sparks, M. Lanphere, M. Davies, B. Barreiro, Santorini volcano. Geol. Soc. London Mem. **19**, 165 (1999)

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (1999), Historical tsunami database for the Pacific, 47 BC–1998 AD. Tsunami Laboratory, Institute of Computational Mathematics and Mathematical Geophysics, Siberian Division Russian Academy of Sciences, Novosibirsk, Russia, http://tsun.sscc.ru/HTDBPac1/

B. Johnstone, Who killed the Minoans? New Sci. June 21, 36–39 (1997)

K.A. Kastens, M.B. Cita, Tsunami-induced sediment transport in the abyssal Mediterranean Sea. Geol. Soc. Am. Bull. **92**, 845–857 (1981)

B.H. Keating, P. Fryer, R. Batiza, G.W. Boehlert (eds.), *Seamounts, Islands and Atolls* (American Geophysical Union Monograph, Washington, 1987), p. 43

D. Keys, *Catastrophe: an investigation into the origins of the modern world* (Arrow, London, 1999), p. 509

P.E. LaMoreaux, Worldwide environmental impacts from the eruption of Thera. Environ. Geol. **26**, 172–181 (1995)

J.H. Latter, Tsunamis of volcanic origin: summary of causes, with particular reference to Krakatau, 1883. Bulletin Volcanologique **44**, 467–490 (1981)

P.A. Lockridge, Volcanoes generate devastating waves. Earthq. Volcanoes **20**, 190–195 (1988)

P.A. Lockridge, Nonseismic phenomena in the generation and augmentation of tsunamis. Nat. Hazards **3**, 403–412 (1990)

G. Menzies, *The Lost Empire of Atlantis: History's Greatest Mystery Revealed* (William Morrow Paperbacks, Hammersmith, 2012)

D. Myles, *The Great Waves* (McGraw-Hill, New York, 1985)

National Geophysical Data Center (2013) (NGDC/WDS) Global Historical Tsunami Database. Boulder, Colorado. http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/hazard/tsu_db.shtml

N. Nomanbhoy, K. Satake, Numerical computations of tsunamis from the 1883 Krakatau eruption. Geophys. Res. Lett. **22**, 509–512 (1995)

G. Pararas-Carayannis, The Great tsunami of August 26, 1883 from the explosion of the Krakatau Volcano (Krakatoa) (1997), http://www.drgeorgepc.com/Tsunami1883Krakatoa.html

G. Pararas-Carayannis, The waves that destroyed the Minoan Empire (Atlantis) (1998), www.drgeorgepc.com/AtlantisDestruction.html

H. Pichler, W.L. Friedrich, Mechanism of the minoan eruption of santorini in Thera and the Aegean world, in *Proceedings of the 2nd International Scientific Congress*, Santorini, Greece, August 1978, vol. 2, pp. 15–30 (1980)

S. Self, M.R. Rampino, The 1883 eruption of Krakatau. Nature **294**, 699–704 (1981)

R.D.M. Verbeek, The Krakatoa eruption. Nature **30**, 10–15 (1884)

F. Whelan, D. Kelletat, Submarine slides on volcanic islands—a source for mega-tsunamis in the Quaternary. Prog. Phys. Geogr. **27**, 198–216 (2003)

I. Yokoyama, The tsunami caused by the prehistoric eruption of Thera, in *Thera and the Aegean world: 1. Proceedings of the 2nd International Scientific Congress*, Santorini, Greece, August, pp. 277–283 (1978)

9 Comets and Asteroids

9.1 Introduction

There are two main classes of celestial objects: asteroids and comets that can cross the Earth's orbit and eventual impact with the Earth (Steel 1995). Comets consist mainly of ice with some stony or iron material ranging in size from sand grains to boulders hundreds of meters in diameter. They enter the inner solar system from the Kuiper belt lying outside the orbit of Neptune or from the Oort belt lying beyond the outer boundary of the solar system (Asher et al. 1994; Steel 1995; Verschuur 1996). The gravitational attraction of Jupiter—and Saturn—can capture a comet as large as 200 km in diameter and bring it into an orbit in the inner solar system. This capture occurs about once every 200000 years. These comets tend to disintegrate over successive orbits, producing a large number of smaller active comets and inactive asteroids. There are three types of comets: short, intermediate, and long period. Short period comets orbit the Sun with periods of less than 20 years. They are called Jupiter family comets because they come under the gravitational influence of Jupiter and have unstable orbits. Intermediate-period or Halley-type comets have orbital periods between 20 and 200 years. Long-period comets have orbital periods greater than 200 years and tend to appear in the inner solar system only once. As comets approach the Sun, they slowly disintegrate as ice is vaporized and discharged with other gases in a tail that can extend millions of kilometers into space. There is growing evidence that comets are responsible for much of the debris orbiting the inner solar system. The best-known comet to impact with the Earth occurred at Chicxulub on the Yucatan Peninsula of Mexico at the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary (Verschuur 1996; Alvarez 1997). This event threw up large volumes of sediment into the stratosphere, attenuated solar radiation significantly for months, if not years, and led to the extinction of the dinosaurs Fig. 9.1. Our present era is under the influence of a large comet that entered the inner solar system within the last 20000 years (Asher et al. 1994).

Many asteroids orbit close to the Earth and in a significant number of cases intersect the Earth's orbit (Steel 1995). Four groups of asteroids have near Earth orbits (Steel 1995; Lewis 1999). The Apollos cross the Earth's orbit but spend most of their time just beyond it. Their orbital period around the Sun is greater than 1 year. The Amors orbit further out, crossing the orbit of Mars as well as that of the Earth. These objects have unstable orbits, and they are affected the most by the gravity of Jupiter. The Atens spend most of their time inside Earth's orbit. Their orbital period about the Sun is less than 1 year. These latter objects were only discovered in the 1970s. A fourth group of asteroids is suspected. These asteroids lie close to the Earth and are thought to originate from debris remaining from asteroid impacts with the moon. Most of the Earth-crossing asteroids have short-lived orbits about the Sun, suggesting that they too originated from the breakup of comets. The population of near Earth objects (NEOs) is replenished discontinuously over time. This chapter looks at the formation of near Earth objects, the probability of their impact with the Earth, the effect of resulting tsunami, and evidence for their occurrence in recent times.

9.2 Near Earth Objects

9.2.1 What Are They?

The Earth is known to cross through at least 12 comet debris trails that form prominent meteorite showers. The most important comet stream is the Taurid complex. It is theorized that a large comet, about 100 km in diameter, initially entered the inner solar system 20000 years ago and began to break up about 14000 years ago (Asher et al. 1994; Steel 1995). Further disintegration events occurred around 7500 and 2600 BC. The latter breakup happened during the Bronze Age and was associated with asteroid strikes within the next few centuries that impacted dramatically upon civilizations. Debris in the Taurid complex consists of a

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_9,

Fig. 9.1 An artist's impression of the Chicxulub impact tsunami as it crossed the coastal plain of the United States. The impact event was responsible for the extinction of the dinosaurs, 65 million years ago. The figure appeared originally in Alvarez (1997). © Ron Miller 1997 and reprinted by permission

dozen asteroid objects 0.5–2.0 km in diameter. There may be another 100 objects in this size range yet to be discovered in the complex. The breakup of the original comet also generated four prominent meteor showers appearing annually with a major peak in October–December and a minor peak in April–June. One prominent reactivated comet, P/Encke, is part of the Taurid complex. Comet P/Encke first appeared in 1786 following the last large display of meteorites associated with the Taurids. Comet P/Encke is about 5 km in diameter, has a mass of 10^{13} tonnes, and orbits the Sun every 3.5 years in an Earth crossing orbit. The Taurid complex also contains other large objects that presently have orbits that intersect the Earth in the last few days of June each year. The Tunguska airburst of June 30, 1908 was a Taurid object. It was about 60 m in diameter and exploded 8–9 km above the Podkamennaya Tunguska River in Siberia, flattening 2,150 km^2 of forest (Asher et al. 1994). Also considered part of the Taurids was a 1 km sized object that struck the far side of the Moon on June 19, 1178. This latter event produced the 20 km diameter Giordano Bruno crater as well as spreading dust across the face of the New Moon, splitting the upper horn with flame, and causing the moon to "throb like a wounded snake". The Monk Gervasse, in Kent England, witnessed the event. The event itself may have sent debris crashing into the Earth several days later.

Despite the image conveyed by disaster movies such as *Deep Impact* and *Armageddon,* the risk from large asteroids or comets is minor. The main perceived threat comes from objects 1–10 km in size that, before the 1990s, had escaped detection (Verschuur 1996). However, NASA has since instituted a dedicated program called Spaceguard to detect 90 % of objects greater than 1 km in size (National Aeronautics and Space Administration 2013). As of October 2013, 959 Near Earth Objects (NEOs) larger than 1 km in diameter have been discovered, consisting dominantly of Apollo asteroids. Only 94 of the NEOs are comets. The largest NEO is about 31 km in diameter. The threat from large asteroids may be illusionary when compared to that posed by objects less than 100 m in diameter. There are 3,800 of these objects with the potential to generate devastating regional tsunami. However, none of these objects pose an immediate threat over the next few centuries. The present threat is still random and unpreventable. The probability of an impact by a 1 km diameter object is estimated from the Spaceguard observations to be one every half million years. As of 2013, no feasible program has been developed to mitigate the threat from cosmogenic tsunami.

The perceived view that relatively small NEOs hundreds of meters in size are innocuous is misleading (Verschuur 1996; Lewis 1999). For example, a 100–500 m diameter object moving at a velocity of 30 km s^{-1} will release energy equivalent to 100–30,000 megatons of TNT. The large asteroid 1989FC, which was 500 m in diameter and missed the Earth by 650,000 km, would have destroyed civilization if it had hit our planet. It would have created a crater about 10 km in diameter, released energy equivalent to the world's total nuclear arsenal, triggered an earthquake with a hypothesized magnitude, M_s, of 9–10, ignited tens of thousands of square kilometers of forest, ejected billions of tonnes of rocks and dust into the atmosphere with consequent lowering of temperatures and partial blocking of photosynthesis for several years, induced acid rain due to atmospheric reaction of nitrogen and oxygen, and depleted ozone in the stratosphere.

9.2.2 How Frequent Have Comet and Asteroid Impacts Been?

Since hominids evolved, between 200 and 500 extraterrestrial bodies several hundred meters in size have impacted with the Earth (Asher and Clube 1993; Asher et al. 1994). About 70 % of NEOs are asteroids, of which 50 % are derived originally from comets. The best approximation of the probability of impact with the Earth of various sizes of objects is presented in Fig. 9.2 (Verschuur 1996). There are large uncertainties, spanning an order of magnitude, on the return period of these objects. Observations of the more frequent, smaller iron meteorites and those that would explode in the atmosphere—termed bolides—are also uncertain because historical records beyond a few centuries are very limited globally. The range in kinetic energy presented in Fig. 9.2 reflects the range in speed of objects striking the Earth—typically between 10 and 45 km s^{-1}. Astronomical observations indicate that one to three near Earth objects with a diameter of 1 km could impact the Earth every 100000–200000 years. Note that this is three times more frequent than NASA's estimate. An object 50 m in diameter crashes into the Earth every century, while a Tunguska-sized object of 60 m diameter occurs every 200–300 years. These estimates are also more frequent that those obtained by NASA. Simulations have been made of the number of type of impacts that could randomly be expected over a period of 10000 years. Over this time span, there could be 110 impact events, 285 Tunguska style airbursts over land, 680 over the ocean, and 12 ocean impacts that could produce ocean-wide tsunami. Only four events would be big enough to leave a crater on land, and all of these would have a high probability of being eroded or buried. Of the Tunguska-sized events, one or two impacts would have been equivalent to 500–1,000 megatons of TNT. Their impacts must have affected global climate and the course of human history. All of the Tunguska-sized objects that strike the ocean could have generated significant tsunami. Gerrit Verschuur (1996) makes the interesting comment that, historically, few population centers existed around the shores of the Atlantic or Pacific Oceans. The cradles of civilization emerged in relatively sheltered river valleys around smaller seas—the Mediterranean, Red Sea, and Persian Gulf, or in mountain regions such as the Andes and the South Indian highlands. Our ancestors may have been wiser than we are and avoided coastal areas because of the potentially devastating effects of asteroid-generated tsunami that were occurring at regular intervals in circum-oceanic regions.

These probabilities also assume a random but constant flux of objects intersecting the Earth. However, the appearance of comets and asteroids in the inner solar system, and their impact with the Earth, is clustered in time in a phenomenon astronomers call *coherent catastrophism* (Asher et al. 1994; Verschuur 1996). This is logical when it is realised that cometary disintegration leads to the production of objects 10–100 m in size, with some kilometer-sized objects orbiting about the Sun within the confines of a narrow stream or trail. These objects tend to be clustered within this stream. Resonant interaction by Jupiter and the inner planets upon a stream such as the Taurid complex periodically allows objects within the stream to intersect the Earth's orbit, leading to multiple bombardments of Tunguska-sized objects (or larger) over periods of one to four centuries. In terms of global catastrophes, it is not the random impact of celestial objects greater than 1 km in diameter occurring on average every hundred thousand years that is important, but rather the occurrence of clusters of Tunguska-sized objects during epochs of high activity. The latter can affect civilizations deleteriously through direct impact, the generation of tsunami, or modifications to the atmosphere leading to sudden periods of global cooling.

Some measure of coherence in meteorites and comets can be obtained from Chinese, Japanese, and European records of meteor, comet, and fireball sightings gathered over the last 2000 years (Rasmussen 1991; Hasegawa 1992). The accumulated record, up to the beginning of the nineteenth century when scientific observations began in earnest, is plotted in Fig. 9.3. The Asian records are the most complete, with European sightings accounting for less than 10 % of the record over the last 1000 years. The comet observations from Asia are also plotted in Fig. 9.3. A quasi-cyclic pattern is evident in the records that can be linked to the dominance of the Taurid complex in the inner solar system. Peak occurrences of cosmic input to the atmosphere occurred between 401 and 500, 801 and 900, 1041 and 1100, 1401 and 1480, 1641 and 1680, and 1761 and 1800. These intervals have been shaded. The first period corresponds with the last extended epoch of nodal intersection with the Taurid complex, while the prominent fluxes in the eleventh and fifteenth centuries correspond to nodal intersections with parent objects in the complex. The fifteenth century represents the last phase of *coherent catastrophism* associated with the Taurid complex. In addition, there is a preference for sightings to occur in July–August and October–November. Some astronomers believe that many of these peaks were responsible for climate changes and direct impacts that have affected the course of human history (McCafferty and Baillie 2005; Baillie 2006).

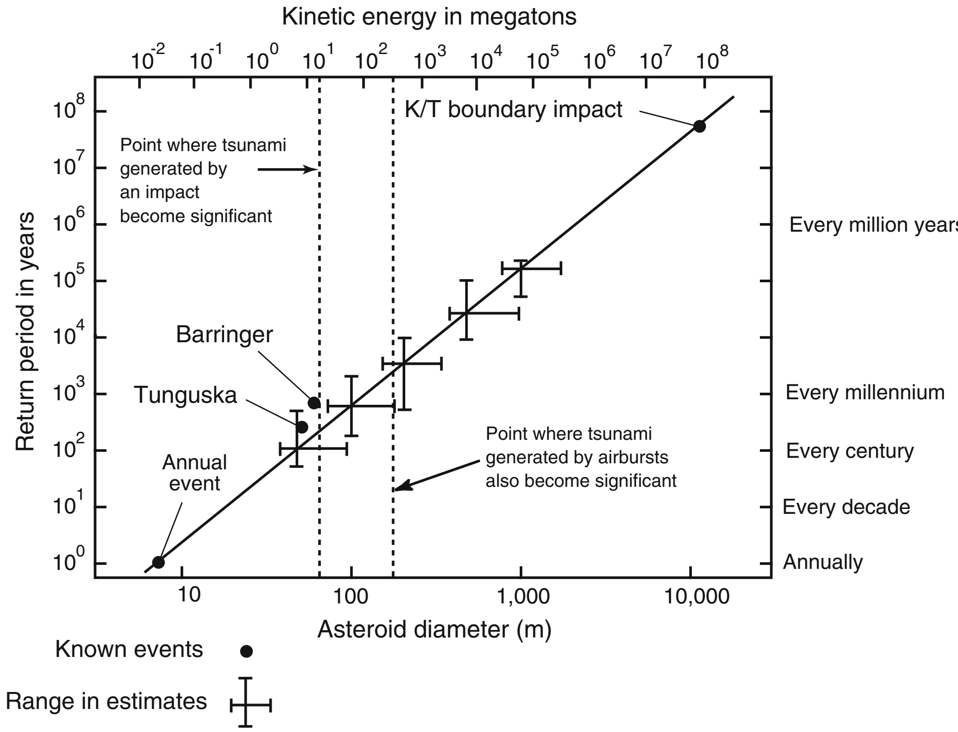


Fig. 9.2 Probability of comets or asteroids of given diameter striking the Earth. The sizes generating significant tsunami are shaded. Based upon Verschuur (1996) and formulae presented in the text. Estimates derived from Michael Paine's web page at http://users.tpg.com.au/users/tps-seti/spacegd7.html#impacts

9.3 How Do Extraterrestrial Objects Generate Tsunami?

9.3.1 Mechanisms for Generating Tsunami

There are four types of extraterrestrial objects based upon density (Verschuur 1996): comets ($\sim$1.0 g cm^{-3}), carbonaceous bodies (2.2 g cm^{-3}), stony asteroids (3.5 g cm^{-3}), and iron asteroids (7.9 g cm^{-3}). Comets are generally considered dirty snowballs; however, larger comets, in breaking up in successive orbits within the inner solar system, may produce many of the asteroids of various densities that strike the Earth. These four classes of objects also have different yield strengths that can vary over several orders of magnitude. The yield strength determines how easily the objects will fragment when they hit the atmosphere. Finally, these objects travel through space at different speeds. Comets travel at 25–50 km s^{-1}, while the near Earth objects move at slower speeds of 15 km s^{-1}. If objects fragment and explode in the atmosphere as bolides before striking the Earth's surface, they can still generate tsunami. In this case, the size of the wave depends very much upon the height of the explosion in the atmosphere.

Any object greater than 1 km in diameter tends to intersect the Earth's atmosphere without fragmenting or exploding. In effect, these large objects travel fast enough that they do not have time *to see* the atmosphere before striking the surface. Comets less than 580 m in diameter, and stony and iron asteroids less than 320 and 100 m in diameter respectively, begin to distort or fragment traveling through the atmosphere. Any object entering the atmosphere at a shallow angle is more likely to reach the ocean without breaking up; however, this does not necessarily lead to bigger tsunami. Distortion without fragmentation leads to a pancake-shaped body of greater diameter impacting into the ocean. Even if an asteroid fragments, the fragments can hit the ocean as a hollow shell, creating a cavity that can be ten times greater than the radius of the original asteroid or comet. Theoretically, an iron meteorite with a diameter of less than 30 m could generate a tsunami by this mechanism. The initial waves formed in this case are technically not tsunami, as they are formed by the air blast. The real tsunami comes about 5 s later when the cavity in the water collapses. These fragmentation and distortion aspects have not yet been modeled in the generation of tsunami, but may be important.

Asteroid-generated tsunami can be modeled using incompressible, shallow-water long-wave equations described in Chap. 2 (Hills and Mader 1997; Crawford and Mader 1998; Ward and Asphaug 2000). In fact, meteoritic tsunami are similar to those generated by rockfalls such as the Lituya Bay Tsunami of July 9, 1958 discussed in Chap. 7. For example, a small meteoroid of only 500 m diameter falling in the ocean at 20 km s^{-1}, at a low angle of entry, could carve a path at least 12 km long across the ocean. The horizontal and vertical accelerations of the resulting seismic waves would be much greater than any known earthquake. An important similarity between low-angled asteroid impacts and the Lituya rockfall-induced Tsunami is the role

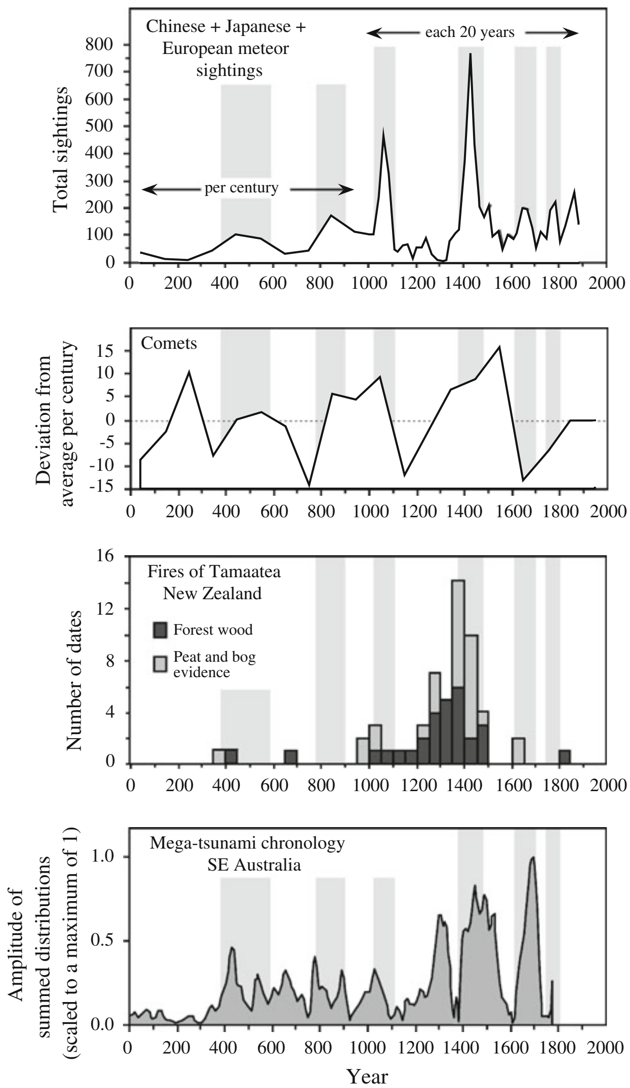


Fig. 9.3 Incidence of comets and meteorites, and related phenomena, between AD 0 and AD 1800. The meteorite records for China and Japan are based upon Hasegawa (1992), while meteorite records for Europe come from Rasmussen (1991). Peak occurrences are shaded. The Asian comet record is based upon Hasegawa (1992). The calibrated radiocarbon dates under the 'Mystic Fires of Tamaatea' are from Mooley et al. (1963) for forest wood and from McGlone and Wilmshurst (1999) for peats and bogs. The chronology of mega-tsunami is based upon 29 radiocarbon dates of marine shell with 5 additional AMS dates from the Tura region of New South Wales. The dips over the last millennium are an artifact of age reversals in radiocarbon chronology

played by splash (Crawford and Mader 1998). Low-trajectory asteroids can eject into the atmosphere enormous volumes of water that travel at high velocities, travel hundreds of kilometers, and fall back to the surface of the Earth over equivalent distances (Fig. 9.4). This splash can emulate the erosional effects of tsunami and may be far more important as a geomorphic process of asteroid impacts than any tsunami generated by cratering in the ocean. The significance of such events will be described later in this chapter.

9.3.2 Size of Tsunami

As a rough approximation, the height of a tsunami generated by an asteroid impact with the ocean can be determined by relating its kinetic energy to that of known tsunami generated by earthquakes and volcanoes. For example, the Chilean earthquake of 1960 generated a tsunami with kinetic energy equivalent to 2–5 megatons of TNT (Toon et al. 1997), while the Alaskan earthquake of 1964 generated a tsunami equivalent to 0.14 megatons of TNT. The eruption of Krakatau in 1883 was equivalent to 200 megatons of TNT. While not all of this latter energy went into the tsunami, run-up of over 40 m occurred within a 100 km radius. The air blast of the Tunguska bolide at the ocean's surface produced only 0.1–0.2 megatons of energy. This would only have generated a localized tsunami of around 0.2 m in height had it occurred over the ocean. However, had the comet reached the ocean's surface, it would have created a tsunami with an initial wave height of over 900 m. Thus most asteroids must be large or dense enough to crash into the ocean without fragmenting in order to produce a significant tsunami.

Of the asteroids or comets that reach the Earth's surface, about 70 % will strike the ocean. At velocities of over 20 km s^{-1}, these objects burst upon contact with the ocean, sending out splash that can reach the top of the atmosphere (Huggett 1989). Collapse of water back into the cavity left by the impact creates a tsunami wave train. The height of the tsunami wave depends upon the displacement of water from the pseudo-crater blasted into the ocean. The displaced water piles up around the crater and forms a ring whose width equals the radius of the crater (Goodman 1997). The tsunami's wave height can be approximated initially by the following formula:

$$H_m = r\,d\,R_t^{-1} \tag{9.1}$$

where

H_m = height of the tsunami wave above mean sea level (m)
r = the radius of the pseudo-crater in the ocean (m)
R_t = the distance from the center of impact (m)
d = water depth (m)

As this ring moves out from the center of impact, it causes water to oscillate up and down, forming about four ringlets that propagate outwards as a tsunami wave train. This process is similar to the ripples that form when a pebble is thrown into a pond. As the wave moves away from the impact site, its height then becomes dependent upon the distance from the center of impact. Shoemaker (1983) proposed a simple formula, based upon analogies to nuclear explosions, to estimate the size of the crater generated by any asteroid as follows:

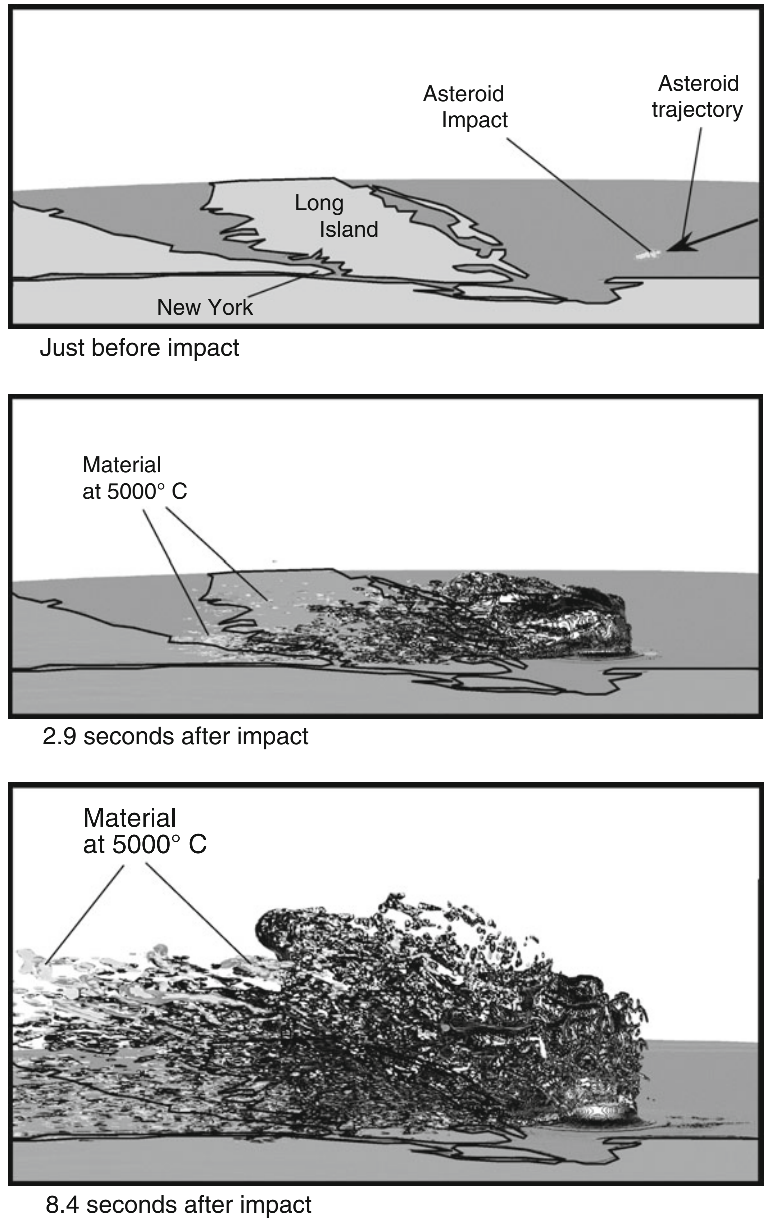


Fig. 9.4 Computer simulation of the splash from an asteroid striking the ocean off the coast of Long Island. The asteroid is 1.4 km in diameter and is traveling northwards at a speed of 20 km s^{-1}. Note the vapor heated over 5,000 °C. *Dark material* is water vapor; *white material* is water. The simulations were performed at Sandia National Laboratories using an Intel Teraflops super computer. They took 18 h to complete. Images are used *courtesy* Dr. David Crawford. More images and movies are located at http://www.sandia.gov/media/comethit.htm

$$D = SpW^{0.3} \tag{9.2}$$

where

D = diameter of an impact crater (m)

$$Sp = 90\,\rho_e^{-0.3} \tag{9.3}$$

where

Sp = density correction
ρ_e = density of material ejected from an impact crater (g cm $^{-3}$)

$$W = 0.12 \times 10^{-12} m v_a^2 \tag{9.4}$$

where

W = kinetic energy of impact (kilotons of TNT)
v_a = impact velocity of asteroid (m s^{-1})

$$m = 1.33\,\pi \rho_a r_a^3 \tag{9.5}$$

where

m = mass of asteroid (kg)
r_a = radius of asteroid (m)
ρ_a = density of asteroid (g cm $^{-3}$)

Using Eq. (9.4), the kinetic energy of an iron meteorite 40 m in diameter with a density of 7.8 g cm^{-3}, traveling at a velocity of 20 km s^{-1}—such as that which created the

Table 9.1 Tsunami heights (m) generated at distances of 500, 1000, and 2,000 km from the impact site of iron or stony asteroids with the ocean

Iron asteroid characteristics			Iron asteroid			Stony asteroid		
Asteroid diameter (m)	Kinetic energy (Gigatons TNT)	Crater diameter (km)	500 km distance	1000 km distance	2000 km distance	500 km distance	1000 km distance	2000 km distance
100	0.2	3.4	2.7	1.4	0.7	1.6	0.8	0.4
200	1.6	6.3	8.3	4.2	2.1	5.0	2.5	1.2
300	5.3	9.1	16.1	8.0	4.0	9.6	4.8	2.4
400	12.7	11.8	25.6	12.8	6.4	15.2	7.6	3.8
500	24.7	14.4	36.7	18.4	9.2	21.9	10.9	5.5
600	42.7	17.0	49.4	24.7	12.3	29.4	14.7	7.3
700	67.8	19.5	63.4	31.7	15.8	33.4	18.9	9.4
800	101.2	22.0	78.7	39.3	19.7	46.8	23.4	11.7
900	144.1	24.5	95.2	47.6	23.8	56.6	28.3	14.2
1000	197.7	26.9	112.9	56.5	28.2	67.2	33.6	16.8

Note Velocity of impactor = 20 km s^{-1} , Density of iron asteroid = 7.9 g cm^{-3} , Density of stony asteroid = 3 g cm^{-3} , Ocean depth at impact = 5000 m
Source Based on Shoemaker (1983) and Hills and Mader (1997)

1.2 km wide Barringer crater in Arizona—is equivalent to 12.5 megatons of TNT. Equations (9.2) and (9.3) indicate that this object would have produced a pseudo-crater 1.5 km in diameter if it had hit the ocean.

When Eq. (9.2) is substituted into Eq. (9.1), the size of the tsunami is over-estimated for small asteroids. Equation (9.1) also does not account adequately for tsunami generated by stony asteroids or asteroids in shallow seas. Stony asteroids smaller than 100 m in diameter tend to fragment in the ocean (Hills and Mader 1997). Larger ones tend to dissipate some of their energy in the atmosphere. For example, a 200 m diameter stony asteroid traveling at 25 km s^{-1} would impact with a force equivalent to 940 megatons of TNT. If this asteroid exploded as an air-burst, then only 20 % of its energy would reach the surface of the ocean. This latter component is more than 30 times greater than the energy of the Chilean Tsunami of 1960 and approximately equal to the largest Krakatau eruption of 1883. The diameter of the smallest object that can reach the Earth's surface virtually intact is 40 m for an iron meteorite, 130 m for a stony asteroid, and 380 m for a short-period comet. The recurrence interval for a stony asteroid, 130 m in diameter, is about every 1000 years. The tsunami created by large asteroids impacting in the ocean are also depth limited. As a rule of thumb, depth becomes a limiting factor when it is less than 12 times the diameter of the asteroid. For example, asteroids greater than 167 m in diameter will be depth limited if the asteroid falls into water less than 2,000 m deep. In this case, the resulting tsunami is 60 % smaller than if the asteroid had fallen into deeper water. Asteroids larger than 500 m in diameter would be depth limited in most oceans. Stony asteroids also produce waves that are 60 % smaller than those produced by denser asteroids. The following equations more realistically model these three conditions:

$$\text{Iron asteroid } H_m = 6500\left(10^{-9}W\right)^{0.54} R_t^{-1} \tag{9.6}$$

$$\text{Stony asteroid } H_m = 7800\left[(0.049r_a)^3(0.05v_a)^2(0.33\rho_a)\right]^{0.54} R_t^{-1} \tag{9.7}$$

$$\text{Shallow water } H_m = 1450\left(10^{-9}W\right)^{0.25} dR_t^{-1} \tag{9.8}$$

These relationships are tabulated for asteroids of between 0.1 and 1.0 km in diameter in Table 9.1. The heights of tsunami, above mean sea level, produced by an iron asteroid are also plotted in Fig. 9.5. This size range covers those objects that could realistically strike the Earth's ocean in the near future. Tsunami wave height quickly attenuates away from the site of impact. It also increases sizably as the diameter of the asteroid increases. For example, a 100 m diameter iron asteroid would produce tsunami of 2.7, 1.4, and 0.7 m in height, within 500, 1000, and 2,000 km respectively of the center of impact. This size asteroid is the minimum limit for the detection of NEAs and one equivalent in energy to the Krakatau eruption of 1883. The wave heights are equivalent to tsunami generated by the Krakatau eruption over similar distances. The 0.7-m height is much higher than the 0.2–0.4 m open ocean height postulated for the Chilean Tsunami of 1960, 2,000 km away from its source. As mentioned in Chap. 6, this latter tsunami's run-up measured 3 m high on the Hawaiian Islands and 1–2 m in Japan, and killed 61 and 190 people respectively in each area.

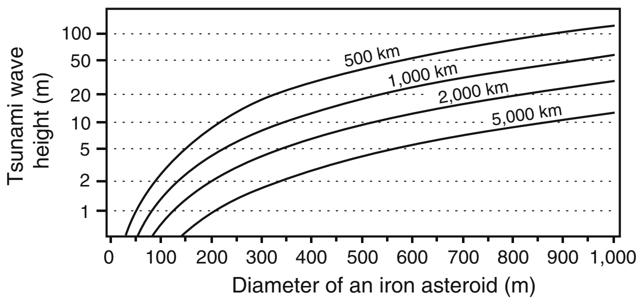


Fig. 9.5 The size of tsunami, above sea level, generated by iron asteroids of various diameters striking the ocean. The heights are at distances of 500, 1,000, 2,000, and 5,000 km from the center of impact. The asteroids have a density of 7.8 g cm^{-3} and impact with a velocity of 20 km s^{-1}

If the height of a tsunami at shore were approximately ten times its open ocean height, then according to Eq. (2.14), the tsunami wave produced by a 100 m diameter iron asteroid (Table 9.1) would penetrate inland 890 m on any flat coastal plain within 2,000 km of the impact. An iron asteroid, 500 m in size can generate a tsunami wave that is approximately 35 m high leaving the impact site. 2000 km away, this tsunami would still be approximately 9 m high. If this size asteroid landed in the middle of the Pacific Ocean, its tsunami would be just less than 5 m in height approaching any of the surrounding coastlines. Theoretically, this wave could sweep inland over 12 km across any flat coastal plain in the Pacific Ocean region. Stony asteroids are less effective at generating tsunami than iron asteroids, but the impact of their run-up is just as impressive. A 500 m stony asteroid would generate a tsunami that is 5.5 m high, 2,000 km from the impact site. This is bigger than any historical tsunami in the Pacific. Such a wave could sweep inland more than 6 km over any flat coast surrounding the Pacific Ocean. Asteroids larger than 1 km in diameter will produce catastrophic tsunami in any ocean even if tsunami generation is depth limited. Modeling, using incompressible, shallow-water long-wave equations indicates that a significant amount of this wave's energy would be reflected from the front of flat continental shelves. Hence, coasts protected by wide shelves, such as those found along the east coast of the United States and northern Europe, are less affected by cosmogenic tsunami than are steep coasts such as those found along the coasts of Australia or Japan. However, even on the most protected coastline, the wave formed by a large asteroid would mimic the effect of tsunami generated by mega-landslides.

Recent mathematical and computer modeling indicates that there is a wide range in the calculated heights of tsunami emanating from asteroid impacts (Paine 1999; Gusiakov 2007). For example, Fig. 9.6 presents a simulation of the wave height produced by a stony asteroid 200 m in diameter traveling at a speed of 20 km s^{-1} (Ward and Asphaug 2000). The leading edge of the resulting tsunami travels 25 km from the center of the impact within 5 min and is over 300 m high. At distances of 50, 500, and 2,000 km the wave is still over 100, 11, and 6 m high, respectively. These heights are substantially greater than the calculated heights based upon nuclear explosions (Fig. 9.5). At the other extreme, simulations of asteroid impacts into an ocean have been performed on a supercomputer at the Sandia National Laboratories in New Mexico, using algorithms that modeled accurately the impact of the Shoemaker–Levy 9 comet into Jupiter's atmosphere in July 1994 (Crawford and Mader 1998). These are the same calculations used in the simulation of splash effects shown in Fig. 9.4. Despite an uncertainty factor of two, the computer modeling yields tsunami heights that are smaller than those derived using Eq. (9.6) by a factor of almost ten. These differences are summarized in Table 9.2 for a small range of asteroid sizes. The differences have been calculated 500 km from the center of impact for an iron asteroid striking an ocean 5,000 m deep at a velocity of 20 km s^{-1}. The modeled tsunami wave heights span an order of magnitude—a fact indicating that there is not a broad consensus amongst researchers on the heights of asteroid-generated tsunami.

9.4 Geological Events

9.4.1 Hypothesized Frequency

Impact craters are profoundly difficult to identify because of active erosion of the Earth's surface and recycling of the Earth's crust through plate tectonics. As of the beginning of 2013, 183 impact craters had been identified on the surface of the Earth, excluding the polar icecaps (Planetary and Space Science Centre 2013). Identification is presently proceeding at the rate of 15 new craters per decade. As of 2003, only 7 of these were identified as marine, while 20 originally occurred in the ocean, but are now preserved on land (Dypvik and Jansa 2003). Only marine impacts generate tsunami. While some of the preserved craters may have occurred on the margins of oceans, no deep-ocean-basin impact structure has been recognized. Impacts in the ocean produce variable crater forms depending upon the depth of water. Impacts in shallow water produce craters with low or absent rims because currents and back flow into the crater smooth out topography. Such currents can also cut gullies through the crater rim. Infilling of the crater with sediment is also a dominant process, so crater relief is shallow. If an impact occurs on the edge of the continental shelf, then that part of the crater furthest from land may collapse sending shelf material cascading onto abyssal plains to build up sediments hundreds of meters thick. In the deepest ocean, water does not absorb the impact. Here

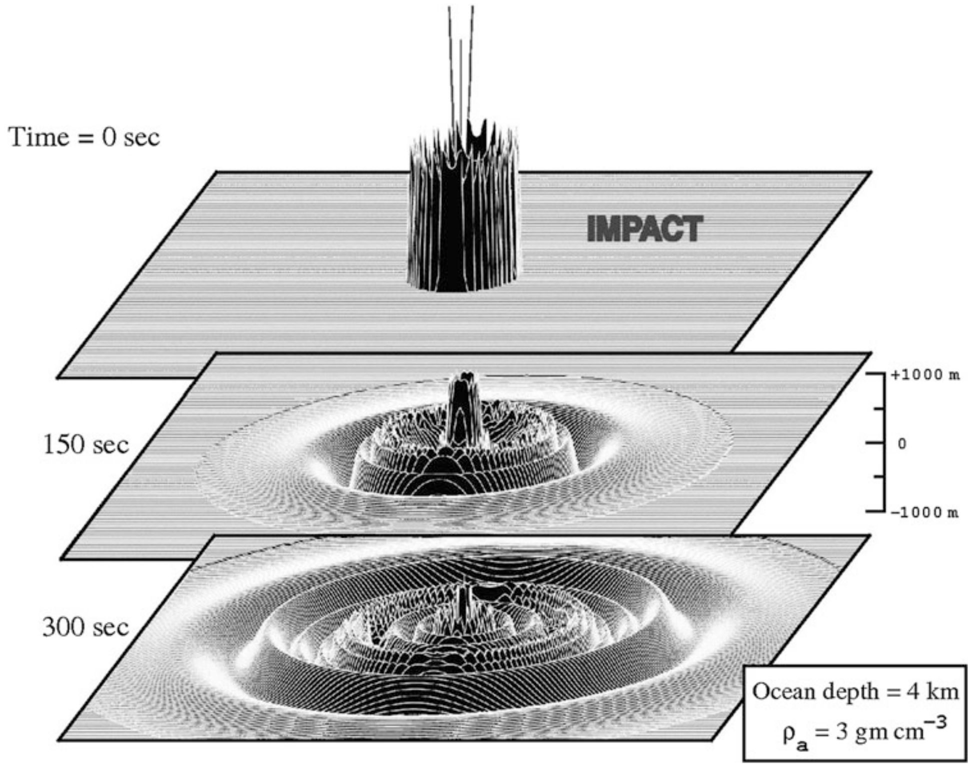


Fig. 9.6 Modeled results of the initial development of a tsunami created by the impact of a 200 m diameter stony asteroid with a density of 3 g cm^{-3} traveling at 20 km s^{-1}. Within 300 s, a tsunami propagates outwards more than 50 km. The leading wave in the bottom panel is about 325 ms high. Based on Ward and Asphaug (2000). Dr. Steven Ward, Institute of Tectonics, University of California at Santa Cruz, kindly provided a digital copy of this simulation

craters are more likely to approximate the shape of those formed on land. The size of the resulting tsunami also varies. Those generated on the continental shelf or in shallow gulfs and bays may only be 1–2 m in height even where craters 10 km in diameter have formed. The resulting features on land cannot be separated easily from those formed by tsunami generated by large earthquakes or submarine slides. Tsunami propagating landward from impacts on the edge of the continental shelf are similar. However the tsunami propagating seaward from these locations may be much larger and more destructive on distant shores. Impacts in deeper water generate tsunami originating from a point source. Here even small impacts generated by low-density comets 1 km in size may produce tsunami larger than those generated by the greatest earthquakes of the past century. Evidence of such a tsunami should be present basin-wide with features orientated back to a common point source.

Comet and meteor impacts were common in the early history of the Earth, but within the last 225 million years, the Earth has only been struck randomly by debris flung into the inner solar system or by asteroids orbiting between the Earth and Jupiter (Verschuur 1996; Steel 1995). One hundred and two craters have been identified over this period, of which 14 have a marine source. By far the largest of these is Chicxulub crater, which is 180 km in diameter and is buried beneath the Yucatan Peninsula in Mexico (Alvarez 1997). Chicxulub is one of the few submarine impacts now preserved under a continent. This event has been linked to the Cretaceous–Tertiary boundary extinction of the dinosaurs 65 million years ago. Chicxulub will be described in more detail subsequently. If the distribution of comet/asteroid impacts was spread evenly over the Earth's surface, and if it can be assumed that the oceans have continually occupied at least 70 % of the world's surface area, then a minimum of 293 impacts should have occurred in the oceans over the last 225 million years. This represents approximately one ocean impact event every 0.77 million years.

It is possible to use Eq. (9.2) and the size of known impact craters to calculate the energy released by each

Table 9.2 Crater and tsunami characteristics modeled using analogues to nuclear explosions and the Shoemaker–Levy comet impact into Jupiter

	Asteroid diameter (m)		
	250	500	1000
Analogue to nuclear explosions			
Crater size (km)	7.7	14.4	26.9
Tsunami height (m)	11.9	36.7	112.1
Sandia computer simulations			
Crater size (km)	5.0	10.0	20.0
Wave velocity (m s^{-1})	166.0	166.0	900.0
Wave period (s)	150.0	180.0	300.0
Tsunami height (m)	1.3	5.0	12.0

Note Latter modeling is the same as that used in Fig. 9.4
Wave heights are taken 500 km from the impact site
Source Based on Crawford and Mader (1998)

impact, and the diameter of the impacting object (Shoemaker 1983). In this analysis, it is assumed that all of the objects were iron asteroids with a density of 7.8 g cm^{-3}, and that they struck crustal material with a density of 2.65 g cm^{-3}. In addition, the diameter of craters larger than 3 km has been adjusted upwards by a factor of 1.3 to account for collapse due to gravity. It is possible to use Eqs. (9.6) and (9.8) (Hills and Mader 1997) to calculate the hypothetical distribution of tsunami wave heights in the ocean produced by this theorized population of impacts over the last 225 million years. This distribution is plotted in Fig. 9.7 at a distance of 1,000 km from each impact site. All objects are assumed to have fallen into an ocean that is 5,000 m deep. Shallow water corrections have been applied where required because they make the theorized tsunami wave heights more realistic. For example, the Chicxulub impact object, which had a postulated diameter as great as 15 km (Alvarez 1997), would have generated a tsunami 4.6 km high without this correction, as opposed to one 104 m high with it. The latter value is closer to estimates derived from analysis of sedimentary deposits laid down by the wave. The average height of theorized, asteroid-generated tsunami waves in the ocean over the past 65 million years is 12.6 m. If the cut-off value for mega-tsunami begins at 5 m, then 40 % of impacts generated this type of event. The probability of an asteroid producing a tsunami more than 5 m in height over the next million years is 0.26 %. Since civilization began, the probability of such a large event has only been 0.0026 %. Mega-tsunami greater than 20 m in elevation are rare and represent in total 17 % of hypothesized events. While the effect of mega-tsunami in any ocean would be catastrophic, geologically, they do not appear to have been a dominant force shaping world coastal landscape. This poses a conundrum for the Late Holocene epoch—beginning about 7000 years ago when sea level reached present levels after the Last Glacial, because evidence of mega-tsunami over this period is common.

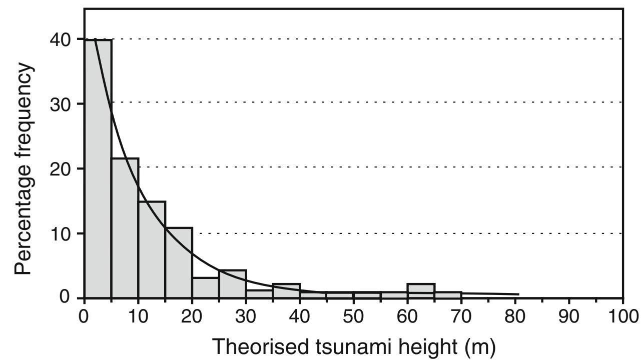


Fig. 9.7 Theoretical distribution of tsunami wave heights generated by iron asteroid impacts with the world's oceans over the last 225 million years. Density of the meteorites is 7.8 g cm^{-3}

9.4.2 Chicxulub, the Cretaceous–Tertiary (K/T) Extinction Event

One of the great mysteries of geology, the extinction of the dinosaurs, was not solved until 1980, when Walter Alvarez and his colleagues proposed that a comet had caused a global winter that not only killed the dinosaurs, but also wiped out 67 % of all species at the boundary between the Cretaceous and the Tertiary (Verschuur 1996; Alvarez 1997). That hypothesis was speculative until the crater for the impact was eventually found underlying Chicxulub, on the Yucatan Peninsula in Mexico. Finally, between 1988 and 1992, tsunami deposits were found in the region that linked the Chicxulub crater to what is now called the K/T extinction event (Bourgeois et al. 1988; Bohor 1996; Smit et al. 1996).

The comet responsible for the extinction event was about 10–15 km in diameter, and produced a crater 180 km in diameter in anhydrite-rich limestones and dolomites (Verschuur 1996; Alvarez 1997; Koeberl and MacLeod 2002). Two fireballs issued from the impact site. The first consisted of a cloud of extremely hot vapourised rock, followed closely by a superheated cloud of CO_2 gas released from the carbonates. The heat was so intense that all vegetation burned out to a radius of several thousand kilometers, loading the atmosphere with soot. Seismic waves with surface wave magnitudes, M_s, of 9–11 caused faulting in shallow waters around the Gulf. Huge submarine landslides were triggered on steeper slopes. Following the impact, Sunlight was blocked by an estimated 100×10^9 tonnes of dust thrown into the atmosphere—a process that eliminated photosynthesis for a 2–6 month period. Large amounts of CO_2 and SO_2 were released into the atmosphere together with the formation of equivalent amounts of nitrogen oxides. Subsequent scavenging of these molecules from the atmosphere produced an acid rain rich in sulfuric and nitric acids. All animals dependent upon photosynthesizing organisms became extinct. In total, 38.5 % of all genera and 67 % of all species disappeared. Only the end of the Permian 250 million years ago saw the extermination of more species.

The evidence for extinction is one of the main signatures of the K/T event left in the geological record. However, the presence of a homogenite unit 180 m thick in Cuba (Matsui et al. 2002) and tsunami deposits up to 9 m thick on continental shelves and the seafloor (Bohor 1996) provide the conclusive proof of an impact event of enormous magnitude. The impact occurred on the continental shelf, close to the southern shore of the proto-Gulf of Mexico (Fig. 9.8), which formed an enclosed, shallow sea, 1,500 km in diameter. Tsunami were generated by the ejecta curtain, the

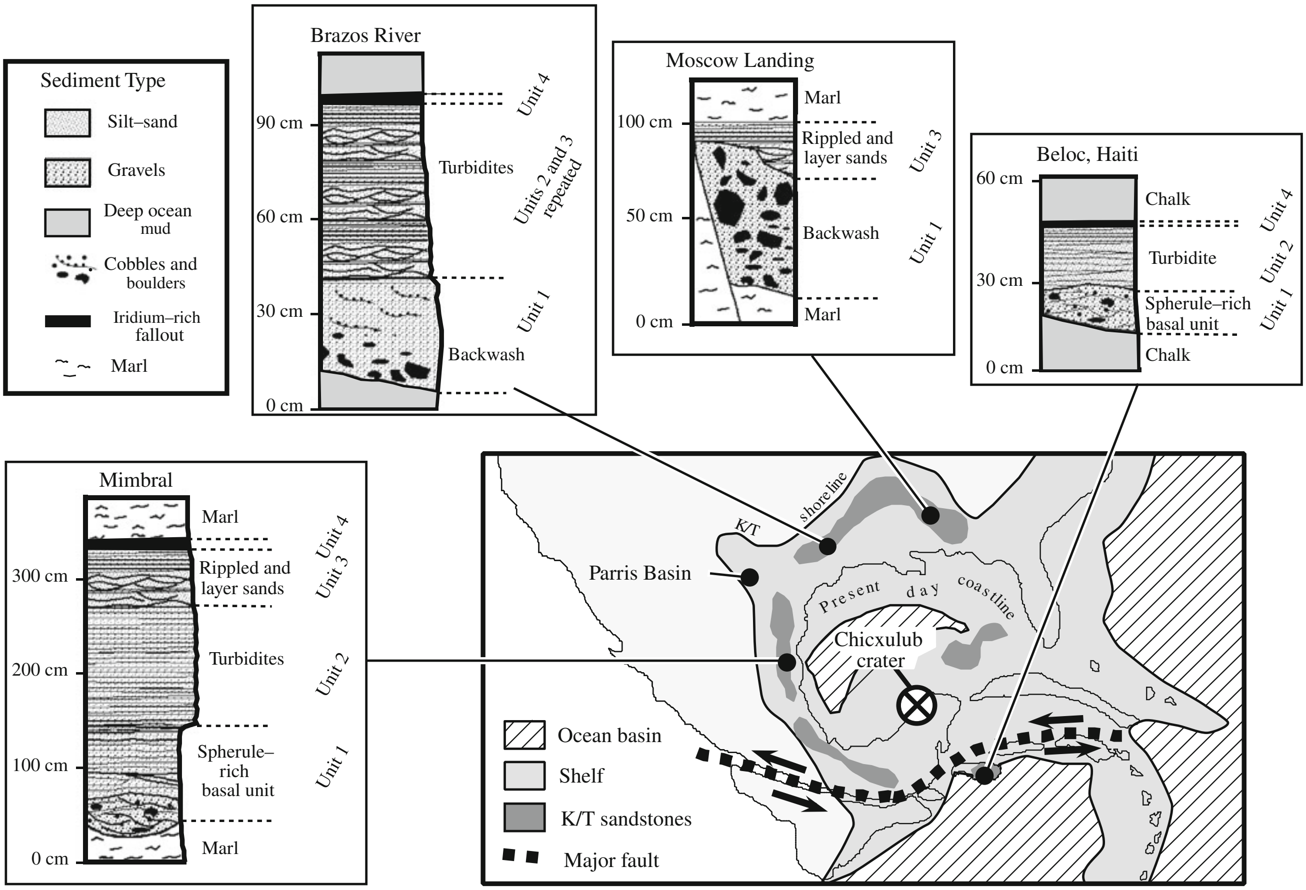


Fig. 9.8 Location of the Chicxulub impact crater and stratigraphic sections of tsunami deposits surrounding the proto-Gulf of Mexico. Based on Bourgeois et al. (1988), Bohor (1996), and Smit et al. (1996)

initial blast wave of compressed air from the impact, water flowing into the cavity and large scale landslides. The most significant factor was generation of the crater. This produced a tsunami 200 m high that rolled across the southern United States for a distance of 300 km to a maximum elevation of 300 m (Fig. 9.1) (Alvarez 1997; Matsui et al. 2002). Within an hour of the impact, the burning forests that had been flattened and then ignited by the initial blast were picked up, mixed with uncompacted sediment and ripped-up bedrock, and then driven inland hundreds of kilometers over the flat coastal plains adjacent to the proto-Gulf. Backwash re-entered the Gulf as a wave tens of meters high, accompanied by channelised backflow that eroded channels across the wide shelf. This slurry spread along the seabed as a turbidity current, depositing a chaotic mixture of ejecta, bedrock clasts, sand, and terrestrial vegetation across the abyssal plain. Reflection of this wave back and forth across the Gulf ensured that landmasses were repetitively swept by tsunami diminutively over the next few days. Slowly, sediment suspended in the water column and dust put into the atmosphere settled to the seabed over the next few weeks as quiescence returned to a lifeless ocean. This latter sediment contained the iridium-rich signature of the cosmogenic source. Millions of years later as the modern Gulf formed, deposits laid down by the passage of the tsunami were uplifted and then exposed around the Chicxulub impact center—along the Mexican Gulf coast, in exposures on the Brazos River in Texas, at several sites in Alabama, and on the Island of Haiti (Fig. 9.8) (Bourgeois et al. 1988; Bohor 1996; Smit et al. 1996).

The nature of the turbidite signature varies depending upon its proximity to the initial impact and its relative location to the shoreline of the proto-Gulf (Fig. 9.8). The deposits have been attributed to turbidity currents generated by submarine slides or to bottom currents generated by the passage of tsunami waves (Bohor 1996). The enormous height of the wave would have ensured that even the deepest part of the Gulf was in shallow water and that cobble-sized material was moved. All deposits contain sand that must have been brought there from the shelf by backwash generated by the tsunami or by turbidity currents. Because tsunami have wavelengths tens if not hundreds of kilometers long, current velocities at the seabed generated by the oscillatory nature of the wave must have been unidirectional, pointing away from the impact site for several minutes under the crest. This would have been followed by a longer period of reverse flow that decreased in magnitude until the next wave in the tsunami wave train approached. Thus, sandy sediment once deposited in the deep ocean could have been reworked by other waves in the tsunami wave train and by the seiches that followed. In addition, ejecta in the form of spherules are absent or sparse at the base of some deposits. Ejecta present at the base of deposits in the ocean did not necessarily fall there in situ from the atmosphere. Because ejecta were thrown high into the atmosphere, it took time for it to settle back to the Earth's surface. During this time the Earth rotated eastwards. Thus most ejecta tended to fall on the shelf to the west of the impact site, forming a layer 1 m thick. Strong tsunami backwash swept these spherules seaward and deposited them first below the subsequent turbidites. Shelf sands then covered the turbidites, leading to a reversal in stratigraphy.

Both the hydrodynamics of the tsunami and the relative abundance of ejecta are reflected in the deposits. At Beloc, on the Island of Haiti, which was in water about 2 km deep at the time of the impact, deposits are thinnest because they are furthest from sources of sand on the shelf. A turbidity current first deposited a layer of ejecta 15–70 cm thick (Smit et al. 1996). This grades upwards into a deposit of fine sand and silt that is 20 cm thick with low-angled cross-bedding (Fig. 9.8). Thin iridium-rich layers of sandy silt 1–2 mm thick occur at the top of the sequence. This upper segment in many locations is disturbed, implying that a second tsunami may have affected the area afterwards. This could have been generated by volcanism triggered by the impact or by subsequent landslides on an unstable seabed. In slightly shallower water, but still offshore of any shelf, west of the impact site at Mimbral where still water conditions existed on the seabed, fine limestone-rich clays called marls were overlain by 1 m of ripped-up limestone, mixed together with the ejecta debris from the impact zone (Behor 1996). These sediments are best preserved in the channels cut by tsunami backwash and are overlain by at least 2 m of sand derived from the distant shoreline and brought to the seabed by turbidity currents. This unit can be traced over a distance of 2,000 km, from Alabama through Texas to the southern border of Mexico (Smit et al. 1996; Bourgeois et al. 1988). This unit is overlain by a meter of crosscurrent beds of sequential rippled sand and fine clay. In many respects, the deposit has all of the characteristics of a Bouma sequence as described in Chap. 3. Finally, a thin layer, several centimeters thick, caps the sequence. This uppermost layer contains the iridium-rich dust fallout that settled out of the atmosphere over several weeks following the impact. Closer to shore, about 100 km landward of the shelf edge at a site like the Brazos River in Texas, the tsunami wave swept over the muddy, flat shelf, scouring out swales with a relief of 0.7 m. Backwash dominates these sites. The bottom part of the sand deposits is about 1.3 m thick and consists of rounded calcareous cobbles, shell, fish teeth, terrestrial wood debris, and angular pieces of mudstone. At Moscow Landing, Alabama, the shelf was only 30 m deep at the time of impact. Seismic waves preceded the tsunami creating normal faults in a north–south direction. These are paralleled by grooves, flute casts, scour features, and lineations created by the passage of the wave over undular topography molded into soft bottom muds. Here, backwash in the form of undertow wedged the bottom sediments against fault blocks. Boulders are also present in the deposit. The bottom unit fines upwards into parallel-laminated and symmetrically rippled sandstone, siltstone, and mudstone. In places, the sequence is repeated up to three times, indicating the passage of more than one wave. The upward part of the sequence, which is iridium-rich, shows evidence of seiching.

The size of mud clasts at the Brazos River site gives some indication of the bottom shear velocities that must have been generated over the shelf (Bourgeois et al. 1988). These values are as high as 1 m s^{-1}, far exceeding those that could be generated by storms on a shelf in 50–100 m depth of water. The velocities allude to a tsunami wave between 50 m and 100 m high with a period of 30–60 min at this location. Modeling suggests that the waves rolled back and forth across the proto-landscape at a periodicity of 1–2 h (Matsui et al. 2002). Boulder deposits indicative of a mega-tsunami are rare; however, they have been found close to the shoreline of the proto-Gulf at Parras Basin in northeastern Mexico and in the mid-south of the United States. At the latter location, anomalous sandstone boulders up to 15 m in diameter have been found 80 m above floodplains on hills that would have been coastal headlands at the time (Patterson 1998).

9.4.3 Other Events

Chicxulub tends to dominate the public's perception of what a large asteroid or comet impact can do. While this is the biggest event in the last 225 million years, it is not the only one to have generated an impressive tsunami. For example, an event known as the Eltanin Asteroid Event occurred during the Pliocene 2.15 million years ago (Gersonde et al. 1997). This asteroid, estimated to have been 4 km in diameter, plunged into the Pacific Ocean 700 km off the southwest corner of South America and exploded, sending ejecta into the atmosphere. If the object had a density of 3.6 g cm^{-3} and struck at a speed of 20 km s^{-1}, it potentially generated a mega-tsunami—according to Eq. (9.6)—at least 30 m in height along nearby coasts in South America and

Antarctica (Mader 1998). Spreading waves from the impact site would have extended into the North Pacific and Southern Oceans with a deep-water wave height of 10 m reaching the most distant coasts. Conservatively, the resulting tsunami would have been 4, 10, and 20 m high off the coasts of Japan, California, and New Zealand respectively. Run-ups would have been amplified by a factor of 2–3 times as the wave travelled across continental shelves.

Evidence for this tsunami consists of unusual skeletal deposits of marine and land mammals found mixed on the Peruvian coast, corresponding to the time of the Eltanin impact (Gersonde et al. 1997). In coastal Antarctica, late Pliocene deposits of marine sediments containing continental shelf diatoms have been found several tens of meters above sea level, also dating from this period. The sediment layers are less than 0.5 m thick and are analogous to the splays of shelf sediment described in Chap. 3, onlapped onto coasts by modern tsunami. Finally, the splash from the impact may have lobbed marine diatoms and other microfossils thousands of kilometers into the ice-free Transantarctic Mountains of Antarctica. If this is so, then this evidence may resolve one of the discrepancies between theory and field evidence for the size of cosmogenically generated mega-tsunami—namely, that splash may be a potent force generating some of the geomorphic evidence attributed to catastrophic flows.

9.5 Events Based upon Legends

9.5.1 Introduction

If cosmogenically generated tsunami are so rare—certainly within the time span of human civilization, then a paradox exists because evidence for such events certainly appears often in the geological record and in human legends. Traditionally, the difficulty in discriminating between fact and fiction, between echoes of the real past and dreams, has discouraged historians and scientists from making inferences about catastrophic events from myths or deciphered records. Yet, common threads appear in many ancient tales (Clube and Napier 1982; Kristan-Tollmann and Tollmann 1992; Masse 1998, 2007; Masse and Masse 2007). Stories told by the Washo Indians of California and by the Aborigines of South Australia portray falling stars, fire from the sky, and cataclysmic floods unlike any modern event. Similar portrayals appear in the *Gilgamesh* myth from the Middle East, in Peruvian legends, and in the Revelations of Saint John and the Noachian flood story in the Bible. These ancient writings appear to represent meteoritic showers 3000–6000 years ago and, in the case of Aboriginal and Maori legends events that had they occurred in Europe would be considered historical. The following section briefly outlines the evidence for tsunami based upon legends centered on five events: The *Deluge Comet* 8200 years ago; The *Burckle Flood Comet* 4800 years ago, The *Mahuika Comet* Event 500 years ago; a Kimberley Event, in northwestern Australia, less than 500 years ago; and an event in the Gulf of Carpentaria, northern Australia, 1500 years ago.

9.5.2 *Deluge Comet* Impact Event 8200 ± 200 Years Ago

Kristan-Tollmann and Tollmann (1992), using legends collected worldwide, believed that a comet circling the Sun fragmented into seven large bodies that crashed into the world's oceans 8,200 ± 200 years ago. This age is based on radiocarbon dates from Vietnam, Australia, and Europe. The impacts generated an atmospheric fireball that globally affected society. This was followed by a nuclear winter characterized by global cooling. More significantly, enormous tsunami swept across coastal plains and, if the legends are to be believed, overwashed the center of continents. The latter phenomenon, if true, most likely was associated with the splash from the impacts rather than with conventional tsunami run-up. Massive floods then occurred across continents. The event may well have an element of truth. Figure 9.9 plots the location of the seven impact sites derived from geological evidence and legends. Two of these sites, in the Tasman and North Seas, have been identified as having mega-tsunami events around this time. The North Sea impact center corresponds with the location of the Storegga slides described in Chap. 7. Here, the main tsunami took place 7950 ± 190 years ago. One of the better dates comes from wood lying above tektites in a sand dune along the south coast of Victoria, Australia. The tektites are associated with the Tasman Sea impact and date at 8200 ± 250 years before present. These dates place the *Deluge Comet* impact event—a term used by the Tollmanns—around 6200 BC. This event does not stand alone during the Holocene. It has been repeated in recent times—a fact supported by Maori and Aborigine legends from New Zealand and Australia.

9.5.3 *Burckle Flood Comet* Event, 4800 Years Ago

Independent of the above study, Masse (1998, 2007) compiled numerous legends indicating that a comet struck the Indian Ocean about 4800 years ago. He analyzed flood myths from 175 different cultural groups spanning the globe, using 12 environmental variables within the body of great flood myths. These variables took into account scientific evidence for the events leading up to the flood, its

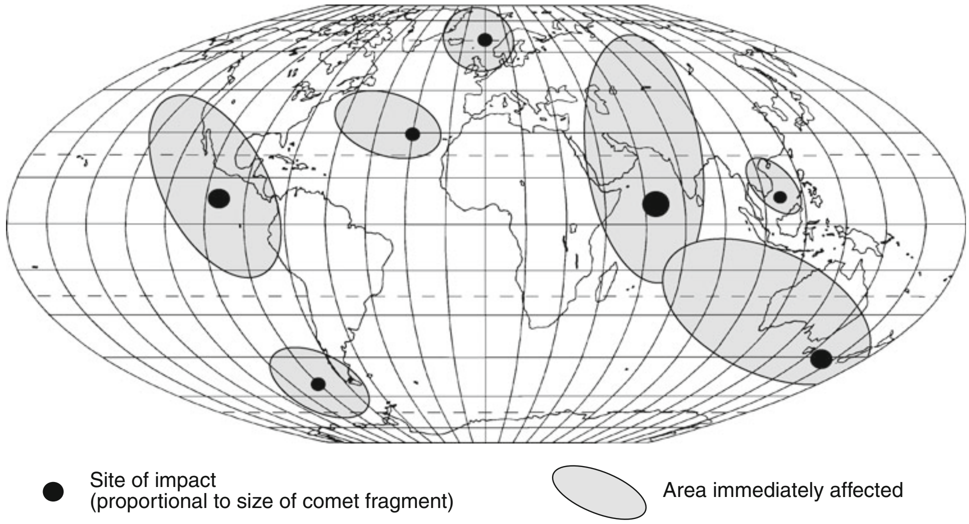


Fig. 9.9 Reconstruction of the impact sites of fragments of the *Deluge Comet* 8200 ± 200 years ago based upon geological evidence and legends. From Kristan-Tollmann and Tollmann (1992)

timing and the resulting consequences. Many of the legends describe animistic images in the sky preceding the flood that can be associated with the pre-perihelion and post-perihelion stages of a near-Earth comet. The flood was associated in many cases with torrential rainfall lasting between 4 and 10 days and a tsunami event. The two earliest written versions of this flood myth from Mesopotamia—the Gilgamesh and Atrahasis epics written in the 2nd and early 3rd millennium BC—have the flood storm lasting approximately 7 days. Given historical rainfalls from tropical cyclones, this yields 7.8 m of rainfall. The rainfall was ubiquitously hot, and preceded by wind and overwhelming darkness. Although a relatively small number of myths note that survivors fled to the tops of high mountains such Mount Ararat (Turkey) and Mount Parnassus (Greece), legends in California, Brazil, Tierra del Fuego, Indonesia, and India indicate flooding 15–100 km inland, and 150–300 m above sea level. The seasonal and lunar data for legends are remarkably consistent. Based upon these, archaeological evidence and simulations using astronomical software programs, the comet struck in the middle of the Indian Ocean on or about May 10, 2807 BC Masse (2007).

Subsequently, using clues from these myths, a large impact crater—named the Burckle crater—was identified in the Indian Ocean at 30.87°S, 61.36°E as being a possible candidate for this event (Masse 2007; Abbott et al. 2005). The crater is 29 km in diameter, lies at a depth of 4000 m and is situated on the wall of a fracture zone south of the Southwest Indian Ridge (Fig. 9.10). It was found using satellite altimetry and gravity interpretations of sea floor bathymetry. Submarine impact craters form when an impactor with a diameter that is at least 1/10 of the water depth strikes the sea floor (Gusiakov et al. 2010). After the initial explosion, the impact water cavity and associated sediment collapse inward, filling the interior of the crater. The resulting crater rim is more subdued than those found on land and has gullies eroded by water surging back into the crater. All of these characteristics are present for the Burckle crater. Burckle's location on a fracture zone wall implies that its impact ejecta contains mantle rocks such as serpentinized peridotites, oceanic sediment and oceanic basalt. There are five cores within the theorized ejecta zone of the Burckle crater containing mineral, rock and glass fragments; nearly pure carbon impact spherules; and calcite rhombohedrons. The latter are the most common type of impact ejecta, which can preserved at the depths of a crater such as this.

The energy of the Burckle impact was 200,000–300,000 times that of the Krakatau eruption (Abbott et al. 2005). Using this analogue, tsunami run-ups were 10–100 m on shorelines surrounding the Indian Ocean.

Such run-ups would have generated chevrons along sandy coastlines. Kelletat and Scheffers (2003) predicted that the tsunami source for chevrons in Western Australia lay at the same latitude as the Burckle impact. A search of closer sites found enormous chevron features in southern Madagascar (Abbott et al. 2005; Masse et al. 2007; Gusiakov et al. 2010). These mega-tsunami chevrons are ubiquitous along the coast of southern Madagascar, more so than on any other coastline in the world. They extend, as six distinct complexes, westward in a 375 km long chain from Taolagnaro (Fort Dauphin) to Itampolo Bay (Fig. 9.10b). Each chevron represents lateral transport of sediment onto the coast over many kilometers: 20 km at Faux Cap, 30 km at Fenambosy, and 45 km at Ampalaza. In some cases, the chevrons overtopped the front edge of the Karimbola Plateau escarpment situated more than 125–150 m above the neighboring coastal plain. Maximum run-ups of 200 m above present day sea level occur at Faux Cap and of 190 m at Cap St Marie. The two best delineated and preserved chevron dunes are those associated with Ampalaza and Fenambosy Bays. The Ampalaza chevron is 45 km in length and reaches 80 m above present sea level (Fig. 9.10c). It contains multiple sets

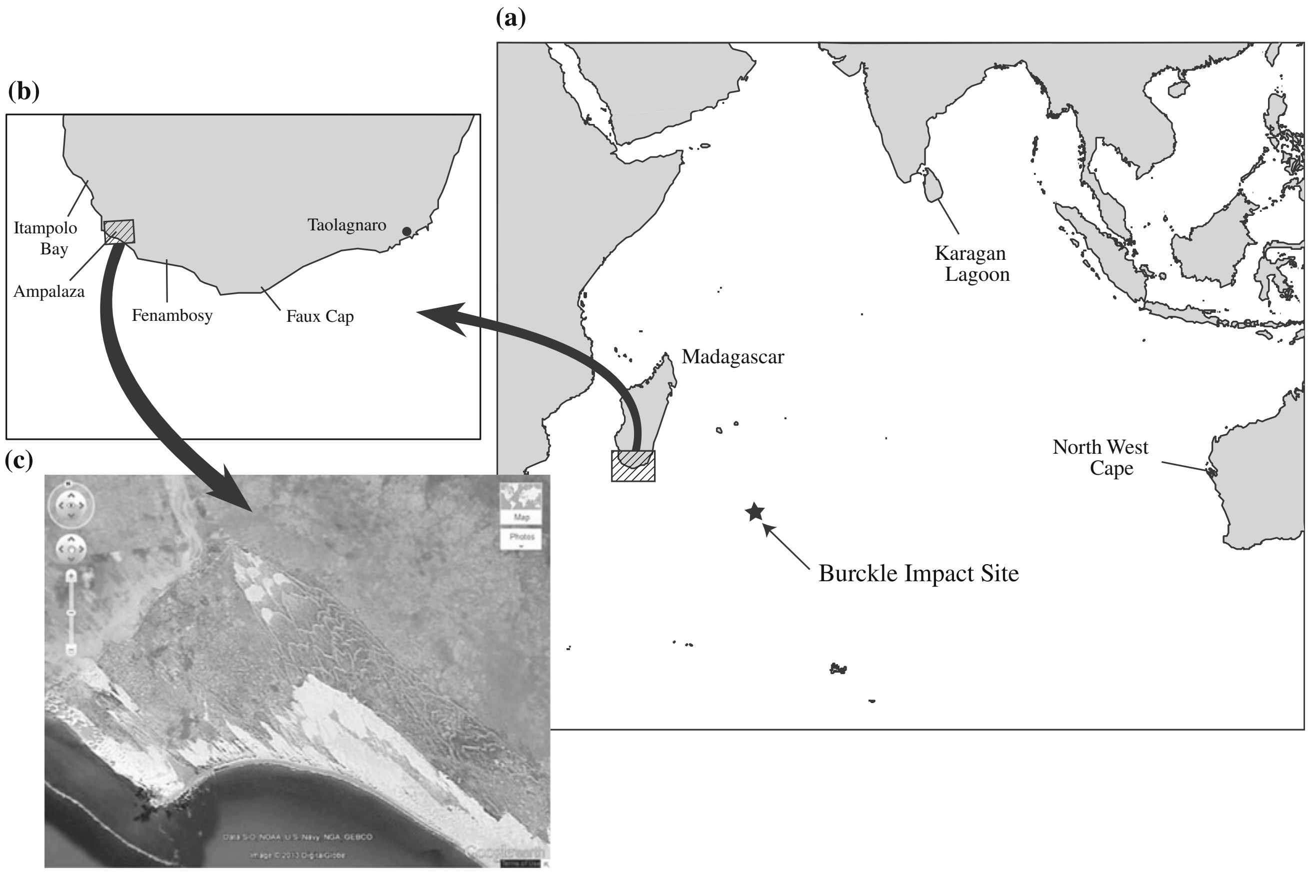


Fig. 9.10 Location map of the Indian Ocean with reference to 2807 BC Burckle impact event. **a** Location of Burckle impact crater and sites around the Indian Ocean showing tsunami evidence linked to this event. **b** Location of major chevrons in Southern Madagascar. **c** Google Earth image of the Ampalaza chevron, Southern Madagascar. Both the apex at the northwestern end and southern flank exhibit recent aeolian activity

of well-defined, smaller, internal chevrons. It is tempting to ascribe the chevrons to prevailing winds; however, careful measurement of their orientation reveals that they are aligned with modeled wave refraction patterns coming from a point source located in the vicinity of the Burckle crater. In addition, the sediments in the chevrons are unsorted with a broad range of particle sizes ranging from small boulders down to clay particles. The chevrons also contain microfossils—with surface splash particles of molten native metals—indicative of a marine source from the Madagascar outer shelf. Finally, *dump* deposits, containing rock fragments typical of mega tsunami processes, were found eastward from the Fenambosy chevron to Cap St. Marie. Many of the rock fragments were not locally derived. The age of the Madagascar chevrons is presently unknown. However, there are tsunami deposits in the Indian Ocean region similar in age to that of 2807 BC determined from legends. Besides the orientation of chevrons on the West Australian coast, two samples of coral lying in boulder ridges up to 7 m above sea level on the North West Cape date around this time (Scheffers et al. 2008b). There is also a tsunami deposit at Karagan Lagoon, Sri Lanka having a radiocarbon age centered around 2984 BC (Fig. 6.13) (Jackson 2008). Given the error bars on this date, the latter deposit could be a product of the Burckle event.

9.5.4 The *Mahuika Comet* Event and Eastern Australia

Paleo-tsunami larger than the historical events described in Chap. 1 are possible. The evidence from Eastern Australia for cosmogenic mega-tsunami is based upon the magnitude of geomorphic features and their contemporaneous occurrence over a wide region of the Tasman Sea (Fig. 9.11b). This chronology coincides with the timing of legends and the sightings of comets and asteroids over the last millennium (Rasmussen 1991; Hasegawa 1992; Steel 1995). Figure 9.11c shows the location of a possible comet impact lying in 300 m depth of water on the continental shelf 250 km south of New Zealand at 48.3°S, 166.4°E (Abbott et al. 2003). The crater is 20 km in diameter and could have been produced by a comet 1.6 km in size traveling at a speed of 51 km s^{-1} (all calculations based on Marcus et al. 2005). When it struck, it

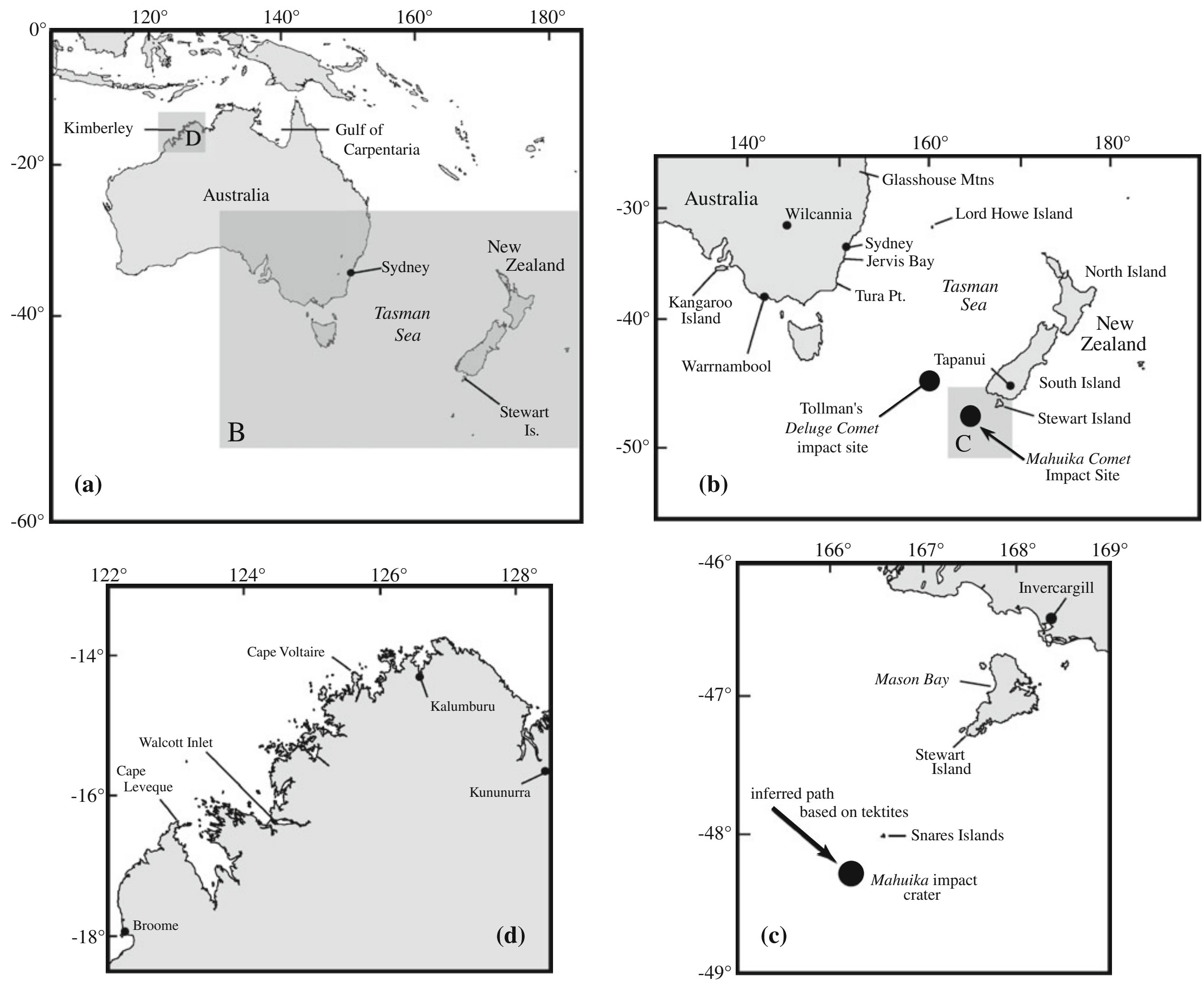


Fig. 9.11 Location map of Australia and New Zealand where physical and legendary evidence exists for tsunami

would have generated an earthquake with a surface wave magnitude of 8.3. A tsunami 75 m high at the southern tip of Stewart Island and 5 m high approaching the coast south of Sydney, Australia is feasible. The lack of sediment that normally settles over time from the ocean suggests that the crater is less than 1000 years old (Abbott et al. 2003). The comet has been named *Mahuika* after the Maori God of fire. Tektites found in sediments to the southeast indicate a trajectory for this comet from the northwest, across the east coast of Australia (Matzen et al. 2003). If the recent age of the event is correct, Aborigines in Australia and Maori in New Zealand would have observed this comet's dying moments.

One of the more intriguing legends supporting a cosmogenic impact in the southwest Pacific is the New Zealand Maori legend known as the *Mystic Fires of Tamaatea or Tamatea* (Steel and Snow 1992). The legend is prevalent in the Southland and Otago regions of the South Island, centered on the town of Tapanui (Fig. 9.11b). Here there appears to be evidence for an airburst that flatten trees similar to the Tunguska event. The remains of fallen trees are aligned radially away from the point of explosion out to a distance of 40–80 km. Local Maori legends in the area tell about the falling of the skies, raging winds, and mysterious and massive firestorms from space. The Sun was screened out, causing death and decay. Maori place names refer to a Tunguska-like explosion although no volcanism exists in the region (Tregear 1891). Tapanui, itself, translates locally as "the big explosion". One legend states that the Aparima Plains west of Invercargill were flooded. The Maori also attribute the demise of the Moas, as well as their culture, to an extraterrestrial event. The extinction of the Moa is remembered as Manu Whakatau, "the bird felled by strange fire". One Maori song refers to the destruction of the Moa when the horns of the Moon fell down from above. On the North Island, the disappearance of the Moa is linked to the coming of the man/god *Tamaatea* who set fire to the land by dropping embers from the sky. Remains of Moa on the South Island can be found clustered in swamps as if these flightless birds fled en masse to avoid some catastrophe.

Similar Aboriginal legends exist in eastern Australia for a comet event (Peck 1938; Flood 1995; Johnson 1998; Cahir 2002; Bryant et al. 2007). Near Wilcannia (Fig. 9.11b), inland in New South Wales, the Paakantji tribe also tell of the sky falling. A great thunderous ball of fire descended from the sky followed by a massive flood. On the north coast of New South Wales, Aborigines speak of "the moon setting in the east" and of flooding of rivers such as the Namoi from the ocean on a clear day. A spear from the sky fell into the sea followed by a great flood that changed the coastline. In southeast Queensland, the Glasshouse Mountains, which lie at the western side of the coastal plain 20 km from the ocean, represent ancestral forms of Tibrogargan and his family who fled a great rising of the ocean. In South Australia, Ngurunderi, a great ancestral figure, caused a *tidal wave* to drown his two disobedient wives at Cape Jervis adjacent to Kangaroo Island. Kangaroo Island remains enigmatic. The island shows extensive evidence of Aboriginal occupancy; but, when the first European—Matthew Flinders—landed on the island in 1802, it was unoccupied. Mainland Aborigines call Kangaroo Island, *Kanga*—the Island of the Dead. The coastline also evinces signatures of cosmogenic tsunami. Most significant are enormous whirlpools on the northern coast of the island similar to those shown in Fig. 3.26. On the south coast of New South Wales, Aboriginal legends not only recount the impact of a large comet, but also the ocean falling from the sky (Jones and Donaldson 1989). At Atcheson Rock, where evidence exists that a tsunami overtopped this 20–25 m high headland, a *dump* deposit contains numerous silcrete hand axes and shaped blades that came from an Aboriginal camp at the head of the embayment. Aborigines in this camp initially would have heard, but not seen, the tsunami approaching. Their first indication of disaster would have been when they looked up and saw the ocean dropping down on them from the sky as the tsunami wave surged over the headland.

From Chaps. 3 and 4, four signatures, sourced along the south coast of New South Wales, stand out as unique features of mega-tsunami that can be generated by cosmic events: chevrons (Fig. 3.10), imbricated boulders fronting or overriding cliffs (Fig. 3.15), whirlpools bored into bedrock (Fig. 3.26), and bedrock fluting producing keel- or cockscomb-like features (Fig. 3.24). Additional evidence of these features comes from the southwest coast of Stewart Island, New Zealand, where whirlpools and giant flutes have been eroded into granite (Bryant et al. 2007). The flutes at the southern end of Mason Bay where the tsunami wave theoretically had a height of 60 m, rise to a height of 20 m and clearly indicate that the headland was overtopped (Fig. 9.12). The orientation of the flutes point directly to the *Mahuika* impact site. At Jervis Bay, on the south coast of New South Wales, angular boulders 6–7 m in diameter have been imbricated and stacked up to 30 m above sea level into a protected gulch cut into the cliffs (Fig. 9.13) (Bryant et al. 1997). The boulders are not due to cliff collapse because they rise to the top of the cliffs and there is no evacuation zone upslope. Imbricated blocks of similar size choke the entrances of two narrow and deep gulches at Mermaids Inlet (Fig. 9.14). Finally, in the same area, at Crocodile Head, cliff-top dunes containing angular gravel have a relief of 6.0–7.5 m and are spaced 160 m apart. They are akin to the undulatory to linguoidal giant ripples that are features of catastrophic flow similar to that observed in the Scablands of Washington State. The flow over the dunes at Crocodile Head is theorized to have been 7.5–12.0 m deep and to have obtained velocities of 6.9–8.1 m s^{-1}. The direction of the tsunami producing this mega-ripple field came from the South Tasman Sea. The run-ups described here, match those of the largest historical tsunami reported in Chap. 2.

It is possible to constrain the age of a regional cosmogenic mega-tsunami event using six independent lines of evidence. First, sightings of meteorites and comets over the last 2000 years show that the most active period happened between 1401 and 1480 (Fig. 9.3). Second, 29 radiocarbon dates have been obtained from marine shell found along the New South Wales coast in disturbed Aboriginal middens, deposited in tsunami *dump* deposits and sand layers, and protected beneath boulders transported by tsunami (Young and Bryant 1992; Young et al. 1993, 1997; Bryant et al. 2007). Of these, three samples were obtained from Lord Howe Island situated in the Tasman Sea halfway between Australia and New Zealand (Fig. 9.11). Each radiocarbon date can be plotted as a frequency distribution over a span of radiocarbon years. These distributions were then converted to calendar ones using detailed calibration tables (Stuiver et al. 1998). These calendar distributions were then summed over time to give the continuous distribution shown in Fig. 9.3. The results are affected by age reversals in the calibration procedure. For example, the gap around 1380 is just that, a gap. No shell living at that time can be dated to that year. The most prominent peak in this chronology centers on 1500 ± 85. There is a 95 % probability of an event between 1200 and 1730. Third, there are dates from disparate regions supporting a large regional tsunami event during this time span. A pipi shell (*Paphies australis*) located about 500 m inland and 30 m above sea level at Mason Bay close to the *Mahuika* impact site returned an age of 1301 ± 36 (Bryant et al. 2007). A massive tsunami *dump* deposit of gravel, cobble, sand and shell, rising to a height of 14.3 m above present sea level and extending up to 300 m inland on the eastern side of Great Barrier Island, New Zealand (Fig. 9.11c), dated between 1400 and 1700 (Nichol et al. 2003). Another tsunami deposit lying 7–8 m above sea

Fig. 9.12 Giant flutes cut into granite on the southern headland of Mason Bay, Stewart Island, New Zealand. The *flutes* point back to the *Mahuika Comet* impact site. The flutes are over 40 m high and were cut by vortices in flow as the tsunami went over the headland. *Photo credit* Dr. Dallas Abbott, Lamont-Doherty Earth Observatory, Columbia University

Fig. 9.13 Imbricated boulders stacked against a 30 m high cliff face on the south side of Gum Getters Inlet, New South Wales, Australia. Some of these boulders are the size of a boxcar. Note the person *circled* for scale

level, in the Mahaulepu Caves on the south coast of Kauai Island, Hawaii facing New Zealand, dated between 1480 and 1610 (Burney et al. 2001). Fourth, burnt wood, and buried charcoal and carbon in peats and bogs, have been dated across the South Island of New Zealand (Mooley et al. 1963; McGlone and Wilmshurst 1999). Dating of this material spans at least two centuries and terminates at the end of the fifteenth century concomitant with the peak in meteorite and comet observations (Fig. 9.3). Fifth, McFadgen (2007) has comprehensively researched and dated the beginning of the demise of Maori culture in New Zealand, linking it to one or more tsunami events at the end of the fifteenth century. Finally, there is evidence that a comet came close to the Earth at the end of the fifteenth century. The small and not very active comet X/1491 B1 (formerly 1491 II) made a close approach to the Earth on February 13, 1491 (Hasegawa 1979). Sekanina and Yeomans (1984) calculated that a collision with the Earth was possible around midnight Eastern Australian time from the northwest, most likely at a 45° angle to the horizon. The direction, season, and time of day agree with statements made in Aboriginal legends and our radiocarbon dates. Baillie (2006) also recognized the potential of this comet for an impact with the Earth. He points out that its timing matches the largest ammonium spike in a millennium in Antarctic ice cores that can be interpreted as the signature of a comet impact.

Fig. 9.14 Boulder pile blocking the mouth of Mermaids Inlet, New South Wales, Australia. The largest blocks are more than 5 m in length. The gulch on the *right* contains a shelly beach dated at 1790 ± 70 radiocarbon years BP

9.5.5 An Event in the Kimberley, Western Australia

A similar, but even larger, cosmogenic event to that described along the New South Wales coast occurred along the Kimberley coast of Western Australia (Fig. 9.11d). Again the event is supported by Aboriginal legends (Mowaljarlai and Malnic 1993; Hamacher and Norris 2009). Curiously, when Europeans made contact with Aboriginal coastal tribes in Western Australia, they noted that the Aborigines avoided the coast and made little attempt to use it for food, even though there was evidence of past usage in the form of large shell kitchen middens. The coast appeared to have been abandoned. Legends about tsunami are most notable around Walcott Inlet (Fig. 9.11d). They recount a very fast flooding from the ocean that filled this inland tidal body for up to 12 h. Other myths imply that water flooded to the top of 500 m high mesas surrounding this inlet. The flooding was extensive from Walcott Inlet in the south, to Kalumburu in the north, and to Kununurra in the east. There is also the intriguing naming of Comet Rock at Kalumburu (Fig. 9.15). Here, not only does the rock look like the head of a comet with an extending trail; but there is also an Aboriginal rock drawing on the lower face of the rock that mimics the form of the rock and is orientated parallel to the rock feature. This rock is orientated 310° to the NW, matching the direction of approach of mega-tsunami on the coast to the west.

Most intriguing are the Wandjina rock art paintings and their associated interpretations (Crawford 1973; Layton 1992; Mowaljarlai and Malnic 1993). Wandjina paintings are stylistic across the Kimberley. None is older than four centuries. The paintings typically show a clown-like face painted white surrounding by an outer, barbed red halo that represents lightning (Fig. 9.16). They are without a mouth and their nose indicates where the power flows down (Mowaljarlai and Malnic 1993). The Wandjina are the rain spirits of the Wunambul, Wororra, and Ngarinyin language people (Layton 1992). The Wandjina have great power and are associated mystically with creation and flooding rain. Wandjina do not have a mouth because their knowledge is beyond speaking. Were they to have a mouth, floods would be generated that would drown the whole Earth. Their origin may be much older and traceable to the flood myths in the Dreamtime. Although linked to the annual monsoon, the Wandjina depict something much more intense. Paintings of the Wandjina may be representations of a comet. Far from the modern perception of comets being white and consisting of a nucleus and a single curved tail, comets can take on many shapes and colors (McCafferty and Baillie 2005). For instance, a comet can form two tails, giving it the appearance of a figure with long flowing hair on two sides. The area around the nucleus can also fragment into many different shapes. Compare the Wandjina rock painting in Fig. 9.16 to that of Comet Donati of 1858 in Fig. 9.17. The resemblance is striking. Comet Donati developed a human-like head with *eyes* centered on its nucleus or *nose*. The nose in the Wandjina painting in Fig. 9.16 even looks like a comet. Just like the Wandjina, Comet Donati did not have a *mouth*. The Wandjina paintings are probably not of Comet Donati, but their resemblance to it suggests that they are comet paintings. One Aboriginal legend tells about a flood that was brought on by the 'star with trails' (Mowaljarlai and Malnic 1993). The Wandjina caused a great flood that

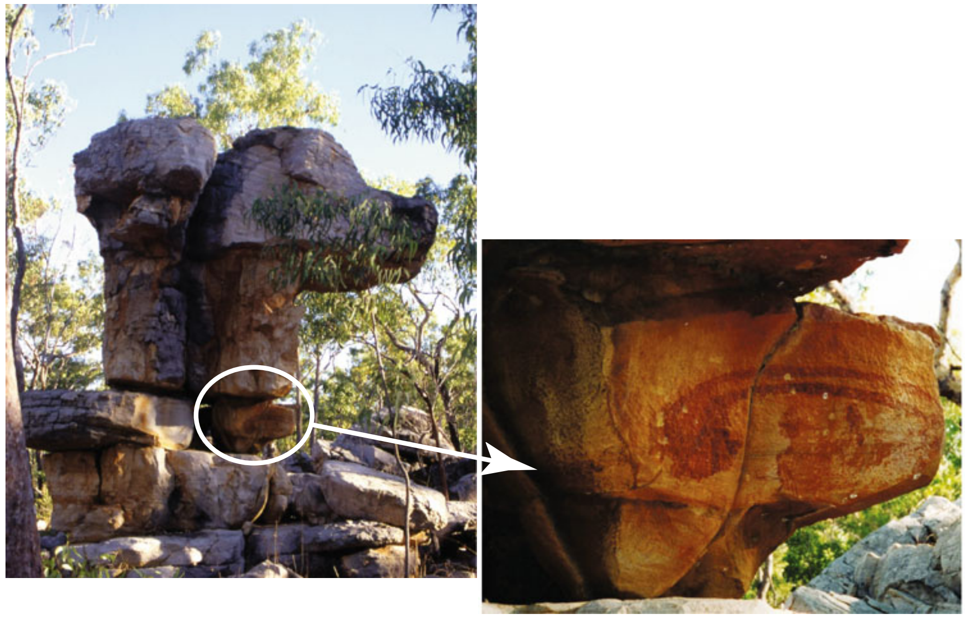


Fig. 9.15 Comet Rock, Kalumburu, Western Australia. The tail of the rock is orientated 310° to the NW. The painting of the comet is 'Wandjinan' in age. This rock lies about 5 km from the ocean on a plain covered in a layer of beach sand

started in the north of Australia and flooded the whole country. Just as quickly as the land was flooded, it drained.

The Kimberley region is subject to some of the most intense tropical storms in the world associated with winds in excess of 300 km h^{-1} and storm surges of 3.6 m (Nott 2004). However, the coastline everywhere evinces either the erosional effect of a catastrophic wave or its depositional residue beyond the capacity of these extreme cyclones. At Cape Voltaire, directly west of Kalumburu, a catastrophic wave has truncated the ends of headlands and carved out a ramp across columnar basalt (Fig. 9.18a) (Bryant et al. 2007). This ramp terminates about 20 m above sea level. Little debris evacuated from the ramp is present either on the ramp surface or offshore. Instead, the columnar basalt has been broken into 5 m lengths, tossed over the 40 m high headland and deposited on the sheltered lee slope above the influence of storm waves such that individual blocks reflect the direction of flow, 350° to the northwest (Fig. 9.18b). In the Great Sandy Desert, the wave eroded sand dunes from the coastal plain, depositing shell debris and cobbles 30 km inland in chevron-shaped ridges (Bryant and Nott 2001). South of Broome, at Point Samson, waves overrode a 60 m high hill more than 500 m inland, depositing three layers of boulder-laden sand 30 m thick on the lee side. In a valley leading back from the coast, large mega-ripples with a wavelength approaching 1,000 m, and consisting of cross-bedded gravels, have been deposited up to 5 km inland. The gravels contain well-rounded boulders over 1 m in diameter. The tsunami overrode and breached 60-m-high hills up to 5 km inland. Smaller hills, 15 m high and lying 2 km from the coast, were sculptured into hull-shaped forms with evidence of extreme plucking of bedrock, leaving in one case a cockscomb-like protuberance (Fig. 4.15).

Fig. 9.16 A typical Wandjina face painted on rock shelters throughout the Kimberley. The *barbed hood* represents lightning. Wandjina do not have a nose or mouth. The *comet-like symbol* in place of the nose represents power. Wandjina do not need a mouth because their knowledge is greater than what can be spoken

It is possible to date the timing of this mega-tsunami in the Kimberley using radiocarbon dating of shell (Fig. 9.19). Fifteen dates exist along the Northwest Australian coastline with two from the Kimberley region. The most recurrent age centers between 1620 and 1730 with a defined peak at 1690, indicating that the effects of a mega-tsunami that occurred around the end of the seventeenth century can now be traced along 1500 km of coastline. This age agrees with

Fig. 9.17 Donati's Comet of 1858. The image is of the nucleus as the comet approached the Sun. *Note* the anthropomorphic characteristics of two eyes, a nose, flowing hair, but no mouth. *Source* McCafferty and Baillie (2005)

Fig. 9.18 The basalt headland at Cape Voltaire. **a** The northern side of the headland. Tsunami flow has cut a smooth, undular ramped surface across columnar basalt. *Note* the scarcity of debris evacuated from this quarry. **b** The debris eroded from the north side of the headland has been transported by the tsunami to the lee of the headland sheltered from cyclone waves. The columnar basalt blocks are aligned with the direction of flow—350° northwest

the age of the Wandjina paintings. Based on the evidence presented here, and because Aboriginal legends concentrate on the three main elements of a comet impact in the ocean: the comet itself, tsunami, and flooding rains, this tsunami has been labeled the *Wandjina* event. No impact crater has yet been found, although attempts are being made to find it. The *Wandjina* event generated the biggest and most widespread mega-tsunami yet found in the Australian region. The geomorphic evidence is an order of magnitude greater than that produced by any historic volcanic or earthquake-generated tsunami originating from Indonesia. The 16th and early seventeenth centuries were a period of European exploration and trade in the region. This event must have been observed and recorded by them. At present no record has been found.

9.5.6 Gulf of Carpentaria

The geological stability and age of the Australian continent, plus the ancientness of Aboriginal culture favors the preservation of tsunami evidence and associated legends. Studies are concurrently researching other areas of the continent including the Lower Murray River of South Australia, the Victorian coastline and the Gulf of Carpentaria. Initial evidence from the latter area has been summarized by Gusiakov et al. (2010). The Gulf of Carpentaria is a square marine basin on the north coast of Australia (Fig. 9.11a). The Gulf of Carpentaria contains stable continental crust and is not subject to tsunamigenic earthquakes, landslides, or volcanic eruptions. Three cores from the Gulf of Carpentaria yielded a thin layer near the surface containing vitreous material, magnetite spherules, and occasional pure carbon and silicate spherules with an age of about 1500 BP (Martos et al. 2006; Abbott et al. 2007a, b). The magnetite spherules are undoubtedly products of a terrestrial impact. Two crater candidates, 18 km and 12 km in diameter, have been found in the southeastern Gulf (Martos et al. 2006). An impactor about 640 m in initial diameter could have fragmented to produce both craters. There are also chevrons oriented to these sites on the west side of the Gulf on Groote Eylandt and along the south coast on Van der Lin Island (Kelletat and Scheffers 2003). The inferred maximum implied run-ups of the mega tsunami are over 60 m above sea level on Groote Island and 20 m on Van der Lin Island. Nott (1997) found anomalous aligned boulder deposits along the south coast that he independently linked to a tsunami event rather than any tropical cyclone. Finally, there are Aboriginal legends and songs from Mornington Island referring to an impact(s) event (Mornington Island Corroboree Songs 1966).

9.6 Historical Evidence for an Impact Event

With the above evidence and many other legends referring to impacts in the last 10000 years (Masse 1998, 2007), it is conceivable that there was an historical event. Baillie (2007) mentions a comet impact on September 28, 1014 that could have been recorded historically. The comet affected the North Atlantic region. GRIP ice core data indicate that the highest ammonium spike within the historic period occurs in 1014. Investigations of Comet Hale-Bopp, and other comets, show that ammonium is a major component (1–2 %). The Tunguska bolide in 1908 produced a high ammonium anomaly in the GISP2 ice core data as well. The eleventh century timing is also the second highest peak of meteor sightings and a period of numerous comet observations in the historical record (Fig. 9.3). Historical records in Britain indicate that widespread flooding took place at this time (Haslett and Bryant 2008). William of Malmesbury in *The History of the English Kings* (vol. 1) states:

> a tidal wave, of the sort which the Greeks call euripus and we ledo, grew to an astonishing size such as the memory of man cannot parallel, so as to submerge villages many miles inland and overwhelm and drown their inhabitants" (Mynors et al. 1998, p. 311).

Malmesbury's subsequent chronology places this *tidal wave* in 1014. Also of historical importance is *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle*, which states:

> on the eve of St. Michael's Day [September 28th], came the great sea-flood, which spread wide over this land, and ran so far up as it never did before, overwhelming many towns, and an innumerable multitude of people (Ingram 1823).

Some accounts suggest that this flood affected Kent, Sussex, Hampshire (Green 1877), and even as far west as Mount's Bay in Cornwall, where the Bay was "inundated by a 'mickle seaflood' when many towns and people were drowned" (Saundry 1936). Short (1749) reports in his list of earthquakes that in 1014 "in Cumberland [Cumbria on the northwest coast of England]; much people and cattle lost". The flood is also mentioned in the *Chronicle of Quedlinburg Abbey* (*Saxony*), where it states many people died as a result of the flood in The Netherlands (Haslett and Bryant 2008). And it is remembered in a North American account by Johnson (1889).

There is geomorphic and geological evidence of a cosmogenic event at this time. Haslett and Bryant (2007) describe the movement of boulders, up to 193 tonnes in size, and bedrock erosion in north Wales that is most likely related to a mega-tsunami. Marazion Marsh, landward of Mount's Bay, England contains a sand layer similar to those described in Chap. 3, which has been dated as younger than AD 980 (Healy 1995, 1996). Finally, there is evidence for

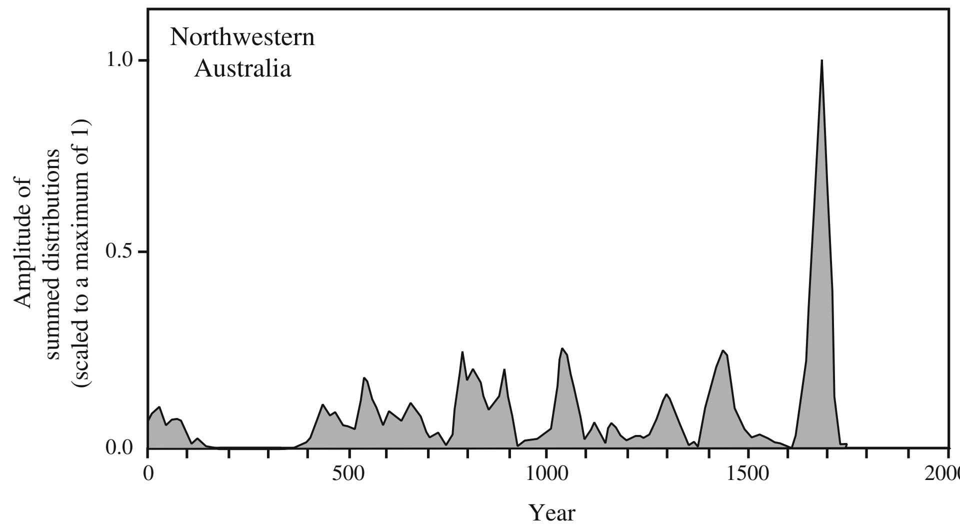


Fig. 9.19 The chronology for mega-tsunami in Northwestern Australia over the past two millennia. The panel was constructed using the same procedure as used in Fig. 8.3. Fifteen dates have been used here. The *dips* are an artifact of age reversals in radiocarbon chronology

an impact event at this time from North America. Abbott et al. (2010) found impact glass, an impact spherule and marine microfossils in a bog core at Cornwall, New York that has been radiocarbon dated around AD 1006 ± 65. There are also Micmac legends in Canada referring to such an event (Nowlan 1983). This collection of records suggests a significant cosmogenic event occurred in 1014 affecting a number of locations around the North Atlantic Ocean. The suspected source area lies in the middle of the Atlantic Ocean above 40° latitude (Haslett and Bryant 2008; Abbott et al. 2010).

9.7 Criticisms of Legendary Events

The invoking of Late Holocene comet impacts, let alone the possibility of the generation of mega-tsunami, poses a problem for Science, which is cultured to a minimalism point of view—namely nothing changes suddenly. This is especially true for geological discovery. The best example of this is the invective criticism that occurred in the 1960s with the proposition of continental drift. This book has been dedicated to J Harlem Bretz who proposed that the Scablands of Washington State were formed by catastrophic flooding generated by outbursts from glacial Lake Missoula. The criticisms were polemic; but Bretz stood his ground and was eventually proved correct (Baker 1981). Some of our evidence for catastrophic tsunami parallels his. The ideas put forward by this author and those of others supporting *coherent catastrophism*, comet impacts in the last 10000 years, or the role of cosmogenic tsunami in shaping coastlines is no different. Duncan Steel's (1995) book describing *coherent catastrophism* was severely criticized by Chapman (1996), while Kristan-Tollmann and Tollmann's (1992) *Deluge Comet* hypothesis 8,200 ± 200 years ago received harsh criticism and rejection (Deutsch et al. 1994). The idea of a comet crashing into the Indian Ocean May 10, 2807 BC and producing a mega-tsunami was considered extra-ordinary and the "term 'chevrons' should be purged from the impact-related literature" (Pinter and Ishman 2009). Chevrons on Madagascar were also clearly denied by Bourgeois and Weiss (2009) in the title of their publication, "Chevrons are not mega-tsunami deposits". Both papers ignore the fact that they are presence worldwide and have a *fabric* that is not wind-blown (Fig. 3.9) (Kelletat and Scheffers 2003; Scheffers et al. 2008a). Much of the criticism for cosmogenic tsunami concerns this author's collaborative work along the New South Wales coast (Felton and Crook 2003; Goff et al. 2003; Courtney et al. 2012). Surprisingly, while storms are often suggested as an alternative, some of the authors have published their own research on paleo-tsunami along this coast that clearly supports the evidence and chronologies—particularly for the *Mahuika Comet* Event—presented above (McFadgen 2007; Switzer et al. 2011). These criticisms, while posing alternative explanations in some cases, but often none otherwise, trivialise three aspects of the tsunami hazard. First, the signatures described in Chaps. 3 and 4 and used in this chapter, are not isolated occurrences. They form a suite of signatures that characterizes the geomorphology of long sections of coastline in many countries as outlined in this book. Second, these signatures have been published under peer review in highly regarded Geology journals. Third, this evidence in the case of earthquakes has been disregarded, even by the experts, to the detriment of thousands of lives. The most recent examples of the latter occurred in Chile on February 27, 2010 and along the Sanriku coastline of Japan on March 11, 2011. This last point will be the focus of the next chapter where it will be shown that tsunami still are an underrated hazard globally.

References

D.H. Abbott, A. Matzen, E.A. Bryant, S.F. Pekar, Did a bolide impact cause catastrophic tsunamis in Australia and New Zealand? Geol. Soc. Am. Abs. Progr. **35**, 168 (2003)

D.H. Abbott, W.B. Masse, L.H. Burckle, D. Breger, P. Gerard-Little, Burckle abyssal impact crater: did this impact produce a global deluge? in *Proceedings of Conference on Atlantis*, Milos, Greece (2005)

D.H. Abbott, E.W. Tester, C.A. Meyers, Impact ejecta and megatsunami deposits from a historical impact into the Gulf of Carpentaria. Geol. Soc. Am. Abs. Progr. **39**, 312 (2007)

D.H. Abbott, E.W. Tester, C.A. Meyers, D. Breger, A.M. Chivas, Sediment transport, mixing, and erosion by an impact generated tsunami: Gulf of Carpentaria, Australia. EOS Transactions, American Geophysical Union, Abstract OS31B–07, p. 88 (2007b)

D.H. Abbott, P. Gerard-Little, S. Coste, S. Coste, D. Breger, S.K. Haslett, Exotic grains in a core from Cornwall, NY: do they have an impact source? J. Siberian Fed. Univ. Eng. Technol. **3**, 5–29 (2010)

W. Alvarez, in *T. Rex and the Crater of Doom*. Princeton University Press, Princeton (1997)

D.J. Asher, S.V.M. Clube, An extraterrestrial influence during the current glacial-interglacial. Q. J. R. Astron. Soc. **34**, 481–511 (1993)

D.J. Asher, S.V.M. Clube, W.M. Napier, D.I. Steel, Coherent catastrophism. Vistas Astron. **38**, 1–27 (1994)

M. Baillie, *New Light on the Black Death: The Cosmic Connection* (NPI Media Group, Stroud, 2006)

M. Baillie, The case for significant numbers of extraterrestrial impacts through the late Holocene. J. Q. Sci. **22**, 101–109 (2007)

V.R. Baker, (ed.) in *Catastrophic Flooding: The Origin of the Channeled Scabland* (Dowden Hutchinson & Ross, Stroudsburg, 1981), 360p

B.F. Bohor, A sediment gravity flow hypothesis for siliciclastic units at the K/T boundary, northeastern Mexico. Geological Society of America Special Paper No. 307, pp. 183–195 (1996)

J. Bourgeois, R. Weiss, “Chevrons” are not mega-tsunami deposits—a sedimentologic assessment. Geology **37**, 403–406 (2009)

J. Bourgeois, T.A. Hansen, P.L. Wiberg, E.G. Kauffman, A tsunami deposit at the Cretaceous-Tertiary boundary in Texas. Science **241**, 567–570 (1988)

E. Bryant, J. Nott, Geological indicators of large tsunami in Australia. Nat. Hazards **24**, 231–249 (2001)

E. Bryant, R.W. Young, D.M. Price, D. Wheeler, M.I. Pease, The Impact of Tsunami on the Coastline of Jervis Bay, Southeastern Australia. Phys. Geogr. **18**, 441–460 (1997)

E. Bryant, G. Walsh, D. Abbott, Cosmogenic mega-tsunami in the Australia region: Are they supported by Aboriginal and Maori Legends? in *Myth and Geology*, ed. by L. Piccard, W.B. Masse (Geological Society, London, Special Publications 273, 2007), pp. 203–214

D.A. Burney, H.F. James, L.P. Burney, S.L. Olson, W. Kikuchi, W.L. Wagner, M. Burney, D. McCloskey, D. Kikuchi, F.V. Grady, R. Gage, R. Nishek, Fossil evidence for a diverse biota from Kaua‘i and its transformation since human arrival. Ecol. Monogr. **71**, 615–641 (2001)

S. Cahir, *Livewire Aboriginal studies: Mythology* (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2002)

C.R. Chapman, Book review “Rogue asteroids and doomsday comets” by Duncan Steel. Meteorit. Planet. Sci. **31**, 313–314 (1996)

V. Clube, B. Napier, *The Cosmic Serpent* (Universe Books, New York, 1982)

C. Courtney, D. Dominey-Howes, J. Goff, C. Chagué-Goff, A.D. Switzer, B. McFadgen, A synthesis and review of the geological evidence for palaeotsunamis along the coast of Southeast Australia: The evidence, issues and potential ways forward. Q. Sci. Rev. (2012). http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.quascirev.2012.06.018

I.M. Crawford, Wandjina paintings, in *The Australian Aboriginal Heritage: An Introduction Through the Arts*, ed. by R.M. Berndt, E.S. Phillips (IPC Book, Sydney, 1973), pp. 108–117

D.A. Crawford, C.L. Mader, Modeling asteroid impact and tsunami. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **16**, 21–30 (1998)

A. Deutsch, C. Koeberl, J.D. Blum, B.M. French, B.P. Glass, R. Grieve, P. Horn, E.K. Jessberger, G. Kurat, W.U. Reimold, J. Smit, D. Stöffler, S.R. Taylor, The impact-flood connection: does it exist? Terra Nova **6**, 644–650 (1994)

H. Dypvik, L.F. Jansa, Sedimentary signatures and processes during marine bolide impacts: a review. Sed. Geol. **161**, 309–337 (2003)

E.A. Felton, K.A.W. Crook, Evaluating the impacts of huge waves on rocky shorelines: an essay review of the book ‘Tsunami—The Underrated Hazard’. Mar. Geol. **197**, 1–12 (2003)

J. Flood, *Archaeology of the Dreamtime: The Story of Prehistoric Australia and Its People* (Angus & Robertson, Sydney, 1995)

R. Gersonde, F.T. Kyte, U. Bleil, B. Diekmann, J.A. Flores, K. Gohl, G. Grahl, R. Hagen, G. Kuhn, F.J. Sierro, D. Völker, A. Abelmann, J.A. Bostwick, Geological record and reconstruction of the late Pliocene impact of the Eltanin asteroid in the Southern Ocean. Nature **390**, 357–363 (1997)

J. Goff, K. Hulme, B. McFadgen, “Mystic Fires of Tamaatea”: attempts to creatively rewrite New Zealand’s cultural and tectonic past. J. R. Soc. New Zealand **33**, 795–809 (2003)

J. Goodman, What is the greatest height a tsunami could reach should a large meteorite strike the ocean? (1997). http://www.mit.edu/~goodmanj/madsci/868937833.Ph.r.html

B. Green, in *Archaeological Collections XXVII* (New Shoreham. Sussex, 1877). http://shoreham.adur.org.uk/new_shoreham.htm

V.K. Gusiakov, Tsunami as a destructive aftermath of oceanic impacts, in *Asteroid/Comet Impacts and Human Society*, ed. by P. Bobrowsky, R. Rickman (Springer, Berlin, 2007), pp. 247–263

V. Gusiakov, D.H. Abbott, E.A. Bryant, W.B. Masse, D. Breger, Mega tsunami of the world oceans: chevron dune formation, micro-ejecta, and rapid climate change as the evidence of recent oceanic bolide impacts, in *Geophysical Hazards: Minimizing Risk, Maximizing Awareness*, ed. by T. Beer (Springer, Berlin, 2010), pp. 197–228

D.W. Hamacher, R.P. Norris, Australian Aboriginal geomythology: eyewitness accounts of cosmic impacts? Archaeoastronomy **22**, 60–93 (2009)

I. Hasegawa, Orbits of ancient and medieval comets. Publ. Astron. Soc. Jpn. **31**, 257–270 (1979)

I. Hasegawa, Historical variation in the meteor flux as found in Chinese and Japanese chronicles. Celest. Mech. Dyn. Astron. **54**, 129–142 (1992)

S.K. Haslett, E.A. Bryant, Evidence for historic coastal high energy wave impact (tsunami?) in North Wales, United Kingdom. Atlantic Geol. **43**, 137–147 (2007)

S.K. Haslett, E.A. Bryant, Historic tsunami in Britain since AD 1000: a review. Nat. Hazards Earth Syst. Sci. **8**, 587–601 (2008)

M.G. Healy, The lithostratigraphy and biostratigraphy of a Holocene coastal sediment sequence in Marazion Marsh, West Cornwall, UK with reference to relative sea-level movements. Mar. Geol. **124**, 237–252 (1995)

M.G. Healy, Field sites: Marazion Marsh (SW 510 315) and Hayle Estuary at Copperhouse (SW 566 380). Holocene evolution at Marazion Marsh and Hayle Copperhouse, West Cornwall, in *IGCP Project 367, Late Quaternary Coastal Change in West Cornwall, UK–Field Guide*, vol. 3 (Environmental Research Centre, University of Durham, Research Publication, 1996), pp. 46–59

J.G. Hills, C.L. Mader, Tsunami produced by the impacts of small asteroids. Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci. **822**, 381–394 (1997)

R. Huggett, *Cataclysms and Earth History* (Clarendon, Oxford, 1989)

J. Ingram, in *The Anglo-Saxon Chronicle* (World Wide School, Seattle, 1823). http://www.worldwideschool.org/library/books/hst/english/TheAnglo-SaxonChronicle/legalese.html

K.L. Jackson, Paleotsunami History Recorded in Holocene Coastal Lagoon Sediments, Southeastern Sri Lanka. Ph.D. University of Miami, Open Access Theses (2008), http://works.bepress.com/kelly_jackson/1/

W.F. Johnson, in *History of the Johnstown Flood* (Edgewood Publishing Co., Pennsylvania, 1889). http://prr.railfan.net/documents/JohnstownFlood.html

D. Johnson, *Night skies of Aboriginal Australia: a noctuary*. Oceania Monograph No. 47 (University of Sydney, Sydney, 1998)

D. Jones, K. Donaldson, *The Story of the Falling Star* (Aboriginal Studies Press, Canberra, 1989)

D. Kelletat, A. Scheffers, Chevron-shaped accumulations along the coastlines of Australia as potential tsunami evidences? Sci. Tsunami Hazards **21**, 174–188 (2003)

C. Koeberl, K.G. MacLeod, Catastrophic events and mass extinctions: impacts and beyond. Geological Society of America Special Paper No. 356, 746p (2002)

E. Kristan-Tollmann, A. Tollmann, Der Sintflut-Impakt (The flood impact). Mitteilungen Der Österreichischen Geographischen Gesellschaft **84**, 1–63 (1992)

R. Layton, *Australian Rock Art: A New Synthesis* (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1992)

J.S. Lewis, *Comet and Asteroid Impact Hazards on a Populated Earth* (Academic Press, San Diego, 1999)

C.L. Mader, Modeling the Eltanin asteroid tsunami. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **16**, 21–30 (1998)

R. Marcus, H.J. Melosh, G. Collins, Earth impact effects program (2005). http://www.lpl.arizona.edu/impacteffects/

S.N. Martos, D.H. Abbott, H.D. Elkinton, A.R. Chivas, D. Breger, Impact spherules from the craters Kanmare and Tabban in the Gulf of Carpentaria. Geol. Soc. Am. Abs. Progr. **38**, 299–300 (2006)

W.B. Masse, Earth, air, fire, and water: the archaeology of Bronze Age cosmic catastrophes, in *Natural Catastrophes During Bronze Age Civilisations: Archaeological, Geological, Astronomical and Cultural Perspectives*, ed. by B.J. Peiser, T. Palmer, M.E. Bailey. BAR International Series No. 728 (Archaeopress/Hadrian Books, Oxford, 1998), pp. 53–92

W.B. Masse, The archaeology and anthropology of Quaternary period cosmic impact, in *Comet/Asteroid Impacts and Human Society: An Interdisciplinary Approach*, ed. by P. Bobrowsky, H. Rickman (Springer Press, Berlin, 2007), pp. 25–70

W.B. Masse, M.J. Masse, Myth and catastrophic reality: using myth to identify cosmic impacts and massive Plinian eruptions in Holocene South America, in *Myth and Geology*, ed. by L. Piccardi, W.B. Masse (Geological Society of London, Special Publications 273, 2007), pp. 177–202

W.B. Masse, R.P. Weaver, D.H. Abbott, V.K. Gusiakov, E.A. Bryant, Missing in action? Evaluating the putative absence of impacts by large asteroids and comets during the Quaternary Period, in *Proceedings of the Advanced Maui Optical and Space Surveillance Technologies Conference*, Wailea, Maui, Hawaii, pp. 701–710 (2007)

T. Matsui, F. Imamura, E. Tajika, Y. Nakano, Y. Fujisawa, Generation and propagation of a tsunami from the Cretaceous-Tertiary impact event. Geol. Soc. Am. Spec. Pap. **356**, 69–77 (2002)

A.K. Matzen, D.H. Abbott, S. Pekar, The spatial distribution and chemical differences of tektites from a crater in the Tasman Sea. Geol. Soc. Am. Abs. Progr. **35**, 22 (2003)

P. McCafferty, M. Baillie, *The Celtic Gods: Comets in Irish Mythology* (Tempus, Gloucestershire, 2005)

B. McFadgen, *Hostile Shores: Catastrophic Events in Prehistory New Zealand and Their Impact on Maori Coastal Communities* (Auckland University Press, Auckland, 2007)

M.S. McGlone, J.M. Wilmshurst, Dating initial Maori environmental impact in New Zealand. Quatern. Int. **59**, 5–16 (1999)

B.P.J. Mooley, C.J. Burrows, J.E. Cox, J.A. Johnston, P. Wardle, Distribution of subfossil forest remains Eastern South Island, New Zealand. NZ J. Bot. **1**, 68–77 (1963)

Mornington Island Corroboree Songs, Authentic dance songs of Australian Aborigines on Mornington Island (1966). http://earthtube.com/research/disco/disc51.html

D. Mowaljarlai, J. Malnic, *Yorro Yorro: Aboriginal Creation and the Renewal of Nature: Rock Paintings and Stories from the Australian Kimberley* (Magabala Books, Broome, 1993)

R.A.B. Mynors, R.M. Thomson, M. Winterbottom, *William of Malmesbury: The History of the English Kings*, vol. 1 (Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1998)

National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), *Near Earth object program* (2013). http://neo.jpl.nasa.gov/stats/

S.L. Nichol, O.B. Lian, C.H. Carter, Sheet–gravel evidence for a late Holocene tsunami run-up on beach dunes, Great Barrier Island, New Zealand. Sed. Geol. **155**, 129–145 (2003)

J. Nott, Extremely high-energy wave deposits inside the Great Barrier Reef, Australia: determining the cause–tsunami or tropical cyclone. Mar. Geol. **141**, 193–207 (1997)

J. Nott, The tsunami hypothesis-comparisons of the field evidence against the effects, on the Western Australian coast, of some of the most powerful storms on Earth. Mar. Geol. **208**, 1–12 (2004)

A. Nowlan, *Nine Micmac Legends* (Lancelot Press, Hantsport, 1983)

M. Paine, Asteroid impacts: The extra hazard due to tsunami. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **17**, 155–166 (1999)

G.L. Patterson, Cretaceous/Tertiary transition of the Northern Mississippi Embayment: evidence for a bolide impact? Unpublished MSc, University of Memphis, Memphis (1998)

C.W. Peck, *Australian Legends* (Lothian, Melbourne, 1938)

N. Pinter, S.E. Ishman, Impacts, mega-tsunami and other extraordinary claims. *Geological Society of America Today*, January, pp. 37–38 (2009)

Planetary and Space Science Centre, in *Earth Impact Database*. University of New Brunswick (2013). http://www.passc.net/EarthImpactDatabase/index.html

K.L. Rasmussen, Historical accretionary events from 800 BC to AD 1750: evidence for planetary rings around the Earth? Q. J. R. Astron. Soc. **32**, 25–34 (1991)

J.W. Saundry, Saundry's "One and All" Almanack (John W. Saundry, Penzance, 1936). http://west-penwith.org.uk/pztime.htm

A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, S.R. Scheffers, D.H. Abbott, E.A. Bryant, Chevrons—enigmatic sedimentary coastal features. Zeitschrift für Geomorphologie N.F. **52**, 375–402 (2008a)

S.R. Scheffers, A. Scheffers, D. Kelletat, and E.A. Bryant, The Holocene paleo-tsunami history of West Australia. Earth Planet. Sci. Lett. **270**, 137–146 (2008b)

Z. Sekanina, D.K. Yeomans, Close encounters and collisions of comets with the Earth. Astron. J. **89**, 154–161 (1984)

E.M. Shoemaker, Asteroid and comet bombardment of the Earth. Ann. Rev. Earth Planet. Sci. **11**, 461–494 (1983)

T. Short, in *A general chronological history of the air, weather, meteors, etc.* (Longman & Miller, London, 1749)

J. Smit, Th.B. Roep, W. Alvarez, A. Montanari, P. Claeys, J.M. Grajales-Nishimura, J. Bermudez, Coarse-grained, clastic sandstone complex at the K/T boundary around the Gulf of Mexico: deposition by tsunami waves induced by the Chicxulub impact? Geol. Soc. Am. Spec. Pap. **307**, 151–182 (1996)

D. Steel, *Rogue Asteroids and Doomsday Comets* (Wiley, New York, 1995)

D. Steel, P. Snow, The Tapanui region of New Zealand: Site of a 'Tunguska' around 800 years ago?, in *Asteroids, Comets, Meteors 1991*, ed. by A. Harris, E. Bowell (Lunar and Planetary Institute, Houston, 1992), pp. 569–572

M. Stuiver, P.J. Reimer, E. Bard, J.W. Beck, G.S. Burr, K.A. Hughen, B. Kromer, F.G. McCormac, J. van der Plicht, M. Spurk, INTCAL98 Radiocarbon age calibration, 24,000–0 cal BP. Radiocarbon **40**, 1041–1083 (1998)

A.D. Switzer, B.L. Mamo, D. Dominey-Howes, L.C. Strotz, C. Courtney, B.G. Jones, S.K. Haslett, D.M. Everett, On the possible origins of an unusual (Mid to Late Holocene) Coastal Deposit, Old Punt Bay, South-East Australia. Geogr. Res. **49**, 408–430 (2011)

O.B. Toon, K. Zahnle, D. Morrison, R.P. Turco, C. Covey, Environmental perturbations caused by the impacts of asteroids and comets. Rev. Geophys. **35**, 41–78 (1997)

E. Tregear, in *The Maori-Polynesian Comparative Dictionary* (Lyon and Blair, Wellington, 1891). http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-TreMaor.html

G.L. Verschuur, *Impact! The Threat of Comets and Asteroids* (Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1996)

S.N. Ward, E. Asphaug, Asteroid impact tsunami: a probabilistic hazard assessment. Icarus **145**, 64–78 (2000)

R. Young, E. Bryant, Catastrophic wave erosion on the southeastern coast of Australia: impact of the Lanai tsunami ca. 105 ka? Geology **20**, 199–202 (1992)

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, L.M. Wirth, L.M. Pease, Theoretical constraints and chronological evidence of Holocene coastal development in Central and Southern New South Wales, Australia. Geomorphology **7**, 317–329 (1993)

R. Young, E. Bryant, D.M. Price, S.Y. Dilek, D.J. Wheeler, Chronology of Holocene tsunamis on the southeastern coast of Australia. Trans. Jpn. Geomorphol. Union **18**, 1–19 (1997)

Part IV

Modern Risk of Tsunami

Risk and Avoidance

10

10.1 Introduction

There are four problems in assessing the risk of modern tsunami to any coastline. All four suffer from popular misconceptions. The first problem involves the construction of probability of exceedence curves for the occurrence of tsunami based upon historical records. Such an approach is flawed logically and scientifically. It runs into a problem at the extreme end because many coastlines are devoid of credibly documented events. Second, it is often assumed that a coastline is immune from the threat of large tsunami if it has not recorded any. Any study attempting to show otherwise is assumed fundamentally wrong. This concept treats the occurrence of tsunami as being some stochastic or random process mainly generated by earthquakes. Because the sea is flat, so is the seabed. Any idea of submarine landslides is discarded. So too is any consideration of volcanoes as a cause of tsunami unless the smoke can be seen on the horizon. The idea that asteroids could cause tsunami is considered erroneous because no such phenomenon has been observed in the European-based historical record. The laws for tsunami cannot be understood just by documenting tsunami that have occurred in the historical record. They must be set within the context of such events over hundreds of millions of years. Large catastrophic tsunami tend to occur because of the same processes that produce small ordinary tsunami. Conversely, if catastrophic phenomena such as asteroids have generated large tsunami, then they can be implicated in some of the smaller, more frequent events. Third, tsunami events of all sizes tend to be clustered in time. This includes the now recognized phenomenon that earthquakes close to subduction zones do not necessarily close a seismic gap (Lorito et al. 2011); but will recur in the same area until they do. Clustering of events also incorporates the notion of *coherent catastrophism* involving asteroid impacts (Asher et al. 1994). Fourth, legends about tsunami, for whatever reason, are dismissed as myths, and, if any legend in a tsunamigenic region describes a tsunami as bigger than the historic record, it is dismissed as hyperbole by a primitive culture. Such attitudes are naïve, doctrinaire, and ignore a body of evidence that has validity.

Much of the world's coastline has never experienced a large tsunami in its historical record, be it European or otherwise. This is clearly illustrated in Fig. 10.2, which shows that portion of the world's coastline subject to historical observation in 1500 and 1750. The boundaries in Fig. 10.2 are liberally defined. Outside of eastern Asia, they reflect the presence of Europeans rather than any other society. In Chap. 9, the period around 1500 was identified as a possible time when a major asteroid struck the southwest Pacific. No one, who could put pen to paper, was there to observe any such event. A second event may have occurred in the Australian region in the early part of the eighteenth century. Again, the event would have gone unrecorded except by the odd Dutch merchant ship or ship of adventure.

There are various methods for assessing the vulnerability of coastal populations to the threat of tsunami. One of the simplest is to map population densities. Such population density maps are readily available over the Internet and indicate that the most vulnerable regions of the world are the coastlines of China, India, Indonesia, Japan, the Philippines, the eastern United States, the Ivory Coast of Africa, and Europe. This approach ignores the economic impact of tsunami. Without belittling the death tolls due to tsunami that have occurred along isolated coastlines such as the Aitape coast of Papua New Guinea or the Burin Peninsula of Newfoundland, tsunami will have their greatest impact along densely populated coasts of developed countries or where large cities are located. For example, the next earthquake to strike Tokyo would have a worldwide economic impact. Here, any associated tsunami would destroy the shipping infrastructure so vital to that city's economy. It is possible to evaluate similar vulnerable coastlines in two ways. First, densely populated, economically developed coastlines can be detected by the amount of light they emit at night. The United States Air Force operates the Defense

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_10,

Fig. 10.1 Drawing of a tsunami breaking on the Japanese coast. The drawing probably represents the September 1, 1923 Tsunami, which affected Sagami Bay following the Great Tokyo Earthquake. While this earthquake is noted for its subsequent fires and appalling death toll, it generated a tsunami 11 m in height around the bay. The drawing is by Walter Molino and appeared in *La Domenica del Corriere,* January 5, 1947. *Source* Mary Evans Picture Library Image No. 10040181/04

Meteorological Satellite Program (DMSP) that has a sensitive Operational Linescan System (OLS) that can detect visible and near-infrared light sources of 9–10 W cm^{-2}. One such global map—without the effect of fires—is presented in Fig. 10.3a. It clearly shows that the developed coastlines of the world lie in Western Europe, Japan, and the eastern United States. This map does not take into account recent growth of coastal cities. Second, the largest coastal cities in the world require the greatest response irrespective of their role in the global economy. These cities are plotted in Fig. 10.3b. Their populations are current to the year 2013. Countries with the most cities over 10 million people are China, India, the United States, and Japan. Were a major tsunami to strike any of these urbanized coasts, the impact would be severe. There are nine cities with populations of over 15 million people. Four of these are situated in poorly developed countries. Twenty-eight cities have populations over 5 million inhabitants. It is only a matter of time before one of our world's major cities is crippled by a major tsunami.

10.2 What Locations Along a Coast Are at Risk from Tsunami?

A perusal of the chapters in this book will show that some locations along a coast are more susceptible to tsunami run-up, flooding, and inundation than others. Nine types of

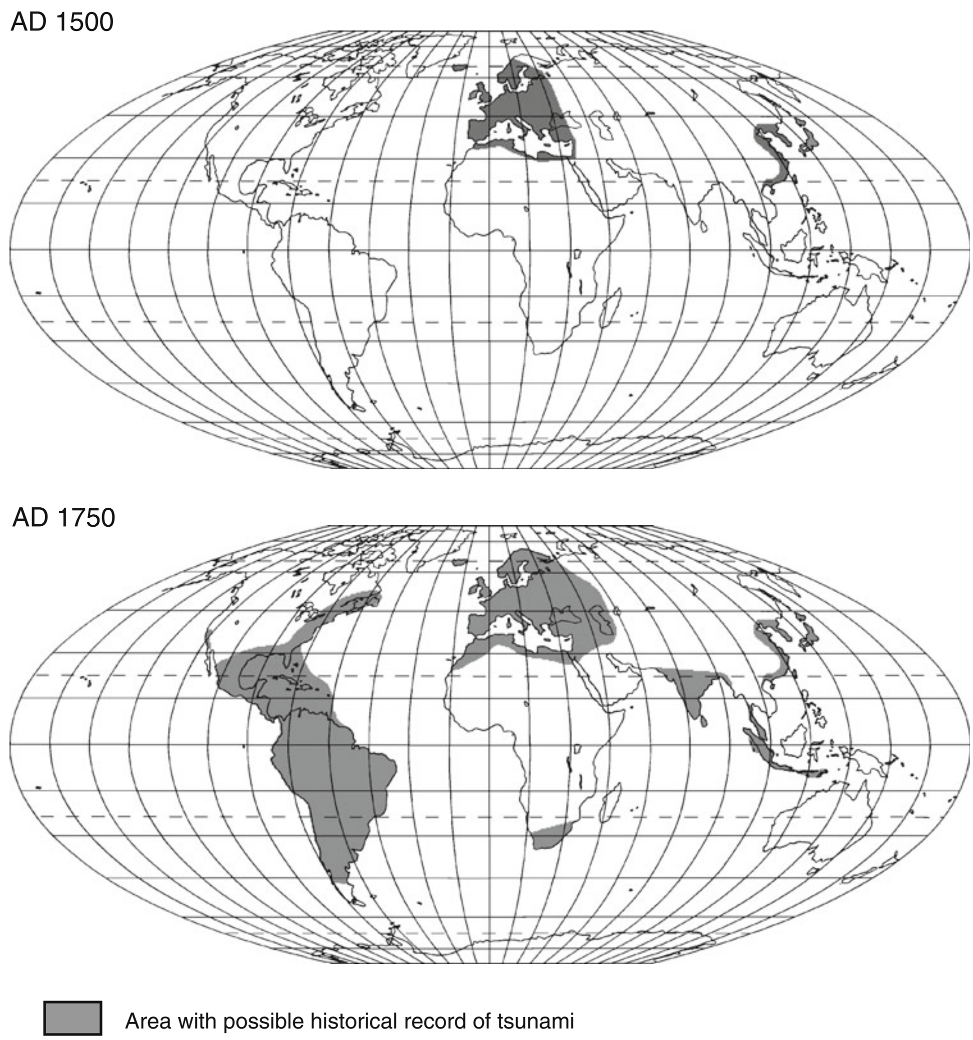


Fig. 10.2 The world's coastlines having historical records of tsunami in 1500 and 1750

topography or coastal settings are particularly prone to tsunami. First and most obvious are exposed ocean beaches. Figure 8.1, which is an artist's impression of the tsunami generated by the eruption of Krakatau in 1883 hitting the coast of Anjer Lor, shows this clearly. If you live by the seaside, you are at risk from tsunami. This fact is clearly recognized for earthquakes by the United States National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (2012). In its publication *Tsunami! The Great Waves*, it states, "If you are at the beach or near the ocean and you feel the earth shake, move immediately to higher ground. DO NOT wait for a tsunami warning to be announced". Sometimes a tsunami causes the water near the shore to recede, exposing the ocean floor. Anyone who frequents the ocean should be aware that a rapid withdrawal of water from the shore is overwhelmingly a clear signature of the impending arrival of a tsunami wave crest. The time until arrival may be less than a minute or, in the case of the coast near Concepción, Chile, following the Great Chilean Earthquake of May 22, 1960, up to 50 min later.

Second, tsunami travel best across cleared land because frictional dissipation is lowest. This is shown mathematically by Eq. 2.14 where the distance of inland penetration is controlled by the value of Manning's n, which is lower for smooth topography such as pastured floodplains, paved urban landscapes dominated by parking lots, and wide roads. The residents of Hilo, Hawaii, were dramatically made aware of this fact following the Alaskan earthquake of April 1, 1946 (Fig. 10.4) and the Chilean earthquake of May 22, 1960 (Fig. 6.8). On many flat coastlines that have been cleared for agriculture or development, authorities are now planting stands of trees to minimize the landward penetration of tsunami. The effect is clearly shown in Fig. 10.5 at Riang–Kroko, on the island of Flores, following the December 12, 1992 Indonesian Tsunami (Yeh et al. 1993). The tsunami bore had sufficient energy to move large coral boulders; but these were deposited once the wave penetrated the forest and rapidly lost its energy through dissipation. Greenbelts have been constructed using this premise as a measure to protect a coastline from tsunami. The drag

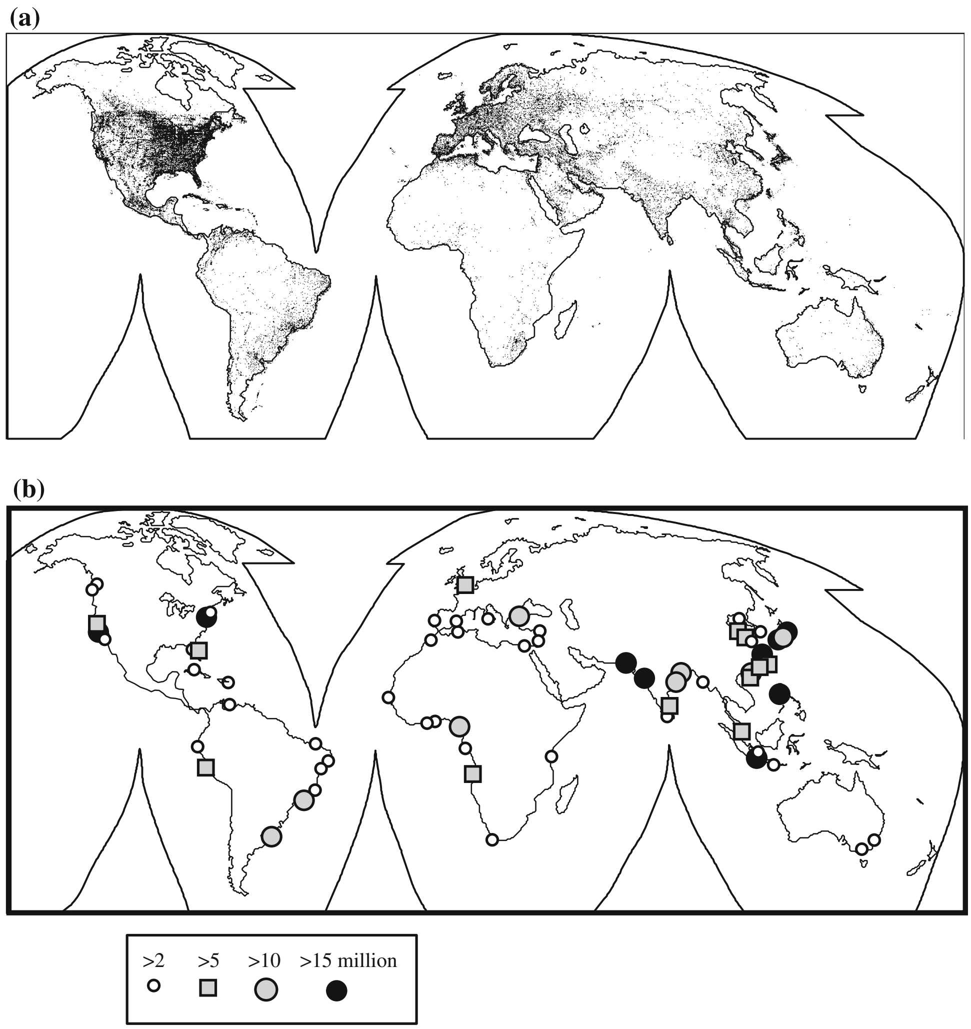


Fig. 10.3 Indicators of coastline where tsunami will impact the most. **a** Night lights from major economically developed urban centers. Data based on satellite measurements using the United States Defense Meteorological Satellite Program (DMSP) Operational Linescan System (OLS). *Source* http://www.ngdc.noaa.gov/dmsp/download.html. The *darker* the *shading*, the greater the concentration of people. **b** Large coastal cities with over 2 million inhabitants. Data are current to the year 2013. *Main Source* http://www.worldatlas.com/citypops.htm

on tsunami flow is proportional to the diameter of the tree. But, if a tree is not mature, it provides little resistance to a tsunami. For trees with a minimum diameter of 40 cm, the force of a tsunami is reduced 20, 40 and 100 % per 100, 200 and 400 trees respectively for each 10 m of coastline (Murata et al. 2010). Greenbelts should not have access roads cut through them. The latter become pathways for increased tsunami flow. Simply having 10 % of a greenbelt cut by roads perpendicular to the coast can increase flow velocities on the roads seven-fold. However, trees may not save you. All but one of the 70,000 trees planted along the Rikuzentakata coast in the southern Iwate Prefecture of Japan were destroyed by the Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). Trunks 25–40 cm in diameter were snapped off 1–2 m above ground level by flow that may have reached 19 m depth. The one surviving tree, called the *tree of hope*, is dying because of salinity contamination.

Third, tsunami flood across river deltas especially those that are cleared and where the offshore bathymetry is steep. On these coasts—and they are numerous, for example the east coast of Japan and the southeast coast of Australia—tsunami waves approach shore rapidly and with most of their energy intact. Delta surfaces lying only a few meters above sea level can allow tsunami to penetrate long distances inland, because once the wave gets onto the surface it propagates as if it was still traveling across shallow bathymetry. There are records of tsunami in small seas traveling 10 km inland across a delta for this reason. There was no more poignant example of this than the footage taken from a helicopter of the Tōhoku Tsunami crossing the coastal plain at Sendai (Fig. 6.17).

Fourth, because of their long wavelengths, tsunami become trapped in harbors and undergo resonant amplification along steep harbor foreshores. As pointed out in Chap. 1, *tsunami* is a Japanese word meaning, *harbor wave*,

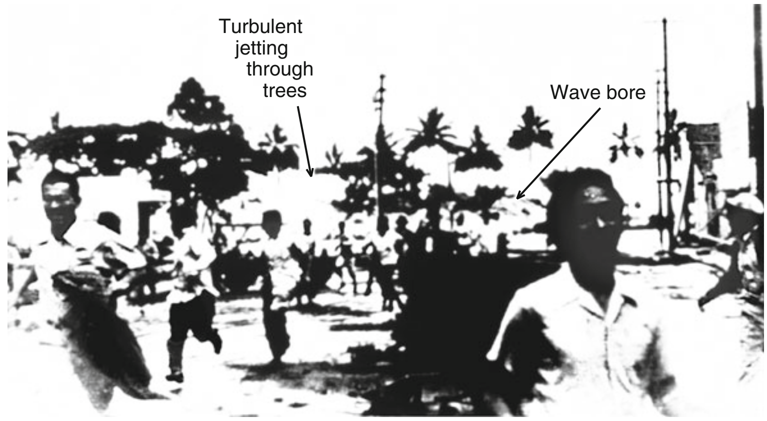


Fig. 10.4 People fleeing the third and highest tsunami wave that flooded the seaside commercial area of Hilo, Hawaii, following the Alaskan earthquake of April 1, 1946. Photograph *courtesy* of the U.S. Geological Survey. *Source* Catalogue of Disasters #B46D01-352

Fig. 10.5 Coral boulders deposited in the forest at Riang–Kroko, Flores, Indonesia following the tsunami of December 12, 1992. *Note* the person *circled* for scale and the abrupt termination of debris upslope. *Photo Credit* Harry Yeh, University of Washington. *Source* NOAA National Geophysical Data Center

and when they get into harbors, especially ones where the width of the entrance is small compared to the length of the harbor's foreshores, they become trapped and cannot escape back out to sea easily. Inside a harbor or bay, long waves such as tsunami tend to travel back and forth for hours dissipating their energy, not across the deeper portions but against the infrastructure built on the shoreline. Rapid changes in sea level and dangerous currents can be generated. Ria coastlines, such as those along the coast of Japan or southeastern Australia are ideal environments in which these effects can develop. Boats in harbors are particularly vulnerable and should put out to sea and deeper water following any tsunami warning.

Fifth, treat rivers exactly like long harbors. When a tsunami gets into a tidal river or estuary where water depths can still be tens of meters deep, the wave can travel easily up the river to the tidal limits or beyond. Along some coasts, tide limits may be tens of kilometers upriver, and residents living along the riverbanks may be very unaware that a threat from tsunami exists. If the river is deep and allows the penetration of the wave upstream, the height of a long wave can rapidly amplify where depth shoals or the river narrows. At these locations, water can spill over levees and banks, flooding any low-lying topography. In its publication *Tsunami! The Great Waves*, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (2012) likewise warns, "Stay away from rivers and streams that lead to the ocean as you would stay away from the beach and ocean if there is a tsunami."

Sixth, tsunami have an affinity for headlands that stick out into the ocean, mainly because wave energy is concentrated here by wave refraction. Storm waves can increase in amplitude on headlands two- or threefold relative to an adjacent embayed beach. Tsunami are no different.

Seventh, if headlands concentrate tsunami energy because of refraction, then gullies do the same because of funneling. The highest run-up measured during the Hokkaido Nansei–Oki Tsunami of July 12, 1993 was 31.7 m in a narrow gully (Shuto and Matsutomi 1995). On the adjacent coastline the wave did not reach more than 10 m above sea level. It is safer to climb as far as you can up a steep slope rather than flee from a tsunami by running up a gully—even one that appears sheltered because it is hidden from the ocean.

Eighth, tsunami are not blocked by cliffs. Compared to the long wavelengths of a tsunami, which can still have a wavelength of 12 km at the base of a cliff dropping 20 m into deep water, the height of a cliff is minuscule. Steep slopes are similar to cliffs. Tsunami waves 1–2 m in height have historically surged up cliffs or steep slopes to heights of 30 m or more above sea level. If one has any doubt of this then turn to Fig. 3.6 and look at the limit of run-up in the background of the photograph. This photograph was taken at Riang–Kroko following the December 12, 1992 Tsunami. While the wave had a height of only a couple of meters approaching the coast and was stopped on gentle slopes by forest, it ran up to a height of 26.2 m above sea level on steeper slopes and bulldozed slopes clear of vegetation (Yeh et al. 1993). The view from cliffs is great, but anyone standing there during a tsunami may have a unique life experience. Never do what 10,000 people did at San Francisco following the Great Alaskan Earthquake of 1964. When they heard that a tsunami was coming, they raced down to vantage points on cliffs to watch it come in. Fortunately, the tsunami was a fizzler along this part of the Californian coast. However, it killed 11 people at Crescent City to the north.

Finally, tsunami are enhanced in the lee of circular-shaped islands. Not only do they travel faster here, the height of their run-up can also be greater, especially if the initial wave is large. Two examples of this effect were presented in this text in Chap. 2. The December 12, 1992 Tsunami along the north coast of Flores Island, Indonesia, devastated two villages in the lee of Babi, a small coastal island lying 5 km offshore of the main island (Yeh et al. 1994). Wave heights actually increased from 2 to 7 m around the island. Similarly, the July 12, 1993 Tsunami in the Sea of Japan destroyed the town of Hamatsumae lying on a sheltered part of Okusihir Island (Shuto and Matsutomi 1995). The tsunami ran up 30 m above sea level—more than three times the elevation recorded at some communities fronting the wave on the more exposed coast. Over 800 people were killed in the first instance and 300 people in the latter. Lee sides of islands are particularly vulnerable to tsunami because long waves wrap around these small obstructions as solitary waves, becoming trapped and increasing in amplitude.

10.3 Warning Systems

10.3.1 The Pacific Tsunami Warning Center

As shown in Chap. 6, the most devastating ocean-wide tsunami occur in the Pacific Ocean. For that reason, tsunami warning is best developed in this region. The lead-time for warnings in the Pacific is the best of any ocean, anywhere up to 24 h depending upon the location of sites relative to an earthquake epicenter. Following the Alaskan Tsunami of 1946, the U.S. government established tsunami warning in the Pacific Ocean under the auspices of the Seismic Sea Wave Warning System (Bryant 2005; Murata et al. 2010; International Tsunami Information Center 2013). In 1948, this system evolved into the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center (PTWC). Warnings were initially issued for the United States and Hawaiian areas, but following the 1960 Chilean earthquake, the scheme was extended to all countries bordering the Pacific Ocean. Japan up until 1960 had its own warning network, believing at the time that significant tsunami affecting that country originated locally. The 1960 Chilean Tsunami proved that any submarine earthquake in the Pacific Ocean region could spread ocean-wide. The Pacific Warning System was significantly proven following the Alaskan earthquake of 1964. Within 46 min of that earthquake, a Pacific-wide tsunami warning was issued. This earthquake also precipitated the need for an International Tsunami Warning System (ITWS) for the Pacific that was established by the Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission (IOC) of UNESCO at Ewa Beach, Oahu, Hawaii, in 1968. At the same time, other UNESCO/IOC member countries integrated their existing facilities and communications into the system. Presently there are 31 participants in the Pacific Tsunami Warning System. Many of these countries also operate national tsunami warning centers, providing warning services for their local area. After 2004, the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center took on additional responsibilities for the Indian Ocean, South China Sea, and Caribbean.

The objective of the International Tsunami Warning System is to detect, locate, and determine the magnitude of potentially tsunamigenic earthquakes occurring anywhere in the world. The warning system operates 24 h per day, each day of the year. It relies on the detection of any earthquake with a surface wave magnitude of 6.5 or greater registering on one of 31 seismographs outside the shadow zones of any P or S waves originating in the Pacific region (Fig. 10.6). These seismographs automatically relay information to the United States National Earthquake Information Center in Denver where computers analysis the short period waves for potentially tsunamigenic earthquakes. This detection process occurs within a few minutes. Once a suspect earthquake

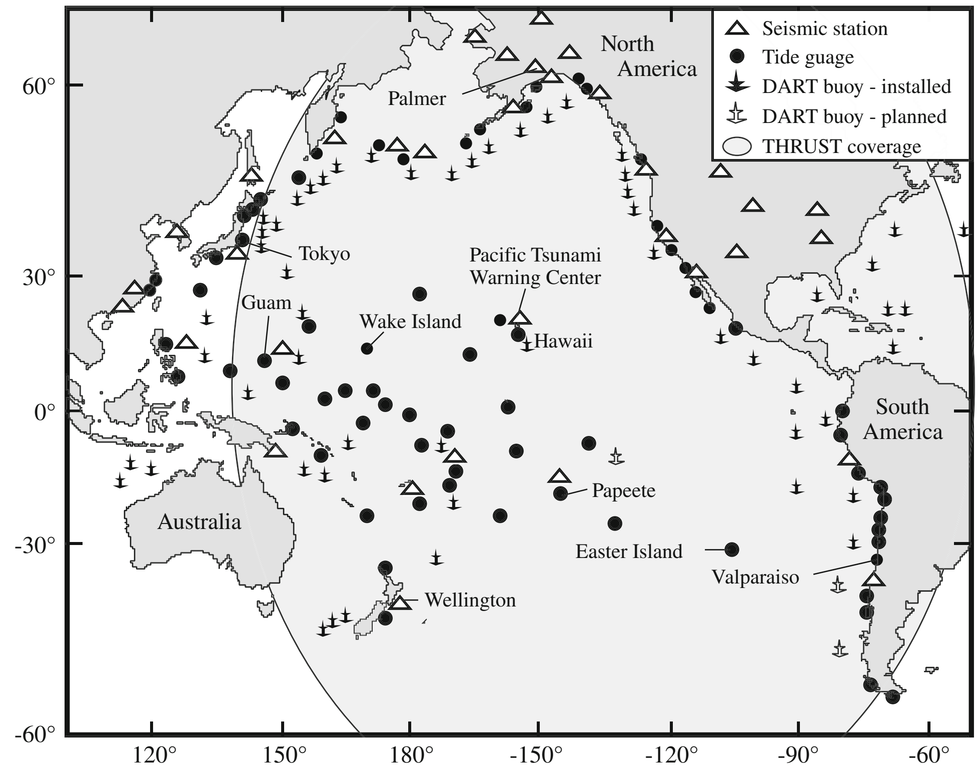


Fig. 10.6 Location of seismic stations and tide gauges making up the Pacific Tsunami Warning System, DART buoy network, and area of possible coverage of the THRUST satellite warning system. *Sources* Bernard (1991), González (1999). http://www.ndbc.noaa.gov/dart/dart.shtml

has been detected, information is relayed to Honolulu where a warning is issued. Anyone can receive these tsunami warnings direct via e-mail by subscribing at https://lists.unesco.org/wws/subscribe/tsunami-information-ioc. It is also possible to receive warnings via SMS on a mobile phone or through social media at http://ptwc.weather.gov/subscribe.php. After the warning, a request is issued to member countries for observations of anomalous sea level on tide gauges and DART buoys, lying in deep water, scattered throughout the Pacific. These gauges and buoys can be polled in real time. Once a significant tsunami has been detected, its travel path and height are obtained from pre-calculated models. If no tsunami of significance is detected at tide gauges closest to the epicenter, the PTWC issues a cancellation. At present, about one warning per month is issued for the Pacific Ocean region for potentially tsunamigenic earthquakes. The warnings are then integrated into regional and local communication networks for dissemination to the public (Fig. 10.7).

DART buoys combine a seabed transducer linked to a surface buoy, which can transmit to a communications satellite (Fig. 10.8) (González 1999). The transducers can detect tsunami heights of only 1 cm in water depths of 6,000 m. This networking can be used to forewarn of local tsunami, overcoming the necessity for long cable connections to shore that the Japanese experimented with unsatisfactorily in the earlier 1980s. NOAA deployed six of these deep ocean buoys before 2004 in a project known as Deep-Ocean Assessment and Reporting of Tsunami (DART). The 2004 Indian Ocean Tsunami changed dramatically the deployment of DART buoys. The United States realised immediately that six buoys in the Pacific Ocean gave insufficient coverage to provide adequate tsunami warnings from all source regions in the Pacific. In addition, the United States realised that its eastern and southeastern coastlines were as vulnerable to tsunami as Sri Lanka and Thailand were to the Sumatran event of 2004. An upgraded buoy, DART II, was built linking tsunami wave detection in the open ocean to land based stations via Iridium satellites. Seven buoys were deployed in the Atlantic Ocean (Fig. 10.6) and integrated into NOAA's Weather Radio All Hazards system and the Emergency Alert System to provide tsunami warnings to the entire United States Atlantic coast, Gulf of Mexico, Puerto Rico, the US Virgin Islands, and eastern Canada. In addition, the number of buoys in the Pacific Ocean was increased to 32, scattered around the *Ring-of-Fire* earthquake source region. All buoys operated by the United States in the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans were operational by March 2008. This network has been supplemented by 14 other DART buoys in the Pacific Ocean operated by five other countries: Australia, Russia, Japan, Ecuador and Chile. There are also six buoys placed in the Indian Ocean near zones of historically large, tsunamigenic earthquakes. Surprisingly, no DART buoys have been placed in the eastern North Atlantic despite the Lisbon earthquake being one of the largest tsunamigenic earthquakes recorded.

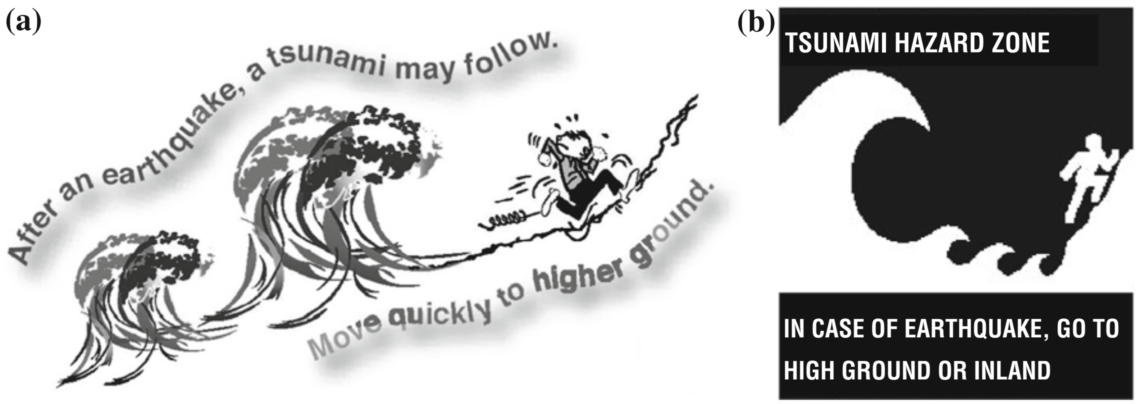
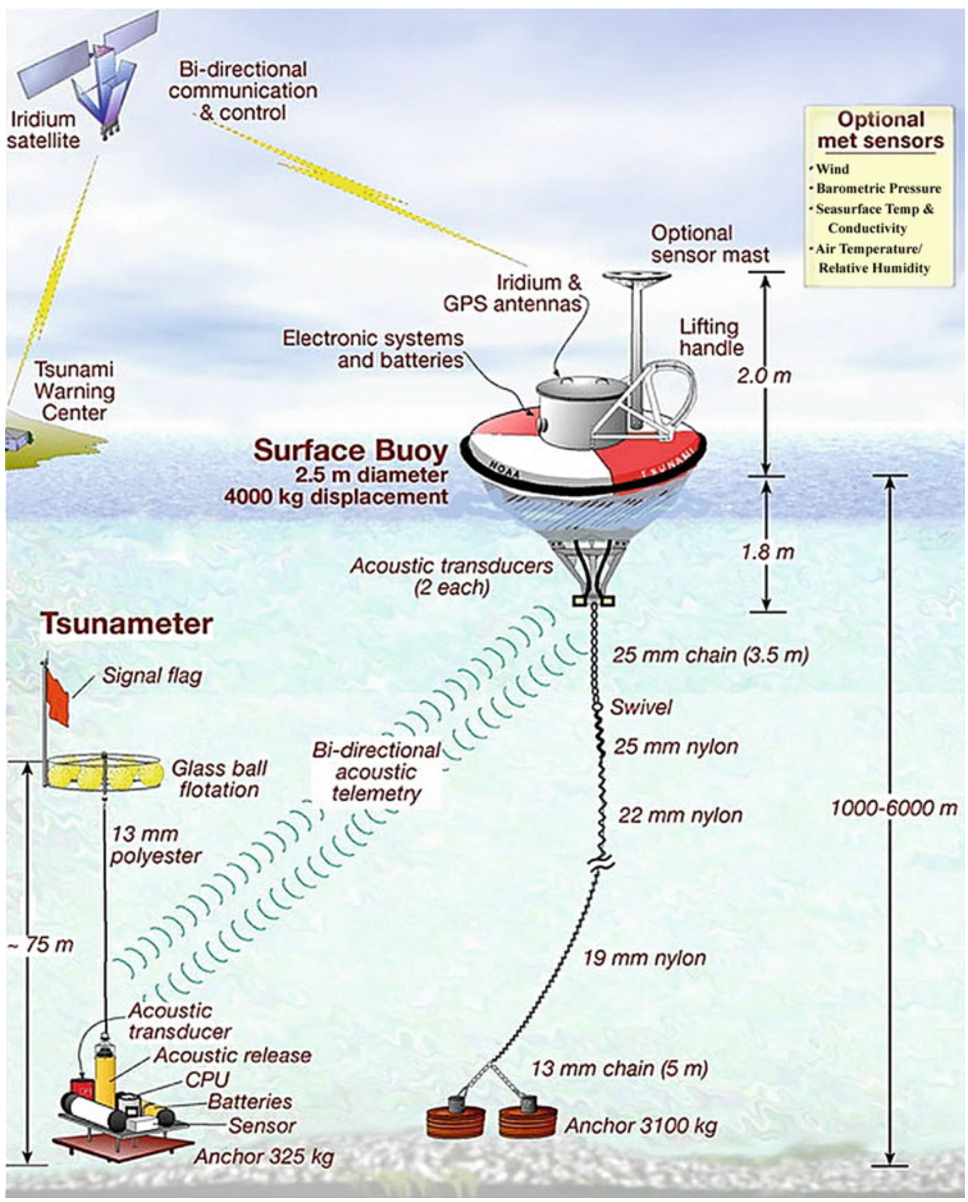


Fig. 10.7 Logos used to warn the public of the threat of tsunami in the United States. **a** International Tsunami Information Center. *Source* http://itic.ioc-unesco.org/images/stories/oldsite/upload/tsunami_sticker_english2.jpg. **b** NOAA National Weather Service. *Source* http://www.tsunamiready.noaa.gov/

Fig. 10.8 Schema of DART II buoy system. *Source* http://nctr.pmel.noaa.gov/Dart/Jpg/DART_II_metric-page.jpg



The International Tsunami Information Center (2013) also gathers and disseminates general information about tsunami, provides technical advice on the equipment required for an effective warning system, checks existing systems to ensure that they are up to standard, aids the establishment of national warning systems, fosters tsunami research, and conducts post disaster surveys for the purpose of documentation and understanding of tsunami disasters. As part of its research mandate, the ITIC maintains a complete library of publications and a database related to tsunami. Research also involves the construction of mathematical models of tsunami travel times, height information, and extent of expected inundation for any coast. Planners and policy makers use results from these models to assess risk and to establish criteria for evacuation. The ITIC trains scientists of member states who, upon returning to their respective countries, train and educate others on tsunami programs and procedures, thus ensuring the continuity and success of the program. The Center also organizes and conducts scientific workshops and educational seminars aimed towards tsunami disaster education and preparedness. In recent years, emphasis has been placed on the preparation of educational materials such as textbooks for children, instruction manuals for teachers, and videos for the lay public.

10.3.2 Flaws in Regional Warning Systems

The Pacific Warning Tsunami System is not flawless. The risk still exists in Japan and other island archipelagos along the western rim of the Pacific for local earthquakes to generate tsunami too close to shore to permit sufficient advance warning. Of the 10 most destructive trans-oceanic tsunami over the last 250 years, 84 % of fatalities occurred within the first hour of generation (Gusiakov 2008). For example, the 7.8 magnitude earthquake that struck in the Moro Gulf on the southwest part of the island of Mindanao, the Philippines, on August 17, 1976, generated a 3.0–4.5 m high local tsunami. The event was virtually unpredictable because the earthquake occurred within 20 km of a populated coastline (Bryant 2005). The Papua New Guinea Tsunami of July 17, 1978 and the Indian Ocean Tsunami of December 26, 2004 at Banda Aceh also arrived at shore within 15 min of the earthquake (González 1999).

The accuracy of any warning system does not rely upon the number of tsunami predicted, but upon the number that are significant. False alarms weaken the credibility of any warning system. Although tide gauges can detect tsunami close to shore, they cannot predict run-up heights accurately. Consequently, 75 % of tsunami warnings since 1950 have resulted in erroneous alarms (González 1999). For example, on May 7, 1986, following an earthquake in the Aleutian Islands, and again in 1994 after an earthquake north of Japan, Pacific-wide tsunami warnings were issued for tsunami that never eventuated (Walker 1995). Both events cost 30 million dollars in lost salaries and business revenues in Hawaii, where evacuations were ordered. The people who distribute such warnings are only human. Each time a false warning is issued, it weakens their confidence in predicting future tsunami, especially if the tsunami have originated from less well-known source regions. Worse than a false alarm is one that is realistic, but where the time has been underestimated. Tsunami travel charts have been constructed for possible tsunami originating in many locations around the Pacific Ocean. Many of these charts are inaccurate, fortunately, with tsunami traveling faster than predicted. Before 1988, about 70 % of the Pacific Ocean did not have publicly accessible bathymetry to permit accurate tsunami travel-time forecasting. Fortunately, since the end of the Cold War, these data have become more available.

Earthquakes do not cause all tsunami. A relatively small earthquake can trigger a submarine landslide that then generates a much bigger tsunami. Nor is the size of an earthquake necessarily a good indicator of the size of the resulting tsunami. The July 17, 1998 Tsunami along the Aitape coast of Papua New Guinea illustrates this fact. The earthquake that generated this event only registered a surface wave magnitude of 7.1, yet the resulting tsunami at shore was up to 15 m high (González 1999). As described in Chap. 5, such tsunami earthquakes are common. For example, the April 1, 1946 Alaskan earthquake had a surface wave magnitude of 7.2, but it generated run-ups of 16.7 m as far away as Hawaii (Fig. 2.10). On June 15, 1896, an earthquake that was scarcely felt along the Sanriku coast of Japan generated the Meiji Tsunami that produced run-ups of 38.2 m above sea level and killed 27,132 people.

Finally, our knowledge of tsunami is rudimentary for many countries and regions, not just in the Pacific Ocean, but also other oceans. Not all of the coastline around the Pacific Rim has been studied. This was made apparent on March 25, 1998 when an earthquake with a magnitude, M_s, of 8.8 occurred in the Balleny Islands region of the Antarctic directly south of Tasmania, Australia (Bryant 2005). Because of the size of the earthquake, a tsunami warning was issued, but no one knew what the consequences would be. The closest tide gauges were located on the south coast of New Zealand and Australia. Forecasters at the PTWC in Hawaii had to fly by the seat of their pants and wait to see if any of these gauges reported a tsunami before they issued warnings further afield. While that may have helped residents in the United States or Japan, it certainly was little comfort to residents living along coastlines facing the Antarctic in the Antipodes. In cities such as Adelaide, Melbourne, Hobart, and Sydney, emergency hazard personnel knew they were the *mine canaries* in the warning system. Fortunately, the Antarctic earthquake was not conducive to tsunami, and no major wave propagated into the Pacific Ocean.

10.3.3 Localized Tsunami Warning Systems

A tsunami originates in, or near, the area of the earthquake that creates it. It propagates outwards in all directions at a speed that depends upon ocean depth. In the deep ocean, this speed may exceed 600 km s^{-1}. In these circumstances, the need for rapid data handling and communication becomes obvious if warnings are to be issued in sufficient time for local evacuation. Because of the time spent in collecting seismic and tidal data, the warnings issued by the PTWC cannot protect areas against local tsunami in the first hour after generation. For this purpose, regional warning systems have been established. Local systems generally have data from a number of seismic and tidal stations telemetered to a central headquarters. Nearby earthquakes have to be detected within 15 min or less, and a warning issued soon afterwards to be of any benefit to the nearby population. Because warnings are based solely upon a seismic signature, false warnings are common. At present, warning systems tend to err on the side of caution to the detriment of human life.

One of the first local warning systems was establishment of the West Coast/Alaska Tsunami Warning Center (WC/ATWC) in Palmer, Alaska, in 1967 (Sokolowski 1999). This filled a gap in the Pacific Tsunami Warning System made apparent in Alaska by the Alaskan earthquake of March 27, 1964. Here, tsunami were of three types: localized, landslide-induced, and ocean-wide. Only the latter was processed by the Pacific Tsunami Warning System. Not only did warnings from Honolulu reach Alaska after the arrival of all three types of tsunami, they also went through a process that delayed dissemination to the public along the west coast of the United States. In 1982, the Center's mandate was extended to include the coasts of California, Oregon, Washington, and British Columbia. In 1996, the Center's responsibility was expanded to include all Pacific-wide tsunamigenic sources that could affect these coasts. The objectives of the West Coast and Alaska Tsunami Warning Center are to provide immediate warning of earthquakes in the region to government agencies, the media, and the public; and to accelerate the broadcast of warnings to the wider community along the west coasts of Alaska, Canada, and the United States. Alarms are triggered automatically by any sustained, large earthquake monitored at eight seismometers positioned along the west coast of North America and 23 short- and long-period seismometers in Alaska. A warning can be issued automatically within 15 min of the event together with the estimated arrival time of the tsunami at 24 sites along the west coast of North America. Messages are disseminated by satellite, teletype, e-mail, the internet, and phone to a number of crucial people locally. Once a warning has been issued, over 90 tide gauges are monitored to confirm the existence of a tsunami, and its degree of severity. The Center also conducts community preparedness programs to educate the public on how to avoid tsunami if they are caught in the middle of a violent earthquake. Follow-up visits are made to the communities that have experienced a false alarm. The purpose of these visits is to explain why a warning was issued and to stress the continued need to respond to emergency tsunami warnings.

Other tsunamigenic source areas in the Pacific Ocean have developed localized warning systems. Separate warning systems also exist for Hawaii, Russia, French Polynesia, Japan, and Chile. The Russian warning system was developed for the Kuril–Kamchatka region of northeastern Russia following the devastating Kamchatka Tsunami of 1952 (International Oceanographic Commission 1999). This system operates from three centers at Petropavlovsk-Kamchatskiy, Kurilskiye, and Sakhalinsk. It is geared towards the rapid detection of the epicenter of coastal tsunamigenic earthquakes because some tsunami here take only 20–30 min to reach shore. In French Polynesia, an automated system was developed in 1987, for both near- and far-field tsunami, by the Polynesian Tsunami Warning Center at Papeete, Tahiti (Okal et al. 1991; Reymond et al. 1993). The system uses the automated algorithm TREMORS (Tsunami Risk Evaluation through seismic MOment in a Real time System) to analyze in real time seismic data for any earthquake in the Pacific Ocean. Rather than using P and S waves to calculate earthquake magnitude, TREMORS uses the magnitude of seismic waves traveling through the mantle. This mantle magnitude, M_m, is calculated from Rayleigh or Love waves having periods between 30 and 300 s. These long wave periods are virtually independent of the focal geometry and depth of any earthquake. Surprisingly good forecasts of tsunami wave heights have been achieved for 17 tsunami that reached Papeete between 1958 and 1986, including the Chilean Tsunami of 1960. Because the TREMORS system is not site-specific and the underlying equipment is inexpensive, there is no reason why the system could not be installed in any country bordering the Pacific Ocean.

In Japan, a number of systems are used for local tsunami prediction (Shuto et al. 1991; Furumoto et al. 1999; Murata et al. 2010). Tsunami warning began in Japan in 1941 under the auspices of the Japan Meteorological Agency. Originally, coverage was only for the northeast Pacific Ocean coast, but this was extended nationwide in 1952. The Japan Meteorological Agency has a national office in Tokyo and six regional observatories—at Sapporo, Sendai, Tokyo, Osaka, Fukuoka, and Naha, with each responsible for local tsunami warnings. Following the Chilean Tsunami of 1960, communities threatened by tsunami in Japan were identified and protective seawalls built (Fig. 10.9). Now they line 40 % of its 34,751 km of coastline with some up to 12 m high. As will be described subsequently, they have failed badly. Large tsunami still require evacuation. Near-field tsunami are a threat in Japan, especially along the Sanriku coastline of northeastern Honshu, where only 25–30 min of lapse time exists between the beginning of an earthquake and the arrival at shore of the resulting tsunami. If it is assumed that most people can be evacuated within 15 min of a warning, then tsunamigenic earthquakes here must be detected within the first 10 min. The *P* wave for any local earthquake can be detected within seconds using an extensive network of 180 high frequency and low magnification seismometers. The Japanese Warning System also utilizes The Geostationary Meteorological Satellite to disseminate information in case the ground base network is destroyed in a tsunamigenic earthquake. The Earthquake Early Warnings system established in August 1, 2006 now utilizes the early characteristics of seismic waves to predict seismic intensity before the *S*, Rayleigh, and Love waves arrive. Warnings can be issued within 3 min of an earthquake happening. In the Noto Peninsula Earthquake having a magnitude of 6.9 on March 25, 2007, a tsunami warning was issued within 1 min and 40 s of the earthquake.

Based upon this information, a tsunami bulletin is issued as a warning, watch, or no danger advisory. Warnings are passed through central government offices, which include the Maritime Safety Agency, which transmits warnings to harbor authorities, fishing fleets, and fishermen, and the Nippon Broadcasting Corporation, which broadcasts warnings nationally on radio and television. At the same time, warnings are transmitted to prefectures and to local authorities via LADESS, the Local Automatic Data Editing and Switching System. At the local level, warnings are then issued via the Simultaneous Announcement Wireless System (SAWS). This system can switch on sirens and bells, and even radios in individual homes. Mobile loudspeakers mounted on fire trucks will also cruise the area broadcasting the warning. In extreme cases, a network of individual contacts has been established and the tsunami warning can be transmitted by word of mouth or over the telephone. Warnings issued within 15 min may not be good enough to save lives. Local authorities may hesitate to initiate SAWS and wait for confirmation of a tsunami warning for their particular coast to appear in map form on television. These maps take time to be drawn and do not appear as part of the initial warning. Even where a direct warning is heeded, it may be insufficient. In the Sea of Japan, the lapse time between the beginning of an earthquake and the arrival at shore of the resulting tsunami can be as little as 5 min. For example, a tsunami warning was broadcasted directly to the public, via television and radio, within 5 min of the Okushiri, Sea of Japan earthquake of July 12, 1993. However, by then, the tsunami had already reached shore and was taking lives.

Most of the above measures failed during the Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 despite a warning being issued within 8 s of the first P wave being detected. Scientists and government agencies had underestimated the potential for faults offshore of the Sanriku coast to generate massive earthquakes. Initial warnings issued by the Japanese Meteorological Agency also underestimated the size of the earthquake and tsunami. The size of the predicted tsunami was continually increased hours after it had devastatingly impacted the coast. Following the event, the Agency changed its procedures. Height estimates of run-up for any earthquake of magnitude 8 or larger will no longer be issued. Instead, the warning will be simply the possibility of a huge tsunami. The Tōhoku Tsunami also exceeded the limits of inundation maps prepared using historic events. For example, in Unosumai, 86 % of the 485 deaths occurred outside the mapped hazard area (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). Over half of survivors complained that they thought they were safe. Local knowledge appeared just as unreliable. Following the 1896 Meiji Tsunami and again after the 1933 Showa Tsunami, many towns erected *tsunami stones* marking the limit of run-up, warning about building seaward and showing safe havens (Murata et al. 2010). Of the 317 such stones identified, 40 % were washed away by the 2011 Tsunami (Nishio 2013). Modern warning signs assumed a 45-year recurrence for tsunami and were set far too close to the shoreline. In many places, the 2011 tsunami exceeded the height of these markers by 10 m (Earthquake Engineering Research Institute 2011). Walls built to protect towns were just as unreliable. At Ryoishi and similar towns along the Sanriku coast, these walls had been extended after 1960 to protect them against a tsunami equivalent to the Meiji Tsunami of 1896 (Fig. 10.9). And in 1985, it was decided to extend the wall at Ryoishi to a height of 12 m to match the most probable tsunami that included reflection from the gigantic break-wall built in nearby Kamaishi Bay. However budget constraints restricted the wall to an elevation of 9.5 m. The Tōhoku Tsunami had a flow depth of over 15 m along this coast and either overtopped or breached most all of these walls (Fig. 10.10). At Ryoishi, 40 residents lost their lives.

People's plans for avoiding the tsunami were also misguided. People had also been told to evacuate vertically, to the third story or above in concrete buildings. Hundreds of these buildings were identified in urban areas. Over 100 failed to provide safety because they did not stand up to the force of the flow or were lower than the depth of water, which in many locations exceeded three floors (Fig. 10.11). Many buildings were too close to the coast. Once people had fled to

Fig. 10.9 Ryoishi, a typical town along the Sanriku coast of Japan protected against tsunami by a 6 m high wall built in 1973. These walls are now common around the Japanese coast; however, they do not offer protection against tsunami having historical run-ups. *Source* Fukuchi and Mitsuhashi (1983)

Fig. 10.10 The Tōhoku Tsunami March 11, 2011 overtopping the wall at Ryoishi even though it had been extended in 1985 to a height of 9.5 m—see Fig. 10.9 for initial wall. Forty people died here during the 2011 event. *Source* Ryuji Miyamoto. *Copyright* Hashime Seto

a building, it was impossible to escape. If they survived, they were then stranded until rescued days later. Those that decided to flee by car found themselves caught in traffic jams, blocked by accidents, simply disorientated by the chaos, caught up in the wave, or in some cases deposited on top of the three-story buildings where some residents had sought refuge (Fig. 10.11). Foolishly, some people took the initial warning as a sign to retrieve possessions or relatives from danger and headed back into threatened areas. In the end, the safest strategy was to flee on foot—and not drive—to the hills. The death toll from this disaster was so high simply because the *tsunami culture* nationally, regionally, and locally was inadequate given the magnitude of the tsunami.

All of the warning systems in the Pacific assume that a *teleseismic* tsunami originates in some under populated country far, far away. Chile is one of those faraway countries, but with a significant coastal population. In many places, evacuation from tsunami is difficult even with adequate warning because sea cliffs back numerous towns (Fig. 6.4). As shown in Chap. 6, tsunamigenic earthquakes here have tended to occur every 30–50 years with a deadly impact. Chile does not have the privilege of being able to rely upon the Pacific Tsunami Warning System, because what is a distant earthquake to the PTWS can well be a localized earthquake in Chile. Project THRUST (Tsunami Hazards Reduction Utilizing Systems Technology) was established offshore from Valparaiso, Chile, in 1986 to provide advance warning of locally generated tsunami along this coastline within 2 min (Bernard 1991). When a sensor placed on the seabed detects a seismic wave above a certain threshold, it transmits a signal to the GEOS geostationary satellite, which then relays a message to ground stations. The signal is processed, and another signal is transmitted via the satellite to a low-cost receiver and antenna, operating 24 h a day, located along a threatened coastline. This designated station can be pre-programmed to activate lights and acoustic alarms, and to dial telephones and other emergency response apparatus when it receives a signal. The GEOS satellite also alerts tide gauges near the earthquake to begin sending data, via satellite, both to local authorities and to the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center to confirm the presence of a tsunami. For a cost of $15,000, a life-saving tsunami warning can be issued to a remote location within 2 min of a tsunamigenic earthquake. The warning system is independent of any infrastructure that could be destroyed during the earthquake. In August 1989, the THRUST system was integrated into the Chilean Tsunami Warning System with a response time of 17–88 s. This system provides coverage of all but the southernmost tip of the South American continent (Fig. 10.6). Response times of 5–10 s are now technically possible.

However, such warnings are only as good as the system is prepared to offer and willingness of people to respond. In Chile, the warning system, in theory, was to save lives; but the February 27, 2010 Tsunami spoilt it. Despite the enormity of this earthquake, the Chilean Navy, who was responsible for tsunami warnings, did not trigger the national warning system because they believed that the earthquake was centered over land (Schiermeier 2010). Many local officials took action on their own volition, saving hundreds of lives. In May 2012, eight officials, including the director of the Chilean National Emergency Office and the director of the navy's Hydrographic and Oceanographic Service at the time of the earthquake, were charged with negligence for ignoring tsunami warnings and failing to notify coastal residents of the danger (Pallardy and Rafferty 2013). The arrests were compounded by the fact that the Hydrographic and Oceanographic Service attempted to alter logbooks to obscure the fact that warnings were not delivered.

The above discussion indicates that warning systems can be categorized into two types: ones with a *chain-of-command* and *chainless* ones. An example of the former is the existing system in place for the Pacific Ocean. Warnings are initiated by the Pacific Tsunami Warning Center in Hawaii. These are passed to individual nations for a response. If the warning is deemed threatening, then national organizations may pass the warning down to regional and local authorities, who then respond as they see fit. The flaw with this system is that at each stage, someone must make a decision to act. If that person does not act or makes a personal assessment that a warning is not warranted, then the *chain-of-command* becomes broken and the possibility exists for a tsunami to damage property and take lives. An example of a *chainless* system is one where everyone—authorities to individuals—is notified about a threatening tsunami and takes responsibility for their response to that warning. A *chainless* system has access to ongoing information and relies upon no one. The cleaner in the office has as much access to a warning as the president of the nation. Each takes action as they see fit. They may flee, notify as many other people as they want or ignore the treat. Such a system was supposed to exist in Chile; however it still suffered from the fundamental flaw of a *chain-of-command* system, namely that links could become broken. In the latter case, the Chilean Hydrographic Office had responsibility for triggering a more localized response, but failed to do so for the May 2012 event. *Chain-of-command* systems are autocratic, power-centered, and subject to inevitable failure; *chainless* ones are open, democratic, and give people ownership in the decision making process.

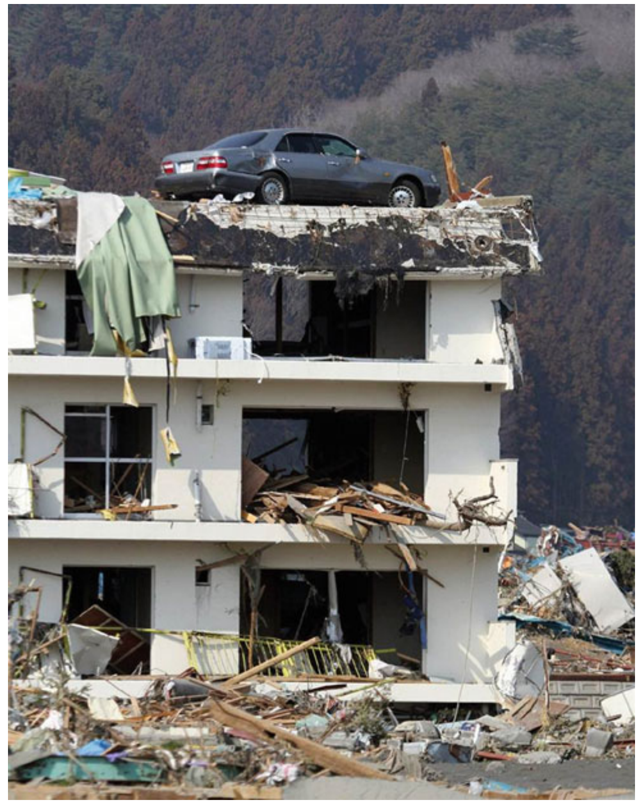


Fig. 10.11 Car put on roof of three-story building in Minami-Sanriku, Miyagi Prefecture by Tōhoku Tsunami March 11, 2011. *Photo* by Takaharu Yagi for Asia & Japan Watch newspaper

10.4 How Long Have You Got?

Distant or *teleseismic* tsunami in the Pacific Ocean leave a signature that provides sufficient lead-time for dissemination of a warning and evacuation. For example, the

Hawaiian Islands will get more than 6-h warning of any tsunami generated around the Pacific Rim, while the west coast of United States receives more than 4-h notice of tsunami originating from either Alaska or Chile. The real concern is the potential warning time, or margin of safety, if a tsunami originates near the edge of the continental shelf, off the Hawaiian Islands or the continental shelf of Washington State. Of the 10 most destructive trans-oceanic tsunami over the last 250 years, 84 % of fatalities occurred within the first hour of generation; 12 % within the second hour, and the remainder subsequently (Gusiakov 2008). There are two possible scenarios for locally generated tsunami. In the first scenario, a tsunamigenic earthquake is responsible for the tsunami. The earthquake can occur at the shelf break or in deeper water offshore. In either case, once the wave begins to cross the continental shelf, the depth of water determines its velocity. Hence the slope and width of the shelf dictate the tsunami's travel time. In the second scenario, the earthquake generates a submarine landslide on the shelf slope. In this case, the longer it takes a submarine slide to develop, the further it has moved from shore and the longer it takes for the resulting tsunami to propagate to the coast.

A crude approximation of the time it takes tsunami spawned by these processes to cross a shelf can be determined by dividing the shelf into segments, and calculating the time it takes the wave to pass through each segment using Eq. (2.2). The calculations are simplified if the shelf is assumed to have a linear slope. These results are presented in Fig. 10.12 for different shelf slopes and widths. These relationships should be treated cautiously because they are based upon simplified assumptions. For example, the Grand Banks earthquake of November 18, 1929 occurred at the edge of the continental shelf, 300 km south of the Burin Peninsula of Newfoundland that was eventually struck by the resulting tsunami. This tsunami arrived 2.5 h after the earthquake—well within the 4 h indicated in Fig. 10.12. Tsunami induced by submarine slides may travel as fast as 1,500 km h^{-1}—much faster than linear theory would suggest. If anything, the margin of safety shown in Fig. 10.12 is too lenient.

Figure 10.12 shows that there is a log-linear relationship between travel time and the distance to the shelf break. This relationship holds for shelf widths as narrow as 2 km and as wide as 500 km. The figure also indicates that the travel time for a tsunami asymptotically approaches 3.25 min for the steepest shelf slopes. These relationships can be put into a more familiar context using two examples. In the first example—that of the east coast of the United States—the shelf break lies more than 165 km from shore. Here, a tsunami generated at the edge of the shelf would take over 135 min or 2.2 h to reach the closest point at shore. This does not seem like much when compared to the time that

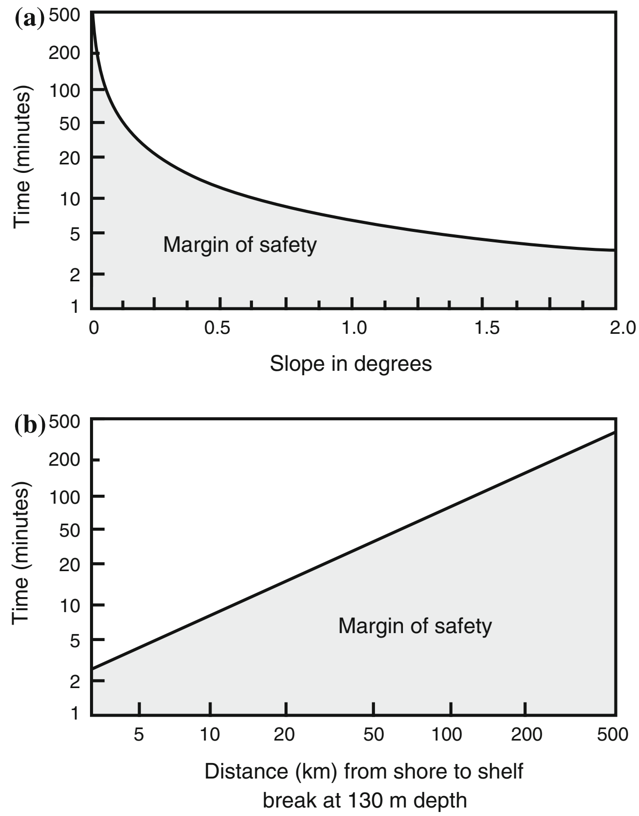


Fig. 10.12 Travel time for tsunami moving across a continental shelf. **a** For various slopes. **b** For various shelf widths

residents along the west coast of the United States have for tsunami generated in Alaska or Chile, but it is more than sufficient when compared to the second example, that off Sydney, Australia, where the shelf is steep, being only 12–14 km wide. Unlike the east coast of the United States, substantial evidence has been found along this coast for the impact of tsunami. Here, a tsunami generated on the continental slope would take only 10–12 min to reach shore. Within this time, one would be hard-pressed to reach safety if sunbathing on a local beach, or even worse, surfing off one of the headlands. At Wollongong, south of Sydney, the seabed also shows geological evidence for a submarine landslide measuring 20 km long and 10 km wide positioned 50 km offshore (Jenkins and Keene 1992). A tsunami generated by this slide would only take 40 min to reach shore.

10.5 Where Should You Go if There Is a Tsunami Warning?

While it may seem obvious from the previous sections, there is more to this question than meets the eye. Obviously one should not rush to cliffs, take to boats inside harbors, or decide it is a good time to have lunch at your favorite quayside café. Do not do what the residents of San Francisco did during the Alaskan Tsunami of 1964 and flock to the coast to see such a rare event. And do not do what the residents of Hilo, Hawaii, did during the Alaskan Tsunami event of April 1, 1946 (Fig. 10.4), and hurry back to the coast following the arrival of the first couple of tsunami waves. Here, people returned to the coastal business area to see what damage had occurred, only to be swamped by the third and biggest wave. Big waves later in a wave train are more common than generally believed. For example, the eighth wave during the April 1 event was the biggest along the north shore of Oahu.

Most people can escape to safety with as little as 10-min warning of a tsunami. Along the northern coastline of Papua New Guinea, where the July 1998 Tsunami had such an impact, people have been encouraged to adopt a tree. In Chap. 1, people who were stranded on the Sissano barrier with nowhere to flee did have an option. As shown in Fig. 5.13, a substantial number of trees withstood the impact of the tsunami even though it was 15 m high and moved at a velocity of 10–15 m s^{-1}. Notches can be cut into trees as toeholds, and people can easily climb a tree and lash themselves to the trunk in a matter of minutes. Urban dwellers may not have the opportunity to be as resourceful because of the lack of trees (Fig. 10.1). It is an interesting exercise to stand with a group of people on an urban beach and say, "Where would you go if an earthquake just occurred and a tsunami will arrive in ten minutes?" Most people soon realise that they should run to the nearest hill, preferably to the sides of the beach and away from the coast. However, in a suburb such as that shown in Fig. 10.1, this option may be neither obvious nor feasible. The only choice may be to seek safety in buildings. Personally I would look for the closest and tallest concrete building, preferably an office building (apartment buildings have secured access), run to the lobby, push the elevator button, and go to the top floor. Hopefully, the tsunami would not repeat the scene of the Scotch Cap lighthouse, which the April 1, 1946 Tsunami wrecked (Figs. 2.9 and 2.9).

Researchers have investigated the ability of buildings to withstand the force of a tsunami (Wiegel 1970; Shuto 1993; Murata et al. 2010). Damage to structures by tsunami results from five effects (Wiegel 1970; Camfield 1994). First, water pressure exerts a buoyant or lift force wherever water partially or totally submerges an object. This force tends to lift objects off their foundations. It is also responsible for entraining individual boulders. Second, the initial impact of the wave carries objects forward. The impact forces can be aided by debris entrained in the flow or, in temperate latitudes, by floating ice. For these reasons, litter often defines the swash limit of tsunami waves. Third, surging at the leading edge of a wave can exert a rapidly increasing force that can dislodge any object initially resisting movement. Fourth, if the object still resists movement, then drag forces can be generated by high velocities around the edge of the object, leading to scouring. Finally, hydrostatic forces are produced on partially submerged objects. These forces can crush buildings and collapse walls. All of these forces are enhanced by backwash that tends to channelise water, moving it faster seaward.

Various building types and their ability to withstand tsunami are summarized in Fig. 10.13 (Shuto 1993). The data come from the 1883 Krakatau, 1908 Messina, 1933 Sanriku, 1946 Alaskan, and 1960 Chilean Tsunami. Lines on this figure separate undamaged, damaged, and destroyed buildings. Wood buildings offer no refuge from tsunami. Fast-moving water greater than 1 m in depth will destroy any such structures unless they are perched on cross-linked iron struts sunk into the ground. Stone, brick, or concrete block buildings will withstand flow depths of 1–2 m. They are destroyed by greater flows. The Nicaraguan Tsunami of September 2, 1992 destroyed all such buildings wherever the wave ran up more than 2 m (Fig. 5.7). Even concrete pads that require significant force to be moved can be swept away by such flows. The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (2012) in its publication *Tsunami! The Great Wave*s states, "Homes and small buildings located in low-lying coastal areas are not designed to withstand tsunami impacts. Do not stay in these structures should there be a tsunami warning". However, clusters of buildings also increase friction and decrease damage due to tsunami. Even wood houses have withstood tsunami inundation up to 3.0 m depth if they lie landward of a few rows of similarly constructed buildings (Murata et al. 2010). Reinforced concrete buildings will withstand flow depths of up to 5 m. Such depths have only occurred during the severest tsunami, and then only along isolated sections of coastline. If there is no escape, the safest option is to shelter in a reinforced concrete building, preferably in the first instance above the ground floor level. One of the most poignant videos of the Indian Ocean Tsunami of December 26, 2004 was taken in Banda Aceh from just such a vantage point as a raging torrent of water destroyed every other surrounding structure (Fig. 6.14). The NOAA publication also states, "High, multi-story, reinforced concrete hotels are located in many low-lying coastal areas. The upper floors of these hotels can provide a safe place to find refuge should there be a tsunami warning and you cannot move quickly inland to higher ground". However, before fleeing to a multi-storied concrete building, know your vulnerability. Residents along the Sanriku coast of Japan thought they were safe evacuating to the top of three-story buildings as the Tōhoku Tsunami of March 11, 2011 approached. Unfortunately, despite plenty of evidence that the coastline was subject to tsunami flows 10 m or more deep, the incoming tsunami swamped these low level structures (Fig. 10.11).

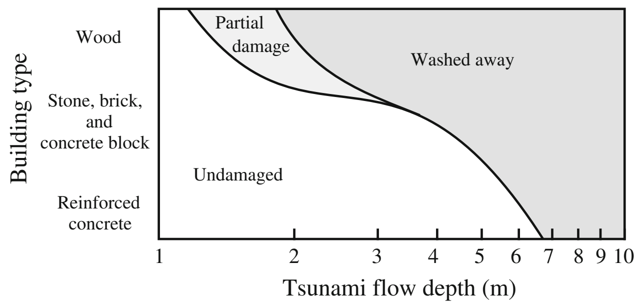


Fig. 10.13 The degree of damage for different housing types produced by varying tsunami flow depths. Based on Shuto (1993)

The above discussion reveals two weaknesses regarding tsunami warning and mitigation. These are complacency and the existence of an inadequate *tsunami culture*. Deadly tsunami have occurred on two of most dangerous coastlines in the world in the last 10 years, the coasts of Sanriku, Japan and southern Chile. Authorities and residents living there should be aware that any earthquake is potentially a fatal tsunamigenic one. Both coasts have state-of-the-art warning systems; yet, substantial numbers of people have died. What hope is there for people living on coastlines where tsunami are a distant memory or historically non-existent? Believing that you are at risk after a mild earthquake, and resisting the herd mentality of those around you to ignore reality and flee, is difficult to do. Believing that you are saved because a technologically advanced society tells you that you are safe is unchallengeable. Several stories in Chap. 1 based on real events encompassed these aspects. If you live on a hazardous coastline, complacency may kill you. Someday another tsunami event will occur along the coasts of Sanriku, Japan and southern Chile. Will measures to mitigate loss of life still be in place? Will the *tsunami culture* be up to surviving the event? On a coastline where no historical tsunami has occurred will there even be a *tsunami culture*? The next chapter emulates the stories presented in Chap. 1 to illustrate the relevance of complacency and a *tsunami culture* in our perception of this hazard.

References

D.J. Asher, S.V.M. Clube, W.M. Napier, D.I. Steel, Coherent catastrophism. Vistas Astron. **38**, 1–27 (1994)

E.N. Bernard, Assessment of Project THRUST: past, present, future, in *Proceedings of the 2nd UJNR Tsunami Workshop*, Honolulu, Hawaii, November 5–6, 1990 (National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, 1991), pp. 247–255

E. Bryant, *Natural hazards*, 2nd edn. (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 2005)

F.E. Camfield, Tsunami effects on coastal structures. J. Coastal Res. Spl. Issue **12**, 177–187 (1994)

Earthquake Engineering Research Institute, Learning from earthquakes: the Japan Tohoku tsunami of March 11, 2011. EERI Special Earthquake Report, Oakland, November (2011)

T. Fukuchi, K. Mitsuhashi, Tsunami countermeasures in fishing villages along the Sanriku Coast, Japan, in *Tsunamis: Their Science and Engineering*, ed. by K. Iida, T. Iwasaki (Terra Scientific Publishing, Tokyo, 1983), pp. 389–396

A.S. Furumoto, H. Tatehata, C. Morioka, Japanese tsunami warning system. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **17**, 85–105 (1999)

F.I. González, Tsunami! Scientific American, May, pp. 44–55 (1999)

V.K. Gusiakov, Tsunami history–recorded, in *The Sea*, vol. 15, Tsunamis, ed. by A. Robinson, E. Bernard (Harvard University Press, Cambridge, 2008), pp. 23–53

Intergovernmental Oceanographic Commission, *ITSU Master Plan* (IOCINF-1124, Paris, 1999), 39p

International Tsunami Information Center (2013). http://itic.ioc-unesco.org/index.php

C.J. Jenkins, J.B. Keene, Submarine slope failures of the southeast Australian continental slope: a thinly sedimented margin. Deep-Sea Res. **39**, 121–136 (1992)

S. Lorito, F. Romano, S. Atzori, X. Tong, A. Avallone, J. McCloskey, M. Cocco, E. Boschi, A. Piatanesi, Limited overlap between the seismic gap and coseismic slip of the great 2010 Chile earthquake. Nat. Geosci. (2011). doi:10.1038/ngeo1073

S. Murata, F. Imamura, K. Katoh, Y. Kawata, S. Takahashi, T. Takayama, in *Tsunami: To Survive from Tsunami*, Advance Series on Ocean Engineering 32 (Kindle edition) (World Scientific, New Jersey, 2010)

National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA), Tsunami! The Great Waves (2012). http://www.nws.noaa.gov/om/brochures/tsunami.htm

Nishio, H, Aneyoshi tsunami warning stone tablet (2013). http://www.megalithic.co.uk/article.php?sid=34248

E.A. Okal, J. Talandier, D. Reymond, Automatic estimations of tsunami risk following a distant earthquake using the mantle magnitude Mm, in *Proceedings of the 2nd UJNR Tsunami Workshop*, Honolulu, Hawaii, November 5–6, 1990 (National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, 1991), pp. 229–238

R. Pallardy, J.P. Rafferty, Chile earthquake of 2010. *Encyclopædia Britannica* (2013). http://www.britannica.com/EBchecked/topic/1669019/Chile-earthquake-of-2010

D. Reymond, O. Hyvernaud, J. Talandier, An integrated system for real time estimation of seismic source parameters and its application to tsunami warning, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by S. Tinti (Kluwer, Dordrecht, 1993), pp. 177–196

Q. Schiermeier, Model response to Chile quake? Nature **464**, 14–15 (2010)

N. Shuto, Tsunami intensity and disasters, in *Tsunamis in the World*, ed. by S. Tinti (Kluwer, Dordrecht, 1993), pp. 197–216

N. Shuto, C. Goto, F. Imamura, Numerical simulation as a means of warning for near-field tsunamis, in *Proceedings of the 2nd UJNR Tsunami Workshop*, Honolulu, Hawaii, November 5–6, 1990 (National Geophysical Data Center, Boulder, 1991), pp. 133–153

N. Shuto, H. Matsutomi, Field survey of the 1993 Hokkaido Nansei-Oki earthquake tsunami. Pure. appl. Geophys. **144**, 649–663 (1995)

T.J. Sokolowski, The U.S. West Coast and Alaska Tsunami Warning Center. Sci. Tsunami Hazards **17**, 49–56 (1999)

G. Walker, The killer wave. New Scientist, November 25, pp. 32–34 (1995)

R.L. Wiegel, Tsunamis, in *Earthquake Engineering*, ed. by R.L. Wiegel (Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, 1970), pp. 253–306

H.H. Yeh, F. Imamura, C. Synolakis, Y. Tsuji, P. Liu, S. Shi, The Flores Island tsunamis. EOS Trans. Am. Geophys. Union **74**, 369 (1993)

H.H. Yeh, P. Liu, M. Briggs, C. Synolakis, Propagation and amplification of tsunamis at coastal boundaries. Nature **372**, 353–355 (1994)

11 Epilogue

This book began with five stories that were based upon legends and historical records of tsunami. These stories formed the basis of subsequent description and discussion about tsunami in the text. It is perhaps appropriate to end this book with five stories that foreshadow the nature of tsunami events in the near future. Each of these stories centers upon one of the underrated aspects about tsunami dealing with their mechanism of formation, location, or impact on a technologically advanced society (Fig. 11.1).

11.1 Five Stories

11.1.1 An Unassuming Earthquake

Cádiz on the southwest coast of Spain is the last place in the world that should be struck by an earthquake (Fig. 11.2). Actually the earthquake wasn't centered here but offshore along the extension of the plate boundary that had given rise to the Great Lisbon Earthquake of November 1, 1755. The earthquake wasn't big. It only had a magnitude of 7.0, maybe a little more. Hardly anyone in the city felt it, which was unusual because it was siesta time and if an earthquake were going to be noticed at all, it would be noticed while people were resting. Some of the fishermen were suspicious. For the past 2 weeks they had seen dead fish floating offshore, and one had even reported seeing the ocean bubbling around his boat. It wasn't a good day at all. It was grey and drizzly, and the horizon was bumpy from the heavy swell running along the coast after the storm of the past 2 days. Even that storm was unusual. It probably had something to do with global warming.

One or two of the fishermen wandered down to the breakwall and casually scanned the ocean as they talked about their run of bad luck. The bumps had moved. They were closer to shore now and appeared to be growing in height. They were! Within 30 s a coherent wall of water formed and increased to a height of 10 m before slamming into the coastline. There was no time for the fishermen to flee. They were picked up by the wave and swept into the harbor. The wave washed across the adjacent beach, splashed against the 15-story hotels and apartments that lined the shoreline, and squeezed between the buildings and into the streets behind. North of the beach, the tsunami ran into the bay and along the harbor foreshores. Docks were swamped, and boats were picked up and ripped from their moorings or sunk on the spot. The wave surged across the bay and up the Guadelete River. Within 10 min, another wave struck the coast and finally a third came ashore. It was all over in 30 min. One of the most picturesque cities on the Spanish west coast had just experience a tsunami earthquake, which supposedly only occurs in the Pacific Ocean.

11.1.2 The Next Big One

Where will the next big one be, the one that will dominate our headlines, be thrown live on our TVs, cost more than any disaster yet: the Indian Ocean, Sanriku coast of Japan, or Chile? Unlikely, because all these coasts have been struck by devastating tsunami in the last decade. It will probably be some coastline that has been the source of an ocean-wide tsunami; but which hasn't had a big one in centuries. A prime suspect is the Cascadia Subduction Zone off the west coast of North America (Clague et al. 2006) (Fig. 11.2). Everyone knew it would come; but the longer it didn't, the more people living along the affluent west coast of Washington, Oregon and British Columbia felt safer. The Juan de Fuca Plate was sliding under the North American Plate at the rate of 45 mm yr^{-1}. It had last come unstuck at 21:00, January 26, 1700 leading to a Pacific-wide tsunami recorded in Japan (Satake et al. 1996). Everyone, who was intelligent, knew that big earthquakes on the Cascadia subduction zone were really, really infrequent—like over 400–500 years apart, even longer. Maybe this time the two plates were just stuck more. Why ruin the lifestyle by worrying about the inevitable, which probably wouldn't happen in anyone's lifetime.

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7_11,

Fig. 11.1 The western coast of the Indonesian province of Aceh devastated by the December 26, 2004 Tsunami. The tsunami totally obliterated all buildings and infilled rice paddies with mud and debris. Note the *trim line* on the backing mountains. The height of the wave was at least 10 m above sea level at this location. No one living on this coastal plain survived. *Source* Defence Australia, *Image* 20050126cpa8267338_034 http://www.defence.gov.au/optsunamiassist/images/gallery/310105/index.htm ©Commonwealth of Australia

Suspicions were aroused that something was happening when Mount Rainier suddenly began to erupt. Inland volcanoes here are the end product of the subduction process. The eruption was small. There was no explosion like Mount St. Helens in 1980. Besides a smoking volcano added to the beauty of this incredibly beautiful coastline. As Air Canada flight 34 winged its way to land at Vancouver airport from Sydney, Australia, passengers craned to look southwards at the majestic smoking mountain. They would never make it to their destination—well not for a few weeks or months… or years. Schools along the coast were just opening. Thousands of students were on buses, or as is the nature of the coastal lifestyle, walking and cycling. The cyclists noticed it first; small shaking that caused their bikes to wobble. Then the ground began to heave and sway. The walking students were bowled over and rolled on the ground. The buses did the same. Some careened off the road; others with smart drivers, braked suddenly. That didn't stop them from bouncing. Cracks began to appear in the ground everywhere. Sections of roads split away. Buildings in Portland, Seattle and Vancouver began to collapse. The runway at Vancouver airport, undulated and then sunk in front of the Air Canada flight trying to land. The pilot aborted the landing and called fruitlessly to the control tower for further instructions. And then the trees on mountain slopes everywhere disappeared as thousands of landslides reshaped the vistas. More ominously, the edge of the continental shelf began to fail. The shaking went on for over 3 min as the Cascadia subduction zone unlocked over a distance of 1000 km. And then silence.

Those that survived in the open picked themselves up and noticed the eerie silence give way to sirens, alarms, and cries for help. Smoke began to rise from hundreds of fires—from those used for heating and cooking in homes—to large ones in industrial buildings and skyscrapers. And then the strangest phenomenon of all, the sea began to drain out of tidal creeks and flats, and then away from beaches dotted along the coast, and then from bays and sounds. It was like someone had pulled the plug in the ocean and all the water was draining away. Most people knew the drill—flee. Flee to the hills, flee into standing concrete buildings and up the stairwells, flee away from the ocean. 20 min after the earthquake stopped, an enormous wall of water appeared on the western horizon. Those on flat land, closest to the ocean, stood little chance as a wave 10–15 m high overrode the outer coastline. Slowed down by the fragmented coast

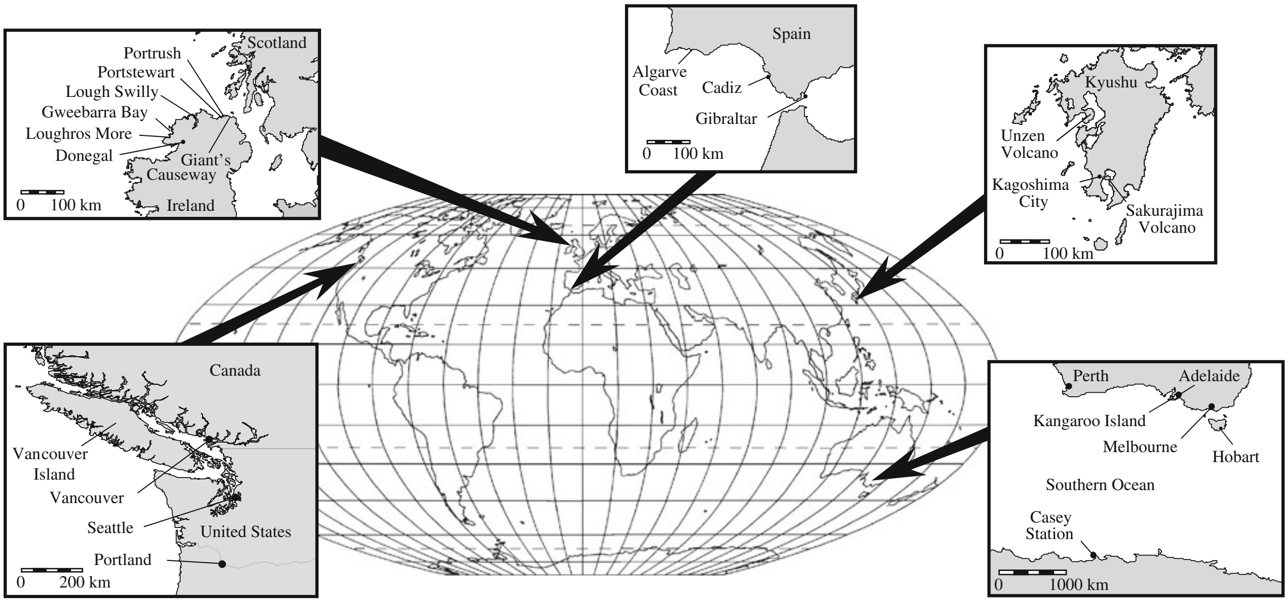


Fig. 11.2 Location map of scenarios for future tsunami events

around Vancouver Island, the tsunami took 90 min to reach Seattle and Vancouver. However, at many locations tsunami generated by landslides, both on land and under the sea, had already swept ashore. The ocean tsunami only muddled the mix of disaster, debris, and despair. Armageddon had arrived that early morning for many people happy to live on one of the most dangerous coastlines in the world.

11.1.3 A Submarine Landslide

The signs were ominous. There were the small earthquakes with surface wave magnitudes registering 3–4. They had increased in frequency to the extent that the Norwegian government instituted tsunami evacuation drills in the major cities along the coast—at Bergen, Stavanger, and more than a dozen smaller communities. The Storegga slides had occurred here more than 7,000 years ago, but the cause of the slides and their resulting tsunami were still a heated point of debate. The devolved government in Scotland took particular note of the events because the most widespread evidence of the tsunami from the Storegga slides existed along its east coast. The debate went no further because politicians were not scientists, geological events were not political ones, and Scotland didn't count any more. Everyone was wrong. What wasn't noticed were the smaller earthquakes along the continental shelf edge off the coast of Ireland. While the Storegga coast of Norway had been the source for three major submarine slides, eleven others had occurred over the same time span along the steep continental slope off the coast of northwestern Europe. At least seven of these had occurred along the coast of Ireland within a few hundred kilometers of the coast.

At 4:58 AM on that Sunday morning in April, the shelf slope finally succumbed to the enormous pressures that had been building up over the last 5,000 years of higher sea levels during the Holocene. The triggering earthquake was minor, and because it was a Sunday, the whole event went relatively unnoticed. Surveys afterwards found it difficult finding anyone who had felt the earthquake—binge hangovers didn't help; however, everyone had stories to tell of the consequences. Slowly the tsunami from the slide built up, and within 2 h the first communities along the west coast of County Donegal were witnessing its effects. Headlands along 350 km of rugged coastline were swamped, while flat pocket beaches in sheltered embayments were completely eroded. The wave was amplified by funneling in embayments such as Loughros More and Gweebarra Bays, and into Lough Swilly running down to Letterkenny (Fig. 11.2). Here the wave reared from 8 m along the open coast to over 15 m inside embayments. The tsunami had its most dramatic effect to the east. Where the shelf shallowed and the coastlines of Ireland and Scotland come closer together, the wave not only maintained its height but also underwent amplification. At the Giant's Causeway on the northern tip of Ulster, it broke again over the knob of basalt columns and other headlands, which dominated the whole of the coast of northern Ireland.

Unfortunately, the death toll was high. Unlike the Grand Banks Tsunami of November 1929—which struck a similarly shaped but sparsely inhabited coastline—this tsunami hit a more densely populated coastline. University students at Coleraine living in the coastal communities of Portstewart and Protrush succumbed to the waves. The countryside around the towns of Gweedora and Donegal was particularly hard hit. The number of dead will never be known because rural marginalization along one of the most isolated coastlines in Western Europe ensured that many victims had no community contacts and hence went missing without being noticed. Experts afterwards stated that the whole event was an abnormality. Meanwhile the offshore slopes continued to build up pressure.

11.1.4 A Volcanic Eruption

Sakurajima Volcano on the Island of Kyushu, Japan is not a well-known one (Fig. 11.2). It was overshadowed further north by Unzen on the Shimabara Peninsula, which during its eruption on May 21, 1792, caused a tsunami with a maximum run-up of 55 m. That wave killed over 14,000 people. Sakurajima had never had eruptions like this, and so people lived closer to it. About 7,000 people lived at the foot of the volcano and half a million people lived in Kagoshima City 10 km to the west. The oldest documented eruption had taken place in AD 764, eons ago. Since then, five major eruptions had occurred—each generating pyroclastic ash and lava flows that had reached the ocean. On September 9, 1780, one of the ash flows had produced a 6 m high tsunami. Since 1955, Sakurajima had burst into life. That would not have been so bad, but the location of the volcano was dangerous. So was its height. Unlike many other explosive Japanese volcanoes, Sakurajima was high, rising to over 1,000 m above sea level. It also protruded menacingly into Kagoshimawan Bay on the southern end of Kyushu Island. It was a disaster waiting to happen.

The eruptions since 1955 just seemed to go on and on. They were cyclic and intense, and should have warned authorities that all was not well. Towards autumn in the early part of the 21st century the seismic tremors and eruptions became more frequent. The local officials even thought about advertising the eruptions, because unlike others, these could be viewed from the relative safety of Kagoshima across the bay. On that sunny morning, with the latest eruption sending ash high into the sky towards the east, the unthinkable happened. One last major earthquake shook the region and the oversteepened slope of the volcano collapsed to the west. Before the slope could disintegrate into the ocean, the volcano blasted through its flank in the largest basal surge since Mt. St. Helens in May 1980. The severity of the situation became immediately apparent to all who were watching the eruption from the city.

The authorities and subsequent investigations could never define the main cause of death for the 20,000 people that died that day. To allay fears in other communities—such as those around Unzen Volcano to the north—the experts said that the wave was not a tsunami, that the water came from the volcano, that the death toll was due to the lateral pyroclastic flow, and that the blast was a freak of nature—never recorded before in the history of Japanese eruptions. Certainly part of the basal surge had spread across the ocean's surface and swept through the city. The melting of glass and metal in the path of the blast confirmed that. However, a few witnesses implicated a tsunami. The bank manager, who saw the eruption and then ducked into the vault and shut it, swore that the ash cloud had sunk below the ocean. He had paused in his retreat because he saw the ocean heaving erratically like a cat crawling under a carpet. Then further down the bay there were the fishermen who actually saw the floor of the bay exposed in the 10 km gap between the base of the volcano and the city. One of them, before cutting the anchor of his boat and deciding to ride the wave out, said that the whole bay splashed in the air over the city. Certainly, there was plenty of evidence of water swamping the city. A camera attached to the Internet, and updated every minute, even showed a fussy picture of a 50 m high wave in the last of its frames. While many said that the debris deposited in the city originated from the volcano, the presence of rounded boulders, marine mud, and shell left little doubt that the seabed had been swept clean. The final details of the disaster may never be known, but over subsequent years people slowly moved away from the foreshores of Kagoshimawan Bay and the waters surrounding Unzen volcano further to the north. The seas were perceived as being too dangerous.

11.1.5 An Asteroid Impact with the Ocean

It hurtled around the Sun as it had thousands of times before, spinning, dark, ominous, 65 million tonnes of stony conglomerate formed in the birth of the solar system 5 billion years ago. As it swung from behind the Sun it was silhouetted against a distant pale blue speck, the planet Earth, with which it would rendezvous 10 weeks later. It should have missed the Earth, but this time round its orbit deviated ever so slightly because of the gravitational attraction of the Earth and the Moon. The asteroid's fate was sealed. It spun through the Earth's atmosphere at 25 km s^{-1} on a low southeast trajectory. It began to heat up, and just before striking the ocean, it fragmented covering an area four times larger than its original 250 m diameter.

Along the south coast of Australia, late on a clear, warm summer's day, a few residents who happened to look south noticed a dull glow hanging over the horizon. Some even said that they could read by the light as night fell. Within seconds, the Australian Antarctic Division in Hobart lost contact with Casey Station in the Antarctic (Fig. 11.2). Such blackouts were common, but this one was permanent. The crew on the supply ship standing off Casey never knew what hit them. It was all over within 10 s as the asteroid struck the ocean less than 100 km away in a blast equivalent to more than 3,000 megatons of TNT. In that interval, billions of tonnes of water were thrown at the speed of sound into the atmosphere and vapourised. The vapor—heated to 5,000 °C—struck the ship and instantly incinerated it.

Within 10 min a tsunami had propagated away from the center of impact and was approaching the ice cap. When it reached shore the wave was almost 100 m high. It sloshed over the ice and then ran back into the ocean together with millions of tonnes of melted ice and water that had condensed out of the atmosphere. After 5 h the lead wave from the tsunami generated by the impact had crossed the Southern Ocean and was approaching the first tide gauge of any note—Adelaide. This wave was followed by a larger one generated by the slosh from the ice cap. In the late evening, the wave approached Kangaroo Island, which protected the mouth of the Gulf of St. Vincent leading to the city. The waves surged over the rocky coastline as effortlessly as a previous tsunami that had wiped out Aboriginal culture on the island 500 years before. The island absorbed the brunt of the wave; however, the tsunami refracted around the ends of the island and ran in a crisscross fashion up the funnel-shaped Gulf. The wavelets increased in amplitude from 5 to 10 m as they impinged upon the western shore of the mainland. The Adelaide tide gauge never registered a thing. It was instantly obliterated as waves surged up the Torrens River and through the Central Business District of the city. In the flatter coastal suburbs, successive waves smashed up to 2 km inland, leaving a mass of demolished houses and shops stacked up at the limit of run-up. The whole scene was broadcast live nationwide from the Goodyear Blimp hovering over the Adelaide Cricket Ground for the day–night match between Australia and India. Viewers sat stunned in front of their TV sets as the wave crashed through the city and its western suburbs. In Melbourne, frantic activity could be seen in one or two houses as their occupants prepared to flee. Only they knew that the waves were minutes away from that city.

11.2 Concluding Comments

The above scenarios have been deliberately contrived to highlight the fact that, while earthquakes are commonly perceived as the cause of tsunami, tsunami have many sources. None of the stories should be viewed as unbelievable. In fact, the tone, voice, and storyline of each deliberately match those of the historical accounts and legends presented in Chap. 1. If these concluding stories are perceived as tall tales, then the reader is likely to deny the magnitude of past historical events such as the tsunami generated by the Lisbon earthquake of 1755, by the volcanic eruption of Krakatau in 1883, or by the Sumatran earthquake of 2004. If the run-up heights of 40 m generated by these three events are trivialized, then bigger events in isolated parts of the globe are more likely to be ignored. We then are prone to mock the descriptions of tsunami present in ancient historical writings. Finally, we unashamedly convert history into legends and legends into myths. It is human nature to minimize hazards, and that is why tsunami are so underrated. Unlike any past civilization, Western Civilization is unique in its settlement of the shoreline and its development of great coastal cities. We develop ever-larger ports in harbors and along the open coast, establish retirement villages on coastal marshes and barrier islands, talk up the value of coastal real estate, and glamorize seaside holidays. Our civilization is so dependent upon the coastline and marine trade that it in turn plays down marine hazards. We then marvel at devastating hurricanes and attribute them to phenomena such as global warming, and farewell sporting seamen on ocean races who then die in storms that we term abnormal. The purpose of this textbook has been to make readers aware that tsunami are ubiquitous along our shorelines. The only guarantee or prediction is that they will happen again, sometime soon, on a coastline near you—on a reservoir, a lake, a sheltered sea, inside a coral barrier, in the lee of an island, or along an open coastline. Our present knowledge about marine hazards is biased. Tsunami are very much an underrated, widespread ill-prepared for hazard. Any coast is at risk.

References

J. Clague, C. Yorath, R. Franklin, B. Turner, *At Risk: Earthquakes and Tsunamis on the West Coast* (Tricouni Press, Vancouver, 2006)

K. Satake, K. Shimazaki, Y. Tsuji, K. Ueda, Time and size of a giant earthquake in Cascadia inferred from Japanese tsunami records of January 1700. Nature **379**, 246–249 (1996)

Index

E. Bryant, *Tsunami*, DOI: 10.1007/978-3-319-06133-7,